

**LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, SATURDAY, SEPTEMBER 12, 1970**

**9:00 A.M.**

-o0o-

THE COURT: Good morning, ladies and gentlemen. This is a rather unusual Saturday session which we thought would be in the interest of justice. There is just the one matter that is involved. This is Superior Court Indictment No. A-253156, People against Charles Watson and others.

Is that your true name, sir, Charles Watson?

THE DEFENDANT: Yes, it is, your Honor.

THE COURT: Do you have a lawyer at this time, Mr. Watson?

THE DEFENDANT: Karl Ransom.

THE COURT: Mr. Ransom, are you representing Mr. Watson?

MR. RANSOM: Karl Ransom and Gilbert Caton for Mr. Watson, your Honor.

THE COURT: I would like to inform the defendant of his Constitutional rights, notwithstanding the fact that he is presently represented by counsel.

Mr. Watson, you are entitled to a speedy and public trial. You are entitled to a trial before a jury. You have the right to be confronted by all of the witnesses testifying against you and you have the right to cross examine those witness.

You have the right to the compulsory processes of the Court to obtain witnesses in your favor.

You have the right to have the assistance of counsel of your own choosing for your defense at all stages of the proceedings.

You have the right to testify on your own behalf but you cannot be compelled to be a witness against yourself.

In all cases except capitol cases you are entitled to be admitted to liberty at reasonable bail. However, when a defendant is charged with an offense punishable by death, he cannot be admitted to bail if proof of his guilt is evident or the presumption thereof is great. Do you have any questions at this time about your Constitutional rights, Mr. Watson?

THE DEFENDANT: No.

THE COURT: I wonder if the District Attorney has a copy of the indictment and the grand jury transcript to give to counsel.

MR. KATZ: Yes, I do, your Honor. I might state by way of preface, your Honor, that Mr. Ransom informed me that he has had for some time a copy of the indictment. However, I will be happy to furnish him with an additional copy of the indictment which consists of some nine pages including the list of witnesses who testified at the grand jury proceedings on December 5th and December 8th of 1969. I also have, your Honor, which I will turn over to Mr. Ransom and Mr. Caton, two volumes pertaining to the testimony before the grand jury of December 5th and December 8th, 1969, which comprises some three hundred eighty-four pages in total. May the record reflect at this time I am now handing a copy of the aforementioned indictment and two copies of the grand jury indictment.

THE COURT: The record will reflect such items are now being handed to Mr. Ransom. Does the defendant wish to be arraigned at this time or would he desire continuance in that respect, Mr. Ransom.

MR. RANSOM: Your Honor, if I may have a moment of the Court's time, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

MR. RANSOM: I discussed this matter with him and with the District Attorney and with Mr. Watson. This case as the Court knows has some unusual aspects. It is agreeable with the District Attorney and it is agreeable with Mr. Watson and I hope it should be agreeable with the Court if I appear especially at this time until I have finalized my arrangements one way or the other to represent Mr. Watson. If that is agreeable, your Honor, Mr. Watson requests and I respect the matter be continued two weeks for further proceedings.

THE COURT: I have no objection to continuing the matter for further proceedings for two weeks. However, the special appearance is problem because customarily we don't give the grand jury transcript to an individual unless he represents the defendant. Frankly, I don't know what a special appearance is right now under these circumstances, Mr. Ransom.

MR. RANSOM: Well, as I say, the Court knows the history of this case. It is an unusual case. Mr. Watson has been in Texas. I have been contacted -- been in contact with Mr. Boyd, Bill Boyd of McKinney, Texas, who has been his lawyer. Mr. Boyd requested of me that I appear in this matter. I didn't anticipate this was going to happen this fast. I didn't expect to be here on Saturday morning. Otherwise I would now be in Dallas. Mr. Boyd requested I come and see him and talk to Mr. Watson's family.

THE COURT: About the only issue is whether or not the sole remaining copy of the grand jury transcript is to be turned over to you and I don't want to do that on the basis of the special appearance.

MR. RANSOM: I cannot intelligently speak about a case unless I have some of the facts or some information about it.

THE COURT: It happens in every other case we have in this court.

MR. RANSOM: As an officer of the court, I would represent to the Court I would take the grand jury transcript into my possession and I will return it forthwith, immediately, and intact in the event I should not represent Mr. Watson.

THE COURT: That is not agreeable, Mr. Ransom. I'm sorry. I don't have any reason to doubt your word, but I don't see any reason to make an exception in this case. I don't do it in other cases and I don't know why I should do it in this one. If you lose the transcript all we have at the very most is a civil suit. I doubt very much that that would be appropriate. I would have to order the reporter to prepare a brand new one if for some reason you are not in the case.

MR. RANSOM: May I make this request. At my own expense that I be permitted to come to the District Attorney's Office and have the transcript photo-copied.

THE COURT: Certainly that is agreeable to me. All that I am saying is until there is a general appearance made on behalf of Mr. Watson, I am not going to authorize delivery of the sole remaining copy of the transcript. That is the copy the was prepared for the use of the defendant. I am not going to have that surrendered to you or anyone else until there is a general appearance. Certainly you can have it photostatted at your own expense. There is no objection to that whatever.

What date would you like to have the matter go over?

MR. RANSOM: I would suggest, your Honor --

THE COURT: Believe me, it will not be a Saturday.

MR. RANSOM: Would the 28th be an agreeable date?

THE COURT: I am sure it will be. September 28th. Let's set it at 9:00 o'clock. If we have to adjust it later on for security or other reasons, we can always do that informally to either the 11:00 o'clock calendar or even the afternoon. Let's set it then for 9:00 o'clock, September 28th. That is personally agreeable to you, Mr. Watson?

THE DEFENDANT: Yes.

THE COURT: I do wish to inform you, sir, you have a right to be brought to trial within sixty days after the indictment is found. That is what the language of the statute is. As that has been construed, that means sixty days after your actual arrest or surrender in open court on the indictment. So my construction of that is you have a right to be brought to trial within sixty days of today. Any continuances that are obtained on your behalf, of course, would not be computed as part of the sixty days. I don't think time is going to be an issue in this case frankly, but I simply wish to state to the defendant what his rights are. Very well. That is agreeable. September 28th at 9:00 o'clock in this court. Thank you very much, gentlemen.

We are in recess. The defendant is remanded into the custody of the Sheriff.

(Recess taken.)

THE COURT: I have been informed counsel, at least special counsel, has an additional item he wishes to bring to the Court's attention so we'll resume.

MR. RANSOM: It is a request of the defendant which I join in, your Honor, that no one be permitted in the county jail to visit Mr. Watson without prior written approval of Bill Boyd, myself, or Mr. Caton. I would request the Court make such an order to the Sheriff.

THE COURT: Mr. Watson, at this stage until any other arrangements are made, it is your understanding that you are being represented by Mr. Ransom and his associate, Mr. Caton, and by Mr. Boyd, a member of the Texas Bar, is that correct?

THE DEFENDANT: Yes.

THE COURT: So ordered. I think that is a reasonable order. I will state specifically rather than so order, the Sheriff is directed not to permit any visitors to this defendant,

Mr. Watson, except with the written consent of either Mr. Ransom, Mr. Caton, or Mr. Boyd, his counsel of record.

MR. RANSOM: Thank you, your Honor.

MR. KATZ: Thank you, your Honor.

**LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, MONDAY, SEPTEMBER 28, 1970**

**11:00 A.M.**

-o0o-

(Upon the above date, the defendant appearing in court with his counsel, Karl Ransom, the People being represented by Burton Katz, Deputy District Attorney of Los Angeles County, the following proceedings were had in Department 100 before the Honorable George M. Dell, Judge Presiding:)

THE COURT: We will resume at this time with the matters that went over from the morning calendar. I'll call No. 305, Charles Watson.

I see the defendant is here with his counsel, or at least I should say his tentative counsel, Mr. Ransom, and Mr. Katz is here from the District Attorney's office.

I would like the record to reflect that just prior to our resuming in this court, Mr. Ransom, Mr. Katz had a brief conference in which there was some indication that Mr. Ransom is not going to be representing Mr. Watson.

MR. RANSOM: Yes, your Honor. Arrangements to retain me were not made. \*\*

THE COURT: Very well. I'll relieve you of any further responsibility at this time, although, I may ask -- I would like to ask you to stand by for just a few minutes, Mr. Ransom, in the event any question arises.

Let's see, now, Mr. Watson, as I understand it, Mr. Ransom has not been retained to represent you and you are back in the same state that you were when you first appeared before Mr. Ransom made his appearance.

Has any other arrangement been made with any other individual to represent you at this time?

THE DEFENDANT: (No response.)

THE COURT: Were you able to hear what I said?

THE DEFENDANT: (No response.)

THE COURT: I see. Do you find something particularly interesting in my direction, Mr. Watson?

THE DEFENDANT: (No response.)

THE COURT: Well, let the record reflect that the defendant is standing with his hands on the wooden rail in front of him in the prisoner's section. He is staring intently in the Court's direction. He does not respond to any statement or question from the Court. Appears to be some sort of a game on Mr. Watson's part, which he is free to play if he so desires.

I'll relieve you at this time, Mr. Ransom. You are free to leave, if you wish to do so. I anticipate that the Public Defender will declare a conflict of interest in this case but inasmuch as the defendant apparently does not wish to respond to any questions by the Court I'm unable to ascertain at this time whether he has the financial ability to retain counsel or not. And even though I expect a conflict will be declared, and I anticipate one will be declared at this time pending official confirmation from the Public Defender that he cannot represent Mr. Watson, I will appoint the Public Defender to represent him.

MR. VACCA: Your Honor, in view of the nature of this case may this go over until October 8th for arraignment and plea?

THE COURT: The matter is continued until October the 8th.

I would request this of you, Mr. Vacca. As soon as you ascertain, if, in fact, you do so, that there will be a conflict of interest declared, will you please advise me so that I can communicate with individuals who might be suitable for the purpose of appointment to represent this gentleman.

MR. VACCA: Certainly.

THE COURT: So ordered. That will be on the 9:00 o'clock calendar unless otherwise ordered, October 8th.

We will take a brief recess at this time.

MR. KATZ: Your Honor, I'm wondering if I may approach the bench with counsel?

THE COURT: Yes, of course. Yes, by all means.

MR. KATZ: Your Honor, may I interrupt for just one moment?

THE COURT: Yes, indeed, go ahead.

MR. KATZ: I have another copy of the Indictment. I would like to hand this to the Public Defender.

THE COURT: Would you do so, please, and I believe the transcript should be available for his benefit as well.

MR. KATZ: That is correct. And I believe the clerk presently has the two volumes.

THE COURT: All right. If you can hand those to Mr. Vacca, the record will reflect that that will be done.

The Indictment has been given to counsel and the two volumes are in my chambers.

We will get those right now for you, Mr. Vacca. There are the two volumes and the record will reflect that they are being handed by the clerk now to Mr. Vacca.

(Whereupon, the proceedings were continued to Friday, October 8, 1970, in Department 100 for further proceedings.)

Whereupon, on the above date, the defendant appearing in court with his counsel, Samuel Bubrick, the People being represented by Burton Katz, Deputy District Attorney of Los Angeles County, the following proceedings were had in Department 100 before the Honorable George M. Dell, Judge Presiding:)

THE COURT: Good afternoon, ladies and gentlemen. We will commence with our afternoon session.

This is the case of People against Charles Watson, No. 305. The record will indicate that the defendant is present and is now standing in an area reserved for individuals in custody.

The attorney of record, as far as the formal court records are concerned, for Mr. Watson, is the Public Defender. However, I do wish to indicate for the record that at the time I continued the case at the Public Defender's request to October 8th I anticipated that in all likelihood a conflict of interest would be declared.

The Public Defender did notify me approximately two or three days after September 28th that a conflict of interest would be declared and, for the record, the Public Defender is now relieved pursuant to Section 987(a) of the Penal Code.

I contacted Attorney Sam Bubrick, who is an extremely experienced and capable counsel, one of our best respected lawyers who has tried a great number of death

penalty and other various cases, and asked him if he would accept an appointment in this case. Mr. Bubrick indicated he would prefer to speak to Mr. Watson. I authorized him to do so. Mr. Bubrick would then advise me.

He thereafter did indicate to me that at least at this stage of the case he would accept an appointment.

I think it's only fair to say this is contingent either on Mr. Watson cooperating with him or being in a condition where he couldn't cooperate. I think those are reasonable conditions.

And I did indicate to Mr. Bubrick he would be appointed under Section 987(a) of the Penal Code. If he has not changed his mind in the meantime, he'll be deemed appointed at this time.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, I'm still willing to undertake it under the same terms and conditions.

THE COURT: Did I state those correctly?

MR. BUBRICK: You certainly did, your Honor.

THE COURT: Well, Mr. Bubrick is now counsel of record and the matter is advanced on the Court's own motion from October 8th until today.

I did previously inform the defendant of his rights at an earlier time. Last there is any question about it, though, inasmuch as this is the first time he is present in court with counsel who has indicated that he is going to represent the defendant, I will state to the defendant that he is entitled to a speedy and public trial; he is entitled to a to a trial before a jury; he has the right to be confronted by all the witnesses testifying against him and has the right to cross--examine those witnesses; he has the right to the compulsory precast of the Court to obtain witnesses in his favor; he has the right to have the assistance of counsel of his own choosing for his defense at all stages of the proceeding; he has a right to testify on his own behalf but he cannot be, compelled to be a witness against himself.

In all cases except capital case any defendant is entitled to be admitted to liberty at reasonable bail. But a defendant charged with an offense punishable with death cannot be admitted to bail if proof of his guilt is evident or the presumption thereof is great.

Mr. Watson, do you have any questions about these rights as I stated them to you?



THE DEFENDANT: (No response.)

THE COURT: Well, the record will indicate that the defendant is facing the Court; that he has his hands on the rail in front of him; that he is looking at the Court and has an expression that I won't attempt to characterize but he makes no response to the Court's query.

Mr. Bubrick, in my judgement and inasmuch as you are counsel of record I won't attempt to overrule your judgment, but it would seem to me that without declaring a doubt as to the defendant's present sanity it would be in the interest of justice to appoint psychiatrists to examine the defendant and at least report to the Court on his ability to understand the nature and purpose of the proceedings taken against him and to cooperate in a rational manner with counsel in presenting a defense.

Would that be objectionable --

MR. BUBRICK: No, your Honor.

THE COURT: -- if the Court Would take such action?

MR. BUBRICK: That is the very thing I had in mind this afternoon your Honor, to ask your Honor to proceed under Sections 5 and 6, as your Honor has indicated he would, and perhaps appoint three doctors.

THE COURT: Yes. I would like to do so at this time.

I will not declare a doubt as to the defendant's present sanity. I do not know whether the defendant's present posture is legitimate or not and I'm not implying that it isn't. At the same time, I've seen no bizarre behavior, nothing tangible has been presented to me directly. All that has been presented is the defendant's failure to respond to the inquiries of the Court, failure to make any statements to the Court, and this is not the same conduct that he exhibited when first he appeared with Mr. Ransom when he appeared to be fully present and did respond to inquiries made by the Court.

Pursuant to Section 730 of the Evidence Code, then, only, I will appoint three doctors -- I'll name them in just a moment -- to examine the defendant and report to the Court on the following items:

Item 5 and 6, whether the defendant is presently able to understand the nature and purpose of the proceedings taken against him and is presently able to cooperate in a rational manner with counsel in presenting a defense.

In addition, if the psychiatrists are able to go beyond that point I will request them optionally to report on the following items, which may become material at a subsequent time:

Item 2, sanity at the time of the commission of the alleged offense;

Items 9, 10, 11 and 12, mental capacity to deliberate, premeditate, harbor malice and meaningfully and maturely reflect on the gravity of his alleged contemplated acts.

It may very well be that the psychiatrists will not be able to express any opinion excepting as to Items 5 and 6, if at all. But I would request the other items.

I would feel that psychiatrists should be allowed about two weeks for this, Mr. Bubrick.

MR. BUBRICK: I think we can go a little beyond that, if you Honor will. I'd like a chance to communicate with Boyd in Texas after this proceeding so I can send him a certified copy of my appointment.

I have also talked to Mr. Katz. We both feel, if your Honor would approve, that perhaps 30 days would be in order.

THE COURT: That's certainly agreeable as far as I'm concerned.

It's requested by counsel, it's in the best interest of the defendant, I'm convinced. He may very well be in no condition to undergo any further proceedings. I think that the request is reasonable and is in the interest of justice.

Is there any particular date that you would like to request for a return date in this Court?

We will try to have those reports available at least a week before that.

MR. BUBRICK: Friday, November 6, your Honor.

THE COURT: Friday, November 6 is agreeable. We will set that at 9:00 o'clock subject to possible adjustment if the Court's calendar requires that we handle the matter a little later on in the afternoon of that day.

MR. BUBRICK: Thank you, your Honor.

THE COURT: We will ask that the psychiatrists, whom I've not yet named, have their reports in at least a week in advance of that, have them in to me by October 30th. I'll see to it that the counsel for the People and counsel for the defendant get their copies.

The psychiatrist I'll name will be Doctors Seymour Pollock, George Y. Abe, and I think particularly because of his extensive experience with individuals in custody and

particular attributes that some of them display on some occasions, I'm going to appoint Dr. Marcus E. Crahan, all pursuant to Section 730 of the Evidence Code.

As indicated, I'll ask them to have their reports in to me by the date indicated.

Is there any objection, Mr. Bubrick, to their reading the Grand Jury transcript in this case which may or may not be material? I have not read it myself so, frankly, I don't know.

MR. BUBRICK: No, I do not think there really is, your Honor.

THE COURT: Is that a -- I'm sorry, Mr. Bubrick?

MR. BUBRICK: No, I'm sorry, I have no objection to that. I was just going to ask your Honor to reconsider the 730 section and ask your Honor whether he wouldn't, for the limited purpose of this one proceeding, perhaps also include 1017 of the Penal Code.

THE COURT: I've got no objection as to the 1017, but if you can, after reading the reports, indicate to the Court that there is no issue as to present sanity, then, of course, they will remain confidential.

No, I've got no objection.

MR. BUBRICK: I certainly will do that, your Honor. I'd let the District Attorney --

THE COURT: I'll make the appointment under 1017, certainly, if that is requested. Very well, then, let me make this additional statement, then: I will request that the Grand Jury transcript of course, rather than the preliminary transcript, be read by the respective doctors, and I'll authorize Mr. Bubrick and/or Mr. Katz to furnish to any of the doctors any additional information that they may feel is material with reference to the examination of this defendant.

MR. BUBRICK: Thank you.

THE COURT: Thank you very much.

Any other matters at this time, gentlemen?

MR. KATZ: Your Honor, since Mr. Bubrick is now counsel of record, I think Mr. Bubrick was going to indicate he is in possession of the copy of the Indictment, together with two volumes of --

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, I do have it, your Honor, and I acknowledge it.

THE COURT: All right. Thank you very much. I appreciate you mentioning that. Obviously, it would not be appropriate to arraign the defendant at this time and I see no point in even reading the charges, Mr. Bubrick, unless you want that.

MR. BUBRICK: No, your Honor, I'm in agreement with that.

THE COURT: Very well. Thank you very much, gentlemen. We are in recess at this time.

MR. KATZ: Thank you, your Honor.

MR. BUBRICK: Thank you.

(Whereupon, the matter was continued to November 6, 1970, in Department 100 for further proceedings.)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, FRIDAY, OCTOBER 30, 1970

2:05 P.M.

-o0o-

(Upon the above date, in Department 100 before the Honorable George M. Dell, attorney Sam Bubrick being present, the People being represented by Burton Katz, Deputy District Attorney of Los Angeles County, the following proceedings were had ex parte:)

THE COURT: This is the matter of People versus Charles Watson, Case No. A-253156. The record will indicate that Mr. Sam Bubrick is here on behalf of the defendant and Deputy District Attorney Burton Katz on behalf of the People.

I'd like the record to reflect the sequence of events that have transpired. It's obvious that the defendant is not present and there is a reason for it. But just so the record will be clear, at the most recent court appearance at which Mr. Watson was present, Mr. Bubrick then representing him, I, at the request of Mr. Bubrick, appointed three psychiatrists to examine Mr. Watson and report. Initially it was to be done to the Court and thereafter, at Mr. Bubrick's request, and perfectly legitimately and more appropriately, to report directly to Mr. Bubrick under Sections 730 and 1017 of the Evidence Code on certain aspects of Mr. Watson's mental condition.

At that time, with the knowledge of the District Attorney, who is present, I had been informed by Mr. Bubrick, that is, prior to the time of the court appearance, that there was in Mr. Bubrick's mind a question as to the defendant's mental condition in that he

would not communicate and that he was exhibiting certain items of bizarre behavior. I appointed Doctors Marcus Crahan, who is the medical director for the Department of the Sheriff, or, perhaps more familiarly known as the jail physician, George Abe, the director of the Metropolitan State Hospital, and Seymour Pollock, associate professor of psychiatry at the University of Southern California and director of the Institute of Law and Psychiatry of the University of Southern California Law Center, to examine Mr. Watson.

Primarily I was concerned about his ability to stand trial under Penal Code Section 1368, his ability to understand the nature and purpose of the proceedings taken against him and to cooperate with his counsel in presenting a defense. As a subsidiary matter I also, if we got to that point, wanted the psychiatrist to report on whether or not Mr. Watson was sane at the time of the commission of the alleged offenses and whether he could form the certain necessary mental states necessary to commit the crime of murder, which is charged against him.

I did not see Dr. Pollock's original report -- not Dr. Pollock's, but, Dr. Crahan's original report, because in conformity with my order it was to be confidential to Mr. Bubrick until the confidentiality disappeared. That report was rendered, I am now aware, on October 21st.

On Wednesday, October the 28th, Mr. Bubrick contacted to, indicated he had attempted to reach Mr. Katz. He had not been able to do so at that point. He took the liberty of contacting me directly and indicated great concern in the psychiatric and physical condition of Mr. Watson.

He was concerned that Mr. Watson was losing a great deal of weight, was not responding or communicating, and appeared to be in serious condition.

Shortly thereafter, I received a direct telephone call from Dr. Crahan who has a dual capacity as far as this particular case is concerned as the medical director for the Department of the Sheriff, also referred to as jail physician, and as an appointed psychiatrist in this case. And evidently he had been in contact with Mr. Bubrick and he gave me essentially the same sort of information.

I had told Mr. Bubrick when I spoke to him that if what Dr. Crahan -- if Dr. Crahan presented to me the facts that he had presented to Mr. Bubrick, I would feel it

mandatory on my own motion to advance this hearing, which originally was set one week from today, November 6th, to the earliest possible time and bring Mr. Watson in for a present sanity hearing.

I received on October 29th delivered to me a medical report from -- a copy of the report to Mr. Bubrick. At that point I felt that there was an issue as to the defendant's present sanity and, accordingly, the confidential status of the psychiatric reports had no longer any application and it was with my authorization and Mr. Bubrick's who concurred with my view, that I receive a supplement to the Crahan report.

During this period I was trying to reach Mr. Katz and I did, in fact, reach him. The report confirmed what I had been told on the telephone and I did set the hearing for today, giving notice to the District Attorney and to Mr. Bubrick as well, and to the Sheriff's Department.

I also received shortly after receiving the Crahan report a direct letter report from Mr. H. B. Cramer, chief of the Jail Division of the Sheriff's office. Chief Cramer similarly informed me of the serious matters that had arisen as to Mr. Watson's condition.

I took such steps as I could, having notified Mr. Bubrick and Mr. Katz that I was going to do so, to obtain directly the reports from Doctors Abe and Pollock, both of whom unfortunately were attending a conference of Judges and psychiatrists on our Superior Court psychiatric list.

I was informed by Dr. Abe informally yesterday afternoon what the content of his report would be. He had already seen Mr. Watson at that time. Dr. Pollock had not yet seen him.

I have now received the reports from all of the psychiatrists. Based on those reports I declare that there is a doubt as to the defendant Charles Watson's present sanity within the meaning of Section 1368 of the Penal Code.

I know this recitation has been somewhat extensive but there is great interest in this case and I think that the public should know what has transpired.

I am informed by the Sheriff's Department that physically, unless directly ordered by the Court, Mr. Watson would not be brought to court for this hearing. I feel that under the circumstances of this case there is no real purpose in having him present unless his presence is demanded by his counsel.

Are you willing to proceed in this hearing at this time without the personal presence of Mr. Watson, Mr. Bubrick?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, your Honor. I think it's in his best interest that he not be brought to court.

THE COURT: And the District Attorney, I trust, is of the same view, Mr.. Katz?

MR. KATZ: That's correct, your Honor.

THE COURT: Have I stated essentially correctly the history of this case, perhaps with some inadvertent departure from the exact order in which these matters happened, but is that essentially correct, Mr. Bubrick, as you recall it?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, certainly, your Honor,

THE COURT: Mr. Katz?.

MR. KATZ: Yes, your Honor.

THE COURT: Insofar as you are aware.

I have taken the position that there is no longer any confidentiality under Evidence Code Section 1017 in view of the fact that it's evident from these reports that there is a doubt as to the defendant's present sanity.

The defendant is entitled to a jury trial on this issue and, of course, if it's desired by him, or by his counsel, the psychiatrist will personally appear.

Nevertheless, is it agreeable to you, as the defendant Watson's counsel, and to the People as well, that the determination of present sanity be determined by this Court at this time, based on reading of the original and the supplemental reports by Dr. Crahan, the report by Dr. Pollock, the report by Dr. Abe, as well as the report by Chief A. B. Cramer of the Sheriff's Department? Is this agreeable to your?

MR. BUBRICK: It is, your Honor, and I would so stipulate on behalf of the defendant Watson.

MR. KATZ: So stipulated.

THE COURT: That is agreeable with you as well, Mr. Katz?

MR. KATZ: Yes, your Honor, we would so stipulate on behalf of the People.

THE COURT: As I've indicated, I have read and considered these items. I think that I should quote just in part some certain of these documents prior to reaching my decision.

I take it there would be no further evidence offered by either party, is that right, Mr. Bubrick?

MR. BUBRICK: That's right, your Honor.

THE COURT: Mr. Katz?

MR. KATZ: That's correct, your Honor.

THE COURT: Chronologically, I will quote -- I think I'll read into the record completely the report of Dr. Crahan, the supplemental report which bears yesterday's date, which is essentially the information which was transmitted to me by telephone on the 28th of October.

"Since the report of examination of Mr. Charles 'Tex' Watson made on October 21st, 1970, it is felt necessary to render this supplement report, because Mr. Watson in the last week has become listless, flaccid, he makes no movements, his lips are pursed, it is impossible to spoon feed him, and we are starting to feed him by nasal tube. He is virtually vegetative, has to be shaved and bathed. His weight has dropped from 118 pounds to 110 in one week since October 21, 1970.

"He is rapidly reverting to a fetal state and is undergoing an involuntal state which could be rapidly fatal. His normal weight in Texas was 160 pounds.

"It is strongly suggested that proceedings be suspended and that he be transferred to Atascadero State Hospital as quickly as possible as presently insane, according to Section 1368 Penal Code."

I might say parenthetically that this does indicate a considerable change since the date of Dr. Crahan's first report.

The report from the Sheriff's Department, from Chief Cramer, as I indicated, I'll quote only in part.

"A serious weight loss has occurred, Mr. Watson being approximately six feet in height at this time weighs approximately 118 pounds. This is in marked contrast to the 160-pound weight of Mr. Watson upon his admission to the Central Jail. Watson is currently being fed via a tube inserted into his stomach through the throat. This is only a stopgap measure and should Mr. Watson continue to refuse food there is a real possibility that he may expire from malnutrition."

From Dr. Pollock's report I'll only quote briefly inasmuch as it is a much longer and more



comprehensive report. His opinion generally is that Mr. Watson is not presently able to understand the nature and purpose of the proceedings taken place against or to cooperate in a rational manner with counsel in presenting a defense.

Among other things Dr. Pollock indicates that there was difficulty in communicating with Mr. Watson; that the defendant would stare off into space or would giggle and smile. He would not answer questions. Does indicate the same factor as to rejection of food.

During the specific interview with Dr. Pollock it is indicated that Mr. Watson remained completely mute and non-verbal, although he appeared to understand what the doctor said. He wiped his nose with Kleenex, drank water, but appeared to be on the verge of talking, tears frequently came to his eyes, he appeared markedly retarded both in his thinking and in his physical movements. He demonstrated a picture of profound depression.

History from the record indicates the likelihood of a Ganser, G-a-n-s-e-r, Syndrome. The possibility of a schizophrenia.

Dr. Pollock concluded -- felt that there was doubt that there was any true malingering in the case. He felt that Mr. Watson was definitely in a psychosis and needed definitive treatment, was even a suicide possibility.

I think that's sufficient quotation. And let me just simply quote briefly from, Dr. Abe's report.

I'll simply quote his conclusion, which is that he felt there was a schizophrenic reaction, catatonic type of mental illness. Due to his loss of weight and near inanition, it is imperative that defendant be given immediate medical and psychiatric care and treatment as a life-saving measure.

His conclusion, of course, was similar to those reached by the other doctors as to present lack of sanity under Penal Code Section 1368.

I think perhaps I do want to hear from counsel but I think in all fairness I should make this observation:

I don't think there is any question but that many individuals have suspected that Mr. Watson's behavior was of a malingering nature and I must admit to some question along that line myself. I deliberately appointed doctors whom I felt would not be easily misled by any malingering.

Dr. Crahan, who retires today after 30 years' service as director of the Sheriff's jail facilities, is, I would say, one of the least persuadable psychiatrists I can conceive of as far as any malingering is concerned. Similarly, Dr. Abe, who is the director of the Metropolitan State Hospital, and Dr. Pollock who testified for the District Attorney in the Sirhan case as an expert witness, equally are individuals who I believe would be highly unlikely to be persuaded by false claims of a mental illness.

I am convinced that what the doctors report to me is correct and that Mr. Watson is not capable at this time of appreciating the nature and purpose of the proceedings taken against him and he is absolutely incapable of cooperating with his counsel in presenting a defense. And I feel that it's imperative that he be placed in a facility where every possible consideration can be given to him to help him recover his mental stability and his physical well being so that he can stand trial.

Before I make a formal order, I'll be happy to hear from both counsel in this case.

Mr. Bubrick.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further to offer, your Honor.

THE COURT: Mr. Katz.

MR. KATZ: If I may, your Honor, just briefly, with respect to the stipulation whereby it was agreed by and between counsel that the Court would base its 1368 finding if any, upon the reports previously indicated, described by the Court, I just wanted to make it clear for the record, though I know it is self-evident to your Honor and Mr. Bubrick, that I entered into the stipulation only with respect to a 1368 issue and in no manner, shape or form are we conceding 26(a) issue at this time.

THE COURT: The only issue is present sanity, absolutely.

MR. KATZ: Thank you, your Honor.

And the last thing I wanted to say, that Mr. Younger has asked me, after full consultation with Mr. Younger and the executive staff of the District Attorney's office, to indicate that our office is also concerned; that we feel it's imperative as a life-saving measure to help facilitate Mr. Watson's removal to Atascadero where he can receive the adequate medical attention and be assured that his office will do everything to assist in this fashion.

Thank you, your Honor.

THE COURT: Thank you very much. Then the matter stand submitted, gentlemen?

MR. BUBRICK: It does, your Honor.

MR. KATZ: Submit it.

THE COURT: The Court at this time makes the formal finding that the defendant Charles Watson, is presently insane within the meaning of Section 1368 of the Penal Code.

It is therefore ordered that the proceedings in this case be suspended as to Mr. Watson until he becomes sane. I now order that he be committed into the custody of the Sheriff and that he be committed by the Sheriff to a State Hospital for the care and treatment of the insane.

In this specific instance, the location will be Atascadero State Hospital, unless otherwise designated by the Director of the Department of Mental Hygiene.

His physical removal to Atascadero is to be accomplished as soon as humanly possible, provided that the director, or acting director, of the medical facilities in the County Jail feels he is able to travel.

I understand that the feeling is he will be able to travel and he will be transmitted forthwith.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, I had one suggestion --

THE COURT: Mr. Bubrick.

MR. BUBRICK: I wonder if your Honor could somehow instruct the authorities at Atascadero to give whatever weight they will to Dr. Pollock's suggestion that perhaps they not indulge in electroshock therapy with Mr. Watson because of its possible potential effect for the future.

THE COURT: Yes. I'll see that copies of all of these reports are transmitted, and I'll invite specifically the attention of Dr. Morgan to Dr. Pollock's report.

One item I should indicate for the record, just an oversight, I attempted to reach after receiving these reports Dr. Morgan. I was not able to reach him. I reached Dr. Eckland, the associate director of Atascadero. He indicated that he'd like to have all of the reports accompany the defendant. He indicated that the State Hospital at Atascadero would accept Mr. Watson based on the information I gave him if he were, in fact, found to be presently insane.

I appreciate the suggestion. We will comply with it, Mr. Bubrick.

MR. BUBRICK: Thank you.

THE COURT: Thank you very much, gentlemen.

MR. KATZ: Thank you, your Honor.

(Whereupon, the proceedings for the above date in Department 100 were concluded.)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, MONDAY, MARCH 1, 1971

9:30 A.M.

-o0o-

(Upon the above date, defendant appearing in court with his counsel, Sam Bubrick, the People being represented by Stephen Kay, Deputy District Attorney of Los Angeles County, the following proceedings were had in Department 100 before the Honorable Malcolm M. Lucas, Judge Presiding:)

THE COURT: Call the matter of Charles Watson.

Is your true name Charles Watson, sir?

THE DEFENDANT: (Nods head affirmatively.)

THE COURT: I'm going to advise you of your constitutional rights in this matter, Case No. A-253156.

You are entitled to a speedy and public trial. You are entitled to a trial by jury or to a trial by the Court without a jury, if that is your wish

You have the right to be confronted with all witnesses testifying against you and you have the right to cross-examine those witnesses.

You have the right to the compulsory process of the Court for obtaining witnesses in your favor.

You have the right to have the assistance of counsel of your own choosing for your defense at all stages of the proceedings.

You have a right to testify in your own behalf; however, you cannot be compelled to be a witness against yourself.

In all case except capital cases you are entitled to be at liberty on reasonable bail.

However, a defendant charged with an offense punishable with death cannot be admitted to bail if proof of his guilt is evident or the presumption thereof great.

Do you understand these rights as I have outlined for you, Mr. Watson?

THE DEFENDANT: Yes.

THE COURT: And do you have any questions about your constitutional rights that you want to ask me?

THE DEFENDANT: (Shakes head negatively.)

THE COURT: Have you received a copy of this Indictment? I assume that you have., Mr. Bubrick?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, your Honor.

THE COURT: Yes, you may proceed.

MR. KAY: Thank you.

Mr. Watson, you have been indicted by the Grand Jury of the County of Los Angeles in Case No. A-253156 with seven counts of murder and one count of conspiracy to commit murder.

Count I of that Indictment alleges in part that on or about the 9th day of August, 1969, you did murder Abigail Anne Folger, a human being; Count II alleges in part that on or about the 9th day of August, 1969, you did murder Wojciech Frykowsiti, a human being; Count III alleges in part that on or about the 9th day of August, 1969, you did murder Steven Earl Parent, a human being; Count IV alleges in part that on or about the 9th day of August, 1969, you did murder Sharon Marie Polanski, a human being; Count V alleges in part that on, or about the 9th day of August, 1969, you did murder Thomas John Sebring, a human being; Count VI alleges in part that on or about the 10th day of August, 1969, you did murder Leno A. LaBianca, a human being; Count VII alleges in part that on or about the 10th day of August, 1969, you did murder Rosemary LaBianca, a human being.

Count VIII of the Indictment alleges in part that the 8th through the 10th day of August, 1969, you, along with Charles Manson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins, Linda Kasabian, and Leslie Van Houten, did conspire to commit murder in violation of Section 182.1 and 187 of the Penal Code of the State of California.

To these charges, how do you now plead?

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, at this time the defendant is not ready to enter his plea and I would ask that this matter -- eventually this plea and/or any further proceedings be continued until the date of April 13th.

The reason I'm asking for these additional six weeks is I am attempting, through the use of private documents and private facilities, to have a diagnostic study and diagnostic evaluation of this defendant prepared for -- it will be more helpful to determine the kind and nature of his plea at some future date.

I have been given assurance that I will be able to secure the necessary help.

THE COURT: What is the position of the People?

MR. KAY: Mr. Bubrick and I have discussed this and we have discussed this with your Honor in chambers and there will be no objection to this by the prosecution.

THE COURT: All right. The motion is granted.

The matter will be continued until April 13th at 9:00 a.m. in this department.

MR. BUBRICK: Thank you, your Honor.

THE COURT: You're welcome.

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, TUESDAY, APRIL 13, 1971

9:30 A.M.

-o0o-

(Upon the above date, the defendant appearing in court with his counsel, Sam Bubrick, the People being represented by Stephen Kay, Deputy District Attorney of Los Angeles County, the following proceedings were had before the honorable Malcolm M. Lucas, Judge Presiding, in Department 100:)

THE COURT: Call the matter of Charles Watson.

MR. KAY: Stephen Kay.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, that defendant is present and before the Court.

As your Honor knows, Mr. Watson has been in the process of being examined at the Neuropsychiatric Institute at UCLA. They have spent some 25 hours with him now. It is my feeling -- and, of course, I've confirmed this with the doctors -- that that investigation is as yet not completed.

I am going back to Texas on Friday of this week in an effort to collect some more information at their request. I would therefore ask that this matter be continued until May 10th for plea.

THE COURT: All right. What is the position of the People?

MR. KAY: There is no objection.

THE COURT: All right. The matter will be continued until May 10th at 9:00 a.m.

(Whereupon, the matter was continued to May 10, 1971, at 9:00 a.m. in Department 100)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, MONDAY, MAY 10, 1971

9:40 A.M.

-o0o-

(Upon the above date, the defendant appearing in court with his counsel, Sam Bubrick, the People being represented by Stephen Kay, Deputy District Attorney of Los Angeles County, the following proceedings were had in Department 100 before the Honorable Malcolm M. Lucas, Judge Presiding:)

THE COURT: Matter of Charles Watson, No. 301.

MR. KAY: Stephen Kay for the District Attorney

THE COURT: All right. We will call the matter of Charles Watson.

MR. BUBRICK: That defendant is present before the Court, your Honor.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I believe the defendant has been arraigned by both your Honor and myself.

THE COURT: Yes, I believe that's correct.

Any further motions at this time?

MR. BUBRICK: No, your Honor. We are ready to enter a plea.

THE COURT: Take the plea,

MR. KAY: Mr. Watson, you have previously been arraigned on Indictment No.

A-253156 charging you with seven counts of murder and one count of conspiracy to commit murder.

To those charges how do you now plead; sir?

THE DEFENDANT: Not guilty.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, I would like at this time to enter the additional plea of not guilty by reason of insanity.

THE COURT: Very well. Pursuant to Evidence Code Section -- Penal Code Section 1017, and Evidence Code Section 730, the Court will appoint doctors A.R. Tweed,

M.D., and Vernon Bohr, M.D., to examine the defendant pursuant to Penal Code Section 1026 to determine whether or not the defendant was sane at the time of the commission of the alleged offense. Further, to determine whether the defendant is presently able to understand the nature and purpose of the proceedings taken against him and is he presently able to cooperate in a rational manner with counsel in presenting a defense, and whether or not he is presently or rather did he at the time of the commission of the alleged, offense have a mental capacity to form the specific intent to commit murder.

Further, did the defendant at the time of the commission of the alleged offense have the mental capacity to deliberate, to premeditate, to harbor malice, and to meaningfully and maturely reflect upon the gravity of his contemplated acts, and, if so, to what extent could he so reflect.

These are to be confidential reports and to be furnished only to the counsel for the defendant pursuant to Evidence Code Section 1017.

Does that cover the areas you wish to have examined, Mr. Bubrick?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, your Honor.

THE COURT: Have you gentlemen selected a trial date at which time you both will be prepared to proceed?

MR. BUBRICK: We have selected a date of July 19, your Honor.

MR. KAY: That's correct, your Honor.

THE COURT: All right. The matter will be set down for July 19 in Department 110. The Judge will be Judge Adolph Alexander.

Mr. Watson, you have a right to a speedy trial. The date that has been selected is beyond the date prescribed by statutes. Do you waive and give up your right to a speedy trial and agree that your case may be continued until July 19th for trial.

THE DEFENDANT: That's okay.

THE COURT: All right.

MR. BUBRICK: Join in the waiver, your Honor.

THE COURT: If there are any pretrial motions to be heard, the Court would request that these matters be then advanced on the calendar so that July 19th will be a firm trial date and the present trial matters will have been disposed of.



Is that satisfactory with counsel?

MR. BUBRICK: It is, your Honor.

MR. KAY: It is with the People, your Honor.

THE COURT: Thank you.

Any other motions at this time?

MR. BUBRICK: Nothing further on behalf of the defendant.

MR. KAY: Thank you, your Honor.

THE COURT: Very well.

(Whereupon, the matter was continued to July 19, 1971, for trial.)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, TUESDAY, JUNE 29, 1971

9:15 A.M.

-oOo-

THE COURT: People against Watson. Let the record show the defendant and all counsel are present.

As I understand it, this is a motion by the People requesting the Court to appoint two additional doctors to examine the defendant.

MR. KAY: That is correct.

MR. BUBRICK: May I state for the record there have been two doctors appointed under 226 thus far. I have not received any medical reports. I think this motion is premature. I don't think it is a proper motion.

THE COURT: The Court on its own will appoint these two psychiatrists. The Court will appoint Dr. K. Grosvenor Bailey and Dr. Joel Fort under 1027 of the penal code, to make their examination and report to the Court.

Is there anything further?

MR. BUBRICK: No, your Honor, but I still feel, your Honor, that -- if there is some change. We were to be ready on the 19th; I think I told your Honor that.

THE COURT: Yes, I asked you to be ready on the 19th. We are not taking any cases here so that we can make sure you are ready to go.

MR. BUBRICK: I have three robberies set; one is set on the 7th; one on the 12th and one on -- the one one the 12th is not the --

THE COURT: How long will that take you?

MR. BUBRICK: I think a week each. I am doing my best to get the one on the 12th continued but the one on the 7th is a return from prison. He has been in custody for two and a half years.

THE COURT: How long will that take?

MR. BUBRICK: It is a robbery.

THE COURT: That won't take beyond the 19th?

MR. BUBRICK: No. My big problem is I am out of contact with the individual who was being most helpful to me. He just disappeared. I don't know what happened to him; where he has gone. I called his family back in Texas to find out if they know where he could be reached in the Los Angeles area. I am having no luck with him.

THE COURT: He is a defense witness?

MR. BUBRICK: Not only a defense witness but he is sort of my chief investigator. He has been doing all of my leg work.

THE COURT: If during the course of the trial it becomes necessary to give some additional time to locate him I imagine the People are going to take a few days with their case.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The People's case in chief?

THE COURT: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: It will take more than a couple of days, your Honor.

THE COURT: It will take more than a couple of days to pick a jury. By that time if you feel you need some additional time to locate him, I will take care of it for you.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Is there any other pending defense motion?

THE COURT: Is it a secret who this man is?

MR. BUBRICK: David Neale.

THE COURT: If you will give Mr. Bugliosi some leads, maybe he can help you.

MR. BUBRICK: He was as fraternity brother of Mr. Watson. He went to school with him. He went to Alaska.

THE COURT: We had another case in which the People did a fine job in helping the defense locate witnesses for them. I am sure the People would do the same for you. Give Mr. Bugliosi all of the information you can.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We will try to find him. We will turn it over to the LAPD.

Any other defense motion?

MR. BUBRICK: No.

THE COURT: No change of venue -- nothing at all?

MR. BUBRICK: Not today.

THE COURT: I am just happy to see him. That is all.

(Whereupon the above entitled matter was concluded.)

Monday,

August 16, 1971 - A.M.

Monday,

May 10, 1971

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, MONDAY, AUGUST 16, 1971

9:30 A.M.

-o0o-

(The following proceedings were had in chambers, outside the presence of the jury:)

THE COURT: Let the record show counsel are in chambers; neither the defendant nor the jury is present.

Counsel wishes to make some statement for the record?

Go ahead.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, I invite your Honor's attention to some newspaper articles that appeared this Friday of last week in connection with the district attorney's office trial involving one Shorty Shea and I invite your Honor's attention to that portion of the article which appears to have one Paul Watkins, a witness for the People, reciting a confession by one Grogan, who is now on trial in one of these Superior Courts for the murder of Shorty Shea, in which Watkins, in reciting the Grogan confession, stated that he was told by Grogan that Grogan, Charles Tex Watson and Mr. Manson were present at the time that Shorty Shea was murdered.

Now, it seems to me that there ought to be some control registered over the district attorney's office in an effort to prevent material which is absolutely not relevant in the

murder case now in session, and extremely harmful to ourselves, to be controlled.

I appreciate that it does not involve our case, but it does involve a concurrent prosecution by the district attorney's office of a case which is closely related to the one in which we are engaged and think the matter is so inflammatory and so prejudicial that it denies to Watson a fair and impartial trial and I would at this time move for a mistrial on the grounds that the district attorney's office has permitted the dissemination of information which has no materiality to the case in which it was offered, but is extremely prejudicial in our case.

MR. KAY: Well, I'd just like to ask Mr. Bubrick a question, how a man with his experience -- how a participant in a murder was not relevant -- that would be like in this case bringing out that Susan Atkins and Patricia Krenwinkel participated in the murder.

MR. BUBRICK: Some months ago, before the Shorty Shea matter was taken before the grand jury, I talked with Burton Katz, who was then involved in the case. Mr. Katz assured me that the only person who had ever mentioned Charles Tex Watson's name in the Shorty Shea murder was one Mary Brunner, but that district attorney's office had so little faith in her testimony that they would not pursue it; and that they had no information about any other person ever mentioning Watson in connection with the Shorty Shea murder.

THE COURT: Maybe Mr. Burton Katz -- I don't know -- was not completely frank with you, Mr. Bubrick, but so far as I can see, I don't see what control I have over the testimony in another court.

Now, I will let you mark this as identification, if you want to so that if the case ever goes up on appeal, the Appellate Court can read the adverse publicity in another case which does affect your client; but so far as I can see, I have no way of saying to Judge Call or Burton Katz, for that matter, "If there is any evidence in your case which is relevant and material and affects Tex Watson, you are not to mention it." I have no such power.

MR. BUBRICK: I could understand, your Honor, if it was relevant and material to the murder case of Grogan; but it is not material or relevant in Grogan's case at all.

THE COURT: I can't judge that, Mr. Bubrick, you know that.

I am willing to help you in any way I can. I realize the tough proposition that is confronting you, but, good grief, what can I do about testimony that is being offered in

another court?

MR. BUBRICK: I don't know, your Honor.

THE COURT: If you can suggest something to me, that can be acted on, I will consider it.

MR. BUBRICK: The only suggestion I would have is that perhaps if your Honor could talk to whoever is in charge of the trial deputies over in the district attorney's office and see whether they can't ask their deputies who are involved in concurrent cases that are related to ours, to keep out material which is not relevant to their cause.

THE COURT: Let's see, whose death are they talking about here --

MR. BUBRICK: Shorty Shea.

THE COURT: -- Shorty Shea?

Is Shorty Shea's death involved in that case?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, they are trying Mr. Grogan for the death of Shorty Shea.

THE COURT: -- testified that "Me and Tex and Bruce and Charlie took him for a ride and we hit him on the head with some sort of big something and it stunned him; then we took him out and away from the road and he started saying, 'Why, Charlie, why?' and Charlie said, 'You know why,' and he stabbed him.

"Deputy Burton S. Katz interrupted the witness" --

MR. BUBRICK: That's right, your Honor.

THE COURT: -- long enough to establish that the references apparently were to Charles (Tex) Watson, 25, Bruce Davis and Manson."

I think that is perfectly relevant in the case.

MR. BUBRICK: How would Manson's and Watkin's reference of Watson's name by a co-conspirator, for example, be relevant?

THE COURT: I don't know, Mr. Bubrick.

MR. BUBRICK: That is a thing that bothers me, if it were relevant.

THE COURT: Do you want to offer this?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes. May I offer them as two exhibits.

THE COURT: Mark this defendant's A -- and this is in connection with a motion for a mistrial?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes.

THE COURT: And you want the second one as defendant's B?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes.

THE COURT: This will be defendant's B. Do you know the date this appeared?

MR. BUBRICK: Friday, your Honor.

THE COURT: Friday the 13th?

MR. BUBRICK: The 13th.

THE COURT: And do you know the paper?

MR. BUBRICK: One was the Los Angeles Times and the other was the Herald-Examiner.

THE COURT: It looks like the Times.

I am called upon to rule upon your motion for a mistrial. At this time, unless the people have serious objections, I will deny it.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We object to the motion for a mistrial.

THE COURT: All right.

MR. KAY: I am going to make a request which I think under the circumstances is reasonable.

After Colonel Tate, Paul Tate, testifies, and after Mr. Parent testifies, after both of these gentlemen testify I am going to ask these photographs, People's 1, 2, 4, and 5 be admitted into evidence and exhibited to the jury. They are pictures of the victims in life. I think it is important at the start of the trial for the jury to know what the victims looked like in life. This will probably be the only time during the case that I can foresee that I will ask that pictures be introduced.

THE COURT: I wouldn't object to that.

MR. KAY: Until the LaBianca case.

THE COURT: Give them two to the top row and two on the bottom.

MR. KAY: What I will do is after Colonel Tate is finished testifying, before Mr. Parent comes, I will show them the pictures.

THE COURT: That will be all right.

MR. KAY: Thank you.

THE COURT: Anything else?

MR. BUBRICK: Nothing.

THE COURT: I will have John read the indictment.

THE CLERK: The indictments won't be read in their entirety because I will leave the names of the other individuals --

MR. KAY: I think all of the other defendants' names should be read.

MR. BUBRICK: I think all of them should be read.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I can cover that in my opening statement as I did in the first case.

THE COURT: I think the code requires that the clerk read the immediate indictment to the jury.

(The following proceedings were had in open court in the presence of the jury.)

THE COURT: Good morning, ladies and gentlemen.

People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors are present, the defendant and all counsel are present:

Mr. Clerk, will you read the indictment to the jury, please.

THE CLERK: Yes, your Honor.

"In the Superior Court of the State of California, in and for the County of Los Angeles, the People of the State of California, plaintiff vs. Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian and Leslie Sankston, true name Van Houton

"Indictment:

"The said Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian are accused by the Grand Jury of the County of Los Angeles, State of California, by this indictment, of the crime of murder in violation of Section 187, Penal Code of California, a felony, committed prior to the finding of this indictment and as follows:

"That on or about the 9th day of August 1969 at and in the county of Los Angeles, State of California, the said defendants, Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian did willfully, unlawfully and feloniously and with malice aforethought murder Abigail Anne Folger, a human being.

"A true bill, Joseph Bishop, Foreman of the Grand Jury

"Count II:

"For a further and separate cause of action, being a different offense of the same class

of crimes and offenses as the charge set forth in Count I hereof, the said Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian is accused by the Grand Jury of the County of Los Angeles, State of California, by this indictment of the crime of murder in violation of Section 187 Penal Code of California, a felony, committed prior to the finding of this indictment and as follows: That on or about the 9th day of August 1969 at and in the County of Los Angeles, State of California, the said defendants: Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian did willfully, unlawfully and feloniously and with malice aforethought murder Wojciech Frykowski, a human being.

"And Count III.

"For a further and separate cause of action, being a different offense of the same class of crimes and offenses as the charges set forth in all the proceeding counts hereof, the said Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian are accused by the Grand Jury of the County of Los Angeles, State of California, by this indictment, of the crime of murder in violation of Section 187, Penal Code of California, a felony, committed prior to the finding of this indictment, and as follows:

"That on or about the 9th day of August, 1969 at and in the County of Los Angeles, State of California, the said defendants, Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian did willfully, unlawfully and feloniously and with malice aforethought murder Steven Earl Parent, a human being.

"Count IV.

"For a further and separate cause of action, being a different offense of the same class of crimes and offenses as the charge s set forth in all the preceding counts hereof, the said Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian are accused by the Grand Jury of the County of Los Angeles, State of California, by this indictment, of the crime of murder in violation of Section 187, Penal Code of California, a felony, committed prior to the finding of this indictment, and as follows:

"That on or about the 9th day of August, 1969, at and in the County of Los Angeles, State of California, the said defendants, Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia



Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian did willfully, unlawfully and feloniously and with malice aforethought murder Sharon Marie Polanski, a human being.

"Count V.

"For a further and separate cause of action, being a different offense of the same class of crimes and offenses as the charges set forth in all the preceding counts hereof, the said Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian are accused by the Grand Jury of the County of Los Angeles, State of California, by this indictment, of the crime of murder in violation of Section 187, Penal Code of California, a felony, committed prior to the finding of this indictment, and as follows:

"That on or about the 9th day of August, 1969 at and in the County of Los Angeles, State of California, the said defendants, Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian did willfully, unlawfully and feloniously and with malice aforethought murder Thomas John Sebring, a human being.

"Count VI.

"For a further and separate cause of action, being a different offense of the same class of crimes and offenses as the charges set forth in all the preceding counts hereof, the said Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Leslie Sankston, Linda Kasabian and Susan Atkins are accused by the Grand Jury of the County of Los Angeles, State of California, by this indictment, of the crime of murder in violation of Section 187, Penal Code of California, a felony, committed prior to the finding of this indictment, and as follows:

"That on or about the 10th day of August, 1969, at and in the County of Los Angeles, State of California, the said defendants, Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Leslie Sankston, Linda Kasabian and Susan Atkins did willfully, unlawfully and feloniously and with malice aforethought murder Leno A. LaBianca, a human being.

"Count VII.

"For a further and separate cause of action, being a different offense of the same class of crimes and offenses as the charges set forth in all the preceding counts hereof, the said Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Leslie Sankston, Linda Kasabian and Susan Atkins are accused by the Grand Jury of the County of Los

Angeles, State of California, by this indictment, of the crime of murder in violation of Section 187, Penal Code of California, a felony, committed prior to the finding of this indictment, and as follows:

"That on or about the 10th day of August, 1969 at and in the County of Los Angeles, State of California, the said defendants, Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Leslie Sankston, Linda Kasabian and Susan Atkins did willfully, unlawfully and feloniously and with malice aforethought murder Rosemary LaBianca, a human being.

"Count VIII.

"For a further and separate cause of action, being a different offense but connected in its commission with the crimes and offenses as the charges set forth in Counts I through VII hereof, the said Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins, Linda Kasabian and Leslie Sankston are accused by the Grand Jury of the County of Los Angeles, State of California, by this indictment, of the crime of conspiracy to commit murder in violation of Section 182.1 and 187, Penal Code of California, a felony, committed prior to the finding of this indictment, and as follows:

"That on or about the 8th through the 10th day of August, 1969, at and in the County of Los Angeles, State of California, the said defendants, Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins, Linda Kasabian and Leslie Sankston did willfully, unlawfully and feloniously and knowingly conspire, combine, confederate and agree together and with other persons whose true identity is unknown to commit the crime of murder, a violation of Section 187, Penal Code of California, a felony. That pursuant to and for the purpose of carrying out the objects and purposes of the aforesaid combination, agreement and conspiracy, the defendants committed the following overt acts at and in the County of Los Angeles.

"Overt Act No. I.

"That on or about August 8, 1969, the said defendants, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins and Linda Kasabian did travel to the vicinity of 10050 Cielo Drive in the City and County of Los Angeles.

"Overt Act No. II.

"That on or about August 8, 1969, the defendants, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel

and Susan Atkins did enter the residence at 10050 Cielo Drive, City and County of Los Angeles.

"Overt Act No. III.

"That on or about August 10, 1969, the defendants, Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel, Susan Atkins, Linda Kasabian and Leslie Sankston did travel to the vicinity of 3301 Waverly Drive, City and County of Los Angeles.

"Overt Act No. IV.

"That on or about August 10, 1969, the defendants, Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel and Leslie Sankston did enter the residence at 3301 Waverly Drive, City and County of Los Angeles.

"To all of the aforesaid counts the defendant pleads not guilty and not guilty by reason of insanity."

THE COURT: Now, ladies and gentlemen of the jury, counsel are about to make to you what we call their opening statement.

Let me caution you that no statement made by counsel is evidence in this case. I say that not because of lack of respect for counsel; I respect them all; but the law requires that you determine the guilt or innocence of this defendant only by the evidence you hear in this case and the evidence is the sworn testimony of the witnesses.

The opening serves the function of acquainting you with what counsel expects to prove so that you will be able to follow the evidence, probably, in an easier and more orderly fashion.

Thank you.

You may proceed, Mr. Bugliosi.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, defense counsel, ladies and gentlemen of the jury, as Judge Alexander just indicated, the purpose of my opening statement is to give you a very brief preview or outline of what evidence the prosecution expects to prove during this trial and what we expect that the evidence will prove once the witnesses testify from that witness stand, under oath, so as to assist you in following the evidence from the testimony as it comes from the witness stand.

After one and one-half weeks of extensive voir dire, and I am sure you folks were just as tired of it as we attorneys, but it is a necessary process, you probably already have

some rather general idea of what this trial is going to be all about.

By the time we conclude this case in a few months you will probably know as much about the facts and the evidence as we attorneys.

Now and then an attorney will give a rather lengthy opening statement, going into considerable detail as to what each witness will testify. My particular style, if you will, is not to do this. Like most attorneys, I believe in rather brief opening statements.

In the prosecution's final argument to you, one or two months from now, you won't be quite so lucky. At that time Mr. Kay and I will go into considerable depth with you reviewing the testimony of each witness, tying each witness' testimony in with the testimony of other witnesses, analyzing the evidence, drawing inferences from the evidence, et cetera, et cetera.

But today I merely am going to give you a broad structure of the People's case.

The testimony of the witnesses from that witness stand will supply all the necessary bricks, as it were.

Let me say one thing at the very beginning: In a criminal trial the prosecution, as you probably know, puts on its evidence first. After we present our evidence, then the defendant presents its evidence.

Now, there has been some indication that when the defense puts on its evidence, Mr. Watson may -- and I underline the word may -- he may admit that he killed the seven victims in this case.

If this is so, as lay people, you might wonder why in the world is the prosecution going to bother proving that Mr. Watson killed these seven victims when he may admit doing it.

Well, the answer is this: As this lawsuit presently stands, Mr. Watson has plead not guilty to these murders. In other words, at the present time by his plea of not guilty, he has denied any participation in these murders.

Therefore under the law the prosecution has the burden of proving that he did kill these seven people. In fact, if we don't prove this, Mr. Watson wouldn't have to put on any defense at all and at the conclusion of the prosecution's evidence Mr. Watson could make a motion to have Judge Alexander acquit him of all these murders and he could walk out of this courtroom a free man and the case wouldn't even reach the jury.

So this is why, ladies and gentlemen, we will put on evidence such as fingerprints, firearm identification, et cetera, to prove that Mr. Watson did in fact commit these killings.

Summarizing the Grand Jury's indictment in this case, the first five counts of the indictment charge murders occurring on August the 9th, 1969. These five murders are commonly referred to as the Tate murders.

Count VI and VII of the indictment charge murders occurring on August the 10th, 1969. These are the murders of Leno and Rosemary LaBianca.

The defendant Charles Watson is charged with all seven murders: The five Tate murders and the murders of Mr. and Mrs. LaBianca.

He is also charged in an eighth count of the indictment with the crime of conspiracy to commit murder. In this eighth count, as the clerk just indicated, several persons are named in the indictment as co-conspirators of Mr. Watson -- the named co-conspirators are Charles Manson, Susan Atkins, Patricia Krenwinkel, Leslie Van Houton and Linda Kasabian.

As has already been mentioned several times before during voir dire Charles Manson, Susan Atkins, Patricia Krenwinkel and Leslie Van Houton have already been prosecuted in a previous trial for these murders.

Linda Kasabian was granted immunity from prosecution. She testified for the people at the last trial and she was not prosecuted for these murders.

So other than Linda Kasabian the only one of the conspirators who has not already been prosecuted for these murders is the present defendant, Charles Watson, and that is what this trial is all about.

Mr. Kay and I representing the prosecution, that is the People of the State of California, intend to offer evidence in this trial proving that on or about August the 8th, 1969 defendant Watson, together with Charles Manson, Patricia Krenwinkel and Susan Atkins entered into a conspiracy to commit murder.

Pursuant to this conspiracy to commit murder, in the early morning hours of August the 9th, 1969 Charles Watson, Susan Atkins and Patricia Krenwinkel murdered five human beings at the Roman Polanski residence. That is a secluded home at the top of a long winding driveway located at 10050 Cielo Drive in the City of Los Angeles. That address

is between Beverly Hills and Bel Aire. The five victims who were murdered at the Roman Polanski residence were Sharon Marie Polanski, whose stage name is Sharon Tate, Abigail Anne Folger, Wojciech Frykowski, J. Sebring and an 18-year old youth from El Monte, California, Steven Parent.

As I indicated these five murders are commonly referred to as the Tate murders and in the interest of brevity I shall refer to them as such. I will also refer to the Roman Polanski residence as the Tate residence.

Later that same day in the late evening of August the 9th, 1969 Leslie Van Houton joined this continuing conspiracy to commit murder.

Pursuant to that conspiracy in the early morning hours of August the 10th, 1969 Charles Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel and Leslie Van Houton murdered Leno and Rosemary LaBianca inside their residence at 3301 Waverly Drive. That is in the Los Feliz-Griffith Park area of Los Angeles.

The evidence at this trial, ladies and gentleman, will show that Defendant Watson and his co-conspirators were members of a nomadic land of vagabonds who called themselves the family and who were completely obedient to their master, a 35-year-old ex-convict with a long and checkered criminal history, named Charles Manson. Eventually, they committed the seven Tate-LaBianca murders at Mr. Manson's command.

At the time of the Tate-LaBianca murders, the family was living a communal-type existence at the isolated Spahn Ranch in suburban Chatsworth, California.

The principal witness for the prosecution during this trial, as with the previous trial, will again be Linda Kasabian.

The evidence will show that Mrs. Kasabian was not a hard-core member of the family, having just come to live with the family approximately one month before these murders. In very brief outline form -- this is very brief -- Mrs. Kasabian will testify that on the evening of August the 8th, 1969, at the Spahn Ranch, Charles Manson instructed her to get a knife, a change of clothing, her driver's license and to go with Tex Watson and do everything that Mr. Watson told her to do.

She will testify that pursuant to those instructions, but without being told by Mr. Manson what was going to happen, or what Mr. Watson was going to tell her to do, she

accompanied Charles Tex Watson, Susan Atkins and Patricia Krenwinkel in the late evening hours of August the 8th, 1969, and the early morning hours of August the 9th, 1969, to the Tate residence.

The evidence at the trial will show that Defendant Watson had been to the Tate residence on several prior occasions.

Linda will further testify that although she did not enter the Tate residence, nor did she murder any of the five Tate victims themselves, she did observe Defendant Watson shoot Steven Parent to death as Mr. Parent was driving his car in the driveway of the Tate residence leaving the premises.

She also observed Defendant Watson stab Wojciech Frykowski to death on the front lawn of the Tate residence.

Also observed Patricia Krenwinkel chasing after Abigail Folger with an upraised knife on the front lawn of the Tate residence.

The evidence will show that Sharon Tate and Jay Sebring were murdered inside the Tate residence.

When the group returned to Spahn Ranch after these five Tate murders, Charles Manson was waiting for them.

The Defendant Watson reported to Manson what had happened. Among other things, he told Manson that there had been a lot of panic, that is was real messy, that bodies were laying all over the place, but that everyone was dead.

Manson then asked everyone if they felt any remorse for the murders they had committed, to which Watson and the others replied that they did not.

There will be testimony that the killers printed the word "Pig," p-i-g, in Sharon Tate's blood on the outside of the front door of the Tate residence.

We will also prove that Defendant Watson's fingerprints were found on the outside of the same front door to the Tate residence.

Besides Linda Kasabian's testimony, Diane Lake, a former family member, will testify that shortly after these murders in Olancho, California, Mr. Watson confessed to her that he, Watson, had stabbed Sharon Tate to death.

Among other things, we will introduce into evidence the firearm that Mr. Watson used to shoot Steven Parent to death, a .22 caliber Longhorn Buntline revolver.

There will be testimony that Watson used to practice fire this weapon at Spahn Ranch. We will also introduce in evidence the actual clothing the killers wore during the commission of these murders. Both the revolver and the clothing were found by civilian witnesses over the side of a hill in the Benedict Canyon area of Los Angeles, just a few miles from the Tate residence.

The killers tied a rope around Sharon Tate and Jay Sebring's neck, connecting the two of them together. We will introduce this rope into evidence.

Linda Kasabian will testify that Charles Watson took this rope with him when he got out of the car and approached the Tate residence.

With respect to the car the killers drove on the nights of these murders, the Tate-LaBianca murders, it was a 1959 Ford, California License Plate GYY 435, registered to a man by the name of John Swartz, a ranch hand at Spahn Ranch who was not a member of the family.

Dr. Thomas Noguchi, the Coroner of Los Angeles County, will testify that he conducted the postmortem examination, that is the autopsies of the bodies of the five Tate victims and that the cause of death of Sharon Tate, Abigail Folger and Wojciech Frykowski, and Jay Sebring was multiple stab wounds. There were a total of 102 stab wounds for the four victims.

He will testify that the cause of death of the fifth victim, Steven Parent, was multiple gunshot wounds.

Wojciech Frykowski and Jay Sebring were also shot but their gunshot wounds were not fatal. They died from multiple stab wounds.

Dr. Noguchi will also testify there was no medical evidence of mutilation or sexual molestation to any of these victims' bodies.

Incidentally, Charles Manson knew the former occupant of the Tate residence, Doris Day's son Terry Melcher. Melcher is a music publisher and record producer who in a rather subtle and oblique fashion rejected Manson's efforts to have him record Manson commercially as a singer-guitarist.

Mrs. Kasabian will further testify that in the late evening of August the 9th, 1969, that is the evening after the Tate murders, Charles Manson told defendant Watson and the others that they had been too messy, mind you, the night before, and this night he



wanted to show them how to do it.

She will testify that on the evening of August the 9th, 1969 and the early morning hours of August 10, 1969 she accompanied defendant Watson, Charles Manson, Susan Atkins and Patricia Krenwinkel and Leslie Van Houton and a man named Steve Grogan to various locations in Los Angeles County.

Their mission, ladies and gentlemen, was pure and simple murder.

Linda Kasabian's testimony will clearly show that on this evening, as contrasted to the previous night when the killers drove directly to the Tate residence, in this vast sprawling metropolitan area of seven million citizens, no one, be they in a home, in an automobile, or even a church were safe from this roving band of savage cold-blooded murders.

MR. BUBRICK: I will object.

THE COURT: The objection is sustained. Please confine yourself to the facts.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The testimony will show that at Manson's directions the killers roamed about, initially looking for their victims totally at random.

They even stopped at a church in Pasadena, but they drove off when Manson discovered that the doors to the church were locked.

Ultimately, however, Manson, directed Linda, who was driving the car at the particular time, to the address 3267 Waverly Drive. That is in the Los Feliz - Griffith Park area.

A year earlier Manson had on several, prior occasions visited the former resident it that address named Harold True. Manson got out of the car alone, walked to and entered the home next door to Harold True's former residence, being the residence of Leno and Rosemary LaBianca at 3301 Waverly Drive.

When Manson returned to the car several minutes later he called Watson and Krenwinkel and Van Houton out of the car. He told them that there were two people inside the residence, that he had tied them up.

Then he instructed them on how to murder the victims. He told them not to cause panic and fear in the victims, the way they had done the previous night.

Ladies and gentlemen, you see Mr. Manson is a very considerate kind-hearted fellow who believes that people should be murdered in a pleasant peaceful fashion.

Watson, Krenwinkel and Van Houton then entered the LaBianca residence and they

brutally murdered Leno and Rosemary LaBianca, stabbing Mr. and Mrs. LaBianca a total of 67 times.

They also carved the word "War", w-a-r on Leno LaBianca's stomach.

They also printed the words "Helter Skelter" in Leno's blood on the refrigerator door at the LaBianca residence. They also printed the word "Rise" and "Death to pigs" in his blood on the living room wall of the LaBianca residence.

Dr. Katsuyama of the County Coroner's office will testify that he conducted the autopsies on Mr. and Mrs. LaBianca and Mr. and Mrs. LaBianca like four of the five died from multiple stab wounds.

Linda Kasabian will also testify that after defendant Watson, Patricia Krenwinkel and Leslie Van Houton left the car and Manson drove off, Manson gave her a wallet belonging to Rosemary LaBianca and eventually instructed her to hide the wallet in the women's restroom of a gasoline station in Sylmar, which Linda did.

Manson was hopeful that a black person would find the wallet, use the credit card, get caught and thereby be implicated in these murders.

Later in the night Manson, instructed Linda, Susan Atkins and Steve Grogan to murder a man in his apartment in Venice, an actor whom Linda knew from a prior occasion, but Linda successfully frustrated and prevented this eighth murder by deliberately knocking on the wrong door.

Will the evidence at this trial show the motive of these murders? As the court will instruct you at the conclusion of the evidence, ladies and gentlemen, but before you deliberate, the prosecution does not have the burden of offering one single solitary speck of evidence as to the motive defendant Watson and his co-conspirators had for committing these murders.

We only have the burden of proving that Mr. Watson did in fact commit these murders. We do not have the burden of proving the reason why he did so. Legally speaking motive is never a necessary part of the People's case.

However, there is a motive for every murder. People simply do not kill other human beings for no reason whatsoever. Since the prosecution intends to present evidence during this trial which will give you folks a complete picture of these ghastly murders, we will, although we do not have a legal burden, we will offer evidence of the motive for

these murders.

The motive for these murders originated, ladies and gentlemen, in the warped twisted mind of Charles Watson.

The motive for these murders was a bizarre, perhaps even more bizarre than the murders themselves.

Briefly the evidence, will show Manson's fanatical obsession with helter-skelter, a term that he borrowed from the English musical record group the Beatles.

Manson was an avid follower of the Beatles and believed that they were prophets speaking to him through the lyrics of their songs. In fact, Manson told his family that he found complete support for his philosophies on life in the words sung by the Beatles in their songs.

One of the Beatles' songs is called "Blackbird" -- in fact, this song has been recorded by many other artists -- and the lyrics of the song say that the blackbird should flip its wings, rise up and fly.

Manson told his family that by "Blackbird" the Beatles were talking about the black man and the Beatles were telling the black man to rise up against the white man -- recall that the word "rise" was printed in blood at the LaBianca residence.

Another Beatle Song is called "Piggies," in which the Beatles refer to the establishment as pigs and satirically condemn "Pigs," for their affluent materialistic life style -- recall that the word "Pig" was printed in blood at the Tate and LaBianca residences.

One verse in the song "Piggies" speaks of wealthy people, husbands and wives, eating out at fancy restaurants at night, clutching their knives and forks. The killers left a fork protruding from Mr. LaBianca's stomach and a knife protruding from his throat.

To Charles Manson, helter-skelter, which, incidentally was the title of one of the Beatles' songs -- that is one of their songs called "Helter-Skelter" -- to Manson meant the black man rising up against the white man and destroying the entire white race; that is, with the exception of Charles Manson and his family, who intended to escape from helter skelter by going through the desert and living in the bottomless pit, the place that Manson derived from Revelations IX, a chapter in the last Book of the New Testament, from which Manson told his family he found further support for his philosophy on life.

The evidence will show that Manson's principal motive for these seven murders was to

ignite helter-skelter and start the black-white war by making it look like black people had committed these murders. In his mind, he thought this would cause the white community to turn against the black community, ultimately leading to a black-white civil war, a war that Manson foresaw the black man as winning.

Manson believed that once the black man, whom he considered to be somewhat subhuman and less evolved than the white man, he believed that once the black man destroyed the white man and assumed the reins of power, he would be unable to handle the reins of power because of inexperience; and, therefore, he'd have to turn over the reins to those white people who had survived helter-skelter; i.e., turn over the reins to Charles Manson and his family.

So, in Manson's mind he felt that his family and particularly he, of course, would be the ultimate beneficiaries of a black-white war.

The evidence at this trial will show that Defendant Watson accepted and agreed with those philosophies and helter-skelter.

Incidentally, we intend to have several witnesses testify to this motive of helter-skelter for the simple reason that it was so far out and unusual, as you have just, I think, seen, that if you only heard this from the lips of one witness, I think you'd have a rather difficult time believing it.

Now, as I have indicated, Charles Manson ordered and masterminded the seven Tate-LaBianca murders. However, the evidence at this trial will show that Defendant Charles Watson was Manson's chief lieutenant and the principal instrument by which Manson intended to carry out his bizarre motive.

Not only was Defendant Watson Manson's principal butcher, his main killer, but Watson also gave orders and directions at the murder scene to the other killers, Susan Atkins, Patricia Krenwinkel, and Leslie Van Houton. The evidence at this trial will show that on these two dark nights of murder, Charles Watson was a literal bloodthirsty savage, ladies and gentlemen, who had two primary thoughts in his mind: No. 1., to mercilessly butcher and viciously shoot and stab to death every single human being who was in front of him; and, No. 2, to commit these murders without getting caught.

As has already been indicated during voir dire, in the guilt trial that Mr. Watson, through his attorneys, Mr. Bubrick and Mr. Keith, may offer evidence -- in fact, they most likely

will offer evidence claiming that he was so mentally ill at the time of these murders that he could not deliberate and premeditate these murders.

We expect the evidence to show, ladies and gentlemen, that Defendant Charles Watson couldn't possibly have deliberated and premeditated these murders more than he did. These are just a few of the things the evidence will show that Watson did on the nights of the Tate and LaBianca murders, which prove that he knew exactly what he was doing: He took every step to insure that he wouldn't get caught, and these murders were deliberate, premeditated murders on his part.

On the night of the Tate murders, en route to the Tate residence, while Watson was driving the car, he told Susan Atkins, Patricia Krenwinkel and Linda Kasabian that he had been to the residence before, that he knew the layout and he instructed them to do everything that he told them to do.

Also, en route, Watson told Linda Kasabian to wrap the knives and the revolver up in a piece of cloth in the car and if they got stopped by the police, he told Linda to throw the knives and the revolver out of the car window.

When, they arrived on the premises of the Tate residence, Watson climbed a telephone pole and cut the telephone wired leading to the Tate residence, thereby preventing the residents of Sharon Tate and the others calling out.

After Watson, Atkins, Krenwinkel and Kasabian had climbed around the front gate of the Tate residence, they noticed the headlights of a car approaching them. Charles Watson, the defendant, told the three girls to get back into the bushes and hide, whereupon he approached the driver of the car, Steven Parent. Parent begged Watson not to kill him, telling the defendant Watson that he wouldn't say anything to anyone; but the defendant Watson, this man sitting right here, ignored Parent's pleas and shot Parent four times, one time at close range in the head.

After shooting and killing Parent, Watson, Atkins, Krenwinkel and Kasabian then advanced towards the Tate residence. When they got close to the house, Watson instructed Linda to go to the rear of the house and check to see if there were any open doors or windows. Linda followed Watson's orders and when she saw there were no open doors or windows, she came back to the front of the house and reported that fact back to Mr. Watson.

Linda then saw Watson cut the screen on a window in the front of the Tate residence. Watson later removed the screen and it is believed he stealthily entered the home through that open window.

Before Watson entered through the window, he instructed Linda to go back to the car where the man had been killed, and Linda thinks that -- she tends to remember that Watson told her to listen for sounds.

Shortly thereafter, when Linda heard the horrifying screams of the victims coming from inside the Tate residence, screaming out into the night for their lives, she ran towards the residence and she observed Wojciech, his face and his body covered with blood, staggering out the front door of the residence, screaming and begging Mr. Watson for his life. Linda observed Watson ignoring Wojciech's pleas, viciously hit Wojciech over the top of the head with the revolver and stab him over and over again with his knife. When Linda saw these horrible murders in front of her she ran back down to the car which Watson had parked at the bottom of the hill, and wherein, minutes thereafter, Watson, Atkins and Krenwinkel came back to the car.

When Charles Watson learned that Susan Atkins had lost her knife inside the Tate residence, the defendant Watson became very angry with her and chastised her for losing her knife. Watson also chastised Linda for running back down to the car.

While they were driving away from the residence, Watson, along with Atkins and Krenwinkel, changed his clothes, putting on a fresh, clean shirt and pants.

Watson then drove around looking for a place to hose the victims' blood off their bodies. Eventually, he stopped in front of the home where a water hose was extending out in front of it and he, Atkins and Krenwinkel, started to wash the blood off their bodies. Before they could finish, the owner of the house chased them away.

Shortly thereafter, Watson instructed Linda to throw his, Atkins' and Krenwinkel's bloody clothing out of the car over a hill in the Benedict Canyon area of Los Angeles. Linda complied with Watson's instructions and threw the clothing over the side of the hill.

Watson then told Linda to wipe the fingerprints off the knives they had used to commit these murders and to throw the knives out the car, which Linda also did.

Defendant Watson then stopped at a gasoline station and he went into the men's rest

room to wash the rest of the blood off of his body; and he also instructed Atkins and Krenwinkel to do likewise, which they did.

The following night, the night of the LaBianca murders, the evidence will show that Watson's conduct again demonstrated that he knew exactly what he was doing and he coldbloodedly deliberated and premeditated these murders.

For instance, when Manson gathered the group together at Spahn Ranch on the night of August the 9th, before they departed on their mission of murder, Charles Watson told Manson that they needed better weapons than the knives they had the previous night, because the knives on the previous night -- listen to this, ladies and gentlemen -- according to Mr. Watson, the knives the previous night were not good enough. He told Manson they needed better weapons this particular night; and, of course, Watson was in the car watching and listening to Manson as Manson drove throughout the city looking for human beings for Watson and the other to murder.

We expect all the evidence I have just enumerated, plus many, many other items that I will not go into right now -- this is just the opening statement -- we expect this evidence to prove, ladies and gentlemen, that Charles Watson deliberated and premeditated these murders in the most classic sense of the word and that he did have the requisite mental capacity to be guilty of first degree murder.

The evidence will show that the thought of killing these seven people entered Mr. Watson's mind long before he entered the Tate or the LaBianca residences; in fact, he left Spahn Ranch on both nights and went to the residences for the specific purpose of killing the victims.

As Manson's chief lieutenant, he helped plan these murders, like any premeditated murderer; he took every measure to avoid detection and at the particular moment in time that he was plunging his sharp knife over and over again into the helpless, defenseless bodies of the victims, he was simply carrying out a deliberate, premeditated intent to murder.

We expect the evidence to show, ladies and gentlemen, that at the time of these murders Charles Watson was not suffering from any diminished mental capacity, he was suffering from any diminished heart and diminished soul. A month after these murders Charles Watson still was obsessed with the desire to kill.

Barbara White, a former family member, will testify that in September of 1969, in Death Valley, California, Charles Watson conducted a murder school, if you will, for several female members of the family, instructing them on how to murder a fellow human being by stabbing them to death.

Among other things, he told them instead of merely stabbing in and pulling out the knife, they should lift up on the knife once it entered the victim's body.

The evidence at this trial, ladies and gentlemen, will show that Charles Manson started his family in the Haight-Ashbury district of San Francisco in March of 1967. The family's demise, as it were, took place in October of 1969 at Barker Ranch, a desolate, secluded, rock strewn hideout from civilization on the perimeter of Death Valley in Inyo County, California.

Between March of 1967 and October of 1969 seven precious human beings and an eight month old boy fetus in the womb of Sharon Tate met their deaths at the hands of Charles Watson and his co-conspirators.

The evidence at this trial will show that these seven incredible murders were perhaps the most bizarre, nightmarish murders in the recorded annals of crime.

Mr. Kay and I intend to prove not just beyond a reasonable doubt, which is our only burden, but beyond all doubt that Charles Watson and his co-conspirators committed these murders; that Charles Watson had the mental capacity to commit these murders and that he deliberated and premeditated these murders with malice aforethought.

Therefore, in our final arguments to you at the end of this case we intend to ask you to return verdicts of first degree murder against Mr. Watson.

I do not have to tell you folks of the enormous importance and magnitude of the trial. I also don't have to tell you that it is going to be a rather long trial, although we'll certainly all do our best to keep it as short as possible.

There is an old Chinese proverb to which I have always subscribed, to the effect that the palest ink is better than the best memory. Since this trial is going to be rather long trial, with a considerable number of witnesses -- over 50 witnesses -- I strongly urge that you take notes during the trial so that later on in the jury room during your deliberations you will be able to refresh your memory as to what each witness testified to. I think without notes it is almost an impossible task to remember even the highlights of each



witness' testimony, much less the details.

I see now you don't have a note pad and a pencil. I would ask Judge Alexander to pass those out, and I am sure -- you won't have any objection to that, will you, Judge?

THE COURT: That will be taken care of.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Mr. Kay and I feel very confident, ladies and gentlemen, that you will give your full, undivided attention to all of the evidence in this case so that you will be able to give both the People of the State of California and Mr. Watson a fair and impartial trial, and the verdict to which they are both entitled.

Thank you very much.

THE COURT: Mr. Keith.

MR. KEITH: May the court please, distinguished counsel, ladies and gentlemen, this being an opening statement and not an argument, I am not going to answer at this time everything that Mr. Bugliosi said concerning the evidence that he proposes to introduce at this trial.

I, as Mr. Bugliosi did, however, will touch upon certain highlights that we expect to prove in this case on behalf of the defense.

Some of the things that I will say to you will virtually duplicate what Mr. Bugliosi said; but, inasmuch as Mr. Bugliosi went into these matters I will be very brief, particularly in the area concerning Mr. Manson and his complicity in these crimes.

Now, Charles Watson was born on December 2, 1945 in Copeville, Texas, a tiny rural community about 35 miles north of Dallas. He was the youngest of three children of Mr. and Mrs. Clarence Watson, who ran the local general store and garage.

Charles Watson went to elementary school in or about Copeville. He was an A student there. In high school he went to a place called Farmersville, another small rural community about seven miles away from Copeville; and he had a singularly successful career there.

As you will see by his high school photographs, he was handsome; and I believe the evidence will show that he was popular, that he may have had very few close friends. He was a star athlete, particularly in track. One of his hurdling records still stands in the State of Texas for high school students. He got good grades, A's and B's.

I believe the evidence will show that at this time his I.Q., intelligence quotient, was

about 110, 120. The evidence will also show now, ladies and gentlemen, his I.Q. is 88 or 89, subnormal.

He graduated from high school in 1964 and attended North Texas State College. He spent three years in college and left at the end of his third year, never to return. This may seem, from the evidence, a puzzling performance after the promise of his high school; but Charles apparently never really wanted to go to college. He would have rather gone to work full time for his father. His father was an excellent mechanic and he taught Charles how to repair engines and the like, but his mother wanted him to go to college and he went to college and he stuck it out for three years.

He didn't participate in athletics in college. He was fairly slight, about 155, 160 pounds, rather small for college athletics. Now, as you can see, he weighs about 114, 115 pounds.

He left college simply because he didn't want to go any more. His grades in college were passing, C's on an average, and you can probably see that the competition was a good deal stiffer in college than it was in a small rural high school with about 200 students.

Perhaps he wasn't really college material, despite his performance in high school, and perhaps he lacked the desire to be college material through hard work.

When he left college he went to work for Braniff Air Lines in January of 1967 as a freight handler and he made trips to California from time to time where he would see probably his best friend in college, David Neal. They also were members of the same fraternity.

David apparently, I believe the evidence would show, also left college for lack of interest.

In August of 1967 Mr. Watson moved to California to live and he stayed with David Neal and enrolled, actually enrolled at Cal State Los Angeles; But, as with North Texas State, he didn't stick it out and he left California State before the semester ended and he found a job, of all places, in a wig factory, selling wigs.

During this period of time -- this would be in the late summer and fall of 1967 -- Charles began to use marijuana regularly, as did David Neal, David's brother, who also lived with them; and the people out here that Charles had met -- nothing stronger than

marijuana, but they all used it.

Now, in January of 1968 Charles was in a rather severe automobile accident and he injured one of his knees to the degree that it had to be operated on. This operation was apparently serious enough so that when he reported for induction in the Army -- he was 1-A in the Army; he wanted to join the Army, he was still straight, as the term goes, at this time -- despite any use of marijuana, which is popular among young people everywhere -- but he was rejected by the services; and this apparently depressed him considerably, as the evidence will show.

He continued to live in various places throughout this county during August '67 through early '68 with David Neal and other friends; and in March of 1968, when he recovered from his knee injury, he opened a wig shop of his own with David Neal and another partner; and this venture only lasted a month or two.

One can perhaps begin to see about Mr. Watson a pattern of possibly ruthlessness and restlessness and instability. He was a country boy, a farm boy in the big city. He had really no roots here, he had no particular goals.

His friends were somewhat like him. They weren't bad people, bad associates, but they were drifting to a certain extent such as himself.

He had really no one to look up to. No one to guide him properly.

You see the evidence, I believe, will show in this case, ladies and gentlemen, that Charles Watson was never a leader. He never called the shots. He was a follower, very much of a follower.

Someone who is a follower doesn't necessarily mean someone who would have some crucial personality defect, but for someone like Charles, it can be. It can mean that. It depends in whose footsteps you follow, whose inspiration upon which you depend. Mr. Watson -- Charles, I'll call him -- I suppose at this point in his life in March or April, 1968, could have gone up or he could have gone downhill. It depends on what his motivation was -- who he was with.

If he had gone back home to Texas, I am sure he wouldn't have been here today. But on a fateful day in April or May of 1968 he picked up a hitchhiker on Sunset Boulevard, and although no one would have been aware of it or even guessed it, least of all Charles Watson, Charles when he picked up this hitchhiker crossed his Rubicon never

to return.

The hitchhiker's name was Dennis Wilson, a drummer in a highly successful rock band called The Beach Boys.

Why Dennis was hitchhiking is not quite clear as Dennis Wilson assuredly was blessed with a number of motor cars. He was a wealthy young man.

Dennis directed Charles Watson to his, Dennis', beach home in Malibu and Charles indeed more or less moved in with Dennis Wilson and at the beach house in Malibu, he met Charles Manson and members of his family who were frequent visitors there.

At the home of Wilson, Charles found great peace through his contact with Manson, Manson's girls and Manson's lieutenant, Dean Morehouse, who was somewhat of an elder hippie and a self-styled preacher.

Indeed, Charles and Dean actually lived in a back house at Dennis Wilson's.

This blissful experience or existence that Charles Watson found himself encountering probably sprang from a combination of things.

Certainly one fact of the evidence will show was the drugs that Watson began to take -- not just marijuana, but he turned and quickly was turned on to acid, LSD, speed, which is an amphetamine, sometimes called Methedrine, and a host of other dangerous drugs and narcotics too numerous to mention at this time except heroin.

Neither Manson nor any of his followers, so far as the evidence shows, ever indulged in heroin, but in everything else you could think of -- a potpourri of drugs.

Also, I am sure Charles Watson was attracted to Manson's life style which at least on the surface was purely hedonistic and I am sure he was also attracted to the attention that he himself received from Manson's girls and the people that surrounded Dennis Wilson, and his minions, which to him, a farm boy, must have seemed rather dazzling. Manson preached -- and this was probably the reason for Charles Watson believing that he had found peace, which really wasn't true at all, this is how he felt -- Manson preached that everybody should love everybody and that everyone should share everything with everybody else.

That everyone should live for pleasure, total freedom, without the concomitant responsibility you and I all have.

This was the kind of life that Manson told everyone that followed him, they should have

and they strove to have such a life.

Charles Watson was no match for Manson's blandishments and Manson's family and Manson's followers and Dennis Wilson's minions and he succumbed quickly to the type of life that Manson offered.

So enthralled was Watson with Manson and Dean Morehouse, and their drug-oriented sub-culture, that he moved to the Spahn Ranch in September, 1968 and one might say officially joined the family at that time.

From then on until months after the homicides, Charles Watson came under the total and complete domination of Charles Manson.

Manson was a small, bearded complex man in his thirties. As Mr. Bugliosi told you, he had a checkered career -- an ex-convict.

Manson is a difficult person to describe as almost any adjective might fit him.

As he, described himself as a man of a thousand faces, and this is quite apt, ladies and gentlemen.

He was totally evil, to be sure, but Manson was much more than that, ladies and gentlemen -- crazed, twisted, very intelligent, dictatorial in his group, revengeful, persuasive, cunning, expressed sympathy toward the oppressed such as the blacks and Spanish Americans, very philosophical, charismatic with a fantastic ability to make certain people like Charles Watson believe him to such a degree, ladies and gentlemen, that his thoughts became their thoughts and that he, Manson, was God or Jesus Christ or certainly a deity.

In dominating his family and controlling their conduct and their minds, drugs played a significant role in Manson's life style, particularly the so-called hallucinogenics such as LSD, the mind-altering drugs.

Why did such drugs as LSD play a vital part in Manson's scheme of things? I'll tell you why. This is what the evidence I believe will show: You take enough LSD or similar mind-altering drugs and one's judgment become grossly impaired, one's value system tends to be destroyed, moral values for instance, virtually vanish.

One's goals previously held tend to evaporate; one becomes susceptible and suggestible and as has been said, the meaningless becomes meaningful and vice-versa.

What to us may seem meaningful, to the excessive drug user becomes meaningless.

Your conscience is attacked. You become vulnerable to bizarre religious beliefs.

In short, ladies and gentlemen, the evidence shows that one's mind after the excessive use of this type of hallucinogenic and other drugs becomes a vacuum and this enabled Manson to instill into the vacuum minds of his family his, as Mr. Bugliosi put it, twisted belief.

Manson was obsessed with death. Death was Charlie's trip says a witness, Paul Watkins.

To Manson -- and he preached these things -- death was beautiful. Death was right. Life was nothing. Death is what was important.

As you know, Manson was very antiestablishment. He hated the police. He decried rich people. He criticized our institutions. As you know, he used the term pig to discuss members of the so-called establishment.

Manson also strove to, in Watson's words, take the fear out of his family.

Manson wanted his family to fear nothing, particularly death, and he preached this and his conduct showed that he wanted none of his family to fear anything and he did things with them to, as I repeat, to take the fear out of all his members.

Manson even preached that killing was right and he fed those thoughts to his minions, his slaves, and, of course, as you know from Mr. Bugliosi's statement, Manson believed in and preached helter-skelter. As you can see, these concepts were all interrelated. Each one of them gave vitality to the other.

Ladies and gentlemen, despite the outward manifestations of freedom and love and sharing, there was supposed to occur at Charlie Manson's commune, and which he preached, which he supposedly devoted his life to these precepts, Charlie's commune was very much an autocracy in itself and its form of government, a dictatorship and Manson was the dictator.

But he managed through his persuasion and through his constant talking and through his power and through his inculcating his followers with the belief that he was a God -- really, they did believe he was a God and the evidence will show this -- he fooled them into believing that they were all living in some sort of a utopian anarchy, no laws, no government, no obligations, everything for the fulfillment of self.

This really wasn't so. This is what all these people thought, but he was a little Hitler, was Manson, and none of them ever seemed to catch on except when, they did they'd leave.

There was a constant flow to and from the so-called Manson family, people would come, stay a while, leave; but the hard core members of the family never realized how they were being fooled, how they were being duped, how they were being used. Once anybody did, they'd get out of there.

In the early part of 1969, or so, Manson started to acquire dune buggies and other vehicles to use in the desert, in preparation for helter skelter. Charles Watson was Manson's -- he wasn't his chief lieutenant, he was his chief mechanic. As I told you, I believe, Charles Watson acquired considerable mechanical ability from his father and Watson was the one that took care of the dune buggies and repaired them, and that's what he did most of the time, other than take drugs.

You might wonder how Manson got the money to buy all these dune buggies and parts and things. Well, ever since along came a person who was duped by him, and Linda Kasabian was one, she gave the family \$5,000 of money that she stole; a woman by the name of Juanita Wildberry or Wildbush, I can never quite get it straight, gave Manson -- donated \$10,000 to the cause; and another young lady, another runaway who was a hard core member of the family, a girl by the name of Sandra Good, sold -- she came from a rather well-to-do family from San Diego and she had a trust which had been terminated and the funds given her, and she gave Manson at least \$5,000, if not more; and this is how he'd get his money, plus they also, from time to time, used credit cards that the validity of which may not have borne scrutiny.

So, as we say, Watson spent his days at the Spahn Ranch taking acid and speed and occasionally using another very, very powerful, toxic drug called bella donna. Bella donna was derived from the roots of a plant that grew wild at the Spahn Ranch known by the Indians as Telochi, and the Indians actually planted this Telochi plant and they had found it up there and Watson had chewed on the roots or they'd make a soup out of it and this would actually send him right through the roof and he'd be high for days at a time. Bella donna was probably the most powerful of any drug he took.

The evenings at the Spahn Ranch were often spent in group, singing, led by Manson,

of course -- Manson was a frustrated musician -- and sitting around and listening to Manson give him a pep talk and spout his philosophy; and they'd also listen to the records of the Beatles and other modern rock groups.

I believe the evidence will show that nobody even started eating at this Spahn Ranch before Manson did. Nobody said anything until Manson talked. As a matter of fact nobody offered any ideas, on any subject; everybody agreed with Charles Manson; what he said was the law there.

Linda Kasabian arrived at the Spahn Ranch in the early part of July 1969 and despite being rather experienced on what you might call the commune circuit, Linda had been around quite a bit, had dropped out sometime before July of 1969, she immediately became under the spell of Manson; and, as I indicated, she even stole \$5,000 from a boyfriend named Charles Milton to help Charles Manson out, just donated it; and Linda, at everyone else, even though she was at the ranch for only about a month before the homicides, thought that Manson was some kind of a God.

This is hard for you to believe, but this is the way it was, ladies and gentlemen.

Now, on the nights of the homicides, whatever Manson's motives may have been or how complex or how incredible to you they may seem, Charles Watson's motives were far simpler: He had none.

Though Charles Watson did, to be sure, believe in helter skelter, he didn't go to the Tate-LaBianca residences on some kind of a crusade to start a holy war. With no thought, no thought whatsoever in his mind, ladies and gentlemen, except to do what Manson told him to do -- that's kill everybody there -- that's what Watson did. He either killed or participated in the killings of everyone at the Tate residence.

He did what Manson told him to do; he wasn't the tour director, he wasn't the leader, he didn't give the orders. He didn't plan these murders.

Mr. Watson was no more than a zombie at this time, ladies and gentlemen, a mindless, automaton, simply carrying out blindly what Manson had instructed him to do.

On the next night he killed the LaBianca just as he was told, without question. Manson was God, ladies and gentlemen. Watson did not question his God. He had no fear, no euphoria, no emotion, no second thoughts; he didn't reflect, he didn't deliberate, he didn't premeditate; he just did it because he was told to do it by his God.



His victims were not people, they were objects, and Watson wasn't Watson, he had long ago lost his identity, his ego. This was what Manson and the drug does to people, or did to people.

He was a psychotic sort of monster-like extension of Manson.

Watson during these nights of homicides was made in Manson's image, but he was a robot, ladies and gentlemen, a zombie, no premeditation, as that term will be defined to you in the law.

Shortly after the homicides Watson went to Death Valley, the Barker Ranch there, until October. He made no attempt to hide his identity or his existence, because in the early part of October 1969 he went from Death Valley home to Copeville, Texas.

He stayed there for awhile and, incidentally -- I should tell you, after the homicides he no longer used the mind altering drugs that we have spoken of. All he used was the less strong and milder marijuana and some hashish. Watson does not recall using any acid after leaving the Spahn Ranch for the last time, oh, a very few days after the homicide.

But getting back, he went home to Texas, to Copeville, to his home town, in October; felt sort of unhappy there. His family gave him some money; he left and went to Mexico for a couple days, didn't like it there; that he went to Hawaii for a few days, didn't care for it' there, and went back to California.

He came back to California to look for Manson; that old pull was still there. Manson's magnetic power still had him, and he hitchhiked all the way to Death Valley, walking much of the way, to find Manson and his family, but nobody was there, they had all been arrested by this time on other charges, but Watson didn't know this.

The place was deserted, so he hitchhiked back to the local area, again walking most of the way. Mr. Watson believes he must have walked about 150 miles on this trek, and he went back to Texas and he stayed in Texas with his family until his arrest in early December, 1969.

He stayed in Texas this last time before his arrest, oh, three weeks or a month or so. After his arrest, Watson was in jail for nine months in Texas, then he was returned here and he became catatonic, which is just like saying he became a vegetable, didn't eat, didn't talk, depressed; and he was sent to Atascadero State Hospital, a mental

institution, where he eventually recovered his sanity sufficiently to be returned here to court and stand trial, and here he is.

The evidence will show, ladies and gentlemen, that Charles Watson suffers from brain damage, probably caused by drugs. You'd probably have to operate on him to really find out what caused it, and what part of the brain is damaged.

Also, his central nervous system is disordered. These two things result in what the doctors will tell you, particularly a neurologist, in impaired intellectual functioning; and this brain damage undoubtedly occurred during Watson's stay with Manson at the Spahn Ranch, because of Watson's heavy, heavy ingestion of drugs.

By a process of elimination, we could infer there is just no other reason for his brain damage. His neurological testing, EEG tests and other neurological tests will demonstrate to you that his central nervous system is heavily involved. For instance, his I.Q., as I indicated, is now subnormal. 88 or 89, where it once was 110, slightly above normal.

Though Mr. Watson may be now out from under Mr. Manson's domination and out from under drug abuse and he's now coherent, what you see before you now is a shell of a person, a ruined, ruined young man.

He is alive, to be sure, but if Mr. Bugliosi in his summation to you, after all the evidence is before you, ever reads the roll call of the dead, the victims of these homicides ordered by Manson and tells you that they cry out from their graves for justice, I would ask you to yourselves add one more name to the list of Manson's victims: Charles Watson.

I thank you.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentleman of the jury, we will have our morning recess at this time.

Once again, do not form or express any opinion in this case; do not discuss it among yourselves, let nobody talk to you about the case and please keep your minds open.

Now, ladies and gentlemen, I notice that in some other proceedings going on in our vicinity with other people involved, there is some newspaper publicity.

Please refrain from reading any of that; please do that, ladies and gentlemen, and please refrain from listening to the radio, if you can, considering this case, or watching

television.

We will have a short recess.

(Recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors are present. The defendant and all counsel are present.

Mr. Kay, you may call your first witness.

MR. KAY: Thank you.

The people of the State of California will call as their first witness Colonel Paul J. Tate.

THE CLERK: Please raise your right hand.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

COL. PAUL J. TATE,

called as a witness by the People, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you. Take the stand and be seated.

Would you state and spell your last name, please.

THE WITNESS: Paul J. Tate, P-a-u-l J. T-a-t-e.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY:

Q: Col. Tate, are you the father of Sharon Marie Tate?

A: I am.

Q: And her married name was Polanski?

A: Yes.

Q: Married to Roman Polanski?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you recently retire from the U.S. Army?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And were you a Lieutenant Colonel, an intelligence officer?

A: Yes.

Q: Col. Tate, how old was your daughter the last time you saw her alive?

A: She was 26.

Q: Was she pregnant at the time you saw her last?

A: She was, yes.

Q: And how far along was her pregnancy at that time?

A: She was well into her ninth month. I think the baby would have been born in approximately two weeks.

Q: When was the last time you saw her alive?

A: It was on the day of the moon shot and that was the 20th or 22nd, along in there.

Q: Was that the day that Armstrong landed on the moon?

A: Yes.

Q: About the 20th of July?

A: Yes.

Q: 1969?

A: Right.

Q: Where did you watch the moon landing?

A: At their home on Cielo Drive.

Q: Is that 10050 Cielo Drive?.

A: Yes.

Q: And was anyone there with you watching the moon landing besides yourself and Sharon?

A: Yes. When I arrived -- outside of my family was there, of course -- was Wojciech Frykowski, Gibby Folger and then along towards the end of the shot Jay Sebring came in.

Q: You say your family. Who was there in your family besides yourself?

A: My wife and I and I think one of my daughters.

MR. KAY: May I approach the witness, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have a photograph which was previously marked People's exhibit No. 1 in the first trial. I would ask that it keep the same number.

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

MR. KAY: As a matter of fact, your Honor, for brevity and to make it easier for your

clerk, Mr. Bugliosi and I would ask that the numbers of all the exhibits at the first trial remain the same in this trial.

THE COURT: Would that be convenient for you?

THE CLERK: Yes, your Honor.

THE COURT: You may do so.

MR. KAY: Thank you.

Q: Col. Tate, I show you people's exhibit No. 1.

Is that a picture of your daughter Sharon?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: And I show you people's exhibit No. 2. Is that a photograph of Jay Sebring?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: I show you exhibit No. 3. Is that a photograph of Abigail Folger and Wojciech Frykowski?

A: That is correct.

THE COURT: You might spell that name.

MR. KAY: I not too good on Polish spellings, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: V-o-i-t-y-k, Voityk.

THE COURT: V-o-y-t-i-k.

MR. KAY: In Polish it starts with a W.

THE COURT: Just so the jury may follow it, so it will be easier and the last name is F-r-y-k-o-w-s-k-i.

MR. KAY: That is correct.

Q: Now, Col. Tate, I will show you people's exhibit No. 4.

Do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes. This is a photograph of Sharon and Roman's home on Cielo Drive.

Q: That is 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: Yes.

Q: Approximately how long did Sharon and Roman live there?

A: I think it was at the beginning of the year, January or February.

Q: Of 1969?

A: 1969.

Q: For how long a period of time did you know Jay Sebring?

A: I have known Jay probably since 1964.

Q: And what about Abigail Folger and Wojciech Frykowski?

A: Somewhat less. I would say maybe a year or two years probably.

Q: And originally you said Gibby Folger, was that her nickname?

A: Yes, it was.

MR. KAY: I have no further questions of this witness at this time.

THE COURT: Gentlemen?

MR. BUBRICK: No questions.

MR. KEITH: No questions.

THE COURT: Thank you. You may be excused.

MR. KAY: May he be excused?

THE COURT: You may be excused.

THE WITNESS: Thank you.

MR. KAY: Thank you, Col. Tate.

Your Honor, before I call my next witness, we will ask permission to show the jury people's 1 through 3 and have these admitted into evidence at this time.

THE COURT: All right. You may do so provided you divide them up so that each row will have two.

MR. KAY: There are just three. At this time I will show these pictures and the picture of Steven Parent later.

THE COURT: You are offering 1, 2 and 3 in evidence?

MR. KAY: Yes.

THE COURT: They will be received.

MR. KAY: That is Sharon Tate and Jay Sebring and Abigail Folger and Wojciech Frykowski.

THE COURT: It is just the photos that are in evidence. Never mind what is on the back.

MR. KAY: The people will call as their next witness Mr. Wilfred Parent.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help

you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

MR. WILFRED E. PARENT,

called as a witness by the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you. Take the stand, please.

Would you state and spell your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Wilfred, W-i-l-f-r-e-d Parent, P-a-r-e-n-t.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY:

Q: Mr. Parent, what is your business?

A: Construction superintendent.

Q: And you live in El Monte?

A: That is correct.

Q: How long have you lived in El Monte?

A: Approximately 14 years.

Q: Are you the father of Steven Parent?

A: Yes, I am.

MR. KAY: May I approach the witness, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

MR. KAY: I have here a photograph, your Honor, marked people's 5 for identification.

May it be so marked?

THE COURT: Yes, it may be so marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: I show you people's exhibit 5 for identification. Is that a picture of your son Steven?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: And is this the picture of his girlfriend?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: What was her name?

A: Tina Hather, H-a-t-h-e-r.

Q: Mr. Parent, when was the last time that you saw Steven alive?

A: Friday morning before when I left for work.

Q: Was that August the 8th, 1969?

A: 7th or 8th.

Q: It was a Friday morning?

A: Yes.

Q: On August the 8th and 9th, 1969 did Steven have the use of a 1965 Rambler?

A: Yes, he did.

MR. KAY: May I approach the witness, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

MR. KAY: I have a photograph, your Honor, marked people's 6 for identification.

Q: Mr. Parent, I show you a photograph of what appears to be a white Rambler in that photograph. Was that your car?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: Was that registered to you?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: And did Steven have use of it?

A: Yes, he did.

THE COURT: It may be so marked at this time.

MR. KAY: Thank you, your Honor.

Q: Mr. Parent, how old was Steven when he was killed?

A: 18 years of age.

MR. KAY: I have no further questions of this witness, your Honor.

MR. BUBRICK: No questions, your Honor.

THE COURT: Thank you, Mr. Parent. You may be excused.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The people call Winifred Chapman.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, at this time before Winifred Chapman testifies I would ask if people's 5 for identification could be admitted in evidence and I could show it to the jury?

THE COURT: It may be so admitted and you may show it to the jury.

MR. KAY: Thank you very much.

Thank you, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The people call Winifred Chapman.



THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

WINIFRED CHAPMAN

called as a witness by the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you. Take the stand and be seated.

Would you state and spell your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Winifred Chapman, W-i-n-i-f-r-e-d C-h-a-p-m-a-n

THE COURT: Is that Miss or Mrs. Chapman?

THE WITNESS: Mrs.

THE COURT: Mrs. Chapman, will you please keep your voice up so that all the jurors might hear you.

THE WITNESS: All right.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: Mrs. Chapman, what is your occupation?

A: Cook and caterist.

Q: Did you ever work for Roman Polanski and his actress wife Sharon Tate?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And what capacity did you work for them?

A: Housekeeper and cook.

Q: When did you start working for them?

A: June of '68.

Q: Where were they living at that time?

A: 1600 Summit Ridge Drive.

Q: West Los Angeles?

A: West Los Angeles.

Q: Were they renting Patty Duke's home at that time?

A: Yes, they were.

Q: Did the Polanskis eventually move to 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: Yes, they did.

Q: When did they move there?

A: In the middle of February of '69.

Q: Did you continue to work for them?

A: Yes, I did.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph that was marked people's 8 during the last trial. May it again be marked people's 8 for identification?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Mrs. Chapman, I show you people's 8 for identification.

Do you recognize this as being a photograph of the Tate residence?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: This is where you worked?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Is that any different than 4?

MR. BUGLIOSI: I don't have people's 4 in front of me, your Honor. There are several photographs of the Tate residence.

THE COURT: There is another one.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: In mid-February 1969 did anyone else live with the Polanskis?

A: No.

Q: There was just Roman, his wife Sharon, and you were the housekeeper and the cook; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: How many days a week did you work for them?

A: Five and sometimes six.

Q: Did you ever stay overnight?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know Abigail Folger and Wojciech Frykowski?

A: Yes.

Q: Did they ever move into the Tate residence?

A: Yes, they did.

Q: Approximately when?

A: I think it was in April when Mrs. Polanski left for Europe.

Q: You are sure that wasn't March of 1969 that she left for Europe?

A: Well, March, the latter part of March of 1969.

Q: So when she left for Europe, Wojciech Frykowski and Abigail Folger moved into the Tate residence?

A: Yes.

Q: Where was Roman at that time?

A: He was either in South America or Europe, one of the two. He left for Brazil, then went on to Europe.

Q: Did Roman leave for Brazil around the same time that Sharon left for Europe?

A: He left a little before she left.

Q: And when they left, Wojciech Frykowski and Folger moved in?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you continue to work for Frykowski and Folger?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: You also know Jay Sebring?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: When did Sharon return from Europe to her residence?

A: That was either the 17th or 18th of July.

Q: 1969?

A: 1969, yes.

Q: Was Roman still away at that time?

A: Yes, he was.

Q: When Sharon returned to Los Angeles from Europe, did Miss Folger and Mr. Frykowski continue living with her at the Tate residence?

A: Yes, they did.

Q: Looking to your right here, Mrs. Chapman, do you recognize this as a diagram of the Tate residence?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: Could you point out, could you step down off the witness stand and point out

where Sharon Tate's bedroom was on this diagram?

A: It was the master bedroom.

Q: Where it says "master bedroom"?

A: Yes.

Q: And that was Sharon Tate's bedroom?

A: Yes, the one going toward the pool.

Q: This is the front residence right here?

A: Yes.

Q: And this is the guesthouse to the rear?

A: Yes.

Q: And where did Wojciech Frykowski and Abigail Folger reside?

A: In this bedroom here (indicating).

Q: Right below the master bedroom?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Is there any distinct marking on that?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, where it says "Wojciech and Abigail's bedroom."

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You may resume the stand.

THE COURT: That is exhibit what, sir?

MR. BUGLIOSI: That is people's 8, your Honor -- this was marked people's 8 before, the previous time, but then I see it was changed to people's 4.

So may the previous exhibit that I showed to the witness of the Tate residence, that is 4.

THE COURT: That is 4.

MR. BUGLIOSI: It has "8" here and it is crossed out and it says "4."

Q: Did you continue to work for Sharon through Friday, August the 8th, 1969?

A: Yes I did.

Q: And on that date, August the 8th, 1969, were Miss Folger and Mr. Frykowski still living at the Tate residence?

A: Yes, they were.

Q: But Roman was still away?

A: He was. He was still away.

Q: Is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Sharon pregnant on August the 8, 1969?

A: Yes, she was.

Q: How many months pregnant was she so far as you know?

A: Approximately eight months.

Q: Do you recall the date, August the 8th, 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: Was it a Friday?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: Did you work that day?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What time did you arrive on the premises that day?

A: About 8:30.

Q: In the morning?

A: In the morning.

Q: And you left about what time?

A: Between 4:00 and 4:30.

Q: Was Sharon home all day?

A: She left in the morning to shop and then she was back in the afternoon.

Q: Did she have any visitors that day?

A: Yes. We had guests for lunch,

Q: Who were they?

A: Joanna Pettit and her child and another lady. I don't know the other woman's name.

THE COURT: Would you spell that name?

THE WITNESS: Joanne? Pettit --

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: P-e-t-t-i-t?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that a movie actress too?

A: Yes, she is.

Q: What time did Miss Pettit and the other girl leave?

A: Around 3:00.

Q: 3:00 in the afternoon?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph; it was marked People's 9 at the last trial. May it again be marked People's 9 during this trial?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 9 for identification, Chapman.

Do you know what is shown in that photograph?

A: The front door of the Polanski residence.

Q: Did you have occasion to wash the front door of the Polanski residence on the date August 8, 1969?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: About what time of day did you wash the front of the door?

A: Before noon.

Q: Was there any particular reason why you washed the front of the door?

A: Yes, the dogs had messed it up and there were a lot of fingerprints on it.

Q: How many dogs were at the residence?

A: Two.

Q: These were Sharon's dogs?

A: Yes.

Q: And they frequently got their paw prints on the front of the door?

A: Yes.

Q: How often would you normally wash the front of the door?

A: Two or three times a week, the front door.

Q: Did you wash the entire front of the door?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: The whole front door?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you wash it with?

A: Soap and water, the door.

Q: What about the window?

A: Vinegar and water.

Q: Now, there is a back door in Sharon's bedroom leading to the swimming pool area; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever wash the inside of that back door?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: That particular week, the week of August the 8th that we are talking about, did you ever wash the inside of that back door?

A: Yes.

Q: About what day?

A: On Tuesday.

Q: Tuesday?

A: Um-hum.

Q: That would be August the 5th, 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: About what time of day did you wash it?

A: Oh, I don't remember; that was done about, I guess, to the afternoon, Tuesday.

Q: In the afternoon of August the 5th?

A: Yes.

Q: Why did you wash the inside of that back door?

A: Well, that door was used often and there were a lot of prints around it and it would get messy and I would wipe them up, that's all.

Q: It was used by people going to and from the swimming pool?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here another photographed marked People's 10 during the last trial. May it be marked People's 10 during this trial?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 10 for identification, ma'am.

Do you know what is shown on that photograph?

A: Yes, that's the door to the pool, from the master bedroom.

Q: This is the inside of the back door?

A: Yes.

Q: Leading to the swimming pool area?

A: Yes.

Q: This is Sharon Tate's room?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, what part of the door did you wash on August 5th, 1969?

A: I washed around the knobs, the part that is circled here.

Q: The part that is presently circled?

A: Yes, not any of that, and not that.

Q: There is an ink circle around the door knob?

A: Yes.

Q: That is the area that you washed?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you wash it with?

A: Soap and water.

Q: Now, you say you left the residence at around 4:00 or 4:30 p.m.; is that correct?

A: Yes, between 4:00 and 4:30.

Q: That is on August the 8th, 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: When you left between 4:00 and 4:30 p.m., was anyone inside the house?

A: Mrs. Polanski.

Q: Was she alone?

A: Yes.

Q: Had you seen Frykowski and Folger and Sebring that day?

A: I had seen Wojciech and Gibby but I didn't see Jay that day.

Q: What time did Wojciech and Gibby leave the premises?

A: Wojciech, I think, at quarter to 4:00, and Gibby around 4:00 o'clock.

Q: In the afternoon?

A: In the afternoon.



Q: Was everything in order inside the residence?

A: Oh, yes.

Q: Sharon was inside alone?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have another photograph, your Honor; it was marked People's 105 at the last trial. May it be remarked People's 105 during this trial?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you a photograph, Mrs. Chapman; it has the word "Pig," p-i-g, on the front door of the Tate residence.

Now, when you left the residence at 4:00 o'clock or 4:30 p.m., on August 8, Friday, 1969, was the "Pig" on the front door, p-i-g?

A: No.

Q: The door was clean when you left; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Incidentally, that Friday, August 8, 1969, had you thought about staying overnight?

A: No, I hadn't.

Q: Did Sharon ask you to?

A: Yes.

Q: But you decided not to?

A: Not to.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions at this time, your Honor.

We intend to call Mrs. Chapman back to the witness stand at a later time.

MR. BUBRICK: No questions.

THE COURT: You may step down temporarily, Mrs. Chapman.

May she leave? You will phone her; is that what you want to do?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, your Honor.

May the witness be excused pending our phone call to return?

THE COURT: She may leave subject to a phone call to return.

MR. BUGLIOSI: People call William Garretson.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this Court shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

WILLIAM GARRETSON,

Called as a witness by the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you. Take the stand and be seated; and would you state and spell your name, please?

THE WITNESS: William Garretson, G-a-r-r-e-t-s-o-n.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: Mr. Garretson, where do you presently reside, sir?

A: Lancaster, Ohio.

Q: Did you ever live at 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: Yes.

Q: During what period of time?

A: Through mid-March, around to August the 8th, 9th, somewhere.

THE COURT: What year?

THE WITNESS: 1969.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Directing your attention to People's 8 for identification, the diagram here, did you live in the guest house to the rear?

A: Yes.

Q: And were you employed by someone on the premises?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was that?

A: Mr. Altobelli.

Q: What were your duties?

A: Taking care of the three dogs and, you know, the grounds and stuff, sort of like a caretaker.

Q: Did you live in the guest house by yourself?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Excuse me; this Alto Belli, is that A-l-t-o-b-e-l-l-i, is that it?

How do you spell that?

MR. BUBRICK: That's correct.

MR. KAY: That's correct.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Do you remember the day August the 8th, 1969, a Friday?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you recall what you did that evening?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you do?

A: I left the guest cottage around 8:00 o'clock and I went down to Sunset Boulevard and purchased a TV dinner and some cigarettes and some pop.

THE COURT: Some what, the TV dinner and what?

MR. BUGLIOSI: "Pop," I thought.

THE WITNESS: Pop.

THE COURT: Oh, p-o-p?

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: How did you get back to the guesthouse; did you hitchhike?

A: Yes.

Q: What time did you return, about?

A: About around 10:00 o'clock.

Q: When you left at 8:00 p.m., did you see anyone on the premises?

A: No, can't recall anyone.

Q: When you returned at 10:00 p.m., did you see anyone around the premises?

A: No.

Q: Did you enter the premises at 10:00 p.m. through the front gate?

A: Yes.

Q: When you entered at 10:00 p.m., did you see any telephone wires draped over the gate?

A: No.

Q: Was everything in order?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Before you leave, Mr. Bugliosi, you have some identifying marks near what you call the button, the activating button.

What is that, please?

MR. BUGLIOSI: This is "Where car was parked next to telephone pole."

This refers to another marking.

THE COURT: Not the button?

MR. BUGLIOSI: No, your Honor.

THE COURT: How about the gate, do you have any identification --

MR. BUGLIOSI: It does say "Power pole" here, and that's the only marking on it right here.

Q: It says "Power pole," and there is a button near the pole; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: You press the button that activates the front gate of the Tate residence?

A: Yes.

Q: How long does the gate stay open?

A: Around 30 seconds.

Q: Were any lights on inside the Tate residence when you returned at 10:00 p.m.?

A: I really don't recall.

Q: At that time you went to the guesthouse; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you have any visitors that night?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was that?

A: Steve Parent.

Q: About what time did Mr. Parent arrive?

A: 11:45.

Q: How long had you known Steven?

A: I have got a ride from him one time when I was hitchhiking out of Sunset to Benedict Canyon.

Q: How long before August the 8th?

A: Probably about a week before.

Q: And that was your only previous contact with him?

A: Yes.

Q: What was the nature of his visit at 11:45 p.m. on August the 8th?

A: He wanted to sell me a clock radio.

Q: All right. How long did Mr. Parent stay?

A: A half an hour.

Q: So he left the guesthouse, then, at about what time?

A: Quarter after 12:00.

Q: That would be August the 9th, then, 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you do after he left?

A: I wrote some letters and played the hi-fi.

Q: What time did you go to sleep?

A: Not until dawn.

Q: So you were up almost all night?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you hear any unusual sounds that night, such as gunshots?

A: No.

Q: Did you hear any loud screams of any kind?

A: No, not that I can recall, no.

Q: How loudly were you playing the hi-fi?

A: Loud enough so I can hear it, I guess.

Q: Do you have a volume control on the hi-fi?

A: Yes.

Q: What number was it on?

A: I think 4.

THE COURT: 4 on a capacity of, or a maximum of what?

THE WITNESS: I think it goes up to 10, I am not sure, though.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Are you sure it doesn't go up to 5, as a maximum?

MR. KEITH: I object to that question as leading.

THE COURT: He is trying to correct something he made a mistake in.

You don't recall whether it is 5 or 10, maximum

THE WITNESS: I can't remember that.

THE COURT: Very well.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have a photograph here, your, Honor. It was marked People's 21 at the last trial.

May it be marked the same way at this trial?

THE COURT: I suggest you just ask that it be marked the same number, 21; that will be enough.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 21 for identification. Do you know what is shown in that photograph?

A: Yes.

Q: What is shown in that photograph?

A: The living room that I lived in.

Q: Is this the living room of the guesthouse?

A: Yes.

Q: I notice in the upper left-hand corner of the photograph there appears to be a stereo or hi-fi. Is that the hi-fi you have been talking about?

A: Yes.

Q: And in the center of the photograph there is a sofa with a white sheet over it?

A: Yes.

Q: Where were you during the night in relation to that hi-fi?

A: Well, practically all night I was right here by the hi-fi writing a letter there. I didn't go to sleep until dawn. This is the white sheet --

Q: Were you on the white sheet during the night at all? Were you lying on it?

A: I think so.

Q: So you were fairly close to the hi-fi set; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: The sofa appears to be about what? Six feet from the hi-fi set?

A: Yes.

Q: That is where you were most of the night? On the sofa?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have another photograph, People's 22 during the last trial. Might it be marked with the same number?

THE COURT: It may be marked Exhibit 22.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 22 for identification.

What is shown in that photograph?

A: The living room.

Q: That is the inside of the guesthouse?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: May I see that, please?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes.

THE COURT: That is part of the same room on Exhibit 21; is that right?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: Shows more of it without the bed being made?

THE WITNESS: That is not the bed. That is the sofa.

THE COURT: The sofa?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: The same room, though.

THE WITNESS: Yes, the same room.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Did you have any dogs? You indicated that you were taking care of Mr. Altobelli's dogs?

A: Yes.

Q: Three of them?

A: Yes.

Q: On this particular night, or even on other nights, where would they stay at night? Inside the house or outside?

A: Inside.

Q: Did they normally bark at night?

A: Yes, sometimes they barked.

Q: Only if you had a visitor?

A: Yes.

Q: Did they bark when Parent arrived?

A: Yes, I think, so.

THE COURT: They stayed in the house in which you lived, not the main house, the

dogs?

THE WITNESS: Yes, they stayed in the house I lived in.

THE COURT: Where you lived?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Do you recall the dog barking on that night? That would be the night of August the 9th?

A: Yes.

Q: About what time?

A: They barked before Parent arrived and they barked some after, when he left.

Q: After Parent left?

A: Yes.

Q: Shortly after Parent left, you heard some more barking?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: I don't think the witness said "shortly after."

THE COURT: Sustained. How long after Parent left?

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: How long after Parent left did the dogs bark?

A: I can't really recall. I mean, they bark usually every night. I mean, it just depends.

Q: All right. After Parent left at about 12:15 in the morning, did you keep the lights on inside the guesthouse?

A: Yes.

Q: Were you ever arrested by the police for these murders?

A: Yes.

Q: Referring to the five Tate murders?

A: Yes.

Q: When were you arrested?

A: In the morning.

Q: What morning?

A: Saturday, August 9th.

Q: Saturday morning; August the 9th, 1969, you were arrested by the police; is that correct?

A: Yes.



Q: Were you sleeping at the time?

A: Yes.

Q: About what time was it?

A: Exactly what time it was, it must have been around 10:00 o'clock. I couldn't say.

Q: In the morning?

A: Something like that, yes.

Q: And you were placed in custody for these murders?

A: Yes.

Q: How long were you in custody?

A: Until Monday.

Q: That would be August the 10th?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And at that time you were released from custody?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you do after you were released from custody?

A: Stayed for a few days. Then I flew back to Ohio.

Q: Directing your attention to the defendant Charles Watson. Have you ever seen him before?

A: No.

Q: How about Charles Manson. You have seen photographs of him. You have never met him or seen him before?

A: I have never met him personally, no.

Q: You have seen his photographs in the newspapers?

A: Yes.

Q: Since these murders?

A: Yes.

Q: Before the murders, you had never seen Charles Manson?

A: No.

Q: How about Susan Atkins?

A: No.

Q: Patricia Krenwinkel?

A: No.

Q: Leslie Van Houton?

A: No.

Q: Had you ever been out to the Spahn Ranch?

A: No.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

MR. BUBRICK: I have a couple.

THE COURT: Go ahead, Mr. Bubrick.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Mr. Garretson, can you describe for us in a little more detail what you referred to as a button which would operate the, I suppose, the electrically-controlled gate?

A: Yes.

Q: Was it in any sort of an enclosure?

A: No, no.

Q: Was it at all concealed?

A: No.

Q: Did you have to use a key or anything else?

A: No.

Q: In order to open anything to get to the button?

A: No.

Q: Was it just affixed to a telephone; is that right?

A: No; it wasn't affixed to a telephone pole. I think it was on the pole itself, I believe.

Q: You mean a pole that held only the button?

A: Yes.

Q: And about how high off the ground was the button?

A: Three and a half or four feet, I think.

Q: Was it illuminated in any way?

A: No.

Q: Had no fluorescent paint?

A: No.

Q: On the button or anything surrounding the button?

A: No.

Q: Had it been there ever since you had been at this home?

A: Yes.

Q: And had the button and the electric gate always been operative?

A: A few times the gate stuck open, you know, but they had it repaired.

Q: All right. How about the night before, August the 8th, the night you went down to Sunset Boulevard and came back? Was the gate operative at that time?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you just press the button and then would the gate swing open or would it permit you to enter?

A: You would press the button and the gate would, you know, come open.

Q: Did the gate open as opposed to just unlatch?

THE COURT: Did the gate swing open, he means.

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: You press the button and the gate swung open. Then you went in?

A: Yes.

Q: And you would push the gate closed behind you?

A: No. It had a timing device on it. I think it stays open for 30 seconds. Then it close.

Q: Closes by itself?

A: Yes.

Q: What do you do if you want to keep it open more than 30 seconds?

A: You would have to push the button again. I don't know. You probably would have to keep the button pushed. One thing I don't know.

Q: Well, have you ever seen the gate open for any extended period of time?

A: Yes. It was broke one time and it just stayed open all the time. Maybe that was sometime in May or something. It was repaired, though.

Q: Have you personally, Mr. Garretson, ever had to do anything other than just press the button and walk through the gate and then, you know, go on your way?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: What I am trying to drive at is whether or not you have ever done anything on your own to keep the gate open for any period?

A: No.

Q: Now, how about the dogs that you cared for, Mr. Garretson? They were in the guesthouse with you; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Was there a particular room in the guesthouse where they stayed?

A: The two poodles, there were.

Q: What sort of dogs were they, now that you mention that?

A: Two poodles and a weimaraner.

Q: How big is a weimaraner?

A: About two and a half feet.

Q: And how big are the poodles? Were they standard or miniatures?

A: Miniatures

Q: Miniature poodles?

A: Regular-sized poodles, you know, just a poodle, I guess.

THE COURT: How high did they stand in inches?

THE WITNESS: About eight inches.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Did these three dogs have the run of the guesthouse that you lived in also?

A: Yes.

Q: And was the guesthouse that you lived in, did it have furniture?

A: Yes.

Q: Was it soft furniture, you know, cloth material?

A: Yes.

Q: How about rugs on the floor? Did they have that?

A: Yes, there were rugs.

Q: And drapes over the windows?

A: Not all the windows, no.

Q: Well, the night of or early morning hours of the 9th, you say the dogs barked before Parent got there; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Then he was there about a half an hour and then he left, I take it?

A: Yes.

Q: How did he get up to the house, if you know, with respect to the button?

A: I imagine he just pushed the button and drove in.

Q: It is fairly out in the open; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Have no difficulty seeing the button, I take it?

A: No, sir. If you didn't know the button was there, you probably wouldn't.

Q: Had the Parent boy been there before?

A: Yes. He gave me a ride up there.

Q: He drove you all the way up the driveway to the house, did he?

A: Yes.

Q: How about the area before your guesthouse and the main house, Mr. Garretson? Are there any trees or heavy foilage in between the two?

A: There is a few -- there is a few trees and bushes, lemon trees.

Q: Just a few -- isolated, are they?

A: I think there are two lemon trees and bushes, I don't know, and a gate, I think.

Q: Do you remember on the night of August the 9th, Mr. Garretson, whether you had the windows to your cottage open or closed?

A: I believe I had them closed.

Q: Do you remember opening them at all anytime during the night?

A: No.

Q: Do you remember what the weather was like that particular evening?

A: Clear.

Q: Was it warm out that night? Do you remember?

A: I believe it was. I am not sure.

Q: I think you heard no noises or anything other than the barking of the dog from the time that Parent left and the time that you were arrested?

A: I mean the dogs barked. They barked during the night, yes.

Q: But you thought it was nothing unusual, I take it?

A: I became frightened a little bit.

Q: Did you ever go out and check the grounds when the dogs barked?

A: No.

Q: Was there any communication device between your guest house and the main house?

A: Just the telephone.

Q: Was there a special line between the two buildings?

A: No.

Q: Did you have occasion to call from the guesthouse to the main house on the night of August the 9th?

A: No.

Q: Did you, at a normal and regular course, would you call the main house, if you heard the dogs barking or heard noises in the yard?

A: No.

Q: You never did?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever do that while you were employed there?

A: No.

Q: Was there air conditioning in the guesthouse?

A: No.

Q: Was there air conditioning in the main house, if you know?

A: I don't believe there was.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have a few more questions, your Honor.

I have some photographs here concerning the area between the main house and the guesthouse.

This photograph was marked people's 18, your Honor, before. May it be remarked people's 18?

THE COURT: It may be marked people's 18.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have another photograph previously marked people's 19. May it be remarked people's 19?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: I show you people's 18 for identification.

What does this photograph depict, sir?

A: It is before you get to the guest cottage.

Q: This to the area then between the main house and the guest cottage?

A: Yes.

Q: Where you lived?

A: Yes.

Q: I show you people's 19 for identification,

What it shown in that photograph?

A: Before you get to the guesthouse.

Q: Did Mr. Parent make a phone call while he was inside your guesthouse?

A: Yes.

Q: That night?

A: Yes.

Q: About what time?

A: I believe it was around 12:00 o'clock, something like that.

Q: How long did he talk with the person?

A: A couple of minutes.

Q: After Parent made that phone call and he left the premises, did you use the telephone any more that night?

A: I went to make a phone call, to see what time it was, and the phone was dead and I went to hook up another one and the lines were dead.

Q: About what time was that?

A: I couldn't say. I was going to call the time.

Q: But it was after Parent left?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

THE COURT: Any other questions? I wanted to ask you a question.

When that button is activated to open the gate, is there an alarm sounded or any

communication?

THE WITNESS: When it closes there is a bell that makes one --

THE COURT: You didn't let me finish my question.

When that button is activated to open a gate, is there an alarm sounded in the main house or in the guesthouse to let you know that the gate is being opened?

THE WITNESS: No.

THE COURT: There is an alarm that does go off.

THE WITNESS: Well, there is a bell right before, it just makes one -- sometimes it doesn't even, do that, doesn't ring the bell.

THE COURT: When did that bell ring?

THE WITNESS: When the gate closed.

THE COURT: When you opened it, neither the guesthouse nor the main house was informed that the gate was being opened?

THE WITNESS: No. You couldn't tell when the gate was being opened.

RECROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Mr. Garretson, you said you tried to make a call of the guesthouse but you found that the line was dead; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, is that the same phone that you would use to call the main house?

A: No. It is a completely different number.

Q: Did you have to dial a number to get the main house?

A: Yes, you would, yes. It is not a two-party.

Q: After you found that you couldn't call out on one phone, did you try calling the main house on the other phone?

A: No, I went to get another phone to hook up, to plug in.

Q: Was your phone in the guesthouse a plug-in type?

A: I had one that is a plug-in type.

Q: One that was permanently attached to the wall?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that correct?

A: Yes.



Q: Were both of these phones, phones that permit you to call from the guesthouse?

A: Yes.

Q: What would you do if you wanted to call the main house?

A: Have to dial their number.

Q: I see. You had a separate number for the guesthouse, did you?

A: Yes.

Q: That was separate and different than the other one?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you try calling the main house on your phone?

A: No.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

THE COURT: May the witness be excused, gentlemen?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, your Honor.

MR. BUBRICK: Yes.

THE COURT: Thank you. You may be excused.

Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will recess at this time. How about 1:45, will that give you enough time for your lunch?

1:45.

Once again do not form or express any opinion in this case. Do not discuss it among yourselves or with anyone else and please keep your minds open. 1:45.

The spectators will remain seated until the jurors leave.

(At 12:00 o'clock the noon recess was taken until 1:45 p.m. of the same day.) 8-16-1971 was where I left off

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, MONDAY, AUGUST 16, 1971

2:00 P.M.

-- oOo --

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors are present; defendant and all counsel, are present.

Mr. Bugliosi, you may call your next witness.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, your Honor.

May it be stipulated that Jerrold, J-e-r-r-o-l-d, Friedman, F-r-i-e-d-m-a-n, be deemed to have been called by the people and duly sworn; and testified that at approximately midnight, or, let's say, 11:55 p.m., August 8, 1969, he was at home when he received a telephone call from Steven Parent.

Parent said he was alone with a friend and indicated that at some place other than where he was on the premises that some big Hollywood people lived.

As Friedman spoke to Parent he, Friedman, heard a hi-fi playing in the background.

They spoke for about five minutes and then Steven Parent told Friedman he would come to Friedman and would arrive at Friedman's place around 12:30 a.m.

So stipulated?

MR. KEITH: Yes, so stipulated.

MR. BUBRICK: So stipulated.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, when counsel stipulate to any fact or set of facts, you are to deem that fact as having been conclusively proved and no further testimony need be offered pertaining to that fact.

MR. KAY: The people will call Frank Guerrero.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

FRANK GUERRERO

called as a witness by the people testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you. Take the stand. Be seated. Would you state and spell your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Frank Guerrero, G-u-e-r-r-e-r-o.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY:

Q: Mr. Guerrero, what is your occupation, sir?

A: House painter.

Q: Were you employed to paint a part of the premises at 10050 Cielo Drive in August of 1969?

A: Yes, I was.

Q: When is the first day that you went to the Polanski residence?

A: Wednesday, the 6th of August.

Q: And did you paint at all on that day?

A: No.

Q: What were you supposed to paint at the Polanski residence?

A: The nursery.

Q: Was that for the arrival of Sharon Tate's baby?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you start painting Miss Tate's nursery?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And when did you start painting the nursery?

A: Thursday, the 7th of August,

MR. KAY: I approach the witness a moment, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

Q BY MR. KAY: If you could, Mr. Guerrero, would you stand up and approach the diagram, people's 8 for identification, and point out to the court and the ladies and gentlemen on the jury exactly where the nursery was located.

THE COURT: Is there anything on that to indicate?

MR. KAY: It is marked "Nursery."

THE COURT: Thank you.

MR. KAY: You may resume the stand.

MR. BUBRICK: Could you point that out. We don't see it.

MR. KAY: Certainly.

MR. BUBRICK: I see it.

MR. KAY: Right there, the lower right-hand corner as you are facing it.

Q: Now, on Thursday how long did you work there?

A: I worked all day from about 8:00 o'clock till about 3:00 o'clock in the afternoon.

Q: Okay.

Did you return the following day on Friday, August the 8th?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And about what time did you get there?

A: About 8:30.

Q: And did you start painting then?

A: Yes. I painted until about 1:00 or 1:30 that afternoon.

Q: And then you left?

A: Yes.

Q: Have you ever been back there since after you left at 1:30?

A: No.

Q: On August the 8th was Sharon Tate there while you were working.

A: Yes.

Q: And was she there when you left?

A: Yes.

Q: Who else did you see on the premises during the day when you were working there?

A: I saw Mr. Sebring.

Q: Jay Sebring?

A: Yes, and Wojciech Frykowski, Miss Folger, the maid.

Q: Winifred Chapman?

A: Yes. There were two girls that came by in the afternoon. I don't know their names. One was Joanna and the other one I don't remember her name. They were introduced to me by Mrs. Polanski, Miss Sharon Tate, and I saw Mr. Garretson outside and I think that is about all.

MR. KAY: May I approach the witness again, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

MR. KAY: Your Honor; I have a photograph here marked people's 26 for identification. You recognize seeing this at the first trial, do you not?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you recognise what this photograph depicts?

A: Yes.

Q: And what is shown in that photograph?

A: That is the dining room windows.

Q: Now, on August the 8th, 1969, when you left at 1:30, did you notice whether or not the screen was in place on the window that is in this photograph?

A: Yes, the screen was in place.

Q: Now, you notice in this photograph that the window appears to be open and the screen is off on the ground?

A: Yes.

Q: I take it wasn't that way when you left?

A: No.

Q: Now, you see where this red line is marked on the area of the screen; did you notice if there was any slit in the screen when you left at 1:30 on August the 8th?

A: No, the screen was up and I didn't see any cut or anything.

Q: In other words, the screen appeared to be in perfect shape when you left?

A: Yes.

MR. KAY: I have no further questions of this witness, your Honor.

THE COURT: Mr. Keith?

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH:

Q: Mr. Guerrero, as I understand it, you were employed to paint the nursery?

A: Yes.

Q: And you stayed in the nursery most of the time, did you not --

A: Yes.

Q: -- painting the nursery?

Did Sharon Tate come in the nursery while you were painting?

A: Yes, she did.

Q: Were you introduced by her for this Joanna while you were painting the nursery?

A: Yes.

Q: Had you met some of the other people before --

A: Yes.

Q: -- that were living there?

A: Yes, I had.

Q: Was that the previous day?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: And during those two days, the 6th and 7th, you spent your time in the nursery, did you not?

A: No, the 7th and 8th.

Q: Well --

A: The 6th day I went to figure the job, yes.

Q: 7th and 8th?

A: Yes, the 6th, 7th and 8th I was there.

Q: While you were at the Polanski residence, you devoted most of your hours to painting the nursery; you didn't wander around the house, did you?

A: No, sir

Q: But you never paid any particular attention, did you, to the dining room window and screen?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Were you supposed to paint that room?

A: No; on the 8th, the day I left, the screens were off of the nursery windows and I asked Mrs. Sharon Tate whether they were off, if she wanted me to put them back up and she said no, she said, "We keep these open for ventilation, cross-breeze."

Q: The screens to the nursery, you are talking about?

A: Yes, they were off, and I guess they --

Q: Well, wait; there is no question pending now.

Did you carefully examine the screens to the dining room?

A: No, I didn't, no.

Q: You didn't carefully examine the screen to the dining room on August 8th, did you?

A: No.

Q: This photograph shows a dining room screen, doesn't it?

A: Yes.

Q: Have you ever been in the dining room?

A: Yes, I have -- I had.

Q: Was that on August 8th, 7th or 6th?

A: I walked through on the 6th.

Q: And did you walk through the dining room just to look around the house, or did you walk through it to go to the nursery?

A: Walked through the house to go to the nursery.

Q: So you were in the dining room on the 6th?

A: Yes.

Q: You don't recall being in the dining room on the 7th or 8th, do you?

A: I was in the dining room the 7th, I think; and I was in the dining room the 8th when I left. I left through the front door and that's -- I examined the screen because I saw these two out in the nursery, so when I was going out I saw the other one was up.

Q: You walked through the dining room on the 8th to leave the residence --

A: Yes.

Q: -- is that correct, and as you were walking through you took --

A: No, as I walked outside I saw the screen that was up.

Q: But other than a casual glance, you didn't examine it closely, did you?

A: No, I didn't examine it, no.

MR. KEITH: Nothing further.

THE COURT: Anything further?

MR. KAY: Nothing further, your Honor.

THE COURT: May this witness be excused, Gentlemen?

MR. KAY: Yes; thank you, Mr. Guerrero.

THE COURT: You may be excused, Mr. Guerrero.

MR. KAY: People will call Thomas Vargas.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please,

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you are about to give in the case now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

THOMAS VARGAS,

called as a witness by the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Would you state and spell your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Thomas Vargas, T-h-o-m-a-s V-a-r-g-a-s.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY:

Q: What is your occupation?

A: Gardener.

Q: And did you ever work as a gardener at the residence located at 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And do you still work there?

A: Yes.

Q: How long have you been a gardener at that residence?

A: About five years, six years.

Q: And do you work for the owner of that property, Mr. Rudy Autobelli?

A: Yes.

Q: Have you worked for him ever since the start?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, were you employed as a gardener at the Polanski home on August 8, 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: During what hours did you work there?

A: Between 4:30 and 6:30.

Q: Did you know Abigail Folger?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see her there during the 4:30 to 6:30 when you were working there on the 8th?

A: As well driving up the long driveway she was driving down.

Q: What about Wojciech Frykowski? Did you know Wojciech Frykowski?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see him there that day?

Q: Yes. As I was pulling up by the yard, actually in front of the house, he was just



coming out and getting into his car, getting ready to leave.

Q: Who left first? Abigail Folger or Wojciech Frykowski.

A: Abigail Folger.

Q: Then Frykowski left right after she did?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see anyone else on the premises that day?

A: My brother was there ahead of me and Winifred Chapman, the maid, and Sharon Tate.

Q: What about Garretson?

A: Yes. I saw him. He was walking by. I saw him.

Q: Was anyone there when you left?

A: Just Sharon Tate.

Q: Where was Sharon Tate when you left?

A: She was in the master bedroom, the big bedroom.

MR. KAY: Could I approach the witness, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

When it is necessary you may do so without asking permission.

MR. KAY: Thank you very much, your Honor.

Q: Tom, I wonder if you could stand up and if you could point out to the court and the ladies and gentlemen of the jury exactly where Sharon Tate was when you left, where the bedroom is.

A: This bedroom right here (indicating).

MR. KAY: That is marked, your Honor, "Master Bedroom."

THE COURT: Yes.

Q BY MR. KAY: Thanks, Tom. Get back on the stand.

Now, when you left, did you notice anything out of place at all?

A: No.

Q: Did you notice any telephone wires cut and draped over the front gate?

A: No.

Q: So I take it you left about 6:30 in the evening?

A: Yes, that is about the time I left.

MR. KAY: I have no further questions.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Mr. Vargas, did you drive up to the residence?

A: Yes.

Q: Drive all the way up the hill leading to the front of the house?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you come through the electrically operated gate?

A: Yes.

Q: How did you do that?

A: You just push the button and it opened.

Q: Does the gate swing all the way open when you press the button?

A: Yes.

Q: Does it stay in that position?

A: It stayed in that position for about, oh, maybe 30 seconds or so, then it shut by itself.

Q: Have you ever had the misfortune of having your vehicle stuck in between the closing gates?

A: No.

Q: Do you know how you keep the gate open longer than 30 seconds?

A: I have never tried it. I don't know.

Q: I take it the electric gate was operation on this particular day?

A: Yes. It was operating when I used it because that is the way I got in and the way I got out.

Q: In going out do you do the same thing when you leave the premises?

A: Yes. There was a button in the inside.

Q: And you press that and then you go out the same gate; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And does it operate the same way? Does it stay open for about 30 seconds as you depart?

A: Yes.

Q: Then it closes by itself; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Are there any sounding devices on the gate that you are aware of when you press the button?

A: No, none.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further. Thank you, Mr. Vargas.

MR. KAY: No further questions.

THE COURT: May the witness be excused?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes.

MR. KAY: Yes.

THE COURT: You may be excused, Mr. Vargas.

MR. KAY: The people will call Dennis Hearst,

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you are about to give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

DENNIS JOHN HEARST,

called as a witness by the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you, Be seated. Would you state and spell your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Dennis, D-e-n-n-i-s, John Hearn, H-e-a-r-s-t.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY:

Q: Dennis, are you presently attending UCLA?

A: Yes.

Q: Does your father own a bike shop?

A: Yes, he does.

Q: Where is that located?

A: 9544 Santa Monica Boulevard, Beverly Hills.

Q: What is the name of the bike shop?

A: Hans Ohrt lightweight bike shop.

Q: Do you work there part time now?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: And directing your attention to the summer of 1969, did you also work there part time?

A: Yes, sir, I did.

Q: Directing your attention to August the 8th, 1969, did you have occasion to deliver a bicycle to 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: About what time did you go there?

A: About 7:00 o'clock.

Q: Who were you delivering this bicycle to?

A: Abigail Folger.

Q: And was this an exchange?

A: Yes.

Q: Could you explain what that was about?

A: On Wednesday Abigail Folger had been in the bike store and bought a certain bicycle and called up Friday morning and wanted it exchanged for another model. So I took one bike up and dropped it off and took another one home with me.

Q: What did you do when you got up to 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: I drove up and pushed the button for the gate and it opened up and I drove in and I parked across in front of the garage and got out and took one bike out and parked it in the garage and took the other one and put it back in the truck and walked through the little gate into the lawn area and went to the first door.

I knocked and there was no answer. So I knocked several times, five or seven different times and finally somebody came to the door.

Q: Who was it that came to the door?

A: Jay Sebring.

Q: All right.

What if anything did you say to him and what did he say to you?

A: I said, "I exchanged that bicycle."

And he said, "Okay. Where did you put it?"

And I said, "In the garage."

And he said, "Fine," and' closed the door.

Q: Okay.

I take it you left at that point.

A: I walked out and got in the truck and drove out.

Q: At any time while you were at the Tate residence that evening, did you notice anything out of place? Anything unusual?

A: I didn't notice anything unusual.

Q: And when you left did you notice any telephone wires draped over the front gate?

A: No, I didn't notice anything.

MR. KAY: Thank you. I have no further questions.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH:

Q: Mr. Hearst, had you ever been to that residence before?

A: No, I hadn't, no.

Q: You wouldn't know whether anything was unusual or not, would you?

A: No. I mean I wouldn't know if anything was different.

Q: Were you told about the button that you had to push in order to get through the gate?

A: The bicycle, the first model, was delivered on Wednesday by my father and I believe he mentioned that, where the button was.

Q: Did you have any difficulty finding it?

A: No.

Q: Did Mr. Sebring have something in his hand?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: What did he have?

A: It appeared to be a bottle of a green color, like the color of a 7-Up bottle.

Q: How long were you there, in all?

A: Maybe 15 minutes.

Q: And this was about 7:00 o'clock in the evening?

A: Right.

Q: Did you know Mr. Sebring from some other occasion?

A: No.

Q: Never seen him before?

A: No.

Q: You do know who he is now, I suppose?

A: Yes.

Q: You didn't know who he was then, though?

A: No, I didn't know who he was then.

Q: You didn't see anybody else that appeared to live there except for Mr. Sebring; is that right?

A: I didn't see anybody else.

MR. KEITH: I have nothing further.

MR. KAY: Nothing further, your Honor.

THE COURT: You may be excused, sir.

MR. KAY: Thank you.

MR. BUGLIOSI: People call Linda Kasabian.

Your Honor, while we are waiting, the diagram of the Tate residence, I don't know if it has been remarked People's 8. Has it been remarked?

THE COURT: It has been marked People's 8.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: Yes, I do.

LINDA KASABIAN,

called as a witness by the People, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you.

Be seated; and would you state and spell your name, please?

THE WITNESS: Linda Kasabian, L-i-n-d-a; K-a-s-a-b-i-a-n.

THE COURT: Is that Miss or Mrs.?

THE WITNESS: Mrs.

THE COURT: Mrs. Kasabian, would you try to keep your voice up, please, so that the last juror could hear you?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: Thank you.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: Linda, you are presently living in New Hampshire; is that correct?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: And you have flown back here to testify at this trial?

A: That's right.

Q: You are aware, Linda, that in the year 1969 you were indicted by the Los Angeles County Grand Jury along with Charles Manson, Charles Watson, Susan Atkins, Patricia Krenwinkel, and Leslie Van Houton for the Tate-LaBianca murders; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And, Linda, did you testify for the prosecution during the previous trial of Charles Manson, Susan Atkins, Patricia Krenwinkel and Leslie Van Houton, for these seven murders?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: I object as immaterial.

MR. BUGLIOSI: It has been mentioned by Mr. Bubrick, I think --

THE COURT: All right, I have allowed the answer.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Prior to the trial, Linda, do you recall that your attorneys, Gary Fleischman and Ronald Goldman, entered into an agreement with the district attorney's office that if you testified to everything you knew about the Tate-LaBianca murders the district attorney's office would request of the Court that the Court give you immunity from prosecution?

MR. BUBRICK: Object to that, your Honor, as being immaterial.

THE COURT: Overruled.

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: And pursuant to that agreement during the last trial did Judge Charles Older grant you immunity from prosecution?

A: Yes.

Q: So there are no charges pending against you for these murders; correct?

A: Right.

Q: Linda, besides the benefits accruing to you under the immunity agreement, is there any other reason why you told everything you know or you knew during the last trial and why you are also going to testify during this trial, any other particular reason?

MR. KEITH: Object to that question on the grounds it is argumentative, calling for a conclusion, immaterial.

THE COURT: Sustained on that ground.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I believe there were about three or four objections, your Honor. There is a particular reason --

THE COURT: The question was compound, too.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Besides the immunity agreement, Linda, is there any other reason why you decided to tell what you know about these murders?

A: Yes, I just felt that the truth had to be known.

THE COURT: Keep your voice up, please.

THE WITNESS: I felt that the truth had to be known and told, and with or without immunity, I felt I had to tell it.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So with or without immunity, you wanted to testify, take the witness Stand and tell what happened on these two nights; is that correct?.

A: Yes.

Q: I take it you know the defendant in this case, Charles Tex Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: How old are you, Linda?

A: 22.

Q: Can you talk a little more loudly?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Is there a microphone in this courtroom, your Honor?

THE COURT: No, we have no microphone.

MR. BUGLIOSI: It is rather difficult to hear.

Q: Try to speak up just a little more loudly, Linda.

A: 22.

Q: Okay; and where were you born?

A: Biddeford, Maine.



Q: Biddeford, Maine?

A: Right.

Q: On June 21, 1949?

A: Right.

Q: And are you presently married?

A: Yes.

Q: And your husband's name is Bob?

A: Right.

Q: And Bob is back in New Hampshire now?

A: Right.

Q: When did you marry Bob?

A: September 20th of '67.

Q: In Lance, Massachusetts?

A: Right.

Q: Do you have any children by your marriage?

A: Yes.

Q: Who are they?

A: Tanyan and Angel.

MR. BUBRICK: Sorry, I can't hear.

THE COURT: We can't hear; you just have to speak up, Mrs. Kasabian.

THE WITNESS: Tanyan and Angel.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Okay?

Q: And how old is Tanyan?

A: She is three and a half.

Q: How old is Angel?

A: He is a year and a half.

Q: Was Angel born while you were in custody on these charges?

A: Yes, he was.

Q: And Tanyan and Angel are now back in New Hampshire with your husband, Bob?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever separate from your husband, Bob?

A: Yes.

Q: When was that?

A: Well, the first time was in April of '69 - '69, yes.

Q: And where were you living at the time of the separation?

A: New Mexico.

Q: Taos, New Mexico?

A: Yes.

Q: T-a-o-s?

A: Yes.

Q: And where did you go after the separation?

A: To New Hampshire.

Q: To your mother's home in New Hampshire?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you thereafter reconcile with Bob?

A: Yes.

Q: When was that?

A: June, around the end of June of '69.

Q: June, 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, how did this reconciliation come about?

A: I happened to be at my mother's house one afternoon and he called on the telephone and told me to come to Los Angeles, that we were going to South America and he wanted me to be with him.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, I am sorry I can't hear it over here.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Can all members of the jury hear?

THE COURT: I don't know what to do with her. We have asked her several times

--

THE WITNESS: Sir, I am trying with all my might.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Her voice is naturally very soft, your Honor.

I am just wondering somehow --

THE COURT: We have no microphones in here.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Could one be brought in? Is there any problem, could we get a microphone, Mr. Clerk?

THE CLERK: It would take days.

THE COURT: If we go through channels.

MR. BUGLIOSI: If we see Mr. Hahn, maybe couple of weeks from now --

THE COURT: Two weeks would be a short time, if you go through channels.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Linda, do your best to talk loudly, because these folks on the jury have to hear.

THE WITNESS: May I pull my chair up?

THE COURT: Surely; get as close as you can.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: When did Bob call you?

A: Around the end of June.

Q: June of 1969; and you were back in New Hampshire?

A: Right.

Q: So you flew out here to Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you start living with Bob at that time?

A: Yes.

Q: Where did you and he live?

A: In Topanga Canyon Lane near the beach.

Q: Near Malibu?

A: Yeah, sort of.

Q: Okay, and were you living at that time in a home, an apartment, a truck or what?

A: In a truck.

Q: Was this a converted truck, it had been converted into a --

A: Yes.

Q: -- home, as it were?.

A: Yes.

Q: And who else was living in this converted truck?

A: Charlie Melton and Jim and Julie Otterstraum, Bob, myself and Tanya.

Q: So there was your husband, Bob, Charles Melton, Jim and Julie -- how do you spell the last name?

A: O-t-t-e-r-s-t-r-a-u-m -- I'm not sure.

Q: Phonetically, that's the way it is spelled; is that correct?

A: Um-hmm.

Q: And then, of course, Tanya was with you?

A: Right.

Q: Now, was this truck going to be taken to South America?

A: Yes.

Q: By the whole group?

A: Yes.

Q: And you intended to buy a boat there in South America?

A: That's right.

Q: And travel around the world?

A: Right.

Q: Did things work out between you and your husband?

A: No.

Q: What happened?

A: I don't know; just really didn't seem to get it together, so far as harmony in our love; and he told me that he didn't want me to go with him.

Q: Did you finally leave your husband?

A: Yes.

Q: On what date?

A: July the 4th.

Q: That is July the 4th, 1969; is that correct?

A: Right.

Q: What were the circumstances surrounding your leaving your husband?

A: I don't quite understand.

Q: Well, how did you happen to leave on July the 4th; how did you happen to leave the truck?

What happened?

A: Well, he told me that morning that he didn't really want me to go and it just so happened that a girl came by named Kathryn Share.

Q: Is she also known as Gypsy?

A: Yes, Gypsy.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph previously marked People's 28. May it be remarked People's 28?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Is this photograph of Gypsy, Linda, People's 28?

A: Yes.

Q: So Gypsy came to converted truck?

A: Right.

Q: To visit whom?

A: Charlie Manson.

Q: And did you start to talk to Gypsy?

A: Yes, we struck up a conversation.

Q: Okay. Did Gypsy tell you anything about Charles Manson and Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: What did she tell you?

A: Well, just that there was a family living out at Spahn Ranch and that Charlie was like a really beautiful man and I'd be more than accepted there; there were lots of children and everybody loved each other and just sounded like a place to go.

Q: So you decided to go along with Gypsy to Spahn Ranch?

A: Uh-huh, yeah.

Q: And you left that very day, July the 4th?

A: Right.

Q: And you had never been to Spahn Ranch before, I take it?

A: No.

Q: And you had never met Gypsy before?

A: No.

Q: Had you ever met any member of the family before?

A: No.

Q: When is the first time that you met the defendant Charles Watson?

A: That night.

Q: The evening of July the 4th, 1969?

A: Right.

Q: At the Spahn Ranch?

A: Right.

Q: And would you explain the circumstances under which you met him?

A: It was dark and Gypsy brought him over to me. We were outside. And I just remember that he put his arms around me and guided me into a room and we made love and then started talking.

THE COURT: I didn't hear the last part.

(Record read by the reporter.)

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: After this one time did you ever have sexual intercourse with Mr. Watson again?

A: Yeah.

Q: How many times?

A: One time.

Q: A total of twice?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you notice that Mr. Watson had any difficulty at all having sexual intercourse with you?

MR. BUBRICK: I will object to the leading and suggestive questions.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Did Mr. Watson seem to have any difficulty having sexual intercourse with you?

A: No.

Q: Going back to this time where you met Mr. Watson on the evening of July the 4th, did you have a conversation with Mr. Watson at that time?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you say and what did he say?

A: I think he asked me where I had come from and what I was doing and I told him

that, you know, the circumstances I was living with these people and we had planned to go to South America and we had lots of money and he suggested that I steal this money, which I said, "No, I couldn't. They are my brothers and I love them and I couldn't do that."

And he said something about that the money was just there and it was for anybody to take. It wasn't wrong to take it. The money was there for anybody.

Q: Now, when you were talking about this money, did this money belong to Charles Milton?

A: Well, he had inherited it, but it did belong to the people in the truck.

Q: How much money was it?

A: It started out at twenty thousand. I don't know.

Q: So you told Mr. Watson that there was \$20,000 in the truck?

A: Yes.

Q: You say Mr. Watson suggested that you take the money?

A: Yes.

Q: And you told him you didn't want to because this was your brother?

A: Right.

Q: He told you what again?

A: Just that the money was there for anybody to take, that it wasn't wrong.

Q: Did Mr. Watson then convince you to take the money?

MR. BUBRICK: I object to that.

THE COURT: Sustained.

MR. BUBRICK: May the jury be admonished to disregard that?

THE COURT: Yes.

Ladies and gentlemen, when I sustain an objection to a question like that please disregard the question entirely.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: After Mr. Watson told you this, did you change your mind about taking the money?

A: Yes

Q: Did you in fact take the money?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: When was that?

A: The next morning.

Q: The next morning did you go back then to the truck?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you go alone?

A: No.

Q: Whom did you go with?

A: Gypsy and Mary Bruner and Tanya.

Q: Mary Bruner was a female member of the family?

A: Right.

Q: You went with her, Gypsy, and Tanya?

A: Yes.

Q: And you entered the truck?

A: Yes.

Q: How much money did you take?

A: Well, I took what was there, which later found out was five thousand.

Q: What did you do with the five thousand dollars?

A: I don't know -- I took it back to the ranch and I gave it to somebody. I am not really sure who.

Q: You don't know to whom you gave it?

A: No, not positive.

Q: Did you ever see any part of the money again?

A: No.

Q: You, of course, know Charles Manson.

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph of a male Caucasian.

May it be marked, people's next in order? I believe it would be people's 298.

THE COURT: That will be so marked,

MR. BUGLIOSI: May it be stipulated that this is a photograph of Charles Manson?

MR. KEITH: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: When was the first time you met Mr. Charles Manson?



A: Right after I stole the money. It was at the ranch.

THE COURT: I didn't hear all of that. Right after you stole --

THE WITNESS: Right after I stole the money and we were at the ranch and after I had given the money to whoever it was that I gave it to. Gypsy and Mary directed me up in back of the ranch where I met Charlie.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Had you started to live at the ranch at that point?

A: Well, from the point that I first got there, yes.

Q: Okay.

Would you please relate your first meeting with Mr. Manson.

A: Well, he was working on this dune buggy and I think he had asked me why I came to the ranch and I told him because I was told that I would be welcome here and accepted and that I would be welcomed as a family and I don't know, that is about all I can remember now.

Q: Did he say anything about your leg?

A: He didn't say anything but I saw him look at my legs.

Q: Did he touch you at all?

A: Yes, he touched my legs. He felt my legs.

Q: Did he say anything?

A: Not that I recall.

Q: Where did you stay that night?

A: In the cave,

Q: On the ranch?

A: In back of the ranch.

Q: When was the next time you saw Mr. Manson?

A: The following night.

Q: What happened the following night between you and Mr. Manson, if anything?

A: He made love to me.

Q: Did he tell you anything about your father?

A: Yes. I remember he was talking to me and I didn't understand a lot of what he said, but then he said something about, "You hate your father and you have a father hangup."

And was really astonished because I don't have a father. I told him something, "Well, I don't have a father and I do hate him," something to that effect.

I was just really astonished that he said something like this that was sort of a secret within myself.

Q: You told him that you did hate your father?

A: I think so, something to that effect. I'm not positive right now.

Q: Did you become a member of the family?

A: Yes, yes.

Q: And was Charles Manson the head of the family?

A: Yes.

Q: How many people were in the family?

A: Oh, I don't know, 20 or 30 people.

Q: It would vary between 20 and 30?

A: Yes.

Q: Were most of the members of the family girls?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here an aerial photograph, your Honor, marked people's 29 before. May it be remarked People's 29?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you people's 29 for identification, Linda.

What is shown in that photograph?

A: Well, the ranch, the main part of the ranch.

Q: Okay.

Does this appear to be an aerial photograph of Spahn Ranch?

A: Yeah.

Q: This is where you lived with the family; is that correct?

A: Right.

Q: Would the family normally sleep on the ranch in these buildings here?

A: Usually scattered.

Q: You would sleep in various places at the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Was there a home behind the ranch, or building behind the ranch about a quarter of a mile down the road?

A: Not behind. It was sort of -- I think I can show you on the picture.

Q: Could you point it out here? Do you see it?

A: The road is somewhere around here, sort of went this way to a house. There wasn't really -- to me this is behind the ranch, sort of like diagonal, would you say?

Q: So there was a house down the road then?

A: Yes.

Q: Which was on the property of Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: And the family would live in that house now and then?

A: Yes.

Q: And you would also live in these various homes here shown in this photograph?

A: Yes.

Q: And there was a trailer there at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did any of the girls or men sleep in the trailer at night?

A: Yes.

Q: Did male visitors ever come to the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson ever tell you girls to do anything with them?

A: Well, we were always trying to get people to join the ranch, especially men. He would always tell us to make love to them and try to get thee to stay, which usually never happened,

Q: Did you girls in fact make love with various male visitors that came to the ranch for the purpose of getting them to join the family?

A: Yes.

Q: And did it frequently happen that they would not join the family?

A: Right.

Q: What work did the girls do at the ranch?

A: Well, they would help out with, you know, the guys so far as fixing dune buggies

and things like that, taking care of children, cooking, housework, and things like that.

Q: What about the men in the family? What did they do?

A: Most of them worked on dune buggies.

Q: Other than Mr. Manson and Mr. Watson, what other men were there in the family?

A: There was Clem and Bruce and Danny DeCarlo. That is all I can remember at the moment.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here another photograph of a male caucasian. May it be marked people's -- let me withdraw that -- it was previously marked people's 46. May it be remarked people's 46?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you people's 46 for identification. Is this the Clem about whom you referred?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May it be stipulated that this is a photograph of Steve Grogan, also known as Clem? So stipulated?

MR. KEITH: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here another photograph previously marked people's 71. May it be remarked people's 71, your Honor

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you people's 71. Do you know who is shown in that photograph?

A: Yes, Bruce.

Q: That is Bruce Davis?

A: Yes.

Q: The person to whom you have been referring?

A: Yes.

Q: How did you get your food in the family? How did you survive?

A: Used to go on what they call garbage runs.

Q: What is a garbage run?

A: Go behind supermarkets and into the big garbage cans and take food.

We had a couple of connections where we went to old fruit stands and got fruit, old fruit and vegetables.

Q: Then would you take the food back to the ranch and prepare it?

A: Right

Q: And how did you get money to buy other things that you needed at the ranch?

A: I don't know. We used to have credit cards.

Q: How would you get these credit cards?

A: Either they were just there or somebody would steal them.

Q: Did you ever steal any credit card?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you go out with someone?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was that?

A: With Sadie.

Q: Approximately when was this?

A: Around the end of July.

THE COURT: I didn't hear the name with whom you went.

THE WITNESS: Sadie..

THE COURT: Sadie?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You say Sadie. You mean Susan Atkins?

A: Yes.

Q: When did you go out with her?

A: About the end of July, I guess. I don't know the date.

Q: The end of July 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: And you stole some credit cards with her?

A: Yes.

Q: Where did you get the credit cards?

A: Out of cars.

Q: You brought them back to the ranch?

THE COURT: Out of where?

THE WITNESS: Out of cars.

THE COURT: Automobiles?

THE WITNESS: Cars, yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have a photograph of a female Caucasian. May it be marked people's 299 for identification?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May it be stipulated that this a photograph of Susan Atkins, also known as Sadie?

MR. KEITH: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Showing you people's 299, does that appear to be a photograph of Susan Atkins, Linda?

A: Yes.

Q: Did the family, other than going into town on these garbage runs, would they go into town otherwise for various reasons?

A: Yes.

Q: How would you normally get into town?

A: By car.

Q: Did you ever hitch-hike?

A: Yes.

Q: When you went in by car, did Mr. Manson give any instructions with respect to who should drive the car into town?

A: There was this one certain car that was used and he said that only people with driver's licenses were allowed to use it.

Q: To your knowledge who had driver's licenses in the family?

A: I had one and Mary Bruner had one. That is all I know.

Q: So to your knowledge only you and Mary Bruner had driver's licenses; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And Mr. Manson said that when any member of the family went into town only those with driver's licenses should drive; is that correct?

A: Right.

Q: Was it the rule in the family, to your knowledge, Linda, that the girls in the family would do whatever the men told them to do?

A: Yes.

Q: So you girls were just there to serve the men; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you did what they told you to do without question; is that correct?

A: Right.

Q: I take it you must have had discussions with Mr. Manson about various things.

A: Sure, yes.

Q: Did Mr. Manson ever say anything to you about right and wrong?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he tell you?

A: That there is no right or wrong. Everything is right. Everything to all right.

THE COURT: What?

THE WITNESS: That there is no right or wrong, that everything is just all right.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Did he say anything to you about sense or no sense or things like that?

A: Yes. He said, "No sense makes sense."

Q: "No sense makes sense"?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he say anything about how not to get caught if you are doing something wrong?

A: Yes; it was sort of like a little tune kind of thing, about "You won't get caught if you don't get thought in your head."

THE COURT: We didn't hear it, either.

"You won't get caught if you don't got thought in your head"?

THE WITNESS: "You won't get caught if you don't have thoughts in your head."

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: How many children were there at the ranch?

A: There was Tanya and Zezo and Pooh-Bear, three.

Q: Tanya was your child?

A: Yes.

Q: And you say Zezo --

A: Yes.

Q: Was Zezo Sadie's child?

A: Yes.

Q: That is Susan Atkins, right?

A: Right.

Q: And Pooh-Bear?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was Pooh-Bear?

A: Mary Bruner's.

Q: Mary Bruner's child was Pooh-Bear?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: How do you spell Pooh-Bear?

THE WITNESS: She spells it P-o-o-h B-e-a-r.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: How old was Pooh Bear?

A: About the same age as Tanya.

Q: What about Zezo?

A: I don't know. He was awfully small. I remember being told he was premature, but I think he was about 10 months old, I'm not sure.

Q: Who would take care of these three children?

A: Everybody sort of took turns.

Q: Would it be the girls, though?

A: Oh, yes, the girls.

Q: Did Manson ever say anything about protecting the children from anyone?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he say?

A: Well, about the black people, they were supposed to keep the children out of sight during the day, in front of the ranch, we were supposed to keep them out of sight.

Q: Would black people ever come to the ranch?

A: Yes, on one occasion I remember.



Q: And do you know for what purpose they came to the ranch?

A: To ride horses.

Q: George Spahn was the owner of that ranch?

A: To my knowledge, yeah.

Q: He was an elderly fellow, in his eighties?

A: Yes.

Q: He was almost blind?

A: Yes.

Q: And one of the businesses of the ranch was to rent horses?

A: Right.

Q: There were many horses on the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson ever tell you why he thought that the black people were coming to the ranch?

A: Yeah, to see the layout of the ranch; something about he knew they had binoculars and they were watching from up in the hills.

THE COURT: He knew what?

THE WITNESS: Binoculars, and were watching --

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: And the black people were watching the members of the family?

A: I don't know the members of the family, but watching and looking at the layout of the ranch.

Q: You have heard of the term helter-skelter of course?

A: Yeah.

Q: And did Manson, in very brief form, did he ever tell you what helter-skelter meant?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he say?

A: That it was a revolution between blacks and white and how black was going to take over and kill white.

Q: Did you ever see the words "helter-skelter" written anywhere at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Where?

A: On a jug in the parachute room, a black jug.

Q: There was a parachute room at Spahn Ranch?

A: Um-hmm.

Q: There was a jug inside --

A: Not inside the room; outside of the room, on the porch.

Q: There was some writing on the jug?

A: Yes.

Q: What was the writing?

A: "Donation for helter-skelter."

Q: Did Mr. Manson ever speak to you about the unity of the black man as opposed to the white man?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he say?

A: Well, that a black man was much more together and much more aware than white men.

Q: Did he say anything about wanting to do something for the white man?

A: Well, he wanted to get white men together.

Q: Like the black man?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he say he had a way to bring the white men together?

A: Yeah, he said he had a way, his way was the only way but he didn't say what his way was.

Q: You, of course, saw Mr. Manson tell other members of the family to do things for him; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: And you never saw anyone instructor tell him to do anything?

A: No.

Q: And the girls in the family used to idolize Charlie?

A: Yes.

Q: When I say "Charlie" mean Charles Manson, now.

A: Yes.

Q: Incidentally, you know that Mr. Watson's first name is Charles, also; is that right?

A: I guess so.

Q: Charles Watson.

A: Yes.

Q: But you refer to him as "Tex"; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: So whenever you say "Charlie" in the future, you are talking about Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: Looking at Mr. Watson now, do you notice any different about him now than he was when you saw him out at Spahn Ranch in July and August of 1969?

A: I can see his eyes; his hair has been cut.

THE COURT: You can see his eyes, and what else did you say?

THE WITNESS: His hair has been cut.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: What about his eyes?

A: I can see them. Before, his hair was down here and you could never really see them.

Q: Do you notice anything else different about him?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Would the Court have Mr. Watson stand up, your Honor?

THE COURT: Please stand up.

(Defendant stands.)

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Does he seem to weigh the same as he did then?

A: I don't know. He was skinny then, he looks skinny now.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Would the Court have Mr. Watson approach Mrs. Kasabian, your Honor, so she could --

MR. BUBRICK: She doesn't indicate any difficulty seeing him.

THE COURT: Do you have any trouble seeing him?

THE WITNESS: No.

THE COURT: Will you stand up there, Mr. Watson, please, behind your counsel; and you may step off the bench if you care to and get in closer if you need to see him any closer.

THE WITNESS: Yeah, he is a lot skinnier. His mouth is open and his tongue is sticking out.

THE COURT: What did you last say?

THE WITNESS: His mouth is open a lot.

THE COURT: And he is skinnier than he was?

THE WITNESS: A lot skinnier.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So in July and August of 1969, Mr. Watson was heavier than he is now?

A: Yes.

Q: He is a lot skinnier now?

A: Yes.

Q: And you also noticed that his mouth is open now?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever see Tex walking around the ranch with his mouth open in July or August of 1969?

A: I didn't understand --

Q: Did you ever see him walk around in July or August on Spahn Ranch with his mouth open like this, other than when he was talking, of course?

A: No.

Q: But you notice that he has his mouth open now? Is that correct?

A: Yes, more than then.

Q: During the time that you knew Tex, how did you get along with him?

A: Fine.

Q: Did you ever have any arguments with Mr. Watson?

A: No.

Q: To your knowledge, did he have anything against you?

A: No.

Q: You indicated earlier that it was the rule in the family that the girls would serve the men without question; is that correct?

A: Excuse me?

Q: You indicated earlier that the rule or the policy in the family was that the girls in

the family would serve the men, they would obey the men; is that correct?

A: Right.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Watson tell any of the girls in the family to do anything?

A: Sure,

Q: Like what?

A: I don't know -- if he's working on his Dune Buggy, ask than to go, get coffee, or clean something, or things to that matter.

Q: And did you see this many times?

A: Yeah, yeah.

Q: So on many occasions you saw Mr. Watson tell girls in the family to do things for him; is that correct?

MR. KEITH: Your Honor --

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, object --

MR. KEITH: He's leading.

MR. BUGLIOSI: That's a repeat of what she has already said.

MR. BUBRICK: So why repeat it?

MR. BUGLIOSI: It is hard to hear; it is just for clarification.

THE COURT: Objection sustained.

Do not lead your witness; do not recapitulate what the witness say, please.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Did you ever see any girl in the family tell Mr. Watson to do anything?

A: I don't think so, no.

THE COURT: Suppose we have our recess at this time.

Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will take our afternoon recess at this time.

Do not form or express any opinion in this case; do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else and please keep your minds open.

Gentlemen, will you please come into chambers.

(Recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors and all counsel and the defendant are present.

Now, you try to speak directly into that for us, please.

THE WITNESS: Directly? Like that?

THE COURT: It doesn't help very much. Wait a minute.

Will you state your name, please, again for us?

THE WITNESS: Linda Kasabian.

THE COURT: Is that better? All right. Fine.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Linda, did Tex seem to get along well with the girls in the family?

A: Yeah, except for one incident that I saw.

Q: What incident was this?

A: There was this girl Cathryn Gillis -- I know her as Kathy.

Q: Was she a member of the family?

A: Yes. She went to the -- not the ranch, she left the ranch one morning and went to the beach and she came back in the afternoon and we were all in the kitchen and the girls were mad but they didn't say anything, but Tex was there and he told her if she ever left again to ask first and he said that something like her life meant nothing to him and that next time he would kill her.

Q: Was Manson present during this incident?

A: No.

Q: Approximately when did this incident take place?

A: Sometime in July. I don't really know when.

Q: July of 1969?

A: Yeah.

Q: Linda, on the date August the 8th, 1960, were you still living at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: At any time during the day do you recall Mr. Manson saying anything about helter-skelter?

A: Yeah. We were sitting in front of the bunk room and he said something about now is the time for helter-skelter, something to that effect.

Q: Did he say anything about being up at Big Sur?

A: Oh, he had just come back from Big Sur, yes; and he said the people up there just weren't together and they wouldn't go on his trip.

Q: So then he said, "Now's the time for helter skelter"?

A: Yes.

Q: And were you at Spahn Ranch on the evening of August the 8th, 1969?

A: Yes

Q: What happened that evening?

A: Well, we all had dinner in the saloon.

THE COURT: Excuse me just a minute.

Can you hold up just a minute, please? We seem to get feedback here.

Maybe you can call Mr. Hahn again.

Repeat your name for us.

THE WITNESS: Linda Kasabian.

THE COURT: Does that improve any?

THE JURORS: Yes.

THE COURT: Fine.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You say you had dinner that night, August the 8th, at the saloon with the family; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: About what time did you have dinner?

A: I don't know, about the same time we had it every night, after dark.

Q: Okay, and was Manson present during the dinner?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Tex present?

A: Yes.

Q: The whole family was present?

A: Yes.

Q: About 20, 25, 30 people?

A: Yeah.

Q: All right, what happened after dinner?

A: Well, I remember there was a bunch of us sitting out in front of the kitchen and Charlie came over to me and pulled me aside and told me to get a change of clothing and a knife and my driver's license, and I did.

I went into the house and I asked Brenda about my driver's license.

Q: You say Brenda; you mean Brenda McCann?

A: Yes; and we both looked, Squeaky was there, too. We couldn't find it and we kept looking -- I went to a box and I got some clothes, a denim skirt and a lavender sweater; and then I left and I went through the side way into the saloon from the bathroom and looked for a knife that I had seen earlier and it wasn't there.

So I ran out and I went into the kitchen and Larry was there and I asked him if he had a knife and he did and he gave me one.

Q: Before you go any further, Linda --

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a photograph, your Honor, previously marked people's 76. May it be remarked people's 76?

THE COURT: Exhibit 76.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Showing you people's 76, you mentioned a girl named Squeaky. Is that the girl farthest to the right in this photograph?

A: Yes.

Q: And there is a mark saying "Squeaky"; is that correct?

A: Right.

Q: Now, you mentioned a man named Larry Jones --

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a photograph previously marked people's 83.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Is that a photograph of --

MR. BUBRICK: There was a reference to "Larry"; I didn't realize we had a last name to it.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I'm sorry.

Q: Is this the Larry you referred to?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May it be stipulated that this is Larry Jones?

MR. KEITH: I don't know Larry Jones from anybody else.

THE COURT: Ask her. Do you know his last name?

THE WITNESS: I didn't at the time, but now do.

THE COURT: When did you learn it? Just now?

THE WITNESS: No, the last trial, before the last trial.

THE COURT: All right. Show her the photograph again, 83.



MR. BUBRICK: 76.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No; this one is 83.

THE COURT: Squeaky is 76. Who is that a photograph of?

THE WITNESS: That is Larry.

THE COURT: Do you know his last name?

THE WITNESS: Not at the time, no.

THE COURT: Photo of Larry.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: What happened next, Linda?

A: Let's see, Larry gave me the knife and I started walking away from the kitchen and then next Charlie and Brenda were at the end of the board walking into the kitchen and Brenda gave me the driver's license and Charlie just said "Go with Tex and do whatever he tells you to do."

And from there I proceeded to get into the car, which was parked right there and we drove off -- started to drive off.

Q: You say you got into a car. Do you know whose car this was?

A: Yes, Johnny Swartz.

Q: He was a ranch hand at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph previously marked People's 38.

May it be remarked People's 38?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 38 for identification. Do you know what is shown in that photograph?

A: Yes. It looks like Johnny's car.

Q: That is the car you got into?

A: Yes.

Q: Where was the car parked on the ranch?

A: Right in front of the kitchen.

Q: In the parking area?

A: Yes.

Q: You got your knife, change of clothing, a driver's license, and you went to Johnny

Swartz' car?

A: Right.

Q: Was anyone in the car at the time you went to the car?

A: Yes. I think Sadie and Katie were.

THE COURT: Who?

THE WITNESS: Sadie and Katie.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: When you say Sadie, you mean Susan Atkins?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here another photograph, your Honor of a female Caucasian. May it be marked 300 for identification?

THE COURT: 300. It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 300 for identification. Who is shown in that photograph?

A: That is Katie.

Q: Patricia Krenwinkel?

A: Yes.

Q: So Patricia Krenwinkel, also known as Katie and Susan Atkins, know as Saide, were already in Johnny Swartz' car?

A: Yes.

Q: Where was Tex?

A: He was standing on the driver's side talking with Charlie.

Q: Tex was outside the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Talking to Charlie?

A: Yes.

Q: This knife that Larry gave you, was it unusual at all?

A: It had tape around it, around the handle.

Q: Then, Tex eventually got into the car?

A: Yes.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: We started to drive away and then Charlie stopped us. Then he came over to the

passenger's side of the car and he said something about "Leave a sign. You girls know what I mean. Something witchy, something like that."

THE COURT: Will you speak directly into the microphone. Maybe that will help us.

THE WITNESS: Did you hear what I said?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes.

THE COURT: Leave a sign.

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Something witchy?

A: Yes, something like, "you girls know what I mean, something witchy."

Q: Now, you were dressed in dark clothing at the time?

A: Yes.

Q: How about Katie and Sadie, how were they dressed?

A: Yes, they were in dark clothes also.

Q: What about Tex?

A: Yes, him too.

Q: All four of you were then dressed in dark clothing?

A: Yes.

Q: Top and bottom?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you have any shoes or sandals on?

A: No, I didn't have shoes on.

Q: You were barefooted?

A: Yes.

Q: What about Sadie and Katie?

A: I don't think they had shoes, either.

Q: What about Tex?

A: Yes, I think he wore shoes.

Q: And you also had a change of clothing with you?

A: Yes.

Q: What about Tex, Sadie and Katie, did they also have a change of clothing?

A: Yes.

Q: So there were four sets of changes of clothing in the car?

A: Right.

Q: Then, after Charlie made that statement about leaving something witchy to the girls, Tex drove off?

A: Yes.

Q: Manson saw you off?

A: Yes.

Q: Was anyone with Manson as the car pulled out of the parking lot at Spahn Ranch?

A: No.

Q: Did you know what you and the others were going to do, Linda, when you drove off?

A: I just had a feeling that we might be going someplace to steal something.

Q: Did you have any idea that you were going to the Tate residence to kill anyone?

A: No.

Q: Did you ask Tex, Sadie, or Katie, what was going to happen?

A: No.

Q: Was there any particular reason why you did not ask them?

A: One of the first things that was programmed in to me, as they used to call it, that you never ask why, so I never asked.

Q: So you thought you were going to go to someplace and steal?

A: Yes.

Q: Were there any knives or guns in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: How many guns?

A: One.

Q: Do you know what type of a gun this was?

A: No, I don't know the name of it.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a revolver, Serial No. 1902708, appears to be a high standard .22 caliber Buntline revolver, previously marked People's 40. May it be remarked People's 40?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q: I show you people's 40 for identification, Linda.

Prior to the last trial had you ever seen this revolver?

A: Yes.

Q: Was this the revolver that was in the car?

A: It sure looks like it.

THE COURT: Mr. Bugliosi, will you show that gun to the bailiff, please?

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Other than that revolver, people's 40, was there any other gun in the car?

A: None that I saw.

Q: How many knives were in the car?

A: Three.

Q: One was the knife that you had; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And there were two other knives in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: And who had those two knives?

A: Sadie and Katie.

Q: Did you see any knife on Tex's person?

A: No.

Q: Would you describe these three knives?

A: One was a knife that I had, with the black taped handle; and one was a knife that I had brought with me when I first came into the ranch, which was a kitchen buck knife, the kind of thing that folded into itself; and the third knife was similar to the one that I brought in -- I can't really remember it.

Q: The third knife was what?

A: Similar to the one that I had brought with me.

Q: That night?

A: No, not that night.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I seem to have a buck knife marked people's 39 previously for identification.

May it be remarked people's 39?

THE COURT: 39?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes.

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you people's 39 for identification.

Have you ever seen that buck knife before?

A: Yes, it looks like my knife.

Q: Is this the knife that you brought to Spahn Ranch with you?

A: Yes.

Q: This was part of your personal property?

A: Yes.

Q: And you turned over your personal property to the family once joined the family?

A: Yes.

Q: So this knife was in the car that night?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: This was not on your person?

A: No.

Q: Who had this knife?

A: I think Sadie did.

Q: And in addition to this knife there was one knife that you brought along with you and another knife?

A: Right.

Q: Do you know the approximate dimensions of the blade of these other two knives?

A: I don't know.

Q: Talking about the blade, now, I am not talking about the length of the whole knife, just the blade.

A: Probably about like that.

THE COURT: Indicating about five inches; is that correct?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Five, six, closer to six, your Honor.

THE COURT: Five to six.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: What about the thickness of the blade in relation to a kitchen knife; how thick was it?

A: Probably about three times as thick, yeah.

Q: What about the width of the blade on those two knives -- talking about the width, now, right.

A: I guess about an inch, something like that.

Q: Did you ever see Tex carry a knife on his person at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yeah.

Q: As you were driving in the car Tex was driving the car, did Tex tell you to do anything with the three knives and that revolver?

A: Yeah, he told me to wrap them up, which I did.

Q: What did you wrap them up in?

A: I'm not really positive right now. I just know I wrapped them up; I'm not sure in what, though.

Q: Did Mr. Watson tell you to do anything in addition to wrapping the knives and the revolver up?

A: Yeah, he said that something like if we got stopped by the police to throw them out the window, which never happened.

Q: Did Tex drive all the way to your ultimate destination?

A: Excuse me?

Q: Did Tex do all the driving?

A: There?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: Did you drive at all?

A: Only back, yes.

Q: But not to the place?

A: No.

Q: Tex is the only one that drove; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he take surface streets or a freeway or what?

A: Seems to me we were on a freeway for a while; then we were onto streets.

Q: Okay.

Where did you eventually drive to?

A: A gate on top of a hill.

Q: How long did it take you to get to the place from Spahn Ranch?

A: I don't know. Not too long, I guess, but I don't know the time.

Q: Could you give us any idea? Did it take five minutes, four hours, an hour, what?

A: Probably around an hour, I guess.

Q: Okay, about what time did you arrive at the gate at the top of the hill, approximately?

A: Time? I don't know.

Q: Well, was it 3:00 in the morning, midnight, eleven --

A: It was probably around midnight.

Q: Would you tell the judge and the jury, Linda, what happened after you arrived at this gate at the top of the hill?

A: Well, Tex turned around and parked beside a telephone pole with -- I don't know what you call it -- a piece of metal sticking out, coming up and out -- and let me see, he got out of the car; and then all I remember is seeing wires falling down. Then he got back in the car, drove to the bottom of the hill --

Q: Now, let's slow down a little bit.

Was this a telephone pole that Tex stopped his car at?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Tex climb the telephone pole?

A: I guess so, yeah.

Q: While Tex was out of the car did you, Sadie and Katie stay in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: So he was the only one that was out of the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Where were you in relation to the telephone pole?

A: I was on the passenger side.

Q: And the passenger side of the car was right next to the telephone pole?



A: Right.

Q: Did you see Tex cut any telephone wires?

A: I didn't see him actually cut them, but I saw the wires fall.

Q: To the ground?

A: Yes.

Q: How many wires fell to the ground?

A: I didn't count them. A few.

Q: Now, you spoke about a metal object extending out.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph previously marked People's 73.

May it be remarked People's 73?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 73 for identification.

What is shaft in that photograph, Linda?

A: The telephone pole and that metal object.

Q: Okay; and this is where Tex parked the car?

A: Yes.

Q: And you say after these telephone wires fell to the ground you drove back down where?

A: To the bottom of the hill.

Q: You parked the car at the bottom of the hill?

A: Yes.

Q: All right. What is the next thing that happened?

A: We all got out of the car and started walking up, up the hill that we had just driven down from.

Q: Okay. Did Tex take anything out of the car with him?

A: Well, I just remember we were walking up, that he had rope around his shoulders.

Q: Do you know what type of rope this was?

A: Type?

Q: Yes, what color was it, for instance?

A: I don't know. I just remember he had rope around his shoulder.

Q: You don't know the dimensions of the rope -- was it fairly long, the rope?

A: I don't know; it was wound around his shoulder.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here some rope previously marked People's 41 for identification. May it be remarked People's 41.

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I realise, Linda, there is no way you could tell whether this was the exact rope; but tell me this, does this rope resemble the type of rope that Tex had over his shoulders, or does it look completely different?

A: I don't know. I just know he had rope around his shoulder.

Q: You don't know whether this rope resembles that rope?

A: No.

Q: Did you see any rope in the car as you were driving to the Tate residence?

A: I don't think so.

Q: So, then, all four of you started advancing up the driveway again towards the gate?

A: Right.

Q: Now, en route to the Tate residence did Tex tell you, Sadie and Katie anything about what to do once you got there?

A: While we were walking --

Q: I'm sorry, as you were driving that night towards the residence, inside the car, did Tex say anything to you, Sadie and Katie?

A: Yeah, when we first left, he said that -- something about he'd been to this house before and he knew the layout of the house and just to do whatever he told us to do.

Q: So then you approached the gate of the residence; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: Let's see, we climbed up a small embankment, climbed through some barbed wire which was part of a fence, part of the gate.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have another photograph previously marked 86 for identification. May it be remarked people's 86 for identification?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Looking at people's 86, Linda, do you recall my showing you this photograph during the last trial?

A: Yes.

Q: And there is a telephone pole here on the left and there is an X and some writing "where Tex parked car"; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And over to the right I notice a gate and there is an embankment and there is an arrow and some writing "path defendants took in going over fence." Is that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: So this is the path you took then in going over the front gate of the Tate residence?

A: Yes.

Q: As indicated by these arrows here and the writing; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Once you, Tex, Katie and Sadie went over the front gate of the Tate residence, what is the next thing that happened?

A: Almost immediately after we all got through the fence some headlights started coming toward us and Tex sort of said, you know, "Get down," which we did and the car came right up to us and Tex had a gun in his hand and there was a man in the car and I saw his face, he wore glasses, and he said something about, "Please don't hurt me. I won't say anything." And Tex just shot him in the head four times.

Q: Where were you in relation to this car?

A: Right there, right -- the car was right here and I was five feet from it or something.

Q: Was the driver of the car fairly close to you?

A: Yeah.

Q: You were on the driver's side of the car then?

A: Yes.

Q: Just a couple of feet away?

A: Yes.

Q: And you saw Tex shoot this man?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: I think she said five feet away; is that right?

THE WITNESS: I don't know the exact feet.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I think I said a few feet away.

Q: What is the next thing that happened, Linda?

A: The next thing know Tex told me to walk behind the house.

Q: Well, did Tex do anything to this car after he shot the man?

A: Yeah, I think he did. I think he moved it. I am not sure. I can't quite see it.

Q: Do you think he moved the car?

A: I think do, yes.

Q: In the direction of the house?

A: I think he moved it backwards, I'm not sure.

Q: Backwards would he in the direction of the house; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Because the car was on its way --

A: Out from.

Q: -- leaving the premises.

A: Yes.

Q: Was the engine to the car on at the time that Tex shot this man?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: Did Tex do anything to the ignition before he pushed the car?

A: He turned it off.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: I remember we started walking towards the house.

Q: All four of you?

A: I guess so. I can't account for Sadie and Katie at this point. I don't know and I just remember him telling me to go in back and to look for open doors and windows.

Q: Who told you that?

A: Tex.

THE COURT: To do what?

THE WITNESS: To look for open doors and windows and I did. I went behind the

house and I don't really remember lifting with my hands to open the doors and windows and I came around front and Tex was standing at a window with a screen and he cut this screen.

I remember I could see inside and I saw flowers on the dining room table and I think he told me to go wait by the car, which I did.

The next thing I know I was waiting by that car where the man was shot.

Q: Did he tell you to do anything by the car?

A: He might have told me just to stay there and listen, but I don't know, I don't really remember that.

Q: Now, what car are you referring to? Are you referring to the car that you came to the residence in or the car where the man was shot?

A: The car where the man was shot.

Q: You say Tex cut a screen on a window. Did he cut it up and down or --

A: No.

Q: -- sideways?

A: He cut it across.

Q: Horizontally then?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a photograph, your Honor, previously marked people's 26 -- I believe this has already been marked at this trial -- I show you people's exhibit 26, Linda. You will notice there is a marking, there is a screen that is off the window and there is a horizontal red line. It says "Slit in screen."

Q: Is this approximately where Tex cut the screen.

A: Yes.

Q: And you realize this was marked during the previous trial?

A: Yes

Q: Does the marking on the photograph appear to be correct at this time?

A: Yeah, I think so.

Q: Showing you people's 4 for identification, does this appear to be a photograph of the residence where this happened?

A: Yes.

Q: And you will notice that the second window to the right of the front door, the window is open and there is a screen on the ground. Do you see that?

A: Yes.

Q: And this screen does it appear to be the same screen that is shown in people's 26 for identification?

A: Yes.

Q: So then you went down to the car. What is the next thing that happened?

A: I remember I squatted down and I just was waiting and then Katie came to me and she asked me for her knife -- for my knife and I gave it to her. She told me to wait there and listen for sounds and I did.

She went back towards the house and time passed by, I don't know how long, and then I started hearing screams and then I started running towards the house,.

Q: These were screams coming from the direction of the house?

A: Yes.

Q: And were these loud screams?

A: Yes.

Q: Were they constant screams?

A: Yes.

Q: Did they appear to be the screams of men and women?

A: Just screams of people.

Q: How long did they scream?

A: I don't know how long.

Q: Do you know what they were screaming?

A: Just like I have never heard. I don't know -- pleading, I don't --

Q: Pleading for their lives?

A: Screams, yes.

MR. BUBRICK: Oh, I object to that.

THE COURT: The objection to that is sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: They were pleading --

THE COURT: Just a moment. The jury will disregard the last question asked by counsel.

Q: They were pleading, Linda?

A: Excuse me?

Q: These screams were pleading screams?

A: They were just screams -- pleading screams, yes.

THE COURT: What do you mean by pleading screams?

THE WITNESS: Just -- I don't know how to describe it -- I have never heard screams before like that, and I don't know -- I don't know.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: What is the next thing that happened, Linda?

A: I ran towards the house.

Q: Why did you run towards the house?

A: I don't know. I guess -- I don't know.

Q: What is the next thing that happened when you ran towards the house?

A: A man came out of the front door and he was staggering and he had blood all over his face and he looked at me and I looked at him. He was leaning against the pole and he fell.

Q: To his left or to his right?

A: Towards me -- to my right.

Q: To your right, which would be to his left?

A: Yeah.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: Sadie came running out and I said to her, I said, "Sadie, please, make him stop"; I said, "People are coming."

Q: Were people, in fact, coming?

A: No, I don't think so.

Q: Why did you tell Sadie that?

A: I don't know. I was afraid; I just wanted her to stop; and she said something about that she left her knife in the house, something like that, and then the next thing I knew, the man was right there that had fallen down and Tex was right there and he was hitting him over- the head and just kept stabbing him and stabbing him and stabbing him to the ground; and Katie was in the background chasing a woman. She had a knife and I just turned and I ran back to the bottom of the hill to the car, and I laid on the

ground.

Q: Going back just a moment, Linda, you say Tex was hitting this man over the head?

A: What?

Q: You say Tex was hitting this man over the head?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know what he was hitting him with?

A: I don't know. It looked like a gun, but I don't know.

Q: And you also say that Tex stabbed the man.

A: Yes.

Q: Where was the man when Tex was stabbing him; where was he in relation to the house?

A: On the front of the house.

Q: When he first came out, when this man first came out the front door, you say he fell down to his left --

A: Yes.

Q: -- into some bushes?

A: Yes.

Q: Right outside the front door?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he ever get up from that position?

A: I don't remember seeing him get up.

Q: When Tex was stabbing this man, were they right outside the front door, right near the front door?

A: No, they were -- I was away from the front door on the sidewalk and they were this way to me, and the front door was here.

THE COURT: You have indicated to your left; they were to your left?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Let's take a look at People's 4. for identification again, Linda.

This is the front of the Tate residence. There is the front door and you notice there is a VF for Wojciech Frokowski is where Mr. Frykowski fell when he first came out the front



door?

A: Yes.

Q: I notice also on this photograph there is an LK on the sidewalk. That stands for "Linda Kasabian," is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that where you were standing?

A: Yes.

Q: I notice over here on the front lawn there is a VF, Wojciech Frykowski No. 2. When Tex was stabbing Mr. Frykowski, was he at the VF, which is right outside the front door, or was he at VF-2, which is on the front lawn?

A: He was at VP-2.

Q: Frykowski was at VP-2?

A: Yes.

Q: When Tex was stabbing him, what was Mr. Frykowski doing?

A: Just screaming and yelling and begging, falling to the ground.

Q: What part of Mr. Frykowski's body did Mr. -- did Tex Watson stab?

A: His back.

THE COURT: What is that exhibit number?

MR. BUGLIOSI: That is People's 4, your Honor.

I have here a photograph, People's 25 for identification.

May it be remarked People's 25, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Showing you People's 25 for identification, Linda -- I know you do not want to look at it -- will you briefly look at it and indicate whether this is the gentleman you saw Tex stab?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, you indicated, also, that Patricia Krenwinkel, you saw her chasing after some woman?

A: Yes.

Q: Was that also on the front lawn of the Tate residence?

A: Yes.

Q: Could you describe this woman?

A: Just remember that she had a white gown on and she had black hair, long hair.

Q: Long, black hair and a white gown; is that correct?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph previously marked People's 88.

May it be remarked People's '88?

Q: Does this appear to be the woman --

A: My God -- yes.

Q: -- that Katie was chasing after?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever see Katie stab this woman?

A: No.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May have just a moment, your Honor?

I have here an aerial photograph previously marked People's 7 for identification. May it be remarked People's 7?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: This is an aerial photograph, Linda, of the Tate residence.

This is the front lawn of the Tate residence. Do you remember during a prior trial marking these two X-s here on the front lawn, where you saw the lady with the white gown and Mr. Frykowski lying; or where you saw them in front of the house?

A: Do I remember marking?

Q: My memory is that you told me where to place an X; is that correct?

A: I guess so, yeah.

Q: Well, you will notice on this aerial photograph there is an X and it says, "Frykowski" and there to an, X and it says "Folger."

Do you remember telling me during the first trial to place X's there where the bodies were?

A: I think so, yes.

Q: Prior to the first trial, the trial that you testified to, had you been shown any photographs of any of the victims in this case in death?

A: I don't think so -- no.

Q: You were shown them for the first time at the last trial?

A: Yeah.

Q: Going back just a little bit. When Tex told you to go back down to the car, you went down to the car where the man was shot; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you look inside the car at the point?

A: Yes, I glanced.

Q: What did you see?

A: A man slouched over.

Q: Was his head slouched to the left or to the right?

A: To the right.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a photograph, your Honor, previously marked people' 42 for identification. May it be remarked people's 42?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you people's 42 for identification.  
Do you know what is shown in that photograph?

A: Yes.

Q: This is the man in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Is this the way he looked when you were down by the car?

A: I couldn't see all that.

Q: But his head was slouched to the right like this?

A: Yes.

Q: Now we are back down at the bottom of the hill where Tex had parked the car and you were down there by yourself; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Tex, Sadie, and Katie eventually come down to the car?

A: Yes.

Q: How long after you got to the car did they arrive?

A: Just a few minutes.

Q: Did they appear to have blood on them?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened after they arrived back at the car?

A: I was already in the car and I remember Tex came over, and I had started the car, and he told me to turn the car off and told me to push over and I did and they all got in and started up the car and drove off.

And they changed their clothes. I held the wheel for Tex and he changed his clothes.

THE COURT: What?

THE WITNESS: I held the wheel for Tex while he changed his clothes.

THE COURT: Speak up.

THE WITNESS: Something was mentioned about finding a place to hose off and finding a garbage can and burning their clothes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Who said this?

A: Tex did.

Q: What did Tex say in that regard?

A: I don't remember his exact words,

Q: What did he say about clothing?

A: Just that he wanted to find a garbage can and burn the clothes.

Q: The clothing that they had on?

A: Yes.

Q: Before this discussion about the clothing and the hosing off, did Tex say anything to Sadie about her knife?

A: I don't remember words but I know he was mad because she had lost her knife and he was mad at me because I went to the car and the car was on but I don't remember his words, what he said.

Q: But he was mad at both of you?

A: Yes.

Q: Mad at Sadie because she lost her knife.

A: Yes.

Q: And mad at you for running back down to the car.

A: Yes.

Q: Let me ask you this; Was the revolver in the car at that point?

A: Yes.

Q: Did the revolver appear to be in the same condition at the time as it was previously when you were driving to the Tate residence?

A: I don't know at what time I noticed but I noticed that the handle was broke.

Q: Now, you say the handle was broke. You are referring to the right handle on the grip here?

A: Yes.

Q: It was off the way it is right now

A: Yes.

Q: Now, when you were driving to the Tate residence that night was the handle on the grip?

A: Yes, I assume -- yes.

Q: Was the wooden grip on the handle?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Tex say anything to you about this grip not being on the handle?

A: I think he said something about that it had broken and it didn't work when he hit the man over the head. I don't remember his words.

Q: How many knives were in the car at that point? Now, this is after you are all back in the car and you are driving away.

Q: How many knives were in the car?

A: Two.

Q: Your buck knife?

A: Yes.

Q: And one of the others?

A: No, not my buck knife.

Q: Not your buck knife?

A: No, the knife that I had with the tape and the other knife I don't remember what that looked like.

THE COURT: The knife with the tape was in the car?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: What about the other?

THE WITNESS: The one that looked similar to it I can't remember.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: This buck knife, exhibit 39, you brought to Spahn's, this was no longer in the car?

A: No.

Q: So you assume that this is the knife that Sadie left at the Tate residence?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: If you have come to a new topic we can recess.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentleman of the jury, we will recess until tomorrow at 9:30.

Once more, ladies and gentlemen, do not form or express any opinion in this case. Do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else. Please keep your minds open.

The spectators will remain seated until the jury leaves.

(An adjournment was taken until Tuesday, August 17, 1971 at 9:30 a.m.)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, TUESDAY, AUGUST 17, 1971

9:45 A.M.

-- oOo --

THE COURT: Good morning.

Good morning, gentlemen.

MR. KAY: Good morning, your Honor.

MR. BUBRICK: Good morning your Honor.

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all our jurors are present; defendant and all counsel are present.

Mr. Bugliosi.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The bailiff is getting Linda now, your Honor.

THE CLERK: You have been previously sworn.

Would you restate your name for the record?

THE WITNESS: Linda Kasabian.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

LINDA KASABIAN,

resumed the stand and testified further as follows:

DIRECT EXAMINATION (Resumed) BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: Linda, while you were on the Tate premises did you notice any lights on the premises?

A: Yes.

Q: Where did you see these lights?

A: I guess it was the garage; it was a big spotlight over the garage; and at the front door there was a light.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph previously marked people's 16.

May it be remarked people's 16?

THE COURT: It will be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you people's 16 for identification.

Do you know what is shown on that photograph, Linda?

A: Yes, it is the light, the spotlight.

Q: Now, you notice that on this photograph -- this was used during the previous trial -- there is a light; there is a circle around it and then there is an arrow and it says, "Light that Linda testified she saw on."

Is that all correct on this photograph?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here another photograph, your Honor, previously marked 111.

May it be remarked people's 111?

THE COURT: Before we get to that, on 16 is that the light on the front of the house or the garage?

MR. BUGLIOSI: No, this is the garage.

THE COURT: Is that right, Mrs. Kasabian?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: Okay.

Now, one hundred what?

MR. BUGLIOSI: 111.

Q: Do you know what is shown on this photograph, Linda?

A: Yeah, it's the light on the front porch.

Q: This is the light right to the right of the front door of the Tate residence?

A: To my left.

Q: Right. Facing the house, the light is to the left of the front door?

A: Right.

Q: And coming out, it is to the right; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Was that light on on the night of the murders?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: Getting back to your driving away from the Tate residence, where had the car been parked in relation to the residence?

A: I didn't hear the question.

Q: Where had the car been parked in relation to the residence?

A: The car that we drove up in?

Q: Yes, John Swartz' car.

A: At the bottom of the hill.

Q: At the bottom of the driveway?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here another photograph previously marked people's 25 for identification. May it be remarked people's 25?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Looking at people's 25, it is an aerial photograph of the Tate residence and surrounding area. In the upper left-hand corner there is an X and writing "Where defendants parked car."

Is that where the car was parked? Orient yourself to the photograph.

A: Yes.

Q: So the marking on this photograph here, people's 25, is correct; is that right?

A: Right.

Q: As you were driving away from the Tate residence Tex was driving the car?



THE COURT: Mr. Bugliosi, before you show the witness the photographs, would you be good enough to show them to the defense counsel.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes. These have been here for about a half hour on the desk. I told them we were going to use these photographs.

THE COURT: Still they should be shown the one you are going to use.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I will show them to them the second time.

Q: As you were driving away from the Tate residence, did Katie and Sadie say anything to you?

A: Yes. They made mention that -- Sadie specifically said that when she was struggling with the man that he hit her over the head and that the victims were pulling her hair and Katie mentioned that her hand hurt, something about when she was stabbing that, you know, she came across bones or something and it was hard -- it hurt her hand, the palm of her hand.

THE COURT: Would you read that back, please.

(Record read.)

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Did Katie say that either one of the two girls --

MR. BUBRICK: I object to that as being leading, your Honor.

THE COURT: Sustained.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I haven't asked the question yet.

THE COURT: The way you started out.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The question is did Sadie say any of the two girls had said anything?

THE COURT: Katie -- what was that?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Did Katie say any of the girls inside the residence had said anything?

THE COURT: I will allow that.

THE WITNESS: Yes. She said something about one of them was crying out for her mother and she said, "Oh, God," or something like that.

THE COURT: Would you try to keep your voice up, please. We will have to have the microphone adjusted again.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: What was your state of mind, Linda, as Tex was driving

away from the Tate residence?

A: I was just really scared.

Q: You say Tex said that he was looking for a place to burn the clothing?

MR. BUBRICK: She didn't say anything like that. Leading and suggestive.

THE COURT: She said something about that yesterday.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You say Tex said that he was looking for a place to burn the clothing?

A: Yes.

Q: And also a place to wash the blood off their bodies.

A: Yes.

Q: Did Tex eventually stop the car?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: And where did he stop the car?

A: At the bottom of the hill.

Q: How far was this place from the Tate residence?

A: Not very far, a few minutes.

Q: Was this on a residential street?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: Was it a level street or a hilly street or what?

A: There was a hill there, yeah.

Q: And Tex did what now with the car?

A: Excuse me?

Q: What did Tex do with the car?

A: At the car?

Q: What did he do with the car? He parked it somewhere.

A: Yes. We drove up a hill on the street, then turned around and parked. We spotted a hose and a little bit past the hose he parked.

Q: Where was the hose in relation to the house?

A: In front of the house.

Q: Would you recognise that house if you saw it again?

A: Yeah, I think so.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph previously marked People's 43.  
May it be remarked People's 43?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Linda, I show you, People's 43 for identification.

Do you know what is shown on this photograph?

A: Yes, it is the house and the hose and the hedge.

Q: Now, there is a hose extending out from the house into the street; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Tex did not park the car in front of the house; is that correct?

A: No, he didn't.

MR. BUBRICK: Has the photo been marked yet?

THE COURT: 43.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, 43

Q: Tex parked the car at the bottom of the hill?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, once he parked the car at the bottom of the hill, what is the next thing that happened?

A: We all got out and walked up to the hose and Tex pulled the hose from the driveway sort of in front of the house, out to the street by the hedge.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here another photograph previously marked People's 44.

May it be remarked People's 44?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 44 for identification, Linda.

Do you know what is shown on that photograph?

A: Yeah, the house and the hedge, the road, the hose and approximately where we parked the car.

Q: Now, on this photograph, here in the upper right-hand corner there is a car; is it encircled in red, there is an arrow and there is some writing, "Where Tex parked car."

Are all of those markings correct?

A: Yes.

Q: This car, of course, is not Johnny Swartz car?

A: No, not in the picture, no.

Q: After Tex pulled the hose out into the street, what is the next thing that happened?

A: They started washing themselves.

Q: When you say "they," about whom are you referring?

A: Katie, Sadie and Tex.

Q: Washing the blood off their bodies?

A: Yes.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: After about half a minute, I guess, some lady came out, she started screaming, "Who's there? What are you doing?" Something like that; and Tex very calmly said, "We are getting a drink of water"; and her husband came out.

I don't really remember if she said it or he said it, but it was mentioned that he was a sheriff's deputy or some kind of a police officer and he asked us if that was our car. He pointed to the car down the road and Tex said, no, that we were walking; and about that point, he started walking towards the car and we ran to the car and jumped in and the man reached his hand into the car and tried to take the keys out of the ignition, which didn't happen and Tex just very fast drove away.

Q: Did anyone talk to this man other than Tex?

Did you or Katie or Sadie say anything --

A: No.

Q: -- just Tex spoke to him?

Again, showing you People's 43 for identification, there are two markings on this photograph, one marking says, "Where a Mr. Weber saw four people; another says, "Where defendants hosed themselves off."

Are these markings correct; is this appropriately where Tex, Katie and Sadie were washing themselves off?

A: Yes.

Q: Was it very dark down by the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Could you describe the man and the woman who came out of the house?

A: They were old, short, the man had white hair; I can't really remember the lady.

Q: They were both short?

A: I think so, yeah.

Q: You say the man had white hair?

A: Yeah.

Q: Showing you People's 45 again, does that appear to be the man you saw that night?

A: I'm not positive, but he's got white hair, looks like him.

Q: You didn't get a good look at him?

A: No.

THE COURT: You said, "showing you 45 again."

I don't believe you introduced 45.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I'm sorry, your Honor, it was previously marked People's 45.

May it be remarked People's 45?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: The man shown in People's 45 has white hair and that's the only thing that you remember about him; right?

A: Yeah, and that he was old.

Q: About how old?

A: I don't know, 60, maybe, something like that.

Q: So he was around 60 years old and he had white hair; beyond that, you cannot describe him?

A: No.

Q: And his wife was about the same age?

A: Yeah.

Q: Where is the next place you went to after you drove away from this hosing incident?

A: Well, we were driving and Tex had me wipe the fingerprints off of the knife and he pulled off onto a dirt shoulder of the road and told me to throw the clothes out of the car, which I got out of the car and did.

Q: What clothing is that?  
A: The bloody clothes.  
Q: Belonging to whom?  
A: Tex, Sadie and Katie.  
Q: So they each gave you their clothing?  
A: Yes.  
Q: And you got out of the car?  
A: Yes.  
Q: Where was this area where you got out of the car?  
A: I don't know the area; it was on a road.  
Q: Was it a residential area or was it out in the country?  
A: It was out in the country.  
Q: Did there seem to be quite a few homes around?  
A: No.  
Q: Very few homes?  
A: Yes.  
Q: Was it a hilly area?  
A: Yes.  
Q: Straight road or winding road?  
A: Winding road.  
Q: Was it dark?  
A: Yes.  
Q: Tex pulled the car where, now?  
A: Off into a dirt shoulder from the road.  
Q: And he told you what?  
A: To throw the clothes out.  
Q: And you got out of the car?  
A: Yes.  
Q: Did Tex, Katie and Sadie stay in the car?  
A: Yes.  
Q: Did you, in fact, throw the clothing --

A: Yes.

Q: -- over the aids of the hill?

A: Yes.

Q: Separately, or in one bundle, or what?

A: Just in one bundle.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a pair of blue jeans previously marked People's 56 for identification.

May they be remarked People's 56?

THE COURT: They may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Have you ever seen these blue jeans before, or pants similar to this; were they in the car that night?

A: Well, we all wore pants like that, Levi's.

Q: So these look like the type that were in the car that night?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you know who was wearing these?

A: No, not specifically, no.

Q: Is this one of the articles of clothing that you threw over the side of the hill, to your knowledge?

A: Probably, yeah.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here, your Honor, a black pair of pants, previously marked People's 55.

May they be marked People's 55?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Do these black pants look familiar to you?

A: I am not sure. I mean --

Q: Do they?

A: They are dark clothes. They all had dark clothes.

Q: Do they resemble a pair of pants that you threw over the hill?

A: Yes.

Q: How many articles of clothing did you throw over the side of the hill?

A: I didn't count them.

Q: Were you given a top and a bottom of all three -- Tex, Sadie and Katie, their tops and their bottoms?

A: I imagine so but, you know, I didn't look at these individually.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here another article, you Honor, of clothing previously marked people's 54 for identification.

May it be remarked people's 54?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Have you ever seen this article of clothing before?

A: Yes. It is a T-shirt that, you know, we had.

Q: Would you repeat that?

A: It is a T-shirt that, you know, we had at the ranch that somebody wore.

Q: Do you know who was wearing this on the night of the Tate murders?

A: Well, I know Sadie had a big T-shirt on. If that is the one I don't know.

Q: Was it this color?

A: Yes, Navy blue.

Q: This looks like one of the pair or one of the articles of clothing that you threw over the side of the hill?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have another pair of pants, your Honor, previously marked people's 51.

May they be remarked people's 51?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Do you recognize this pair of clothing?

A: Another pair of Navy blue pants.

Q: I have shown you three pair so far. Were Katie, Sadie and Tex all wearing, as you say, dark clothing?

A: Yes.

Q: And dark pants?

A: Yes.

Q: All three of them?

A: Yes, they were.



Q: None of them had a one-piece suit on? They were all wearing dark pants?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here, your Honor, another article of clothing previously marked people's 50 for identification.

May it be remarked people's 50?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Have you ever seen this black velour sweater before?

A: Yes, I definitely remember Tex wore that.

Q: So Tex was wearing this particular article of clothing that night?

A: Yes.

Q: And is this one of the items that you threw over the side of the hill?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a black T-shirt, your Honor, previously marked people's 52 for identification.

May it be remarked people's 52?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Do you recall seeing this black T-shirt that night?

A: Yes. I definitely remember Katie had that one.

Q: Patricia Krenwinkel was wearing this article?

A: Yes.

Q: And this is one of the items that you threw over the side of the hill?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here another black velour pullover previously marked -- I will withdraw that, your Honor, it is a different article.

I have here a white T-shirt, Linda, previously marked people's 53.

May it be remarked people's 53, your Honor?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Do you recall seeing anything white that night on any of the people in the car: Tex, Katie, or Sadie?

A: I don't think so.

Q: So you remember that they were all dressed in black, black tops or dark tops and

dark bottoms?

A: Yes.

Q: But you don't recall any white T-shirt?

A: No.

Q: This place where you threw the clothing over the side of the hill, how far was that from the place where Tex, Katie and Sadie hosted the blood off their bodies?

A: I don't know in miles or distance, but it wasn't very far.

Q: A couple of minutes away?

A: Yes.

Q: After you threw the clothing over the side of the hill, you got back into the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Tex drove off?

A: Yes.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: I don't know, we were driving up hills, up and down, winding, and then he told me to throw the knives out and I did.

Q: You say the knives. Are you referring to the two knives that were in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: You started out with three knives that night.

A: Yes.

Q: And you ended up with two knives?

A: Right.

Q: You said something about fingerprints. What did Tex tell you to do with respect to fingerprints?

A: He told me to wipe them off, which I did.

Q: You were told to wipe the fingerprints off these two knives?

A: Yes.

Q: And you did that?

A: Yes.

Q: Then he told you to throw the knives where?

A: To throw them out.

Q: Out of the car?

A: Out of the car, yes.

Q: Did you do that?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Was the car in motion as you threw the knives out?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: Do you know where the knives landed?

A: The first one I saw land in the bushes and the second one -- I had a hard time throwing them out and the second one bounced off the curb and landed in the road.

Q: With respect to the revolver that I showed you earlier, people's 40 for identification, do you remember whether or not you threw that out of the car?

A: I am not sure. I don't remember if I did.

Q: You don't know what happened to that revolver?

A: No.

Q: After you threw the clothing over the side of the hill and you threw the knives out of the car window, what is the next thing that happened?

A: We kept driving. It seems we were going down -- down a hill and then we started coming to city lights and we came to a gas station and Tex pulled into the gas station, ordered some gas, two dollars worth of gas, and told the girls to go in the ladies room and wash up and he went in and --

Q: He went where?

A: To the men's room.

And then they all came back. He came back. I don't know who came back first and who went first and then he had me drive and I drove back to the ranch.

Q: You say he had you drive.

Did he tell you to drive?

A: Yes.

Q: And you drove all the way back to Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: At the gasoline station did he buy some gas?

A: Yes.

Q: How much?

A: Two dollars worth.

Q: With cash?

A: Yeah.

Q: At the gas station did Tex say anything about money?

A: Yes, made mention that they took \$70 from the house.

Q: Who said who took \$70?

A: I think Tex did.

Q: Tex said what?

A: That he took some money, \$70.

Q: From where?

A: I think it was \$70. I am not sure how much.

Q: From where?

A: From the house.

Q: Do you know the approximate time that you arrived back to Spahn Ranch?

A: No.

Q: You arrived at the Tate residence at approximately midnight. How long after you were at the Tate residence did you arrive back at the Spahn Ranch, approximately?

A: A couple of hours, I guess.

Q: Was anyone waiting for you when you arrived back at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes, Charlie.

Q: Who was that?

A: Charlie was.

Q: Charles Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: Was he by himself?

A: Yes, he was.

Q: He was waiting for you on the parking lot?

A: Yes, about the same spot we had left.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: Sadie said something about, she said she saw blood and so he -- he had all the

three of us, the girls, go through the car and look for blood and Sadie went into the kitchen.

THE COURT: I didn't hear the end. Would you read that back, please.

(Record read.)

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Sadie saw blood where?

A: I am not sure. I think on the outside of the car, but I am not sure.

Q: Then you, Sadie, and Katie started looking throughout the car for blood spots?

A: I think so.

Q: Did you find any?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: Sadie got a sponge and washed off the blood that she saw and Charlie told us to go into the bunk room, which we did, and I laid down. Everybody was sitting on the floor.

Q: When you arrived in the bunk room was anyone already there?

A: Yes.

Q: Who?

A: Brenda and Clem.

Q: Brenda McCann and Clem?

A: And Clem, yes.

Q: So there was you, Brenda McCann, Clem, Sadie and Katie?

A: Yes.

Q: Inside the bunk room?

A: Yes.

Q: What about Charlie and Tex?

A: They came in together a few minutes later.

Q: What happened inside the bunk room?

A: I don't know. I remember I was laying down and I was really tired and I heard Tex say to Charles something about he told the people that he was the Devil. He was there to do the Devil's work and then he started saying that there was a lot of fear and a lot of panic and it was really messy and that, I don't know, bodies were all over the place but

they were all dead.

Q: Tex said this to Charlie?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did anyone else talk to Charlie other than Tex?

A: I don't remember.

Q: The only person you remember talking to Charlie was Tex?

A: Yeah.

THE COURT: Who said he was the Devil, Charlie or Tex?

THE WITNESS: Tex.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So Tex told Charlie that he, Tex, told the people --

A: Yes.

Q: -- inside the residence --

A: Yes.

Q: -- that Tex was the Devil --

A: Right.

Q: -- there to do the Devil's work?

A: Yes.

Q: After Tex said these things to Charlie did Charlie say anything?

A: I think he just said not to talk about it and to go and get some sleep or something.

Q: Did Charlie say anything about remorse?

A: Oh, yeah; he asked us if we had any remorse and everybody said no, and I said no; but I did.

Q: And then Charlie told you to do what, go to bed?

A: Yeah.

Q: And not to say anything?

A: Not to say anything, yeah.

Q: He told that to all of you?

A: Yeah.

Q: And you, in fact, did go to bed?

A: Yes.

Q: The following day, that would be Saturday, August the 9th, 1969, were you at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you watch any television that day?

A: Yeah, in the afternoon we did.

Q: In the trailer there at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see a television account of the murders?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you learn who the victims were?

A: Yes.

Q: Sharon Tate, Abigail Folger, et cetera?

A: Yes.

Q: Had you ever heard their names before?

A: No.

Q: That was the first time, then, that you knew who the victims had been?

A: Yes.

Q: On the way to the Tate residence or leaving the Tate residence did you hear Tex, Sadie or Katie mention these people's names?

A: No.

Q: Did you have dinner again at the ranch that night?

A: Yeah.

Q: After sundown?

A: Yes.

Q: And Charlie and Tex were there?

A: Yes.

Q: And the rest of the family?

A: Yeah, everybody was there.

Q: And what did you do after dinner that night?

A: I don't know. I remember I was in the kitchen with a bunch of girls and Charlie came in and called me and Leslie and Katie aside and told us to go get a change of

clothing and he told me to get a driver's license, which we did.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: We all met in the bunk room.

Q: What happened in the bunk room?

A: Charlie said something about that we were going to go out again tonight and that last night was too messy, or something like that, and he was going to show us how to do it; and I remember I saw two long swords, that's all I remember.

Q: Everyone was in the bunk house at that time, or the bunk room?

A: Everyone?

Q: Well, the same group.

A: Leslie was there and Clem was there.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have her a photograph of a female Caucasian.  
May it be marked People's 301 for identification?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 301 for identification.

Do you know who is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, that's Leslie.

Q: Leslie Van Houten?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Tex say anything to Manson inside the bunk room?

A: Yeah, he said something about that weapons -- the weapons that we used the night before weren't any good and that we needed better weapons, or something like that.

Q: Did he say why they were no good?

A: Not that I can recall right now.

Q: You saw a few swords or several swords?

A: Two swords.

Q: Inside the bunk room?

A: Yes.

Q: Had you ever seen these swords before?

A: Yes.



Q: Where?

A: Well, they are always in the bunk room or they are at the waterfall; they are usually wherever we went; they went with us.

Q: Did Charlie have a dune buggy?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever see a sword on the side of the dune buggy?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a photograph, your Honor, previously marked People's 48.

May it be remarked People's 48?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 48 for identification.

Do you know what is shown in that photograph, Linda?

A: Yes, that's Charlie's dune buggy.

Q: To the left, right next to the driver's seat, there appears to be a sword; is that right?

A: Yes, it is the pirate's sword, as I see it.

Q: It looks like a pirate's sword?

A: Yes.

Q: Was that one of the swords that were in the dune buggy that night?

A: Yes.

Q: What is the next thing that happened -- you are in the bunk room now with the group; what's the next thing that happened?

A: I just remember starting to get into the car.

Q: The same car of the previous night?

A: Yeah.

Q: John Swartz' car?

A: Yeah, and Charlie handed me some leather thongs, strip of leather, which I put in my pocket.

Everybody got into the car; we started to drive away and about the same spot that Charlie stopped us the night before, he stopped the car again and got out and went

looking for Bruce for some money; and a few minutes passed by and he came back.  
Then we all left, started driving away.

Q: Were there any knives in the car?

A: Yeah, they wars under the seat of the driver's side.

Q: The knives?

A: Yeah.

Q: What about the swords, were they in the car?

A: Well, the two swords were under the seat.

Q: The two swords were under the seat?

A: Yeah.

Q: Was there a gun in the car?

A: I think so. I can't amount for it, though; I'm not sure.

Q: How many of you were in the car at this point?

A: Let's see, me, Charlie, Clem, Tex, Leslie, Katie and Sadie.

Q: Seven of you?

A: I guess.

THE COURT: What was that last name?

THE WITNESS: Sadie.

THE COURT: Sadie was the last name?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So there were seven of you in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was driving the car?

A: Charlie.

Q: Where were you in the car?

A: In the middle, between the driver and the passenger.

Q: Did Charlie tell you why he was giving you the leather thongs?

A: No.

Q: Do you know what happened to those leather thongs?

A: No.

Q: Did Manson have any leather thongs on his person that you saw?

A: Yeah, he had it around his neck.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Now, I have here some leather thongs previously marked people's 241 for identification.

May they be remarked people's 241 for identification?

THE COURT: They may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you some leather thongs, Linda; do these thongs appear to be different or essentially the same as the leather thongs that Manson had around his neck that night?

A: The same.

Q: And essentially the same as the kind that be give to you?.

A: Yes.

Q: Where did Manson drive to?

A: To gas station, and he got some gas, and I believe he got out and bought some cigarettes.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: I think he had me drive from that point. I can't remember at the moment.

Q: So you took over the driver's seat?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, Linda, you indicated that the previous night when you left Spahn Ranch you didn't know what was going to happen, you thought you were going to go out and steal; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, this second night you did know what was going to happen?

A: Yes.

Q: You know that you were going to go out and kill?

A: Um-hmm.

Q: Did you want to go along?

A: Of course not.

Q: Why did you go along?

A: Because you just don't say no to Charlie; and I just felt I didn't have a choice.

Q: After you started driving the car did Manson direct you anywhere?

A: Yeah, I was driving on a freeway and towards Pasadena and he told me to get off at an exit, which was Fair Oaks exit. I had been there before; and I don't know from there -- we ended up in a residential area, and driving around the streets.

Q: Was Manson directing you where to go?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you stop anywhere?

A: Yes.

Q: Where?

A: In front of the house.

Q: What type of house was it?

A: Oh, a small house.

Q: One-story?

A: Yeah.

Q: Residential area?

A: Yeah.

Q: How long after you arrived in the Pasadena area did you stop in front of this house?

A: I don't know; not too long.

Q: What happened in front of this house?

A: Charlie got out and he told me to drive around the block and then to come back, which I did; and he got in the car and he said something.

Q: When you say he got in the car, now, you drove around the block --

A: Yes.

Q: -- when you came back was Manson there waiting?

A: Yeah, he was waiting.

Q: And then he got into the car?

A: Right.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: I don't know in the sequence, but he said something about that he saw pictures through the window of the house and he decided not to do it in that house.

Q: Did he say what type of pictures they were?

A: Children's pictures on the wall; and he said something about not to let children stop us for the sakes of children of the future, or something to that effect; and we sat there for a minute because there was a man and a woman further down, a few houses down, that were getting out of their car and we just watched them for a minute and then Charlie just said the man was too big or something and we drove off.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: We drove and drove and he took over driving for a while. I think he drove from that point, I'm not positive now.

Then I just remember driving up a hill and it was pretty high because I could see a lot of city lights, and we stopped in front of another house which was a big house, more expensive looking house; and we looked at the house and then he said something about the houses were too close together.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph previously marked people's 49 for identification.

May it be remarked people's 49?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Linda, I show you people's 49 for identification.

Do you know what is shown in that photograph?

A: Yeah, it looks like the second house.

Q: Okay. There appear to be two homes here, a home on the left is a two-story house, the home on the right is a one-story house?

A: Yes.

Q: The home on the left, the two-story house, do you recognize that home?

A: Yes. That looks like the second house that we stopped at.

Q: Do you remember, Linda, that you and I and several members of the police department drove throughout Pasadena several days looking for these homes?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: Object to that as being immaterial, your Honor.

THE COURT: Well, it is done, but let's not do it again.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Let's not do what again, your Honor?

THE COURT: Make a reference to what you did.

MR. BUGLIOSI: She was with me. I am drawing her attention to what she did.

THE COURT: Ask her if she pointed out this house.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Now, in driving around Pasadena, were you looking for the home that you stopped in front of?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you point this home out to us?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What is the next thing that happened, Linda?

A: We drove to a church.

Q: Was this church also in Pasadena?

A: Yeah.

Q: How far was the church from the second house?

A: Oh, not too far.

Q: Did you stop at the church?

A: Yes, into a parking lot.

Q: Was Charlie driving at that time?

A: I am not sure. I can't quite recall if I was or he was.

Q: What happened at the church?

A: He got out and said something about that he was going to find a priest or a minister.

THE COURT: A priest or what?

THE WITNESS: A minister -- and he got out and came back in a few seconds.

Apparently the door was locked or something like that. Nobody was there. He drove off.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Was the car parked in the parking lot of the church?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember pointing this church out to myself and several members of the police department?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: Same objection, your Honor.

THE COURT: It is leading but she has answered it. Go ahead.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here another photograph previously marked

People's 57 for identification. May it be remarked as People's 57?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Directing your attention to People's 57, do you know what is shown in that photograph?

A: Yes, it looks like the church we stopped at.

Q: Now, on this photograph, Linda, there is an X, there is an arrow and it says, "Where Manson parked the car."

Are these markings correct on this photograph?

A: Yes.

Q: After you drove off from the church, what is the next thing that happened?

A: Got back on the freeway, drove for a long time and Charlie drove. Then I remember near the end of Sunset Boulevard, he had me take over driving.

Q: Sunset Boulevard where? In the downtown area or in the Beverly Hills area?

A: It wasn't downtown. There were houses.

Q: Are you familiar with the Sunset Strip?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did Charlie -- was Charlie driving somewhere in the vicinity of the Sunset Strip?

A: There weren't lights like the Sunset Strip, no.

Q: Was it near the Sunset Strip?

A: I think it was past it.

Q: Past it, toward the ocean?

A: Yes.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: Let's see, I was driving and he told me to take a right, onto this dirt road, which I did, went up the dirt road.

It was real dark. I couldn't see too much and I turned around and came back.

We stopped in front of a house. I remember there was a barn or some kind of a building like that to my right. To my left there was a house but I couldn't really see anything It was dark.

And then we drove on and got, back onto that main road.

Q: Sunset Boulevard?

A: Yeah. Then I took another right and there was expensive type homes and he had me take rights and lefts and rights and lefts and then we got to a point and he told me to turn around and go back the way I came, which I wasn't able to do.

Anyway, we got back onto the main road and I remember driving up a really big hill, a hilly, winding hill and on the top there was a gate that was locked and I turned around and drove back down. I turned around and came back the way we were going, went back the way we were going.

Driving for quite a while and got into intersection lights. There was a white sports car driving down the road and Charles told me to follow it.

Q: Was this on Sunset Boulevard?

A: Yes.

Q: What direction were you going at this time?

A: Back toward the city, away.

Q: You were going away from the ocean?

A: Yes.

Q: Going east?

A: Yes. And he told me to follow the white sports car, and at the next red light to stop and he was going to get out and kill the man and I got to a red stop and stopped and the car was right there beside me and Charlie started to get out, but then the light turned green and the car took off.

Charlie got back in and then I kept driving and he started giving me more directions and finally we ended up in front of a house where I had been a year or so earlier.

Q: What house was this?

A: Harold True.

Q: You say a year earlier you had been to Harold True's place?

A: Yes.

Q: With whom?

A: With my husband and Charlie Melton and a few other friends.

Q: You were not there with any member of the family?

A: No.

Q: This would be then the previous summer, the summer of 1968?



A: Right.

Q: And you parked in front of the house?

A: Yeah.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph of a male Caucasian previously marked People's 61 for identification.

May it be remarked People's 61?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 61, Linda. Do you know who is shown in that photograph?

A: Yes. It is Harold True.

THE COURT: Would you spell the last name?

THE WITNESS: T-r-u-e, I think.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You were driving at this time?

A: Yes.

Q: Manson told you to stop the car in front of this home?

A: Yes.

Q: And you recognized it as being the former residence, or the residence of Harold True?

A: Right.

Q: What happened after you stopped in front of this house?

A: I was really surprised that we stopped there and I said something about, "You are not going to that house, are you?"

And Charlie said, "No, I am going to go next door." And he got out of the car and I saw him walk up the driveway that looked like to Harold's house. Then he disappeared. It was dark and bushes.

Q: Was he to your front or left rear or what?

A: Yes, to my left rear.

Q: So you were behind the driver's seat?

A: Yes.

Q: And he walked up Harold True's driveway?

A: Yes.

Q: And the driveway was to your left rear?

A: Yes.

Q: And it was dark?

A: Yes.

Q: He walked out of your sight?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here another photograph previously marked People's 62 for identification.

May it be remarked People's 62?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Linda, showing you People's 62 for identification. Do you know what is shown in that photograph?

A: Yes. It looks like the driveway.

Q: Now, in the upper right-hand corner of this photograph there appears to be a home.

Is that Harold True's home?

A: I can't really say. It looks like it but I'm not sure.

Q: Are there some markings on this photograph from the previous trial? In the bottom right-hand corner there is an X which says, "Where Manson parked car."

Are those markings correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And then there is an arrow leading up the driveway and it says, "Path Manson walked."

Are those markings correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Manson was the only one that got out of the car?

A: Yes.

Q: And you and Tex, Sadie, Katie, Leslie and Clem stayed in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: Well, we smoked cigarettes and that is how I more or less determined how long

he was gone.

Q: How much of a cigarette did you smoke?

A: A Pall Mall cigarette, a whole -- not the whole thing but three-quarters of it, where a normal filter would be. That is I smoked down to that point.

Q: Then Charles came back to the car?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened after he got back to the car?

A: He called Leslie and Katie and Tex out of the car and they were standing sort of to the side, to the back of the car on the passenger side, and I heard him say something about there was two people in the house and that he had tied them up. I think he said a man and a woman, but I am not sure, and he told them not to be afraid, that he wasn't going to hurt them and he told them not to create fear and panic in them like the night before and not to let them know that they were going to kill them. And then I don't know if it was right after or something more was said but I heard him tell them to hitch-hike home and for Katie to go to the waterfall, for Katie to go to the waterfall.

Q: Where was the waterfall in relation to the ranch?

A: Oh, it was across Santa Susana Pass.

Q: You think you heard Manson then tell Tex, Leslie and Katie not to cause fear and panic in the people the way they had done the night before?

MR. BUBRICK: I object to the question. It is again recapping her testimony rather than asking her questions about what happened or what was said.

THE COURT: Overruled.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You heard Manson tell Tex, Katie and Leslie not to cause fear and panic in these people the way they had done the previous night?

A: Yes.

Q: And you say Manson told Tex, Katie and Sadie he had told the people inside not to be afraid, that he wasn't going to hurt them?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Tex, Leslie, and Katie then walk away?

A: Yes.

Q: Leaving you, Charlie, Sadie and Clem in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was driving at that point?

A: Charlie took over the driving.

Q: Did Charlie drive away?

A: Yes.

Q: As you were driving away from the residence, did Charlie give you anything?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: What did he give you?

A: A wallet.

Q: Did he say where he had gotten this wallet?

A: Not that I recall.

Q: Had you seen that wallet earlier in the evening?

A: No.

Q: But once Charlie got back into the car, he had the wallet?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he have anything else that you hadn't seen earlier in the evening?

A: No, I don't think so.

Q: Just the wallet?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he tell you to do anything with the wallet?

A: Yes. He told me to take the money out of it and to wipe off the fingerprints, which I did, my prints and his prints, whoever's prints were on it.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a wallet previously marked people's 65 for identification.

May it be remarked people's 65?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you now people's 65 for identification, Linda.

Have you ever seen that wallet before?

A: It looks -- I don't know.

Q: Well, the wallet that Charlie gave you, did it resemble this wallet or did it look

completely different?

A: I thought it was a bright red, but I don't know.

Q: Okay; apart from the color, what about the shape?

A: Yeah, it was the size,

Q: The wallet that Charlie gave you was essentially the same shape as this wallet?

A: Yes.

Q: But you recall that the wallet he gave you seemed to be a bright red?

A: Seemed it was.

Q: Was it dark inside the car?

A: Yeah.

Q: Any lighting on inside the car, the dome light or anything?

A: No.

Q: Did you open up the inside of the wallet?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What did you find inside the wallet?

A: Some change and credit cards.

I saw a driver's license.

Q: Did you see many credit cards?

A: Quite a few, yeah.

Q: You say you saw a driver's license?

A: Yeah.

Q: Was there a picture on the driver's license?

A: Yes, there was.

Q: Do you recall whom the picture was of?

A: A woman with an upraised hairdo, black hair.

Q: Did you look at the name on the driver's license?

A: Yeah, it was a name that I couldn't really pronounce; I don't know, Mexican or Italian or something.

Q: I am removing a driver's license from the wallet, Linda.

Do you recall seeing that driver's license that night?

A: The name is the same, but --

Q: Rosemary La Bianca?

A: Yes.

Q: Does that name ring a bell?

A: Yes.

Q: That is the Italian or Mexican name that you referred to?

A: Yeah.

Q: Does the picture of the woman appear to be the same picture that you saw that night?

A: It doesn't look the same, but I'm not positive.

Q: You say doesn't look the same?

A: She looks different. I thought she was more -- I don't know, fancy looking or something.

Q: All right.

What did you do with the money that you took out of the wallet?

A: I think I put it in the glove box.

THE COURT: It was just change you found in the wallet?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: What is the next thing that happened?

A: Charlie told me to wipe off the fingerprints, which I did; and we were driving in a residential area right near the house and he told me that when we pulled up to the curb to throw it out onto the sidewalk, which he pulled up to the curb but then he said, "No, don't"; so I didn't.

Q: Did he tell you why he wanted you to throw the wallet out of the car?

A: Yeah, because he wanted black people to get it so that the police and the authorities would think that it was like an organized black group that did these killings; and I didn't throw it out and then he got on the freeway.

Q: How far was the freeway from the residence in front of which you stopped?

A: Not very far.

Q: Okay, you got on the freeway, Manson was still driving the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Were you in the front seat?

A: Yes.

Q: Clem and Sadie in the back seat?

A: Yes.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: We drove for quite a while, I guess, I'm not really sure how long.

Q: Did Manson say anything while he was driving the car?

A: He did a lot of talking, but a lot of it I didn't hear; a lot of it I just didn't listen to.

Q: Did he say anything about black people?

A: Yeah, he said something about that he wanted to show blackie how to do it, and a lot of mumbo-jumbo that I don't recall hearing, any more; and we pulled into a gas station.

Q: Where was the gas station in relation to the freeway?

A: Right off the freeway.

Q: Could you see the gas station from the freeway?

A: Yeah, I think so.

Q: What happened after he pulled into the gas station?

A: Well, he told me to take the wallet and go into the ladies' room and hide it where somebody would find it, but not right away, which I did.

Q: Did he say who he wanted to find the wallet?

A: Black people.

Q: Did he say why?

A: I'm not sure at this point, which I got out of the car and I went to the ladies' room and I hid it.

Q: Where did you hide the wallet?

A: Well, I lifted up the top of the tank and I placed it on the ball so when you flush it the bulb goes down and comes back up.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph previously marked people's 70 for identification.

May it be remarked people's 70?

THE COURT: So marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Showing you people's 70 for identification, Linda, this is the

-- I'm sure you don't recognize this particular rest room, but this appears to be --

MR. BUBRICK: Object, your Honor; it appears to be whatever it is, your Honor. The picture is the best evidence of whatever it appears to be.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I can mark it for identification, Mr. Bubrick.

THE COURT: It is already marked for identification, 70.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: It appears, Linda, to be a tank behind the toilet bowl and the lid is off, and there is a bulb here on the left.

Where did you put the wallet?

A: Right there where it is marked.

Q: On top of the bulb, here?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, there is a marking on this photograph, "Where Linda testified she placed wallet."

Is this marking correct?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: The marking was done in the previous trial.

A: Yes.

Q: Then you left the woman's rest room and got back into the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson have anything for you at that point?

A: Yeah, he got out and bought some milkshakes, which were already there when I got back.

Q: How many milkshakes?

A: Four; one for each of us.

Q: Was there a restaurant near the gasoline station?

A: Yes.

Q: Was there anything distinguishing about this restaurant?

A: I just remember that it had a bright orange roof, something like that.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here another photograph, your Honor, previously marked People's 67 for identification.

May it be remarked People's 67?



THE COURT: It will be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Showing you People's 67 for identification, Linda, do you recognise what is shown in that photograph?

A: Yeah, it looks like the gas station and the restaurant.

Q: The restaurant is to the right of the gas station; it says "Denny's," appears to be an orange sign?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you recall, this looks like the restaurant and the gasoline station?

A: Yes.

Q: What's the next thing that happened?

A: I drove from this point and --

Q: Did you get back on the freeway?

A: Yes.

Q: Where did you go from there?

A: I don't know; to an area where I had never been before, I was on a beach.

Q: Near what particular city?

A: I don't know. I had never been there before; I didn't know the name of it.

Q: Had you ever been to Venice, California before?

A: Sure, yeah.

Q: Where was it in relation to Venice, if you recall?

A: At the time, I don't think I can recall now.

Q: Was it in Venice where you stopped?

A: No.

Q: Was it towards Malibu or South of Venice, towards, let's say, Newport Beach or Manhattan Beach?

A: Yeah, I think it was down in that direction.

Q: South of Venice?

A: Yeah.

Q: Where did you stop?

A: On a hill leading to the beach, on a street.

Q: What's the next thing that happened?

A: We all got out and walked down to the beach and we sort of broke off into groups, me and Charlie and Sadie and Clem; and they were walking behind us and we walked down the beach and Charlie was holding my hand.

I guess we talked. I can't remember what we talked about.

Q: Where was Clem and Sadie at that time?

A: I think they was behind us, walking behind us.

Q: Okay.

What's the next thing that happened?

A: We started walking back towards the car and I remember a police cruiser pulled up and stopped us, asked us what we were doing or something like that, and Charlie --

Q: One or two officers?

A: Two.

Q: And they asked you and Charlie --

A: Yeah.

Q: Where were Clem and Sadie at that point?

A: I don't know, maybe back at the beach or maybe at the car, I'm not sure.

Q: So the police asked you where you were going?

A: Yeah; Charlie just said, "We are out walking," or something like that, and Charlie --

Q: Go ahead.

A: Charlie said something about, I don't know, just like sort of jiving with the cops -- the police -- "Don't you remember me?" Or something like that; or, "Don't you remember me, don't you remember my name?"

I'm not sure what the words were, but as if the cops were supposed to know who he was, but they didn't; and it was just sort of a friendly conversation and then we left and went back to the car.

Q: How long did the police talk to you and Charlie?

A: Just a few minutes.

Q: Did they take down any type of a report?

A: No, not that I heard.

Q: Did you see them writing anything?

A: No.

Q: Did they ask you your name?

A: No.

Q: Did they ask Charlie his name?

A: No.

Q: And the police drove away?

A: Um-hum.

Q: What's the next thing that happened?

A: We went back to the car. I think Clem and Sadie were already in the car; and Charlie drove from this point and we just started driving.

And then he asked us if we knew any people at the beach and everybody said no; and then he asked me something about, "What about that guy that you and Sadie saw the other day? Isn't he a piggy?" And I said, "Yes, he's an actor or something like that" and he told me that he wanted me to show him how to get there and that he wanted me to kill him.

And I just said, "Charlie, I'm not you, I can't kill"; and I was really scared.

And he said, "Well, I want you to kill him," and he showed me this little pocketknife and he told me that he wanted me to slit the man's throat, and I said, "With this?" And he said, "Yeah," and he showed me how to do it with his finger.

So, I directed him to Venice Beach to the apartment where this man lived, and him and I got out of the car and we went into the building.

Q: Charlie and you got out of the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Clem and Sadie stayed back in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: This was in Venice?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened next?

A: And we walked up the stairs and I was pretty sure that the man lived on the top floor. I think I took Charlie to the fourth floor, if there was five floors, and pointed out the door and said that is where he lived and then we walked down.

Q: You pointed out the wrong door to Charlie?

A: Yes.

Q: You came back to the car?

A: Yes. And then he asked me at one point if this man would let my friends in and I said, "Yeah, probably."

So he told me to knock on the door and as soon as I got into the house, to slit the man's throat and for Clem to shoot the man. He gave Clem a gun and then he just took off.

Q: Charlie took off?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he tell you how to get back to the ranch?

A: I don't know if he told us.

Q: So then you, Sadie, and Clem did what?

A: We went into the building, walked up the stairs and they hid around the corner and I --

Q: Who did?

A: Clem and Sadie.

Q: What did you do?

A: I knocked on the door.

Q: What door did you knock on?

A: A door. I don't know whose door it was.

Q: Was it the actor's door?

A: No.

Q: Were you on the fifth floor?

A: I don't think so. I don't know.

Q: What floor were you on?

A: I think the floor below it.

Q: The fourth floor again?

A: Yes.

Q: You knocked on the wrong door?

A: Right.

Q: Did you know you were knocking on the wrong door?

A: Yes.

Q: Why did you knock on the wrong door?

A: Because I didn't want to kill.

Q: What was the next thing that happened?

A: I knocked on the door and a man answered and he just peeked through the door and I just said, "Oh, I am sorry. I have the wrong apartment," or something like that, and we left.

Q: Who was this actor to whom you were referring?

A: Well, Sandy and I had met him one day on the beach.

Q: How long before the incident?

A: About a week, maybe. I am not really sure of the time.

Q: Did he tell you who he was?

A: Yes. I don't remember his name.

Q: What did he say?

A: He was an Arab or Israeli. He was an actor. He portrayed Kahill Gibrahn in some movie.

Q: This Sandy, to whom you have been referring, is she a member of the family?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a photograph, your Honor, of three female Caucasians and three male Caucasians previously marked People's 76.

May it be remarked as People's 76?

THE COURT: So marked.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a photograph of a male Caucasian previously marked People's 77.

May it be remarked People's 77?

THE COURT: So marked.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a photograph apparently, appears to be of an apartment house, previously marked People's 78.

May it be remarked People's 78?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Directing your attention to People's 76 for identification. There are three girls in this photograph. There is some writing on one of them. It says "Sandy." Is that the girl you have been referring to?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know her as Sandy Good?

A: I don't think I know her last name.

Q: That is Sandy?

A: Yes.

Q: The girl in the middle is Gypsy?

A: Yes.

Q: And the girl on the right is Squeaky?

A: Right.

Q: Directing your attention to People's 77 for identification, do you know who is shown in that photograph?

A: Yes. That is the Israeli actor.

Q: The Israeli actor you have been referring to?

A: Yes.

Q: Showing you People's 78 for identification, do you know what is shown in that photograph?

A: Yes. That is the apartment house.

Q: This in the apartment house where the Israeli actor lived?

A: Yes.

Q: On the top floor?

A: Yes.

Q: After you, Sadie, and Clem left the apartment house, what is the next thing that happened?

A: We started walking down the beach, the boardwalk or speedway, whatever it is called, and it was morning and there were a few people walking around.

Clem said that he wanted to hide the gun. So he walked down to the pier and I think Sadie and I went into the ladies room or something, I am not sure, and he came back in a few minutes and said that there was people at the pier so he didn't hide the gun.

We kept walking and just before the freeway we came to a sandpile of some kind right beside a house and Clem walked up there and I don't know what he did with the gun but I guess he threw it away or buried it or something. I am not sure.

And we started hitchhiking on the freeway, the Coast Highway.

Q: What were Sadie and Clem doing at that time? Were they talking, singing or --

A: Yes, they were singing.

Q: What were they singing?

A: Just song that they always sang.

Q: They seemed to be happy?

A: Yes.

Q: What is the next thing that happened?

A: We got picked up by somebody, I'm not really sure who, and we went to the entrance to Topanga Canyon, to a house by the Malibu Feed Bin, where Sadie and I had been there once before. She knew the girl.

We went in and sat down and smoked some grass.

Q: Was this on Pacific Coast Highway?

A: Well, it is right off -- yes, it is at the entrance to Topanga Canyon.

Q: Who was inside the house? The girl?

A: The girl and some old man. I don't know who he was.

Q: You and Clem and Sadie?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you do inside the house?

A: We smoked some grass.

Q: You mean marijuana?

A: Yes. And they talked, I don't really know about what. Then we left.

Q: How long did you stay there?

A: I don't know, an hour or so, I guess.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph previously marked People's 81.

May it be remarked 81?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Showing you People's 81, do you know what is shown in that photograph, Linda?

A: Yes, the Malibu Feed Bin.

Q: And the house next door?

A: Yes. It is hard to see the house but the house was right beside there.

Q: What is the next thing that happened, Linda?

A: We left and walked across the street and started hitchhiking back to the ranch and I remember a young guy picked us up, short hair, glasses, a new car, sort of a hot rod type car.

I remember him saying to me something about he was a journalist or a newspaper guy or something like that. I don't remember.

We talked but I can't remember about what and I am not sure if he took -- no, he dropped us off on Topanga Boulevard in the Valley, I guess it is.

Somebody else picked us up and then this person let Clem and I off at the entrance to Santa Susana and Sadie went on toward the waterfall, the back entrance.

Q: You and Clem walked to the ranch?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Would this be a good time for a recess?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes.

THE COURT: We will have our morning recess at this time.

Once more, do not form or express any opinion in this case. Do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else. Please keep an open mind.

(Recess)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors are present; defendant and all counsel are present.

Mrs. Kasabian, you are still under oath.

Just state your name for the record, please.

THE WITNESS: Linda Kasabian.

THE COURT: Mr. Bugliosi, you may proceed.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So, Linda, you and Clem walked back to the ranch?

THE COURT: Just a moment.



Are you comfortable now? Get comfortable.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You and Clem walked back to the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Was it daylight by now?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: Early morning, about 5:00 o'clock?

A: It was later than that.

Q: 6:00 or 7:00?

A: Probably around 9:00; 8:00 or 9:00; something like that.

Q: So you had been out the entire evening --

A: Yeah.

Q: -- or entire night?

A: Yes.

Q: Going back just a little bit, when all seven of you were leaving Spahn Ranch on this second night, did Manson say anything to you in the car about two groups?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: What did he say?

A: He said something about that -- well, before that, in the bunk house I think he said that the night before had been too messy and he was going to show us how to do it; and then later in the car he said something about that we were going to break up into two groups and that he was going to go with one group, and then the other group would go to another house, two separate houses in two groups. I don't know his exact words.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph of Tex Watson previously marked people's 36.

May it be remarked people's 36.

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Do you recognize this as a photograph of Charles Tex Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: On these two nights, the nights of the Tate and LaBianca murders, did Mr.

Watson look essentially the way he looks in this photograph or the way he looks now at the counsel table?

A: He looks more like the photograph.

Q: People's 36?

A: Yes.

Q: He had long hair like this?

A: Yes, he did.

THE COURT: I recall yesterday you told us you couldn't see his eyes because his hair was so long.

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: The bangs, I guess you call it that, on the front, were they longer than they are on that photograph or about the same? I guess you call them bangs, don't you?

THE WITNESS: Yes. It seems to me most of the time I could never see his eyes unless he moved it or something.

THE COURT: But this is a true photo of Tex Watson as he appeared on the nights of August 8th and August 9th, 1969; is that correct?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I think his hair is pretty close to his eyes in this photograph, your Honor, but I agree it doesn't cover his eyes. It is approaching it.

Q: Linda, do you know what LSD is?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: Have you ever taken LSD?

A: Yes.

Q: About how many times?

A: Well, just LSD itself or all psychedelic trips together?

Q: LSD.

A: I don't know. All trips together around 50.

Q: That is including LSD and any other hallucinogenic drugs?

A: Yes.

Q: Over what period of time?

A: About five years.

Q: So you started taking hallucinogenic drugs, LSD, at about the age of 16?

A: Yeah.

Q: And have you seen other people take LSD?

A: Sure, yes.

Q: And other hallucinogenic drugs?

A: Yes.

Q: Many times?

A: Yeah.

Q: And you saw the way they act when they were under the influence of LSD?

A: Yeah.

Q: Or these other drugs?

A: Sure.

Q: Did you ever take LSD at the Spahn Ranch?

A: I don't think I was on LSD.

Q: What did you take?

A: It was a week drug, possibly psilocybin or mescaline.

THE COURT: Would you spell that first one.

MR. BUGLIOSI: It starts with a p-s-y-l --

MR. KEITH: P-s-y-l-i-c-o-t-i-a-n.

THE COURT: And Mescaline?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q: When did you take this psilocybin or mescaline at Spahn Ranch?

A: I don't know the date; it was around the end of July.

Q: About the end of July?

A: Yes.

Q: And with whom did you take it?

A: With Sadie and another girl took it, Barbara.

Q: Did you ever see Manson or Katie or Leslie take LSD?

A: I saw Charlie take it once, yeah.

Q: Did you ever see Tex take LSD?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever see him use any kind of drugs?

A: Yeah.

Q: What?

A: I seen him smoke grass, and the second night I saw him take a white capsule, what I thought was speed.

Q: Before we get into the second night, before these two nights, the nights of the Tate-LaBianca murders, you saw Tex Watson smoke marijuana?

A: Sure, yeah.

Q: But not take LSD?

A: No.

Q: In addition to LSD and other hallucinogenic drugs, what other drugs have you taken?

A: Mescaline, psilocybin, peyote cactus, morning glory seeds, speed -- methedrine.

Q: When you say "speed," you are referring to methedrine?

A: Yes; THC.

Q: THC?

A: Yeah; I think that just about covers it.

Q: Pardon?

A: I think that just about covers it. I can't think of anything else.

Q: You have taken a vast array of drugs; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Of course, you smoked marijuana?

A: Sure, yeah.

Q: And you have seen other people under the influence of these drugs?

I'm not referring to LSD now; I am referring to the other drugs that you have mentioned.

A: Yeah, yeah.

Q: And you saw the way they acted when they were under the influence --

A: Yes.

Q: On the night of the Tate murders did you take any LSD or any other drugs?

A: No.

Q: What about that afternoon?

A: No.

Q: Or morning?

A: No.

Q: Or several days earlier?

A: Well, just that one time that I thought was mescaline, which may was a week before the murders, I'm not sure.

Q: To your knowledge as to your knowledge, did Tex, Sadie or Katie take LSD or any other drug on the night of the murder?

MR. KEITH: Object to the question as calling for a conclusion.

MR. BUBRICK: Objection, your Honor.

THE COURT: If she knows.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I said, to her knowledge.

THE WITNESS: No; I don't know if they did or not.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So you have no knowledge that they did?

A: No.

Q: Did either Tex, Sadie or Katie tell you that they had taken LSD or any other drug on the night of the Tate murders?

A: No.

Q: Did they act like they were under the influence of any drug?

MR. BUBRICK: Calls for a conclusion.

MR. KEITH: Object to that --

MR. BUGLIOSI: May we approach the bench?

THE COURT: She can describe their actions.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May we approach the bench?

THE COURT: You may approach the bench.

(The following proceedings were had at the bench.)

MR. BUGLIOSI: If a medical doctor, a psychiatrist, who has never taken LSD in his life can testify, as they are going to in this case, that on the nights of these murders, in their opinion, Tex had taken LSD two years earlier; surely -- surely, a person who has taken LSD a great number of times, has seen people under the influence and who was there with them that night, can give that opinion.

Now, the court, of course, is aware -- the court is aware that --

THE COURT: I have had cases --

MR. BUGLIOSI: -- that a witness can testify to intoxication --

THE COURT: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: -- under People vs. Baker, I think it is 42 Cal. 2d, intoxication includes drugs -- intoxication includes drugs.

Now, I am looking -- the opinion of a lay witness, a lay witness can give an opinion as to whether a person was intoxicated, People vs. Sehorn.

THE COURT: That is old law.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Right; right. Drugs are intoxication; this girl has a vast amount of experience. I think she can give an opinion whether they were under the influence of any drugs.

THE COURT: Well, I have had these cases before and I permitted a lay witness to testify they took what they thought was something. I permitted the witness to describe the reactions, describe his conduct, describe the physical effects.

Then an expert would testify that based upon those facts it is his opinion that the witness had taken so and so.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, she is an expert in drugs; she has taken it, herself. She knows; she knows what the effect is; she has taken it over 50 times. She has gone on trips with other people. She knows the way people act.

It might be very difficult for her to articulate all the nuances, but it is the impression she had.

Now, they can attack her on cross-examination --

THE COURT: No, I don't think you can establish her as an expert on that.

MR. BUGLIOSI: But, actually, you don't have to be an expert to give an opinion on intoxication.

THE COURT: Forget intoxication. I know that; there is no question about that at all. Intoxication is such a common thing that any person can testify to intoxication.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Right; People vs. Baker, 42 Cal. 2d, says intoxication includes drugs. When they talk about intoxication, drugs is included.

THE COURT: Mr. Bugliosi, I will sustain the objection.

I will permit her to testify to their conduct, their reaction, their feelings, what they

experienced; but I cannot permit her to testify that in her opinion that one had taken or had not taken -- she can testify of their conduct, that's as far as I will let her go.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Very well; but I say, I don't see how a psychiatrist who has never taken drugs, two years later can give an opinion -- here's a girl who lived in this world, the world of drugs.

THE COURT: I appreciate it, Mr. Bugliosi, but I doubt whether she is that expert that she knows from the reaction of certain people they took a certain drug.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Okay; any drug, did they appear to be under the influence of any drug?

THE COURT: No, she can tell their reactions or actions or conduct.

(The following proceedings were had in open court, in the presence of the jury.)

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So to your knowledge, Tex, Sadie and Katie did not take any drugs on the night of the Tate murders; is that correct?

MR. BUBRICK: That is not what she said.

THE COURT: Objection sustained. She testified she did not know whether they did or not.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: To your knowledge, you do not know?

A: I don't know.

Q: Now, on the night of the LaBianca murders, to your knowledge, did either Tex, Sadie, Katie, Leslie, Clem, or Manson take any drugs?

A: Yes. I saw Tex take a white capsule.

Q: Do you know what this white capsule was?

A: There were words spoken but I don't know who said it and what was said, but I was under the impression that it was speed, something to keep him awake because he was tired.

Q: This is methedrine?

A: Yes.

Q: You saw the white capsule?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: In Tex Watson's hand?

A: Yes.

Q: Where was this? Inside the car?

A: I think so, yes.

Q: Before you left Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: And you have taken speed?

A: Sure.

THE COURT: Does speed come in different forms, or just one form?

THE WITNESS: It comes in different forms.

THE COURT: Different forms. It come in capsule form?

THE WITNESS: Well, it is powder form. Then it can be put into capsules or tablets.

It comes in liquid form, too.

THE COURT: You saw him take a white capsule?

THE WITNESS: Right.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: What effect does speed normally have on a person?

A: Well, it speeds up the nervous system.

Q: Tends to keep you awake?

A: Yes.

Q: On either night, either the night of the Tate murders or the LaBianca murders, did Tex seem dazed at all?

A: I don't understand.

Q: Did he seem dazed at all? Did he seem dizzy?

A: Dizzy? No, I don't think so.

Q: Did he stagger when he walked?

A: No.

Q: And he spoke to you, of course; right?

A: Yes.

Q: Was his speech slurred in any fashion?

A: No.

Q: Did he speak coherently to you?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he seem to make sense when he talked to you?



A: Yeah.

Q: Did he act crazy?

A: Just when I saw him stabbing. That was pretty crazy.

Q: Did he seem to be acting the same as he always had been at the Spahn Ranch?

MR. BUBRICK: I object. It is a little ambiguous.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Always during the month that you knew him prior to these murders.

THE COURT: The last question was his conduct while stabbing. Now, you are asking if he always acted like that when he was stabbing at the Spahn Ranch?

MR. BUGLIOSI: No. I will retract that.

Q: Other than when he was stabbing, did he act any differently on the nights of the Tate-LaBianca murders than he had acted previously the month that you knew him?

A: No.

Q: Did he appear to be in control of himself on both nights?

A: Very much so, very much so, yes.

Q: Why do you say very much so?

A: Well, especially at the water hose, just after all that had happened and, I don't know, he just so calmly said, well, he was getting a drink of water and just seemed very quiet and, I don't know, very much under control.

Q: What was your state of mind after these two nights of murder, Linda?

A: I don't know -- confusion, shock, scared. I don't know. It was like everything was just unbelievable, like a nightmare.

Q: Did you want to leave the family at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yeah.

Q: What took place in the days that followed these two nights?

A: Let me see. That day I slept and that night I think I took care of Tanya. I am not quite sure.

The next morning Charlie asked me to go to see Mary Brunner and Bobby Beausoleil and Sandy. They were all in jail.

Q: These were three members of the family?

THE COURT: Could you read that back to me, please?

(Record read by the reporter.)

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Bobby Beausoleil and Mary Brunner and Sandra Good, these were members of the family?

A: Yes.

Q: And he told you to go in and visit them in town?

A: Yes.

Q: This was the second morning after the LaBianca murders?

A: Yes, the second morning.

Q: Did you, in fact, go into town?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Did you visit Mary Brunner?

A: Well, I went to the jail but I never saw her.

Q: You never saw her or Sandra?

A: No.

Q: What about Bobby Beausoleil?

A: No. I didn't get to see him either.

Q: Were you planning to leave that day, leave Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Why didn't you leave?

A: Let me think. I remember I taken my sleeping bag. I crawled around the ranch and hid it. I am not sure of the sequence. I just remember there was always people walking around. There was people walking around with guns, the guards.

Q: What were they guarding?

A: Against Black Panthers.

Q: You may continue.

A: And I came back from town, from the jail, so I said I didn't get to see anybody. I told Charlie.

He told me to go again the next morning. And myself and another girl went on a garbage run.

Let's see. I went to the waterfall that night, stayed overnight.

The next morning, went back to the ranch. I got dressed. I went through the whole thing

again, putting on straight clothes.

Q: Was it your intent at that time to leave, though?

A: Yes.

Q: But you didn't tell anybody?

A: No. I went into the parachute room because I had a shoulder bag that I put in there, hid with some diapers and some canned things. Charlie was there, so I couldn't get it. So I just said goodbye and walked out.

Q: You said goodbye to Charlie?

A: Yes.

Q: You didn't tell him you were leaving Los Angeles?

A: No.

Q: Or the family at the ranch?

A: No. I just said goodbye and I remember standing down by the corral and Bruce Davis was there and Dave Hannum and Bruce gave me some money. I think he gave me \$2 and he gave me a credit card and I got in the car and drove away.

Q: You got in whose car?

A: Dave Hannum's car.

Q: What kind of a car did he have?

A: A white station wagon, a small car, Volvo, something like that.

Q: Did you ask Hannum if you could use his Volvo?

A: Well, I had asked him the day before and I don't know if I asked him the second day or not. Maybe it was just understood or maybe I did. I am not sure.

Q: The day before you used his car to go into town to visit?

A: Yes.

Q: And the second day you also got into his car?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you tell Hannum or Bruce or anyone that you intended to leave the family?

A: No.

Q: So you got into the car and you drove away?

A: Yes.

Q: You drove away from Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you pick up two hitchhikers en route?

A: First I picked up my sleeping bag with my clothes and some clothes for Tanya, but I didn't have Tanya.

Yes, I did, I picked up -- they weren't hitchhikers. I picked them up the day before on the way back to the ranch and I picked them up at the house that they were staying at.

Q: You had made arrangements with them the day before that you would pick them up the following day?

A: Yes.

Q: And take them where?

A: To New Mexico.

Q: Which is where you were going?

A: Right.

Q: Was your husband there at the time?

A: At the time of what?

Q: At the time that you left Spahn Ranch a couple of days after the murders, was your husband in New Mexico?

A: I am not positive but I think I assumed that he was.

Q: In Taos?

A: Yes.

Q: You didn't take Tanya with you?

A: No.

Q: Why is that?

A: Well, she was at the waterfall and, I don't know, I just felt that she was going to be okay, that nothing was going to happen to her, that I had to go.

Q: Did you want to take Tanya with you?

A: Yeah.

Q: You say she was at the waterfall. Why didn't you go and get her?

A: Well, because all the family was down there and I knew that I just wasn't supposed to go down there, that it probably wouldn't work out if I did.

I don't know. It was like something within myself just told me that it was going to be

okay and that nothing would come, you know, to harm Tanya. So I just felt confident in leaving.

Q: Did you intend to come back and pick up Tanya?

A: Sure, yes.

Q: When?

A: I don't know. I guess after I went to New Mexico.

Q: So, then, you drove to New Mexico; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you have any trouble with the car on the way to New Mexico?

A: Yeah, it broke down.

Q: Near where?

A: Albuquerque; and -- oh, I hitch-hiked into the town of Albuquerque and got a tow truck and they towed the truck -- I mean, the car -- to the gas station and I used the credit card, and they called up on the card and found that it was stolen, so they kept the car in the garage.

I took my stuff out and started hitch-hiking into Taos and I stayed overnight at the Hot Springs in Rancho de Taos.

And, let's see, that morning I think I hitch-hiked up to Questa, where somebody had told me at the Hot Springs Bob was.

Q: Bob, your husband?

A: Yeah.

Let's see, I found Bob and I told him what had happened and, well, he just said that we had to go and get Tanya and he suggested that -- oh, I told him that we just couldn't walk in there because they just wouldn't let me go in and come back out again with Tanya; so he said something about having Susan go in; it is just, you know, a stray girl that popped in.

Q: Who is Susan?

A: Susan, the girl that he was living with; and, I don't know, I guess he decided against that and he told me to come back late and he'd give me, you know, a definite decision on what should happen, I don't know.

So then I went to Joe Sage, who I met before. He was the kind of person who helps

other people when they are in trouble.

Q: Where is Joe Sage?

A: He was in Rancho de Taos. I don't remember what the exact conversion was, but I told him that my little girl was back in Los Angeles, that I needed to get her back and -- I don't know, he somehow started questioning me and I couldn't keep backing out of it so I told him vaguely that I knew about the murders.

Then I left. I don't remember where I went. He said he was going to help me, though. Then at another point I came back and I think before I left I gave him the address of the ranch, or something, I am not sure; but, anyways, at another point he told me that he called the ranch and he talked to Charlie, himself, and Charlie had said something about that I was flipped out, something about my ego wouldn't die, so I couldn't face it so I had to run away or something like that.

Q: Did you eventually return to Los Angeles?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you fly back to Los Angeles?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Who gave you the money to fly back?

A: Joe did.

Q: Joe Sage?

A: Yes.

Q: What was the purpose of your coming back to Los Angeles?

A: To get an attorney to get my child back.

Q: And when did you come back to Los Angeles?

A: I don't know the time -- not too long after I went back to New Mexico, a week, I don't know; I'm not sure, a few days.

Q: When you arrived in Los Angeles did you contact anyone?

A: Yeah.

Q: Whom did you contact?

A: Well, I went up to Topanga Canyon and I remember Paul Rosenberg who had helped me a year or so before then; and I went to his house, it was about the only person that I could think of that could help, and he was not there but his wife was and

she told me that, you know, I could get an attorney and she gave me a name and I called Gary Fleischman.

And I went to his office -- I forget the story that I told him -- but I just told him that these people had my child or something, I'm not sure.

But, before then, at Joe's house I remember calling the family and they told me that she was in jail, I mean, that --

Q: That Tanya was?

A: That the authorities had her; and I think they told me that the Malibu Police, or something like that; so I called the Malibu Police and they referred me to a social worker, who I called after that and made arrangements to meet him, and this same day that I spoke with Gary Fleischman, either before or after, I'm not sure, I saw the social worker, and I went out to see Tanya.

But, anyways, Gary said that he would help me --

Q: Gary is the attorney, Gary Fleischman --

A: Yeah.

Q: -- he represented you during the last trial?

A: Yes.

Q: All right, you may continue.

A: I left Los Angeles and I went back to New Mexico.

Q: Did you get Tanya back?

A: No, I went to see her that day and she was at a foster home and they just wouldn't let me have her, you know -- red tape, or whatever it is, you know, they go through; so it meant that I had to make a court appearance and all this thing.

So, I went back to New Mexico and Gary had my number and everything, and a few weeks later we made a court appearance and I got Tanya back.

Q: You flew back to Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

Q: And you got Tanya back?

A: Yes.

Q: Then what did you and Tanya do?

A: We went back to New Mexico.

Q: Did you hitch-hike?

A: No, we had a two-way ticket.

Q: Okay.

How long did you stay in New Mexico?

A: Oh, probably about a month.

Q: Where did you go from there?

A: We hitch-hiked to Florida.

Q: You and Tanya?

A: Yeah.

Q: Hitch-hiked from New Mexico to Florida?

A: Yeah.

Q: Why did you go to Florida?

A: Because my father was there and I wanted to go back east and hitch-hiking was too much.

Q: What city in Florida?

A: Miami.

Q: Did you stay with your father there?

A: Yeah.

Q: For how long?

A: Well, not with him exactly. I stayed in an apartment that him and his girlfriend had rented or something; but he, himself, didn't stay there.

Q: All right.

You stayed there for two weeks?

A: Yeah, about two weeks.

Q: Then where did you go?

A: I stayed at his boss' house for a while, too.

Q: For how long?

A: A week, two weeks, I don't know.

Q: Where did you go from there?

A: To New Hampshire, to my mother's house.

Q: Flew there?



A: Yeah.

Q: Your father gave you the money?

A: Yes.

Q: While you were at your mother's home did you tell your mother about these two nights?

A: No.

Q: You didn't tell her at all about these murders?

A: Well, the day that she came to me with the newspaper and my name was, you know, on the paper, about how they were looking for me, I just told her that I didn't kill anybody and that I had seen these things happen, and that's all.

Q: What day was that?

A: The day I gave myself up.

Q: Do you remember the day?

A: Date?

Q: Do you remember the month?

A: It was in December, the first part of December.

Q: Early December 1969?

A: Yeah.

Q: You found out that there was a warrant out for your arrest?

A: Yes.

Q: And where were you when you found this information out?

A: Well, I just rented an apartment maybe a week or so after I got into New Hampshire; and my mother had just given me a radio and I went to sleep that night and before I went to sleep I heard on the radio my name mentioned, that I was being sought for in New Mexico; and I went to sleep that night and the next morning my mother came to me with a newspaper and I just, you know, said, "Well, I have to give myself up and I don't know how to do it."

So, she sort of went through the channels, seeing the police and everything.

Q: So you turned yourself in?

A: Yeah.

Q: To the police in New Hampshire?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you try to run away at all?

A: No.

Q: And then you were immediately extradited back here to Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were in custody then for several months?

A: Yes.

Q: And you have already indicated you testified during the last trial.

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: And you had Angel while you were in custody; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Going back just a moment, you said the car broke down near Albuquerque.

Did you ever contact Mr. Hannum and let him know about his car?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What did you do?

A: While I was living at Joe's I remember writing a letter addressed to the family and with directions on how to get to the car; and I think it cost twenty or thirty dollars to have it fixed.

I mentioned that and I also enclosed the keys to the car.

Q: You sent it to the family, but was it addressed particularly to Mr. Hannum?

A: I think it was addressed to the family, but I'm not sure.

Q: And you enclosed the keys to the car?

A: Yeah.

Q: Linda, during the period between when you left Spahn Ranch in Hannum's car and early December 1969, when you turned yourself in, did you want to turn yourself in during that period?

A: Yeah, I thought about it.

Q: Why didn't you?

A: I was scared, basically scared about a lot of things. I was pregnant and I had Tanya with me and I was afraid of the police; I was afraid for my life. I was just afraid on all levels.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thank you.

No further questions.

THE COURT: It is so near our recess hour, would you want to defer your cross-examination?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, may we, your Honor?

THE COURT: We will recess at this time until 1:30, ladies and gentlemen.

Once more, do not form or express any opinion in this case or do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else, and please keep your minds open.

1:30.

(The noon recess was taken until 1:30 p.m. of the same day.)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, TUESDAY, AUGUST 17, 1971,

1:30 P.M.

-- oOo --

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors are present, all counsel and the defendant are present.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I am through with Mrs. Kasabian, your Honor.

THE COURT: Yes.

LINDA KASABIAN,

Resumed the stand and testified further as follows:

THE COURT: All right. You are still under oath, Mrs. Kasabian.

For the record, state your full name.

THE WITNESS: Linda Kasabian.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: You told us just before the noon hour break that you used, I think you said, all sorts of hallucinogenic drugs about 50 times?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: Can you tell us where and when these uses occurred?

A: All 50 times?

Q: No, I mean in what areas of the country did they occur in, if more than one?

A: Well, the first time was in Miami, Florida.

Q: Let me approach it this way and maybe we can help out; I understand you are now 22; is that right?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: So in 1969 you were 20; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Can you tell us when it was that you left home for the first time for any extended period of time?

A: When I was 16.

Q: And where did you go when you were 16?

A: First I got married.

Q: And how old were you when you got married?

A: 16.

Q: Whom did you marry?

A: Robert Peaslee.

Q: And do you remember when you married Mr. Peaselee?

A: I think it was in August. I am not quite sure of the date.

Q: Of 1965?

A: Yeah.

Q: You were what? Sixteen then; is that correct?

A: Yes, right, yes.

Q: And where did that occur?

A: In my hometown.

Q: In New Hampshire?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you separate thereafter?

A: Yes.

Q: When?

A: In December.

Q: Of what year?

A: Same year, '69, - I mean, '65.

Q: And where were you when you separated?

A: In my hometown, Milford.

Q: Had you lived there during the period of that short marriage, then?

A: Well, yeah, we lived together.

Q: In New Hampshire?

A: Yes.

Q: All right; and where did you, after you separated, what, if anything, did you do?

A: I moved in with my father in Miami.

Q: In Miami?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you live with your father there?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Did you live in any commune in Miami, Florida?

A: When I lived with my father?

Q: Or while you were in Florida?

A: Yes.

Q: And where in Florida did you live in a commune?

A: Well, then it wasn't really, you know, thought of as a commune situation. I had lots of people staying with me at different times, on Miami Beach, in my own apartment.

Q: But it was in your apartment; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: In a building?

A: Yes.

Q: And you lived there with other people?

A: Well, they lived with me, more or less.

Q: All about the same age group?

A: Yeah.

Q: Mixed company, boys and girls?

A: Yeah.

Q: Was it drug oriented in any way?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you use, if you remember?

A: Grass; I was taking speed at the time; uppers, diet pills.

Q: When you say uppers, what do you mean by that, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: Diet pills.

Q: Diet pills?

A: Yeah; and I took morning glory seeds once.

Q: When you took speed or these diet pills, as you called them, Mrs. Kasabian, were they taken orally?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever take it any other way?

A: In Miami?

Q: Well, in Miami, let's stop there.

A: No, not in Miami.

Q: How long did you live this style of living in Miami?

A: For about, let's see -- June, July, August -- about four months, I guess.

Q: Now, you got to Miami in what, 1965?

A: Yeah, that's the date I'm not quite sure of, the date.

Q: All right; the latter part of 1965, I take it?

A: Yeah, in December.

Q: Then you stayed and you lived the way you described until what, early 1966?

A: Well, no, I didn't really start taking drugs until probably around May or June of '66.

Q: Where were you when you started to take drugs?

A: Well, I started taking grass when I was living with my father; then right after that I moved out and started taking drugs heavier.

Q: Well, when you say with your father, you mean while living in your father's home?

A: Yeah.

Q: And, I take it, not with him, you know, sharing marijuana with him?

A: No.

Q: And then you moved out, as you have told us now, and these other people

moved in with you, is that correct, in Miami Beach?

A: Yeah.

Q: And you lived that way about three months or four months or so?

A: Well, approximately between May and June till September, right after school began.

Q: Did you go to school while you were in Miami?

A: Well, I attended a hairdressing school for about three days and that was --

Q: That was it?

A: Yeah.

Q: How did you sustain yourself in Miami Beach?

A: Excuse me?

Q: How did you live while you were in Miami?

A: I had a job for a while and --

Q: How long?

A: -- switchboard operator.

Q: How long?

A: For a month; I guess; I'm not really sure how long.

Q: And then thereafter how did you manage to live?

A: Selling drugs or just people would give me money. I had a boyfriend.

Q: All right, and after you lived in Miami for that period of time, as you have indicated, where did you next go to, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: I went back to home, to my mother's house.

Q: In New Hampshire?

A: Yeah.

Q: How long did you stay that time?

A: Probably for about two months.

Q: Now, are we still in the year 1966, then?

A: Yes.

Q: And then when, after that two months period was over, where did you go?

A: Into Boston.

Q: And what sort of a living style did you have in Boston?

A: Well, I had a boyfriend and moved into his apartment. We stayed there for probably about a week. I remember it was around Christmastime and we went to New York.

Q: Christmas of 19 --

A: 1966.

Q: '66?

A: Yes.

Q: And then to New York in what? Early '67?

A: Right around Christmastime, the first of the year.

Q: Did you live with anybody other than your boyfriend in the Boston area?

A: In the Boston area?

Well, there were other people in the apartment.

Q: Was it again a sort of a life style?

A: Yes.

Q: Where many of you were living together?

A: Yes. It was like a college situation where kids went to school and shared apartments.

Q: Were you going to school then?

A: No.

Q: Then you went into New York?

A: Yes.

Q: And with whom did you go to New York?

A: With this guy I was living with in Boston.

Q: And how long did you stay in New York?

A: Let's see. Probably about a month.

Q: Do you remember what month that would have been of 1967?

A: January.

Q: January of '67?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you live alone with him?

A: No. I stayed with him for, I don't know, about a week, I guess, and then he went



back to Boston and I lived with a number of different people.

Q: Again in apartment buildings or --

A: Yes.

Q: -- structures in the New York area?

A: Yes.

Q: And how long would you say you lived with the second group in New York?

A: I stayed at one place for about a week. I stayed at another place for approximately a week and that is about it, I guess.

Q: Were there drugs being used in the New York area?

A: Yes.

Q: Where you lived?

A: Oh, yes.

Q: What drugs were you using?

A: I was taking acid and smoking grass.

THE COURT: You say acid. That is LSD?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: How long would you say you lived in New York?

A: Probably about a month.

Q: Does that cover the entire period that you have been there now?

A: I don't understand.

Q: In New York you apparently moved or lived at least with several different people.

A: Yes.

Q: That covers just the one month period of time we are talking about.

A: Yes.

Q: January of '67?

A: Yes, approximately.

Q: And then where did you go after that?

A: Went to the Haight-Ashbury district of San Francisco.

Q: That is in San Francisco?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember when you arrived there?

A: No. Somewhere I guess near the end of January, sometime in February.

Q: Still 19, early 1967?

A: 1967.

Q: Who did you go there with if you remember?

A: A person that I met in New York.

Q: Just the two of you?

A: No. There was two other boys. One was the driver of the car who was driving the car across country for somebody, I guess. I don't know exactly what that situation was. And just another person that we picked up.

Q: Were there then the four of you?

A: Yes.

Q: That made the cross-country trip?

A: Yes.

Q: After you got to Haight-Ashbury, what did you do?

A: Well, we stayed overnight in Lagunitas or something like that, and went into the Haight-Ashbury district and I sort of got separated from the people that I was with and I met this other person.

And, you know, he asked me to go to his apartment and I went and he turned me onto speed with a needle for the first time.

Q: You were now injecting speed?

A: Yes.

Q: This is again in what? 1967?

A: '67, yes.

Q: And was there anybody else that was living there with you when you were with this man who turned you on speed?

A: I didn't follow your question.

Q: Were just you and this man who turned you on speed living together?

A: Were there any other people?

Q: Yes, any other people living there at the same time.

A: Well, there was people in and out all the time, but I think it was just him and I really. It was his apartment and I was staying there and living. Every now and then

somebody would come and stay overnight or spend the day. I think it was just us.

Q: How long did you live there in that fashion?

A: Not very long. About a week.

Q: After that what did you do?

A: I got arrested.

Q: In San Francisco?

A: Yes.

Q: Incidentally, was this the first time then that you came to California in this 1967 period that you have been telling us about?

A: Yes.

Q: How long were you confined for any period of time in '67?

A: Yes. I don't remember how long. I would say I was about two weeks.

Q: Was it for drugs of some sort?

A: It was for -- well, I was 17 and they told me that I wasn't legally able to be my own person, so far as I needed a guardian or my parents and curfew, something to do with curfew, and being in the presence of a drug addict. One of the other persons was a drug addict, known drug taker.

Q: You mean a person taking something other than speed?

A: Yes, I think he was on heroin.

Q: A heroin addict?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened after you were released from custody?

A: They put me on a plane and sent me back to New Hampshire.

Q: How long did you stay in New Hampshire at this time?

A: About a month again.

Q: We are still in what? Mid-'67?

Something like that?

A: Yeah, about around March I will say.

Q: And then did you thereafter leave New Hampshire again?

A: Yes.

Q: Where did you go?

A: I went into Boston.

Q: And where did you live in Boston, if you remember?

A: Let's see. I found this person that had taken me to New York the first time and I stayed with him a few days and then I got into a group of bicycle type people, refer to them as bikers.

Q: You mean motorcycle drivers?

A: Yeah.

Q: There in the Boston area?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, I think you told us you married a Mr. Kasabian?

A: Right.

Q: And when was that?

A: September 20 -- I'm not positive.

Q: In '67?

A: Of '67.

Q: So you are not telling us things that preceded your second marriage to Mr. Kasabian; is that right?

A: Yes, right.

Q: Did you travel with this bikers group?

A: Well, what do you mean by travel?

Q: Well, did you move around; did you move around the Boston area or did you stay in Boston?

A: Stayed in Boston, Revere, that area.

Q: Where did you live in Boston and the Revere area?

A: Well, when I first met them I lived with one certain person in the group and he lived in Boston, in the Back Bay District; and then we got an apartment in Revere and then we split up after that.

Q: After you split up, what did you do?

A: Well, we got busted again.

Q: What does that mean?

A: Arrested.

Q: Arrested?

A: Yeah.

Q: For what?

A: Being present where drugs were found and, oh, I think I had some capsules of speed in my pocketbook.

Q: And this is still '67?

A: Yeah, it was in May of '67.

Q: May?

A: May 1st, I think, something like that.

Q: Were you confined for any period of time?

A: No.

Q: What did you do after release from this arrest?

A: Well, I had a probation officer and she told me that I wasn't allowed in the Boston area and I wasn't allowed to hang around with long-haired type people or associate with these kind of people, drug-taking-type people; so I went back to my mother's house and I didn't live in the house, I lived in the next town and got a job.

Q: Did you meet Mr. Kasabian in the Boston area?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Is that where you married him, in Boston?

A: Yeah -- well, no, not in Boston; no, in Lawrence.

Q: In the Boston area, was it, however?

A: Yeah.

Q: After you were married to Mr. Kasabian, did you continue to live in the Boston area?

A: Yeah.

Q: How long?

A: Well, we had lived together before we got married, legally married; then after we were married, we stayed there about a month.

Q: Were you using any drugs while with him?

A: Yeah.

Q: What kind?

A: We smoked a lot of grass and hashish, took acid, mescaline; I think we snorted speed once, that's about it.

THE COURT: By "snorting," you mean taking it through the nostrils?

THE WITNESS: Right.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: How long did you and Mr. Kasabian continue to live in the major Boston area then?

A: After we were married?

Q: Yes.

A: For about a month.

Q: And then what happened?

A: We went to California.

Q: And where in California did you come?

A: Well, we landed in San Francisco in --

Q: I'm sorry?

A: We bought a truck and drove down to the Los Angeles area.

Q: How did you come across country?

A: By plane.

Q: Now, what period of time are we talking about now?

A: Around Halloween, October.

Q: '67?

A: Yes.

Q: And what did you do in the Los Angeles area, then, from '67?

A: Oh, I don't know; we found an apartment in Venice or Santa Monica, I'm not quite sure of the district that it was in; and we lived.

Q: How long did you live in that area?

A: Until Tanya was born.

Q: When was that?

A: March 3rd -- a little bit after she was born, a couple of weeks.

Q: '68?

A: '68, yeah.

Q: And what happened after her birth?

A: We moved to Topanga Canyon, into a tent; and we stayed there probably for three weeks to a month, I guess, I'm not sure how long.

Q: So that's now April of -- March, April of '68?

A: '68, yeah.

Q: Just you and Mr. Kasabian, Robert Kasabian?

A: No, there was another person.

Q: Who was that?

A: Gary; his name was Gary.

Q: All right; and after the tent, living in the tent area in Topanga Canyon, what happened after that?

A: We moved -- wait, my husband, Bob, and Gay went to Canada looking for some land to homestead and I went back East; and I stayed back East until, I think, May, sometime in May, I'm not sure.

Q: Of '68?

A: Yeah.

Q: When you say "back East," back to your mother's?

A: To my mother's and to my mother-in-law's; and sometime in May, I'm not quite sure, but he called me and I went to Washington, Seattle Washington.

Q: And where did you live in Seattle?

A: We lived in the rain forest.

Q: With other people?

A: Yes.

Q: Was it a commune type of living, again?

A: Yeah. Well, at first we lived in a house that we rented with one other person and then we found a better situation further out into the woods, into the rain forest; and that was like a really righteous type commune living.

Q: Was that anywhere close to Goldmier Hot Springs?

A: It was Goldmier Hot Springs.

Q: How long did you live there?

A: I will say a month, I can't really remember how long.

Q: And after that where did you go, if you remember?

A: Yeah, we drove down -- we decided to go to New Mexico, so we drove down from there and we stopped off in Los Angeles for -- myself, I was there probably three, two, three, four days, something like that; and then on the New Mexico.

Q: And that is still the summer of '68 now?

A: Yeah, I would say around July, August, something like that.

Q: Where did you go in New Mexico, Taos, or that area?

A: The area of Taos, yes.

Q: And did you live in a commune in the Taos area?

A: Yeah.

Q: And was Joe Sage there at that time?

A: When I first got there?

Q: Yes, in '68.

A: No.

Q: How long did you stay there?

A: All that year and I left in April. Well, I left one time at Christmastime for a couple of weeks -- Christmas vacation, sort of thing, and then I left permanently for a while in April of '69.

Q: Were drugs being used in the Taos area, the Taos commune?

A: Oh, sure.

Q: What kind?

A: All kinds, except for hard narcotics.

Q: Then you say you left; was it the end of '68, December?

A: Yeah, I went back East at Christmastime.

Q: Is that back to your mother's?

A: Yes.

Q: How long did you stay there?

A: A week, two weeks, something like that, just visiting.

Q: Then did you come back to Taos?

A: Yes.

Q: How long did you stay the next time?

A: Till April.



Q: Then did you go back to New Hampshire?

A: Yeah.

Q: Is that where you were when you got a call from Robert?

A: Yes.

Q: And then you came back to California; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And back to the Topanga Canyon area?

A: Yes.

Q: And that's when you found Robert with Charles Melton and the other couple?

A: Yes.

Q: And you got back here when, do you remember?

A: The end of June; June 27, 26th, something like that.

Q: I take it you had had Tanya with you all the while you were traveling back and forth, had you?

A: Oh, yeah.

Q: Did you bring anything else back from Boston, do you remember?

A: Luggage, clothing, things like that.

Q: Is that what you brought back then?

A: Yes.

Q: And then you stayed with your husband in the trailer -- well, in a truck, I think you called it?

A: Yeah.

Q: It was in a truck, was it?

A: Yes.

Q: Can you give us your best idea when you arrived, in the latter part of June, was it, '68 -- I'm sorry, '69?

A: '69, yeah; I think I have stated something like June 26th or 27th, and that's accurate.

Q: So it was the latter part of June; right?

A: Yeah.

Q: And how long had you known Charles Melton, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: The first time I met him was when we were living up at Goldmier Hot Springs.

Q: In Seattle, Washington?

A: Yeah.

Q: That would have been what, in '68?

A: Yeah -- so, when was it -- yes, I'm sorry, '68.

Q: Did Charles come down the coast with you and your husband when you left Seattle and came down to California?

A: Yes.

Q: Anybody else come down with you at that time?

A: Yes. There were a lot of people.

Q: How many would you say?

A: One, two, three, four, five, six -- I would say about seven or eight. I am not sure.

Q: Were you all in the group that lived together up at Goldmier?

A: No.

Q: People you just met on the way down?

A: Well, what it was, when we were living in the Los Angeles area, you know, when Tanya was born, before she was born, we were living in a commune situation and this one person who had gone to New Mexico thought it was a nice place, so he brought Charlie Melton and a few other people up there. It was those people plus myself and Bob and Tanya.

Q: That came down to Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

Q: So that when you came back in 1969 and saw Charles Melton, by that time he had been an old time friend?

A: Yes.

Q: Had you known the other people living in this converted truck before you met them in '69?

A: Let's see. I met Jimmy and Julie that time when we came down from Seattle and I didn't really know them that well.

Q: About the same time you met Charles Melton?

A: Well, after I had met Charles Melton.

Q: I take it you then lived with your husband in the converted truck for the period between what? The 29th or so June until the 4th of July?

A: Until the 4th of July, yes.

Q: In that period of time, in that seven- or eight- or nine-day period of time, Mrs. Kasabian, did you ever see Gypsy at the truck?

A: Just on the 4th of July.

Q: That was the first time you ever saw her there?

A: Yes.

Q: Had you ever seen her talking to Charles Melton before then?

A: No.

Q: Did you see her talking to Charles Melton on the 4th of July?

A: Yes. They spoke.

Q: Well, was it sort of a casual thing, just a meeting of the two people out in front of the truck?

A: Well, there was a group of us there and we were sitting inside the truck for a while and then, you know, late Gypsy and I sat out in front of the truck on the sand.

Q: Was Gypsy one of the group in the truck?

A: Excuse me?

Q: Was Gypsy one of the group that was in the truck?

A: Well, no, but when she came she sat in the truck with the rest of the people, with us.

Q: Was that the first time, the very first time you had ever seen her?

A: Yeah.

Q: And then you say you sat out on the sand or outside the truck with Gypsy; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Had you had some difficulty with your husband by this time?

A: Yes.

Q: And when had that arisen?

A: Well, it was sort of coming at a peak, it seemed to me. That morning he told me before she came that he really didn't want me to go with him and, you know, I could just

burst it that way. It was out front.

Q: So that you came there the latter part of June and July the 4th, again there was a separation; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Then you talked with Gypsy, I think you told us yesterday, and she told you about the family; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: That was the first time you had ever talked to Gypsy; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you tell her that you were looking for a place to stay?

A: No.

Q: Do you know who raised the subject of the family, when you first started to talk about the family?

A: When she first came in, she was mostly speaking to the other people, like they were asking her, you know, "Hey, where's Charlie? What's Charlie doing?"

And she would say like, "Charlie just isn't anymore. He is dead," or things like that. I really didn't understand her.

But then, you know, later when it was just her and I talking out in front of the truck on the sand, she started telling me things.

Q: What did she tell you out in front?

A: Well, that they were just a group of people, you know, living together and that they all loved each other and there was children and that they planned to go to the desert and that there was this guy named Charlie and he was really beautiful and something about -- I don't know.

Q: Did she tell you anything about this person Charlie?

A: It is hard to remember her exact words right now.

Q: Did she ever tell you that she thought that he was a God?

A: A God?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't remember those words right now.

Q: How about the words "Jesus Christ"? Did she ever tell you that he was Jesus

Christ?

A: Not that I can recall now.

Q: Did you go down to the ranch that very first day, July the 4th?

A: Yes.

Q: At about what time was it when you got here, if you remember?

A: Around sunset.

Q: About what time would that be? Do you have any idea?

A: I don't know what time.

Q: And who was there -- how did you get from the truck down to the ranch?

A: Hitchhiked.

Q: How far was it? Do you have any idea?

A: In miles?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't know.

Q: How long did it take you to get there?

A: I don't know that either. It took a while.

Q: Did you take Tanya with you?

A: Yes.

Q: Anything else?

A: My bag of clothing.

Q: How big was that, or what did it include?

A: Well, it was a Mexican straw bag about this long and about this tall and about that wide. (Indicating.)

THE COURT: About 18 by 18 by about 10 inches?

THE WITNESS: I guess so.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Did it have anything but clothing in it?

A: My clothing and Tanya's clothes. I brought in some LSD. Is that what you are trying to get at?

Q: No, I haven't got to that yet. We will get there.

A: I brought some Mexican saddle blankets that Charlie Melton had given to me.

That is all.

Q: And when you left the first time did you take everything that you owned in that truck to the ranch with you?

A: No. I left some things behind.

Q: Behind? Like what?

A: Articles of clothing that I didn't want.

Q: That you didn't want?

A: Yes. I think I left my sleeping bag -- no, I didn't have a sleeping bag at that time.

Q: But you then took everything that you did want with you when you went from the truck to the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: And this was before you knew whether you would be accepted at the ranch or not; is that correct?

A: Well, I felt confident that I was going to be accepted.

Q: That you would be?

A: Yes.

Q: Had Gypsy told you what sort of a life that was going on at the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did she tell you what the girls did?

A: No, she didn't get down to the details of what was going on.

Q: Did you ask her what the girls did?

A: No.

Q: Did you ask her how they existed or how they lived?

A: Not that I can recall.

Q: Weren't you interested in knowing how they got along?

A: I am sure I was. I didn't know, though. I just accepted what she said. It sounded really good.

Q: What did she say about the manner in which they got along?

A: Just that they were really together and they all loved each other.

Q: Aside from love, did she tell you how they ate?

A: No.

Q: Did she tell you how they got the money to live on?

A: No.

Q: And you didn't ask her any of those questions then?

A: No.

Q: When you got to the ranch, do you know who you first met? Do you remember that?

A: Some girls in the kitchen. I remember seeing Little Patty.

Q: Did you go directly to the kitchen in the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Anybody else that you remember?

A: I can't really remember. There was a lot of girls there but I just really distinctly remember Little Patty.

THE COURT: "Little Patty"?

A: Patty, yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Now, do you remember when you met Mr. Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: Charles Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: Was that the first day that you got there?

A: Yes.

Q: About what time was it?

A: It was night. It was dark.

Q: Had you met any other men at the ranch before you met Mr. Watson?

A: I remember Gypsy took me into the saloon and I don't know who, I think there was two other guys in there.

Q: Do you remember who they were?

A: I think one of them was -- I don't know his name, but he used to come over every now and then and helped Tex with his dune buggy, parts and things like that. He was a mechanic kind of a person. I don't really know his name.

Q: You never got to know him by any nickname or anything of that nature?

A: No.

Q: And then is that when you met Tex or Charles?

A: Yes, when I left the saloon.

Q: When you left the saloon?

A: Yes.

Q: Who were you with when you left the saloon?

A: Gypsy.

Q: Gypsy?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember what Charles was doing when you met him?

A: No. He was just standing there.

Q: Out near the saloon?

A: I think it was at the end of the boardwalk.

THE COURT: Boardwalk?

THE WITNESS: Yes, boardwalk, toward the kitchen.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: And then did you talk with him?

A: I don't remember talking at that point.

Q: Did Gypsy introduce you to him?

A: I guess so. I don't know.

Q: You don't remember that either?

A: No.

Q: How long were the three of you together, if you remember?

A: I don't know. I am sure not very long.

Q: Incidentally, what had happened to Tanya by this time?

A: Well, before I went into the saloon, before it really got dark, Gypsy took me into the trailer where the other children were and I left my clothes there and Tanya was there with two other babies in there.

Q: Then you came back out, did you?

A: Yes.

Q: That is when you made this little tour with Gypsy?

A: Yes.

Q: Then I think you told us this morning you and Tex then went off somewhere; is that correct?



A: Yes.

Q: And how long were you gone?

A: I don't know. I have no conception of time then or even now.

Q: You told us yesterday, I think, Mrs. Kasabian, that there was a discussion about some money.

A: Yes.

Q: Now, did that occur before or after you went off with Tex?

A: After.

Q: You mean first you went off with him and then you came back; is that correct?

A: No. It was while I was with Tex right after -- we left and then we made love and then we talked. So however you are wording it, that is how it was. I don't know how to word it your way.

Q: Were you still out there wherever you made love, in the shack or building or something like that, when you had the conversation about the money?

A: Yes.

Q: Was there anybody else in there?

A: No, not to my knowledge.

Q: And do you remember how the subject matter of the \$5,000 or so came up?

A: I don't know that conversation. I just know that he asked me where I had come from and what I was doing and I told him and I told him about the money.

Q: Didn't you ask him how the group lived and where they got their money?

A: Not to my knowledge.

Q: Didn't he tell you that everybody who joined the family had to turn over all their earthly possessions to the family?

A: I don't remember that, no.

Q: Didn't he tell you something about a girl by the name of Wild Berry who turned over \$10,000 to the family?

A: No.

Q: Didn't he tell you something about a fellow by the name of Crowe from whom they got \$2,500?

A: No, sir.

Q: And then didn't you tell him that "I know where I can get \$5,000"?

A: No.

Q: Didn't you then go and return the next day with the \$5,000?

A: The next day I went and I got the money, yes.

Q: Didn't you tell Charles that you knew where there was \$5,000?

A: Yeah.

Q: And that you would contribute that to the family?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you remember what you did the remainder of that evening?

I take it you and Charles separated then.

A: Yes.

Q: And did you spend the night on the ranch then?

A: Yes.

Q: And then the next day, which would have been what, July the 5th?

A: Right.

Q: You went back up to the converted truck --

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: -- did you?

And who did you go back with on that occasion?

A: With Mary and Gypsy and Tanya.

Q: And Tanya; you took Tanya along?

A: Yeah.

Q: You went up to the truck and you got what, the \$5,000?

A: Yeah.

Q: Anything else?

A: Yes.

Q: What else did you get?

A: A knife.

Q: And anything else?

A: No.

Q: Was Mr. Melton at the truck at that time?

A: The time --

Q: The time, now, when you were getting the \$5,000.

A: When I actually took the money?

Q: Yes, when you actually took the money.

A: No.

Q: Had you seen him about the truck at any time while you were in the Topanga Canyon area?

A: Not at the truck, no.

Q: Well, did you see him in the vicinity of the truck?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you tell him you were going to the truck to get the money?

A: No.

Q: Did you tell that to -- was your husband Robert Kasabian in the vicinity of the truck?

A: They weren't really in the vicinity of the truck; they were at Topanga Canyon Plaza, which is really a ways from it.

Q: Well, what I meant, did you see them in the vicinity of the truck as you went to the truck for the money?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you say anything to them?

A: I remember sitting down and talking to them.

Q: To Charles and your husband?

A: Oh, wait -- yeah, I spoke to Bob right at the truck and -- no, that was the day before, I'm sorry -- no, we all sat down by a creek at Topanga Canyon Plaza.

I don't know what we talked about, but I knew in my heart what I was doing to do.

Q: You knew you were going to take the \$5,000?

A: Yes.

Q: But you didn't say anything to Bob or Charles Melton?

A: Not in words, no.

Q: Did you say anything to them, anything about the \$5,000?

A: No.

Q: Then I take it you did pick up the \$5,000; right?

A: Yes.

Q: And you say a knife?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that the buck knife that you have --

A: The buck knife.

Q: -- that you have identified here in court?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: How long did you have that, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: I don't understand that.

Q: How long had you had that knife?

A: Had I had that knife?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't understand what you are saying.

Q: Well, how long had you owned that knife?

A: It wasn't my knife.

Q: I see; it was a knife you had seen --

A: It was a knife that I had brought into the ranch, but it wasn't my knife. It was my husband's knife.

Q: Well, but you brought it to the ranch from the truck?

A: From the truck, yes.

Q: That's what I mean: How long had you seen it in the truck?

A: Seen it in the truck?

Q: Yes, when you first got there in the end of June --

A: Yes.

Q: That's the first time you ever saw that knife?

A: Yeah.

Q: Where in the truck was it?

A: When I stole it?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't know. I think it was just hanging on the wall, maybe in a case, I'm not

sure.

Q: Did you carry the knife with you before you got back to the ranch?

You carried it with you, obviously, from the truck to the ranch?

A: Yeah.

Q: Then after you got to the ranch did you continue to carry it with you?

A: Yes, for a while.

Q: Where?

A: On my person.

Q: All right; in a purse or a bag or something like that?

A: I made a little fur -- I forget what you call it -- case.

Q: Like a scabbard, something to hold the knife?

A: Yeah, there's another name for it; I can't think of it right now.

Q: What did you use it for?

A: I can't recall ever really using it.

Q: Do you remember telling the last court you used it to peel potatoes?

A: Yeah, perhaps. I can't really recall using it, at the moment.

Q: Now, before you left the trailer, then, you took the knife, the \$5,000, and anything else you can remember?

A: No, that was it.

Q: Now, didn't you ask Charles or your husband to dig up a stash of LSD?

A: No, that's why I got confused, because I think that happened the day I left, on the 4th, but I'm not sure right now. It is confused, the sequence is confused.

Q: Do you think you might have asked him to dig it up for you and you might have brought it back on the 5th?

A: Yeah.

Q: You had brought the acid from where?

A: From where?

Q: Yes.

A: When I arrived at the ranch?

Q: No, when you arrived at the truck.

A: When I came back from New Hampshire; is that what you mean?

Q: I don't know. Is that where you got it?

A: I don't understand your question.

Q: How long had you had the acid that you brought back to the ranch with you?

A: How long had I had it?

Well, I got it when I left New Hampshire.

Q: So, then, you carried it across country; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you deposited that in this covered truck with your other clothing when you arrived; is that correct?

A: No, we buried it.

Q: You buried it?

A: Yeah.

Q: Who buried it?

A: I think Bob did, I'm not really sure.

Q: But you weren't there when it was buried, were you?

A: No, I don't think so.

Q: So you wouldn't have known where to recover it the next time?

A: Right.

Q: So you'd have had to ask Bob to recover it for you?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: And he did, I take it; he gave it to you?

A: Yeah.

Q: And you brought that back to the ranch with you; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you remember what you did with it when you got to the ranch?

A: I gave it to somebody, I'm not really sure who.

Q: The same person to whom you gave the money?

A: I'm not sure who I gave the money to.

Q: Was it Mr. Watson?

A: I don't think so; I don't know.

Q: How about Mr. Manson?

A: No, I didn't give it to Charlie.

Q: Do you think it was one of the women?

A: I think so, yeah.

Q: Sadie?

A: No, I think it was Leslie, but I'm really not sure.

THE COURT: Lester?

THE WITNESS: Leslie.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Did you bring any other clothing with you on July the 5th when you went up and recovered the money and the acid, anything else that you brought back?

A: I don't think so.

Q: Did your husband or Mr. Melton ever come down to the ranch to inquire about the money?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did they talk to you about it?

A: No.

Q: Did you talk to them about it?

A: No.

Q: Did you see them at the ranch?

A: One day I did, yeah.

Q: Did you talk to them at all?

A: No.

Q: What did you see, the truck, Bob, your husband, or Mr. Melton?

A: No, I saw the truck and I think I saw Bob walking, I'm not sure.

Q: But you never went out to see him?

A: No.

Q: So I take it you never told him that you had the money?

A: Excuse me?

Q: You never told him, then, that you had the money?

A: No.

Q: You didn't -- did you think it was all right to steal the money or to take the

money?

A: No.

Q: Did you think it was wrong?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Whose money was this?

THE WITNESS: Well, it was an inheritance of Charles Melton's.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Do you remember when it was you first saw Mr. Manson?

A: Yeah, the day that I stole the money.

Q: That would have been July the 5th.

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you remember about what time of the day or night it was?

A: It was just shortly after we arrived back at the ranch.

Q: That would have been what, noon hours?

A: I don't know.

Q: It was light, I take it?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you remember where you met him?

A: Yeah.

Q: Where?

A: In back of the ranch.

Q: In the back of the ranch?

A: Yeah.

Q: Anybody else there with him?

A: Yeah; Snake and Brenda; myself; Mary; Gypsy and Tanya.

Q: Did you have some conversation with Manson?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you talk for a while?

A: Yeah, a little bit.

Q: Do you remember what your impressions were of him at that time?

A: I don't know. I guess I thought he was really beautiful, I really don't know now.

Q: Well, you actually thought he was a godly person, didn't you?



A: Yeah, he looked like Jesus, his face.

Q: And by that you thought he was the Messiah, didn't you?

A: I don't know if I thought it at that point.

THE COURT: Mrs. Kasabian, while you are on that stand, should you get tired or want a drink of water or something, will you let me know?

THE WITNESS: Sure.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Mrs. Kasabian, do you remember telling the court the last time that as a result of the conversion and observations that you thought Mr. Manson was the Messiah?

A: At this point, the first meeting?

Q: Yes, the first meeting.

A: That was probably my impression, I really can't -- I don't know, I can't feel -- I have so many opinions of him now it is hard to feel what I felt then.

Q: Pardon?

A: I have so many different opinions fogging how I really felt then, that it is hard to say really what my impression was then.

Q: But you do have a recollection of feeling that he was a godly man?

A: Yeah, I remember his face and that he looked like Jesus, his hair.

Q: And that he was a Messiah come again?

A: Yeah, I remember those words coming out.

Q: And that was at or about the time of your first meeting with him, wasn't it?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you remember what you did, you know, as a daily routine on the ranch when you lived there, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: Cooked, served the men, you know, got things for them, washed clothes, took care of babies, went on garbage runs.

Q: Well, let's stop there.

Were the babies well cared for?

A: Not really, no.

Q: Well, Tanya was one of the group that was being cared for at the time, wasn't she?

A: Yes.

Q: And she wasn't being cared for by you?

A: No.

Q: Did you object to the manner in which Tanya was being taken care of?

A: I'm sure I did; I know I did.

Q: Did you say anything to anybody?

A: I may have, but I can't really remember right now if I did.

Q: Did you ever say anything to Mr. Manson about the way Tanya was being taken care of?

A: Perhaps, I don't know; it's really foggy.

Q: You mean you think you might have criticized Mr. Manson for anything he did?

A: No, I don't think I really voiced anything; I'm not sure, though.

Q: You mean you might have had some inner feeling but didn't express it; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you ever make an effort to pick up Tanya and leave?

A: Not that I can recall.

Q: Well, weren't you considered about the baby's welfare?

A: Of course.

Q: Well, what made you stay there, then?

A: I don't know that now.

Q: Was it some sort of a fascination for Mr. Manson?

A: I don't know. I kept -- at different times I kept like hearing and feeling something telling me that I should leave.

Q: When did you first start having those feelings?

A: Well, I had one feeling -- I forget, I think it was the day that Sadie and I came back; I'm not sure of the date, but I just remember driving down the road to the back house and Tanya was just in the middle of the road running and screaming, and it was really awful.

Q: When was this?

A: I'm not sure.

Q: Well, was it awful enough for you to want to pick her up and just leave?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: Why didn't you do it?

A: I don't know.

Q: People came to the ranch or came to the family and left the family, didn't they?

A: Yeah.

Q: You were pretty much free to come and go as you wanted to do, weren't you?

A: I don't know.

Q: At least, you never made any effort to leave to see what might happen, did you ?

A: I guess not.

Q: Now, you told us about what you called as creepy crawl missions; do you remember that?

I think you used that expression.

A: Yeah.

Q: What did they consist of, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: Creeping and crawling into somebody's house and stealing things.

Q: Did you think that was all right?

MR. BUGLIOSI: It assumes a fact not in evidence, your Honor.

THE COURT: I take it -- did you ever go on any of these creepy-crawl missions?

THE WITNESS: Yeah, in a car.

THE COURT: Overruled.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Did you think it was all right?

A: At the time.

Q: At the time?

A: Yes.

Q: You thought it was all right to steal?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember what you would steal?

A: What I stole?

Q: Yes.

A: I stole credit cards.

Q: Anything else?

A: Not that I can remember.

Q: Any money that you took?

A: Other than the five thousand?

Q: Yes, other than that five thousand.

A: Not that I can recall.

Q: How would you dress when you went on these creepy crawl missions?

A: We always dressed in black at night.

Q: Would you always go out at night?

A: No. I mean --

Q: Creepy crawl, I am talking about.

A: No.

Q: I am talking about creepy crawl, was that always at night?

A: Well, in a sense when I stole the money, that was creepy crawl. That was during the day.

Q: Well, you mean when you took it from Mr. Melton?

A: Yes.

Q: The converted truck?

A: Yes.

Q: You considered that a creepy crawl?

A: I don't know it yet.

Q: You just stole the money from Mr. Melton, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Just walked into the truck and took it out?

A: Yes.

Q: All right. And you had been to that truck before?

A: Yes.

Q: So you knew where the truck and its contents were; right?

A: Yeah.

Q: And, in effect, you knew Mr. Melton --

A: Yes.

Q: -- and you knew your husband was there?

A: Uh-huh.

Q: Is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: When you went out on the other missions with Sadie, or whoever you went with, you didn't know where you were going?

A: No.

Q: You didn't know the people who lived in the houses or owned the cars, did you?

A: No.

Q: So that you were going to take whatever you found of value; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember about how many times you went out on creepy crawl missions?

A: That one time and I am trying to think -- the next day after that, Sandy and I went out.

Q: Can you give us any idea what period of time you are talking about?

A: Around the end of July, I guess. I am not really sure.

Q: You went out with Sadie, did you ?

A: Yes.

Q: How many times, if you remember?

A: I think just that one time.

Q: And then again with Sandy?

A: Yes.

Q: And how many times with Sandy?

A: One time.

Q: Do you remember what areas you went to?

A: With Sandy?

Q: Yes.

A: Went down to the beach, the Venice beach. That was about it.

Q: Aside from dressing in black clothing, Mrs. Kasabian, did you ever take any knives along on your creepy crawl missions?

A: I don't know if I had that knife on me then or not. I mostly carried --

Q: Did you see Sadie or Sandy carry a knife on creepy crawl missions?

A: I can't recall.

Q: Did you ever see anybody carrying a gun on creepy crawl missions?

A: No.

Q: Do you remember going on a creepy crawl mission the night of August the 8th, the night before the Tate affair?

A: No.

Q: Do you remember going out with Sadie Atkins?

A: The night before?

Q: Yes; into the Encino area.

A: Encino?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't know what area we went into.

Q: Do you remember taking something out of a new Chevrolet parked at the curb in Encino?

A: No.

Q: You don't remember anything like that?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever take things other than -- strike that.

Did you ever panhandle for money? Do you know what that expression means?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever do anything like that?

A: At the ranch, you mean while I was living at the ranch?

Q: While you were living at the ranch.

A: Yeah.

Q: You would go into town to do that, wouldn't you?

A: I can remember one instance.

Q: Where did you go, if you remember?

A: On Venice Beach.

Q: Who did you go with?

A: With Sandy.

Q: Just that one occasion that you can recall?

A: Yes.

Q: The orders or the things that were done on the ranch were as a result of meetings that you would have with Mr. Manson at night; is that correct? At night he would tell you what he wanted done the following day?

A: Sometimes.

Q: Did anybody other than Mr. Manson ever tell you what was to be done or who was to do it, do whatever was to be done on the ranch?

A: Not that I can recall.

Q: Everybody sort of looked to him for their orders, didn't they?

A: Yes.

Q: So far as I saw, yes.

Q: Did he do, that is, Mr. Manson, ever do anything around the ranch?

A: So far as what?

Q: Did he do any work?

A: Not work that I did, that I saw him do.

Q: There were people who were helping Mr. Spahn run the ranch; weren't there?

A: With the horses?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: Did Mr. Manson ever do any of the work in connection with the horses?

A: No, that that I saw.

Q: There was a lot of work going on with dune buggies, wasn't there?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Mr. Manson work on the dune buggies?

A: Not that I ever saw.

Q: Did Mr. Watson work on dune buggies?

A: Yes.

Q: Pretty much?

A: Yes, most of the time.

Q: Did he do anything other than work on dune buggies so far as you know?

A: Concerning what? Labor?

Q: Anything else that would occupy his time?

A: Well, he used to eat and sleep and make love and walk around and dance and, you know, sing.

Q: Wasn't he pretty much the mechanic at the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Take care of all the mechanical equipment?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, I think you told us this morning that it was also the policy of Mr. Manson that only people with driver's licenses drove cars; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Wasn't it also the policy at the ranch that the girls would always do the driving?

A: Always?

Q: Yes. Didn't he want the girls to drive whenever you went out?

A: I don't think so. I mean, I don't know.

Q: Didn't he tell you if you were stopped it is easier for a girl to talk their way out of a ticket or something with an officer than a man?

A: I don't recall him ever saying that.

Q: I think you told us also yesterday that Manson told you there was no such thing as right or wrong; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he repeat that a number of times?

A: It was like one of the, you know, their favorite sayings, his favorite saying.

Q: Told you that everything was all right?

A: Yes.

Q: No sense makes sense?

A: Yes.

Q: Then he told you something about you won't get caught if you don't have thought in your head?

A: Yes.



Q: Did you ever ask him what that meant?

A: No, not that I can recall.

Q: What did it mean to you?

A: I don't know. I don't even know if I really thought about it.

Q: You heard his discussion about helter-skelter, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you believe in helter-skelter?

A: Yes.

Q: You thought it was so; is that correct?

A: Sure.

Q: And when he told you that the family would survive by living in the bottomless pit, you thought that was true, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: And he told you the bottomless pit was out in the desert somewhere; is that correct?

A: Uh-huh, yes.

Q: And that when the revolution was over, the family would be the only ones who survived; is that correct?

A: White people.

Q: Yes, but the family would be the only ones of the white race to survive?

A: Yes.

Q: I take it you believed all of this?

A: Yeah, I did.

Q: Did anybody else other than Mr. Manson express any philosophy to the family?

A: I don't understand.

Q: Did anybody else talk to the family about a philosophy?

A: Not that I can recall.

Q: Helter-Skelter was Mr. Manson's idea, wasn't it?

A: Yeah.

Q: He was the one who always talked about helter-skelter?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did anybody else talk about helter skelter that you can remember?

A: It was always being mentioned everyday.

Q: By the family members?

A: Yes.

Q: In other words, everybody in the family believed in him?

A: Yes.

Q: What would you say the feelings of the women in the family were toward Mr. Manson?

A: Total devotion, loyal.

Q: Idolized him?

A: Complete loyalty, yes.

Q: He was sort of a God to them all, wasn't he?

A: Yes. Everybody looked up to him.

Q: As a God?

A: I don't know as a God.

Q: Or a godly man?

A: Yeah.

Q: As a Messiah?

A: Yes; I did.

Q: I think you told us that shortly before the Tate incident Mr. Manson came back from the Big Sur; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: And he told you that now was the time for helter skelter?

A: Yeah.

Q: And that was before the Tate affair; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, you know helter skelter involved violence, didn't you?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you tell anybody, did you tell Mr. Manson that you didn't want to be part of any violent scheme?

A: No.

Q: You knew that it involved the killing of people, didn't you?

A: But I didn't know that that was our part in it.

Q: What did you think your part was going to be?

A: Well, that when helter skelter came to the city, when the blacks and whites were getting it in the city, and the city was burning, we were supposed to go in the dune buggies, with the children and bring them back to the home in the desert.

Q: Incidentally Manson had a particular feeling about children, didn't he?

A: Yes, I guess so.

Q: He loved children, didn't he?

A: I guess so.

Q: Didn't he tell you that the future of the race depended upon the children?

A: The future of the race?

Q: The future of the race. In other words, if you killed the children nobody else was going to be left.

A: I don't remember those words.

Q: What did he say about taking care of children?

A: You mean within the ranch itself?

Q: I am talking about the children at the ranch.

A: We were supposed to really watch them.

Q: Take care of them?

A: Yes.

Q: See that no harm came to them?

A: Right.

Q: On the night of the 9th, the night that you went to the Tate residence, do you remember about what time of the day or night it was that Charlie Manson talked to you for the first time about going out?

A: After supper.

Q: About what time would that have been?

A: Oh, it was dark. I don't know the exact time.

Q: Then he asked you to get a change of clothes, did he?

A: Yes.

Q: And asked you to get some knives?

A: A knife.

Q: A knife?

A: Yes.

Q: And a driver's license?

A: Yes.

Q: Was there anybody else there with you when he talked to you?

A: I don't think so.

Q: And did you get the clothes that he told you to get?

A: He didn't tell me what specific clothes.

Q: He told you to get the changes of clothes?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you get them?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you get one for yourself?

A: Just for myself, yes.

Q: Is that all you got at that time? Just the change of clothes for yourself?

A: Yes.

Q: I see.

And then you got a knife from Larry?

A: Yes.

Q: And your driver's license from whom?

A: From Brenda.

Q: Brenda?

A: Yes.

Q: Where did you meet Mr. Manson again before you left?

A: At the end of the boardwalk.

Q: Was there anybody else there at that time?

A: Yes, Brenda was.

Q: Did you see any other changes of clothing being brought to the car?

A: Being brought into the car?

Q: Yes. I think you told us that everybody had a change of clothes.

A: Yes.

Q: Now, you had yours; is that correct?

A: Uh-huh.

Q: And when Sadie came over, did she have a change of clothes?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did she bring her own?

A: I guess so.

Q: Where was her clothing when you saw it for the first time?

A: I think she was holding it. I am not sure.

Q: All right. How about Patricia Krenwinkel?

A: She had hers too.

Q: How about Mr. Watson?

A: I guess he had his. I don't remember seeing his.

Q: Did you all throw your clothing in the car?

A: Yeah, I think I laid it on the floor.

Q: This car had no back seat; is that correct?

A: Right.

Q: Just had what; a slab seat in the front and nothing in the back?

A: A slab seat?

Q: Well, you know, as opposed to bucket seats, just one continuous seat.

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember how you got in the car?

A: How I got in the car?

Q: Yes, where in the car you sat.

A: On the passenger side.

Q: In the front?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was in the rear?

A: Sadie and Katie.

Q: And you say Mr. Watson drove?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you hear anybody tell Mr. Watson to get a driver's license?

A: No.

Q: You told us you didn't know whether he had one or not; is that correct?

A: No.

Q: Did you hear Mr. Manson say anything to Mr. Watson about driving?

A: No.

Q: Didn't he tell him, "I want the girls to drive"?

A: Not that I heard.

Q: How long had you seen Mr. Watson the evening of the Tate affair just before leaving?

A: Just before leaving?

Q: Yes. When had you last seen Mr. Watson before leaving?

A: I don't remember. I remember seeing him at suppertime but other than that I can't account for him.

Q: Where did you eat that evening? Do you remember?

A: I think we ate in the saloon.

Q: Is that the building next to the kitchen?

A: Yes.

Q: Did the whole family eat there, if you remember?

A: Yes, I think so.

Q: You all get in your car. Now, you drove up to the Tate residence, I think, as you told us.

At that time you each had a weapon, each had a knife, did you?

A: Yes.

Q: And you said you thought you were going on a creepy-crawl; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: What made you think that, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: Well, because of what Tex said.

Q: What did he say?

A: Well, that he had been to this house before and he knew the layout of the house.

Q: Did you ask him why you were taking knives and a gun?

A: No. I figured it was sort of be like a holdup, stickup kind of thing.

Q: You know what you use knives for, don't you?

A: I don't understand.

Q: Do you have any idea what a knife can be used for?

A: You mean for killing people?

Q: Yes.

A: I didn't think of it at that time.

Q: How about the gun?

A: No. I never really related that anybody was going to be killed.

Q: You know a gun is something that is an instrument of death too, don't you?

A: Yes.

Q: And in order to be an instrument of death it would have to be loaded; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you ever think about whether or not the gun was loaded?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever look to see whether it was loaded?

A: No.

Q: Did you ask anybody why the gun, why the knife?

A: No.

Q: You were just content to go along with them; is that correct?

A: I don't know about content. I didn't ask any questions.

Q: You didn't voice any opposition?

A: No.

Q: You didn't say, "I don't want to go"?

A: No.

Q: You didn't pass out or faint or anything like that?

A: No.

Q: At the thought of going?

Yet, you had never been on a creepy crawl with knives before, had you?

A: No; I don't know if I was carrying a knife the night that I crept into the car.

Q: Well, you had never been with anybody else on a creepy crawl mission using knives and a gun?

A: No.

Q: Did it strike you as being usual?

A: I don't know.

Q: Your relationship with Tex Watson wasn't a bad one, was it?

A: Excuse me?

Q: Your relationship with Mr. Watson wasn't a bad one?

A: No, it wasn't bad.

Q: Now about with the girls?

A: No.

Q: Did it occur to you to ask anybody where you were going?

A: No.

Q: And you didn't?

A: No.

THE COURT: Mr. Bubrick, when you go to a new topic, let me know.

MR. BUBRICK: I can stop here.

THE COURT: You can stop here?

MR. BUBRICK: Sure.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will have our afternoon recess at this time.

Once again, do not form or express any opinion in this case; do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else and please keep an open mind.

(Recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors and counsel and the defendant are present.

Mrs. Kasabian, you are still under oath. State your name, please, for the record.

THE WITNESS: Linda Kasabian.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Mrs. Kasabian, let me just back up a minute before we get off into some discussion of the incident that occurred in the Tate house.



Getting back to Mr. Manson's philosophy, you told us that he used phrases like, you know, "No sense makes sense," and things of that nature.

Did he ever say anything about killing?

A: One time I heard him say something about if you are willing to be killed, then you should be willing to kill, or vice versa, something to that effect.

Q: On how many occasions did you hear him make that statement?

A: Only once, to my recollection.

Q: How often would these philosophical discussions take place?

A: Well, it was like everyday life was, you know, in a sense philosophical. Anything that anybody said was philosophical. Usually around suppertime when everybody was together.

Q: Would Manson do all the talking?

A: The majority of it, the talking.

Q: As it pertained to philosophy now I am talking about.

A: Yes.

Q: He did the talking about the philosophy?

A: Well, everybody talked about what Charlie talked about because they were Charlie but he did the main talking.

Q: What did you mean when you said they were Charlie?

A: That was one of the things they they used to say that, in other words, "I'm Charlie and Charlie is me,"

Q: Is this a part of the philosophy that Mr. Manson preached?

A: Yeah.

Q: And everybody in the family seemed to accept that?

A: Oh, yeah.

Q: When he said that, "If you are willing to be killed, then you should be willing to kill," did anybody say that killing was wrong?

A: No.

Q: Did anybody say anything at all to him about killing?

A: No, not that I heard.

Q: Did you ever say anything to him about killing?

A: Before the two nights?

Q: Yes.

A: That that I can recall.

Q: Well, when you say not that you can recall, does that mean you may have but you don't remember now, or that it didn't occur?

A: I don't think it occurred, no.

Q: No, you never said, "I can't kill anybody, Charlie"?

A: Well, I said it the second night.

Q: Well, I meant before you went up to the Tate house?

A: No, nothing like that.

Q: You never told him that?

A: No.

Q: I'm sorry -- you never told him that you disapproved of that portion of his philosophy?

A: No.

Q: Did you believe that portion of his philosophy as you did the rest of his philosophy?

A: I never really dwelled that much upon the things that he said, because so much it, you know, just didn't make sense; but then no sense made sense, and I was confused about a lot of things at this time.

Q: But this was part of the helter-skelter philosophy, also, wasn't it?

A: I guess so, yeah.

Q: And you believed in the helter-skelter philosophy?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, you have told us, then, before I interrupted you here, that you drove up to the Tate residence, if we can refer to that now, on the night of August the 9th; and there were four of you in the car; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were in the front seat and Watson was driving the car; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: This was Mr. John Swartz' car?

A: Yes.

Q: It was a Ford, a yellow Ford; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Or some kind of a yellow car?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, you took some period of time to get from the ranch to the Cielo address, did it not?

A: Yeah.

Q: About how long, have you any idea?

A: Maybe an hour, I don't really know for sure.

Q: Did you have any difficulty finding it?

A: Did what?

Q: Did Charles have any difficulty finding it?

A: No, I don't think so.

Q: Did he go directly to it?

A: Yeah.

Q: Didn't lose his way at all going there?

A: No.

Q: Had you ever been to this address before?

A: No.

Q: Had Mr. Manson ever taken you by and pointed it out?

A: No.

Q: Had Sadie ever taken you by to point it out?

A: No.

Q: Did anybody do any directing as Mr. Watson drove?

A: No.

Q: Did Sadie ever tell him where to go?

A: No.

Q: Did anybody say anything on the trip up, other than Mr. Watson?

A: No, not that I recall.

Q: Well, was there complete silence in the car for this hour --

A: Yeah.

Q: -- that it took to get there?

A: Yeah, it seems to me it was.

Q: Now, I think you told us on the way up you were told to wrap the knives in some sort of a garment; is that correct?

A: Yeah, I'm not quite sure what it was I wrapped it in, but it was a piece of cloth.

Q: Who told you to do that?

A: Yes.

Q: You are sure it wasn't Sadie?

A: I am positive.

Q: Incidentally, what was Sadie's relationship to the rest of the girls in the family?

A: I don't understand.

Q: Was Sadie anything out of the ordinary, you know, on the ranch?

A: I don't know. There seemed to be a conflict concerning Sadie.

Q: A what?

A: A conflict concerning Sadie.

Q: Sadie and who else?

A: I don't know if it was the first day, but around the first time when I got in there, between her and Leslie.

Q: How about between Sadie and Mr. Manson?

A: Not that I ever saw, but the conflict between Sadie and Leslie was about Manson.

Q: About Manson?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Did Manson have a particular girl or did he have all the girls?

THE WITNESS: All the girls.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: As a matter of fact, Mr. Manson pretty well directed the sex lives of everybody on the ranch, too, didn't he?

A: You mean telling who to make love to who?

Q: Yes.

A: No.

Q: Weren't there sort of group experiences?

A: Yes.

Q: When Manson was present?

A: Yes. There was one that I recall.

Q: Didn't that occur at Manson's direction?

A: Yes.

Q: Getting back to this other incident on the way up to the Tate house, you did wrap the knives in something; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you do with the knives after you wrapped them?

A: I think I just placed them on the floor. I am not really sure.

Q: Did you ask anybody why you were wrapping knives?

A: No. I was told to wrap them.

Q: What sort of knives were they?

A: There was my buck knife and the knife that Larry gave me and the third knife that was similar to the knife that Larry gave me.

Q: Your buck knife is a knife with a folding blade; correct?

A: That is right.

Q: And the other two knives were they the folding blade type or did they have a permanent extended blade?

A: Permanent blade.

Q: Were they kitchen kitchen knives?

A: No. They were more like hunting knives.

Q: Did you ask Mr. Watson why he wanted you to wrap them?

A: I didn't ask why. I was told.

Q: Weren't you curious about why you would want to hide knives?

A: Curious?

Q: Yes; curious enough to want to ask somebody about, you know, why should we be afraid of having these knives seen by police?

A: No.

Q: Never occurred to you?

A: No. I didn't ask.

Q: Did you think it was something illegal?

A: Yes. I knew the gun was.

Q: Yet you wrapped the gun too, didn't you ?

A: I think so, yes.

Q: In the same package as the knives?

A: I think so, yes.

Q: Didn't you ask Mr. Watson why he wanted the gun wrapped with the knives?

A: No.

Q: Didn't you ask him where you were going or why you needed the weapons?

A: No.

Q: Were you afraid of asking anything?

A: Perhaps. I didn't really know that.

Q: I think yesterday you told us something about your being programmed, I think is the word you used, not to ask why?

A: Uh-huh.

Q: Is that the expression you used?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember using that word?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you mean by that word?

A: By programmed?

Q: Yes.

A: Being told, I guess, you know, like ordered. Somebody tells you what to do, you know.

Q: Who did the telling?

A: Concerning what?

Q: Of not asking, I suppose.

A: Oh, Charlie.

Q: Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: And did he do the ordering?

A: Concerning --

Q: Any orders that were given on the ranch?

A: Yes, the majority of the orders, yes.

Q: Did he tell you not to ask why?

A: Yes.

Q: Just to do what he told you to do?

A: Just -- he used to say "Never ask why. Love will never die."

Q: You felt that whatever he told you to do was the right thing to do; is that correct?

A: I guess so.

Q: You didn't question anything he told you to do, did you?

A: I never questioned it, no.

Q: You just did whatever he asked you to do; correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: And so when he told you to get in the car and go with Tex, you did?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you hear him tell Tex to get in the car and drive?

A: No.

Q: Did you hear him say anything to Tex?

A: The first night?

Q: The first night.

A: Not that I can recall.

Q: I think you told us yesterday that you saw a conversation, or at least you saw Tex and Mr. Manson talking outside the car just before you left?

A: Yeah.

Q: Correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you overhear any of that conversation?

A: No, not that I can remember.

Q: You also said something about, I think just before you left, Mr. Manson said something about "Leave some sign, something witchy"?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that w-i-t-c-h-y as a witch?

A: Yes.

Q: Witchy?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he mean by that, if you know?

A: Now, I really don't know.

Q: Wasn't the word "witch" something that was used frequently around the family?

A: We referred to ourselves as witches.

Q: You mean the female members of the family?

A: Yes.

Q: Did that include you?

A: Yes.

Q: You referred to yourself as a witch?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did it have any particular meaning to you?

A: It was more of a game to me than anything, really.

Q: Well, when he said, you know, "Leave some sign, something witchy," did you know what he wanted you to do?

A: No.

Q: Well, did you ask him, "What do you mean?"

A: No.

Q: Didn't he say, "You girls know what I mean"?

A: Yes.

Q: Well, did you know what he meant?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: Have you ever left any signs or any witchy things, if I can use that expression, among yourselves out at the ranch?

A: Yeah.

Q: What did you do when you thought you were leaving witchy things or signs?

A: Well, I remember when we were living out in Devil's Canyon past the waterfall --



Q: Excuse me; is Devil's Canyon a part of the Spahn Ranch?

A: I don't know if it is part of it. It is across the street from it.

Q: But close in proximity, then?

A: Yeah.

Q: What happened at the water --

A: Just to mark the way to where our campsite was we made little things out of beads and rocks and feather and things like that and just hung them on the trees.

Q: So that it would sort of outline a path --

A: Yeah.

Q: -- back to Devil's Canyon; is that it?

A: Yes.

Q: Were there anything other than trinkets that you have described that you would use in this witchy sign or witchy thing?

A: Not that I can recall.

Q: Now, I think you told us that you left the ranch somewhere after dinner; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: When it was dark?

A: Yes.

Q: I know you have told us over and over again time really didn't mean anything to you, but do you have any idea what time it might have been by the clock, or anything like taht?

A: About an hour after we ate; and it was dark when we ate, so I don't know.

Q: Did you see any clocks in your drive from the ranch to the Tate residence?

A: No.

Q: Well, I take it you did what you were told to do, you wrapped the knives and the gun in the cloth as you drove up to the Tate house?

A: Yes.

Q: Incidentally, about what portion of the journey did you do that in?

A: Right at the beginning, just before the lights on Topanga Canyon Boulevard.

Q: You wrapped them up and just put them under the seat; is that it?

A: I don't know if it was under the seat or on the floor; I'm not sure.

Q: Did you ever ask Mr. Watson why he was driving the car?

A: No.

Q: Did you tell him it was a violation of Charlie's rules to drive a car without a license?

MR. BUGLIOSI: It assume a fact not in evidence.

THE COURT: Yes, sustained.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Well, had Charlie ever told him anything about the women driving the car?

A: Yes.

Q: And he said only people with driver's licenses were to drive the car; is that correct?

A: Yeah, but if I remember correctly, it was referring to the certain car.

Q: Was there more than one car on the ranch?

A: Yeah.

Q: Other than the Ford?

A: Yes.

Q: Well, did he say that if you drove the specific car that only a licensed driver should drive that?

A: I'm not sure of his exact words, but I know it was in connection with a little white car.

Q: What sort of a car was the white one?

A: Kind of a car?

Q: Yes, what kind of car was it, if you know?

A: I know it was a station wagon, and it was similar to the car that I took to New Mexico.

Q: Who did it belong to, if you know?

A: At the time I didn't know, but now I know it belonged to Gary Hinman.

Q: Now, you drove, then, as I think you told us, from the ranch to that Cielo Drive; is that correct?

A: Excuse me?

Q: You drove to the Tate house?

A: Yes.

Q: And you never asked any questions on the way up there?

A: No.

Q: And then you say when you got to the area you parked the car alongside of a telephone pole; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, do you remember whether you passed any houses --

A: Yes.

Q: -- on the drive up to the area?

A: Yes.

Q: Were there lights on in any of these houses?

A: I don't remember noticing it when we drove up. I just remember when I ran down.

Q: You noticed the lights on on the way down?

A: No, I don't notice the lights; I just noticed that there were houses there.

MR. BUBRICK: I'm sorry, your Honor, I wanted to see if the aerial photographs would help me.

THE COURT: Go ahead.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Mrs. Kasabian, I invite your attention to what has been identified here as People's Exhibit No. 25.

Now, as I understand it, the car was parked somewhere in the upper left-hand corner of the picture; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: That's where there is a notation; is that correct?

A: Yes, that is.

Q: Now, I think you said that the car was parked alongside of a telephone pole, is that correct, just before some wires were cut, now?

A: Yes.

Q: And that Mr. Watson got out of the car; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And that some telephone wires dropped, or you saw some wires come down?

A: Yes, that's right.

Q: Now, did you hand Mr. Watson anything when he got out of the car, just before the wires were cut?

A: No.

Q: Did you hand him a pair of wirecutters?

A: No.

Q: Did you see him take anything out of the car when he got out?

A: I don't think so.

Q: Did you see or hear anybody hand him a pair of wirecutters?

A: No.

MR. BUBRICK: I am sorry, may I -- excuse me, may I get that small picture?

Q: Mrs. Kasabian, I show you People's 74 for identification; it is a photograph that apparently has a telephone pole with a metal box on it, and then a metal pipe with an object on one end of it.

Do you notice that?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see that when you were seated in the car just before the wires were cut?

A: Yes.

Q: Did anybody tamper with that or touch that -- I am referring now to the object in the center of the picture, the object on the pipe.

A: Did anybody touch it?

Q: Yes, did anybody touch it or do anything with it?

A: Not that I saw.

THE COURT: Excuse me, was 74 used in our trial here? 74, I don't think so.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Let me take a look at that.

THE COURT: I don't think so.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No, 74 is a close-up of 73, and I didn't mark 74.

You can mark it now, if you want. It is just a close-up.

MR. BUBRICK: May I use 73, then, your Honor?

THE COURT: Either one, I don't care, because I have no record of 74; I just want to make sure we have our exhibits straight.

MR. BUBRICK: May I withdraw 74, then, and invite the witness' attention to 73, which has been, I think --

THE COURT: Yes, for identification.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Now, do you recognize that, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: Yes.

Q: That's the same telephone pole and pipe object we have been talking about; is that correct?

A: Yes it is.

Q: And did you see them on the night that you were in the car, the night of August the 9th?

A: Yes.

Q: You saw the objects on the top of the telephone pole in the center of the page?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: Now, I asked you a moment ago did anybody touch that?

A: Not that I saw.

Q: And you didn't see Mr. Watson do anything to that object, did you?

A: No.

Q: Now, let me invite your attention again to 25, again now at the upper left-hand corner of the photograph; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Is this where the car was parked?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you do? Get out of the car and walk up that roadway?

A: Yes.

Q: About how long a walk is that, would you say?

A: In distance?

Q: In distance if you can estimate.

A: I can't really estimate.

Q: How long did it take you to walk up that incline?

A: Just a few minutes.

Q: Did you pass all the houses there depicted in the picture?

A: We must have. I don't remember seeing the houses.

Q: Do you remember were there any lights on on the way as you walked up?

A: Not that I can remember.

Q: Can you point out on the photograph you have in front of you now, Mrs. Kasabian, the area where you came across the gate?

A: The gate?

Q: Let me ask you first: Can you see the gate on the photograph?

A: I think so. I am not real sure. Yes, I can see it.

Q: Where would it be?

A: Right there.

Q: Now, you are pointing to the object in just the upper center of the photograph. It looks like a little brick wall.

A: Something like that, yes.

Q: Let me invite your attention, Mrs. Kasabian, to people's 8, which is a schematic behind you.

I invite your attention to this little solid area that I am pointing to now.

Does that appear to be the brick area that you have referred to in the photograph?

A: It is really hard to tell.

Q: I am pointing now to the area you referred to a moment ago in the upper portion of the photograph.

A: I think that is the gate.

Q: Was there more than one gate on this driveway leading up to the residence?

A: No.

Q: You only saw one gate across the driveway?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Will you circle that portion, Mr. Bublick, please. Do that with a red pencil with an arrow to that and mark it "Gate L.K."

Thank you.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Let me invite your attention now to the schematic again, Mrs. Kasabian, particularly to what has been identified as a writing which says "Path defendants took to get around gate."

Do you notice that up here?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you find a gate stretched across that walkway or driveway?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you get around it by going off to one end and climbing over it?

A: Yes.

Q: Was there some sort of an incline that allowed you to climb over it?

A: Yes.

Q: What was there, if you remember?

A: Just an embankment and barbed wire we could crawl through.

Q: Do you remember about how far in distance that was from the area where you had parked the car?

A: Not far at all.

Q: The car is parked apparently up here are the telephone pole. You never removed the car from that area?

A: Yes, we did.

Q: Where did you go? Where was it moved?

A: Down to the bottom of the drive, all the way down to the other street.

Q: When did you do that?

A: Right after Tex cut the wires.

Q: You cut the wires, then you moved the car further on down the street?

A: Yes.

Q: In the upper right-hand corner there appears to be some houses.

Did you go anywhere in that vicinity?

A: No. After the wires were cut?

Q: Yes, after Tex moved the car.

A: No.

Q: Can you point out the area on the picture where the car was moved to or would it be off the photograph?

A: Where the car was moved to?

Q: Yes, after the wires were cut?

A: Down the road right around the corner.

Q: Maybe I am misleading you, Mrs. Kasabian. I don't mean to.

When I asked you to look at people's 73, the one with the photograph, isn't this the spot where you first stopped the car and the telephone wires were cut?

A: Yes.

Q: In that what is depicted on 73, the area in the upper left-hand corner of people's 25?

A: No, I don't think so, no.

Q: I'm sorry. Then I misunderstood.

In other words, then this area is somewhere in the middle of this photograph; is that correct?

A: Yes. I believe it is right here.

Q: The area that we have circled now marked "Gate L.K.," that is where the wires were cut; is that correct?

A: Yes.

(missing)

Q: And that was all right with you; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: I think you told us, Mrs. Kasabian, that you all crossed and you approached the house, is that correct, you crossed around the fence?

A: Yes.

Q: And you all continued up that walkway; is that correct?

A: I can only account for myself and Tex walking towards the house at one point.

Q: Where was Sadie and Pat?

A: I don't know.

Q: When the car was driven down the hill and parked, did the four of you walk back up?

A: Oh, yes.

Q: You saw them with you then?

A: Yes.

Q: And when you all got across the embankment around the closed gate, were



there four of you at that time, if you know?

A: Yes.

Q: And as you walked up from the embankment towards the house, were there still four of you?

A: I can just remember myself and Tex walking.

Q: Were you in the lead with Mr. Watson? You and he walking together?

A: Yes.

Q: And as far as you knew Sadie and Pat behind?

A: I guess so. I can't recall where they were.

Q: Was anything being said by anybody?

A: No.

Q: Did you see any lights on in this house as you were approaching?

A: I remember the light on the garage.

Q: Any other light that you remember being on?

A: No.

Q: Well, eventually I think you told us yesterday that you got to the front of the house and Mr. Watson told you to go around and look for open doors, windows, or things like that.

A: No, we didn't go to the front of the house. We were walking -- I remember I had to jump a hedge or something like that to walk to the back of the house and Tex went to the front side of the house.

Q: When you and Tex separated, did you see where Sadie and Linda were?

A: Sadie?

Q: Sadie and Pat? I am sorry.

A: No.

Q: Did you see them at any time other than as you have described prior to the time that the victims came out of the house?

A: I don't understand your question.

Q: Well, did you see them at any time that evening after you and Mr. Watson separated when you jumped the hedge and walked around to the back?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see them again at any time before any of the victims came out of the house?

A: Yes.

Q: When?

A: I saw Katie.

Q: When did you see her?

A: Before the screams and I was back at the car where the man had been shot.

Q: Now, I think -- do you remember what sort of a car the Parent boy was driving?

THE COURT: Excuse me, the jurors are having trouble hearing you.

THE WITNESS: Sorry.

What was your question?

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Do you remember what sort of a car the parent boy -- well, the boy that was killed was driving?

A: No.

MR. BUBRICK: Well, excuse me -- may I just have a second?

Q: We have agreed that you might refer to that, Mrs. Kasabian, as a white Rambler, so that when we talk about cars there will be no confusion between the Ford and the car at the top of the hill, the Rambler; do you understand?

A: Okay.

Q: All right.

Now, did you see either Sadie or Patricia before you saw the Rambler?

A: Yeah.

Q: Where were they then?

A: We were just crossing over the barbed wire fences.

Q: Is that before or after you had been to the back of the house?

A: This was before.

Q: So that after, in terms of sequence, after getting around the fence or around the gate and walking up the walkway, when the four of you were still together, the first thing that happened was the Rambler starting to come out; is that correct?

A: Wait, I lost you.

Q: Well, the four of you are now on your way up to the house --

A: Right.

Q: Is that when you saw the Rambler?

A: After we crossed over the fence?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: The four of you were still together when you saw the Rambler; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, you have told us what happened with the Rambler --

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: -- now, did you then, the four of you , then proceed on?

A: No, from that point all I can remember is me and Tex walking.

Q: Well, you hadn't anticipated the shooting of the youngster in the Rambler, had you?

A: No, of course not.

Q: Did you say to Tex, "I am going back, I want no part of this"?

A: No.

Q: Did you see any lights on in the main house, now?

A: No.

Q: You had seen the light on the garage, hadn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you run toward the garage and see if there was anybody there, for help?

A: No.

Q: Had you seen the guesthouse on the end of people's 8 yet?

A: What was that?

Q: Had you seen the area of the guesthouse?

A: No.

Q: If you look behind you, the guesthouse is on the very left-hand side of people's 8.

A: No.

Q: Had you seen that building, that structure yet?

A: No.

Q: Had you seen any lights on anywhere in the house?

A: Before all this?

Q: Yes -- no, after the driver of the Rambler had been shot.

A: Well, only when I saw the man come out of the front door, I saw a light.

Q: But that was sometime after the shooting of the young man in the Rambler, wasn't it?

A: Yeah.

Q: Well, but after the young man was shot in the Rambler did you make any effort to get to the garage where you had seen the light?

A: No.

Q: Did you make any effort to get to the house to see if there was anybody there?

A: No.

Q: Did you shout or scream or do anything in an effort to warn anybody?

A: No.

Q: Did you say anything to Tex?

A: No.

Q: All right.

I think you told us this car, the Rambler then was moved or pushed over to side of the road, or something, was it?

A: Yeah.

Q: Incidentally, where was that; where was the Rambler with respect to the closed gate in the driveway?

A: It was right in front of the gate, in front of the gate.

Q: Yes?

A: Inside of it.

Q: But very close to the gate area; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: So that you were still some distance down the hill, this long walkway?

A: I don't understand.

Q: Well, you were still an appreciable distance from the main house, weren't you?

A: Oh, yeah.

Q: In other words, you were still very close to the area where you had climbed the

embankment to get around the gate?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you turn and run and go down the embankment?

A: No.

Q: Did you run back toward your car?

A: No.

Q: You continued on with Tex and the two girls, didn't you?

A: I continued on with Tex; I don't remember about the girls.

Q: Now, how far did you walk, do you think, after the boy was shot in the Rambler?

A: How far did I walk?

Q: Yes, to approach the main house.

A: I don't know. I don't know.

Q: Did it take a matter of minutes?

A: No, I guess not. I don't know.

Q: After these shots was there any noise, did you hear any noise?

A: No.

Q: Did you hear any barking dogs?

A: No.

Q: I take it no lights appeared in any of the windows of the house.

A: No, not that I saw.

Q: Nobody came out to say anything or shout anything?

A: No.

Q: All right.

Then you and Tex, as you say, climbed a hedge did you?

A: Climbed a hedge?

Q: Or got over a hedge to go toward the main house.

A: Well, after he told me to go into the bank of the house, I just remember jumping down off of a level, jumping down a few feet and walking to the back of the house.

Q: Let me again invite your attention to people's 8, Mrs. Kasabian.

As I understand it, now, this would indicate the position of the Rambler -- can you see around here?

A: Yes.

Q: This is the position of the Rambler right here; and after this car was moved to the side, at least you and Tex continued on toward the main house; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember where it was that you moved across the hedge to get over to the rear of the house?

A: Between the garage and the house.

Q: Can you give us any idea what this distance is in feet?

A: No, I don't know.

Q: Now, as you walked in front of the garage, did you have occasion to see whether or not there was anybody around the garage?

A: I didn't see anybody; I don't remember.

Q: Did you hear any sounds or noises of any kind coming from the garage?

A: No.

Q: Now, I take it you walked around to the back of the house, did you?

A: Yes.

Q: And then what did you do, come back, retrace your footsteps again?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you see any open windows or doors?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever shout a warning to anybody in the house?

A: No.

Q: Did you see anything as you walked around the back of the house?

A: No.

Q: You came back, then, to the front of the house and you met Tex again, did you?

A: Yes.

Q: And where was he at that time, if you remember?

A: He was at a window.

Q: And is that when he was cutting the screen, as you have told us?

A: Yes.

Q: And up until this, had any doors opened in this house?

A: No, not that I saw.

Q: And after he cut the screen did he removed the screen from the window?

A: I didn't see that, I don't think.

Q: Did he stick his hand in through the cut screen and open the window?

A: I don't know; I don't think so.

Q: Do you remember seeing the window open at any time while you were there?

A: No.

Q: Were you standing fairly close to him at the time?

A: Yeah, right beside him.

Q: Well, you could see what he was doing, couldn't you?

A: Yeah.

Q: What did you see him do?

A: Just cut the screen.

Q: Then what?

A: I don't know, I left.

Q: Where did you go?

A: Back to the Parent car.

Q: Did you see Sadie and Pat as you went back to the Rambler?

A: No.

Q: Did you shout any warnings or make any noise at all as you walked back to the Rambler?

A: No.

Q: Incidentally, did you walk or did you run?

A: I don't know.

Q: When you were in front of the house, you know, and Tex was cutting the screen, could you see the guesthouse at that time?

A: No.

Q: Were you aware of the guesthouse at all while you were in front of the house?

A: No.

Q: Did you see any lights shining through any of the windows in front of this house?

A: I think I saw a light coming from a room where I saw the flowers, but I'm not sure.

Q: Did anybody try the front door, if you know?

A: No, I don't know.

Q: Then you went back to the Rambler; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And then you described, you heard all the sounds and the stabbings and the hittings that you have described; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Then did you make those observations while you were standing at the Rambler?

A: No, not all of them.

Q: Where did you go during the course of these homicides that you have described?

A: Well, when I heard the screaming, I ran towards the house.

Q: Back towards the main house?

A: Yes.

Q: How far did you get, using, perhaps the window that you had been at before as a point of reference?

A: I don't know. I was maybe from here to there, to the door.

Q: From where you are to the back of the courtroom?

A: Yes, from the front door of the house.

Q: And is that about as close as you got to the front door of the house?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: 30 feet, you Honor, or 35 feet?

THE COURT: About 36 feet.

MR. BUBRICK: 36 feet?

THE COURT: You did very well.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Did you ever shout to ask the people to stop doing what they were doing?

A: Yeah, I said to Katie --

Q: That's when she came up to you?

A: -- to Sadie, I'm sorry.

Q: That's when Sadie came up to you, didn't she?



A: Yes, she came running out of the house.

Q: How close did he get to you?

A: She was right here beside me.

Q: That's when she came back for your knife; is that correct?

A: No.

Q: Had you given somebody your knife by this time?

A: Yes.

Q: To whom?

A: To Katie.

Q: When did you do that?

A: After I left Tex at the window.

Q: Well, when did you see Katie after you left Tex at the window?

A: When?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't know; when I was back at the car, at Steve Parent's car.

Q: Did she come back to the car to ask you for a knife?

A: Yes.

Q: She was the only one who came back, then; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And so you gave her your knife; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ask her what she had done with hers?

A: No, I didn't ask.

Q: Did you ask her what she wanted your knife for?

A: No.

Q: Did you tell her, "You can't have it"?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever put your hand on the horn of that Rambler and blow the horn?

A: No.

Q: How long would you say this incident at the Tate house took, Mrs. Kasabian, if you can estimate the time for us?

A: I have no idea, I am sorry.

Q: All right. You were still at the Rambler, I take it, when you were rejoined by Tex, Pat and Sadie; is that correct?

A: No.

Q: Where were you when they joined you?

A: I was at the bottom of the hill in the car.

Q: Where the Ford had been parked?

A: Yes.

Q: That is, you had left the Rambler and gone all the way down by yourself; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you get around the gate by using that embankment that you described?

A: Yes.

Q: In other words, you got back down the same way you got up; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: How long would you say you were at the Ford, if you can estimate the time, before you were joined by the other three?

A: I don't know.

Q: Do you remember whether there were any houses in between, you know, the gate, perhaps, and where the car was parked.

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see any lights on in any of the house?

A: I don't recall any lights on.

Q: Did the thought ever occur to you to go to one of those houses for help?

A: Yes, at one point it did.

Q: Did you do it?

A: No.

Q: Did you warn anybody that evening?

A: No.

Q: Then I take it you got, the four of you, eventually got back in the car together and drove off again; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And then did Tex drive again, did he?

A: Yes.

Q: And you then drove to the house where they hosed you?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know who suggested finding a hose to hose off?

A: Tex said something about finding a hose and washing himself off.

Q: Did he also saying something about finding a garbage can to burn the clothes?

A: Yes.

Q: When did he say that?

A: Sometime en route, right after we left.

Q: In between the Tate house and the hosing-off incident?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you say anything about burning clothes in a garbage can at night?

A: No.

Q: Did anybody say anything about burning clothes in a garbage can at night?

A: Well, that is what Tex wanted to do, but nobody questioned it, to my knowledge.

Q: But it wasn't done?

A: No.

Q: Well, after the hosing-off incident and after you started again and Tex told you to throw the clothes out, did you ask him if he still wanted to burn the clothes?

A: No.

Q: Incidentally, did you hear any conversation between Sadie and Tex at or about the time that you stopped to hose off, to wash off?

A: No.

Q: Was there any conversation between Sadie and Tex that you could see, even though you might not have been able to hear it?

MR. BUGLIOSI: It calls for a conclusion, your Honor.

THE COURT: You can see people appear to be talking to each other without hearing what they were saying?

THE WITNESS: Not that I can recall.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Were the four of you always this close together?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were standing there, I take it, while they were washing themselves off with the hose?

A: Yes.

Q: Then Tex drove off as you have indicated and eventually you stopped and you threw one bundle out; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you throw it over the embankment?

A: Yes.

Q: I think you also told us that you were steering the car as Tex took his clothes off?

A: Uh-huh, yes.

Q: And did the car remain in motion, just keep on going while he was removing his clothes?

A: Uh-huh, yes.

Q: Removed his shirt?

A: Yes.

Q: And then removed his trousers, did he?

A: I can't account for his pants. I don't know.

Q: Well, at least the car never stopped between the time you washed off and you stopped to throw the bundle of clothes away, did it?

A: No.

Q: In other words, it was a rather hilly area, was it?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were doing the steering, were you, while the car was moving?

A: When he was taking his shirt off.

Q: Yes, when he was taking his clothes off?

A: Yes.

Q: Had you ever been in the area before?

A: No, not to my knowledge.

Q: Eventually, I think you told us, the car stopped and you threw some clothing

away; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you throw it over an embankment?

A: Over an embankment?

Q: Yes.

A: You mean --

Q: Down into a gully or something like that?

A: I remember that I was at the edge of a hill and I threw it.

Q: Did you make a conscious effort to throw the thing out so it would go down the gully?

A: I just threw it like that (indicating). It went down.

Q: Was there a flat area close to the surface of the road in the area where you were with the clothing?

A: I didn't understand.

Q: Was there a level area?

A: Yes.

Q: Anywhere close to the edge of the road?

A: Yes, a dirt road, a dirt shoulder.

Q: Did you throw the clothes on the shoulder?

A: No. I was standing on the shoulder.

Q: And you just threw it over so it would go down in the ravine or something like that?

A: Yes.

Q: And that was only the clothing, is that correct, that you disposed of the first time?

A: Yes.

Q: And then later you got rid of the knives?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ask anybody why they were destroying or throwing the clothes away?

A: No.

Q: And when you were told to get rid of the knives, did you ask Tex why he wanted to do that?

A: No.

Q: Did you ask any questions?

A: No.

Q: Did you ask any questions of any of the girls?

A: No.

Q: Was there any conversation at all between the time you left the Tate house and the disposal of the clothing?

A: Yes.

Q: What was said?

A: Well, the girls were complaining about their hair and Katie complained about her hand.

Q: Did you have any complaints?

A: No, I don't think I said anything.

Q: Were you crying then?

A: No.

Q: You get back eventually to the Spahn Ranch that evening, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: And then there was a meeting with Mr. Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: And he told you to go to bed?

A: Yes.

Q: Eventually after some conversation?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you go to bed?

A: I guess so.

Q: Did you sleep?

A: I guess I must have.

Q: You didn't cry that night, did you?

A: I don't know -- no, not the physical tears.

Q: No physical tears at any rate?

A: No.

Q: Then the next day again in the evening hours you were told to get a change of clothes?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were again --

THE COURT: Before we get to that Mr. Bubrick, you can reserve that until tomorrow.

MR. BUBRICK: Thank you, Honor Honor.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen, we will recess at this time until tomorrow at 9:30.

Again please heed the usual admonition.

The spectators will remain seated until the jury leaves.

(The adjournment was taken until Wednesday, August 18, 1971 at 9:30 a.m.)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, WEDNESDAY, AUGUST 18, 1971,

9:45 A.M.

-- oOo --

THE COURT: Good morning. I hope it is.

THE JURORS: Good morning.

THE COURT: Gentlemen, such as will listen, good morning.

People against Watson; let the record show all our jurors are present; the defendant and all counsel are present.

LINDA KASABIAN,

Resumed the stand and testified further as follows:

CROSS-EXAMINATION (Resumed) BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: I think yesterday when we stopped, Mrs. Kasabian, we were just about to start to talk about the events that occurred on the night of the 10th, the trip to the LaBiancas; but before we get into that, may I just invite your attention to a few other questions that I have, prior to starting that?

I want to invite your attention now to the incident that occurred when you left the Tate house and you stopped and the car was stopped so that the people involved might hose off.

Do you recall that?

A: Yes.

Q: And I think you said that Mr. Watson was calm and controlled his faculties and things of that nature; is that correct?

A: Yes, he seemed to be.

Q: How about you, were you calm?

A: I was scared.

Q: Well, but were you calm?

You didn't cry out or do anything like that, did you?

A: No, I didn't say anything.

Q: Did you talk to either of the people that came out, either the man or the woman?

A: No.

Q: Did you tell them, "We have just committed a horrible murder," or something like that?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: And when the gentleman that you described as sixtyish started to approach your car did you join and run with the other three to the car?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: You didn't stay behind?

A: No.

THE COURT: The old man of 60?

MR. BUBRICK: Let's just say that the sixtyish man -- I will withdraw the adjective. I feel closer to that age than otherwise.

Q: Well, at least that gentleman came out and you joined with the other three and you ran to the car; is that correct?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And then when you got down the hill, or wherever it was, at the gas station, I think you told us there was a purchase of gas made at that time.

A: Yes.

Q: Did you say anything to the attendant?

A: No.



Q: Did you stay calm and collected in the presence of the gas station attendant?

A: I didn't say anything to him.

Q: I think you told us also, Mrs. Kasabian, that there were four changes of clothing that were taken when you first started to go to the Tate residence; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, three of them were thrown out; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: How about yours? Did yours stay behind?

A: I never changed.

Q: Did you take the change with you?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What happened to that?

A: It stayed in the car. I never bothered to change.

Q: When you were told to throw the clothing out, you never threw out the clothing that you had taken to change; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember what happened to it when you got back to the ranch?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever see it again?

A: Yes.

Q: When?

A: The next night.

Q: Did you do anything with it the second night, after the second night?

A: Not that I recall.

Q: Did you bring it back to the ranch, if you remember?

A: Yes.

Q: I think you told us that when you left the ranch the night of the 10th Charlie was driving, that is Charlie Manson was driving the car; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were in the front, in the middle of the front seat?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: And Clem was on the right-hand side of the front seat; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And I take it this was again that Ford without the back seat?

A: Yes.

Q: So there were four people sitting on the floorboard area of the back seat; is that correct?

A: Well, three on the actual floor and one person was another's lap.

Q: And then you started to drive and I think Mr. Manson was driving the car when you left the ranch; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you drove into the Pasadena area?

A: Yes.

Q: And from the Pasadena area you drove where? From the Pasadena area then next you drove to another house, is that correct? Drove around Pasadena area a while and then there was some talk about stopping at a house but Mr. Manson had seen the pictures of children or something?

A: Yes.

Q: That was in Pasadena and then you drove to another area?

A: Still in the same area.

Q: Very close to the first stopping?

A: It was in the Pasadena area.

Q: And then you drove on to a church. Was that also in the Pasadena area?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: From there you then somewhere along the line you took over and drove; is that correct?

A: No. From the church Charlie drove.

Q: Pardon?

A: From the church Charlie drove.

Q: From the church.

Somewhere you got eventually back down onto Sunset Boulevard, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Wee you driving while the car was going westbound on Sunset?

A: Near the end of Sunset Boulevard I remember taking over driving.

Q: Do you remember how far west on Sunset Boulevard you got when you became involved with that white sports car incident that you told us about?

A: How far west?

Q: Yes. Were you down near the ocean somewhere, do you know?

A: I didn't see the ocean but we were down pretty far and the white sports car didn't happen until we turned around and started coming back.

Q: Then you drove from the area on Sunset all the way back across Los Angeles, eastbound; is that correct?

A: I don't know if we went through town, I can't remember.

Q: Well, were you driving when you got to the LaBianca house?

A: Yes.

Q: And had you driven continuously from the time you took over on Sunset until -- and started on the way back until you stopped at LaBianca's?

A: Yes.

Q: How long would you say that trip took?

A: I don't know.

Q: You had a pretty good idea what was going to happen when you were doing that, didn't you?

A: When I was driving?

Q: Yes, when you were driving.

A: I don't quite understand.

Q: Well, did you know that you were going to eventually wind up killing somebody, or were going to --

A: No.

MR. BUGLIOSI: This assumes a fact not in evidence, your Honor, that she is going to kill anyone.

MR. BUBRICK: That the killings might occur.

THE COURT: Her language on direct was, "I knew we were going out to kill"; that was her language on direct.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I think the question said that she was going to kill someone.

THE COURT: She used "we"; "we" were going out to kill.

Overruled.

THE WITNESS: Would you repeat it again?

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: You knew you were going out to kill; at least you had that idea?

A: Yes, I knew that was eventually going to happen.

Q: The car eventually came to a stop in front of the LaBianca house; is that correct?

A: I didn't know whose house it was. I saw Harold True's house.

Q: You recognized the house next door to the LaBianca house, didn't you?

A: Well, I noticed the house across from us on the hill, which was Harold's house.

Q: Was Harold's house on a hill or the house just directly next door to the LaBianca's?

A: Excuse me?

Q: Harold True's house, was his house and the LaBianca house side by side?

A: I don't remember seeing any other house but Harold's.

Q: Well, when you saw the house that you knew was Harold's house, did you drive again to another house --

A: No.

Q: -- to the LaBianca's?

A: No.

Q: When you stopped the car and at what you thought was Harold True's house, that's the last time that you were in that particular area that evening; isn't that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And it was while the car was stopped in front of the house that you recognized as Harold True's house, that Watson, Sadie and Leslie Van Houten got out; is that correct?

A: No, not Sadie; Kate.

Q: I'm sorry, Katie; but those three people got out of the car at the time it was stopped in front of Harold True's house?

A: Immediately after it was stopped?

Q: Well, shortly after that.

A: Yeah.

Q: I think you described the time interval as long as it take to smoke three-quarters of a Pall Mall cigarette; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Is that about the time that you were parked there?

A: No, that was about the time that they got out of the car.

THE COURT: Excuse me, maybe you are confusing something here.

On her direct testimony she said, "When I got to Harold True's house, Manson walked up the driveway"; is that correct?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: Some time after Manson walked up the driveway, he returned to the car.

THE WITNESS: Right.

THE COURT: And after he returned to the car, that's when Leslie, Katie and Tex got out of the car.

THE WITNESS: Right.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: And the time interval that Manson was gone was about as long as it took you to smoke three-quarters of a Pall Mall cigarette; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: But the car was always stationary in front of this Harold True's house; correct?

A: Yes.

Q: You had been to Harold True's house before, hadn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: When, about a year before?

A: Yeah, about a year before.

Q: With whom?

A: Charlie Melton and my husband; Jim and Julie and a few other people.

Q: What had taken place at that time, if you know?

A: We had a party.

Q: What kind of a party?

A: Kind of a party?

Q: Yes.

A: Just a party; and then we -- there was wine, there was drugs and we danced. I remember Harold had a strobe light.

Q: Did you know whether Harold True was living in that house the night you drove up there with Mr. Manson on August the 10th?

A: For a fact, did I know?

Q: Yes.

A: No, I didn't.

Q: You hadn't seen him any time within that one-year interval; is that correct?

A: Yeah, I had seen him once after that.

Q: Well, I'm sorry, I didn't mean it that way.

I mean, you hadn't been back to the house within that one-year interval?

A: No.

Q: You said something to Mr. Manson when he started walking up the driveway, didn't you, about that being Harold True's house?

A: Yeah.

Q: What, if anything, did he say?

A: No, he said, "I'm going next door."

Q: Next door?

A: Yeah.

Q: Then after Tex, Leslie and Katie got out, did Manson then get back in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Then did you drive off immediately?

A: Yeah.

Q: There was some conversation, I take it, between Manson and Tex and the girls; is that correct?

A: Yes, there was.

Q: And when they got out did they take a change of clothes with them?

A: I don't recall seeing anything that they had.

Q: Did you see any weapons on any of the three people?

A: No.

Q: Did you see a gun on any of the three people?

A: No.

Q: All right, then you drove -- after those three people left, you got back in the car and the four of you then drove off; is that correct?

A: I got back in the car?

Q: I'm sorry, Mr. Manson got back in the car.

A: Yes.

Q: And then the four of you drove off?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Mr. Manson driving when you left the area of Harold True's house?

A: Yes, he was.

Q: And where did you then go?

A: I don't know; streets -- I just remember there were streets and houses, not far from where we had been parked.

Q: Well, did you eventually wind up at the beach?

A: Yeah.

Q: You drove all the way back through town again in the area of the ocean; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And then the car was stopped on the hill and you walked around on the beach; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened as you walked with Mr. Manson on the beach?

A: I don't know. He was talking to me and we were holding hands.

Q: Holding hands with Mr. Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: Anything else?

A: I remember I gave him some peanuts.

Q: All right, anything else?

A: I think I told him I was pregnant.

Q: All right.

A: But that's about all.

Q: How did you feel about Mr. Manson at that time?

A: I don't know.

Q: You still were in love with him, weren't you?

A: I don't know. I was really confused.

Q: Do you remember being asked at the last trial:

"Q Wee you in love with him then?

"A Walking on the beach?

"Q Yes.

"A Yes."

Do you remember that?

A: No.

Q: But you do remember testifying in the last trial, do you not?

A: Yes, sure.

Q: And as you walked down the beach with him, hand in hand, you told us about meeting a police officer; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you knew that, or you had reason to believe that there was something improper that had taken place at the LaBianca house or the house that you had just left?

A: Yes.

Q: You knew that a killing was taking place?

A: Yeah.

Q: And that Manson had sent the three people in to do the killing?

A: Yeah.

Q: When you walked hand in hand with him on the beach and you saw the police officer, did you tell him that a killing had just occurred or was occurring?

A: No.

Q: Did you say anything at all to the police officer?

A: No.



Q: Manson sort of laughed when he talked to the police officer about whether or not the police officer knew his name, didn't he?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you laugh with Manson?

A: No, I don't think so.

Q: Do you think you were sober?

A: Sober? I don't understand.

Q: Do you think you were very calm and with a sort of a sober expression?

A: I can't really remember how I felt. I don't know -- dead.

Q: Sort of in a jovial mood, Manson was in sort of a jovial mood, wasn't he?

A: Yes.

Q: Weren't you feeling very good walking down the beach with him?

A: Yeah.

Q: So you were probably feeling much as he was feeling; is that correct?

A: I guess so.

Q: As a matter of fact you said:

"Charlie and I started walking hand in hand at the beach and it was sort of nice, you know."

Didn't you say that?

A: Yeah, I can remember he made me feel sort of good inside.

Q: Just sort of made you feel good?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: You didn't feel like a zombie then, did you?

A: No, I guess -- I don't know.

Q: How long would you say you stayed in the area of the beach, Mrs. Kasabian, before you left?

A: I don't know. Not too long.

Q: When you left the area of the beach, did you all leave, all four of you leave at the same time?

A: The area? You mean in the car?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: Who was driving when you left this beach area?

A: Charlie was.

Q: Then I think you told us something yesterday that involved an Israeli or Arab actor, do you remember?

A: Yes.

Q: When did that incident occur with respect to leaving the beach area?

A: Well, however long it took us to get from that beach to Venice Beach.

Q: The incident with this person you have described as an actor occurred about when? When did you meet him for the first time?

A: The day that Sandy and I went down to the beach. I don't know the date. Sometime in July.

Q: Can you give us any idea when it was? Within a week or two weeks?

A: Probably about a week, I guess.

Q: About a week prior?

A: Yes.

Q: How did you happen to meet him?

A: We were hitch-hiking.

Q: Did he give you a ride?

A: Yeah.

Q: Where to?

A: First we stopped at a gas station and then he got some gas and he took us to his apartment and fed us.

Q: To this apartment in Venice, the one you went to on the 10th?

A: To his apartment, yes.

Q: What happened there?

A: We ate, took showers, made love, left, talked.

Q: You, Sandy, and the actor?

A: No. Sandy slept while the actor and I made love.

Q: How long would you say you were there on that occasion?

A: I don't know.

Q: That is the first time you met this gentlemen, I take it?

A: Yes.

Q: Then you left that area -- and I am talking about the night that you met the actor -- did you then eventually get back to the ranch?

A: What? When I was with Sandy?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: How did you get back to the ranch that evening or that day, if you remember?

A: I think he gave us a ride not exactly to the ranch but in the vicinity of the ranch.

Q: When you were driving from the area on the beach where you had been walking hand in hand to the next beach as you have described it, how did the subject involving this actor come about, if you remember?

A: Well, Charlie asked us all if we know anybody at the beach. Everybody said no and then he said to me, he said, "Well, what about that man that you and Sandy met?"

Q: Had you told him about meeting this actor on the prior occasion?

A: Not that I remember, no.

Q: How would he know that you and Sandy had met an actor, if you know?

A: I don't know.

Q: Then he suggested that you kill him; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Gave you a pocket knife?

A: Yes.

Q: Gave Clem a gun?

A: Yeah.

Q: And you went in back into the house; is that correct?

A: Back into the house?

Q: You went into the apartment then?

A: To the apartment building, yes.

Q: Yes. And I think the first time you went in you went with Mr. Manson; is that

correct?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And you knocked on the door on the fourth floor; is that correct?

A: Yes, I think so.

Q: Why was it that you told Mr. Manson that the actor lived in any particular building in the neighborhood?

A: I was afraid.

Q: Afraid of what?

A: Of Charlie.

Q: Well, but he didn't know where this actor lived, did he?

A: No.

Q: And he didn't even know if that was the area, did he?

A: No.

Q: Well, had it occurred to you that you might be jeopardizing somebody's life if you took Manson into that apartment building?

A: I don't know, but when I got into the building I decided to knock on the wrong door. I don't know what my thoughts were.

Q: But the thought never occurred to you not to enter the building at all?

A: Not that I can remember.

Q: Then you went up to the fourth floor with Mr. Manson; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And then you left and you came back out when whoever responded to your knock appeared and you said something about the wrong person; is that correct?

A: Say that again.

Q: You knocked on the door and somebody responded to the knock; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: That is while Mr. Manson was there?

A: No.

Q: Who was there with you then?

A: Sadie and Clem.

Q: I see. I am sorry. Then you said something about the wrong person?

A: Yes.

Q: And then the three of you left?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: When you got out Mr. Manson was gone at this time, wasn't he?

A: Well, he had left as we were entering the building.

Q: I think you told us you hitch-hiked back up toward this building called the Feed Bin.

A: The house next door to it.

Q: And you stayed there for a little while; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: I think you told us, Linda, Mrs. Kasabian, yesterday also that somewhere along that ride after you left the area of Harold True's house you stopped and you had some milkshakes or something like that.

A: Yes.

Q: When did that occur?

A: Well, right after we left the house and then I was supposed to throw the wallet out but I didn't and we got on the freeway and went to a gas station and I put the wallet in the ladies room. It was right there that we got the milkshake.

Q: This was after this incident involving the stopping at Harold True's house or the LaBianca house?

A: Yes.

Q: I take it you had no trouble getting or drinking your milkshake, did you ?

A: I don't know. I don't know.

Q: But you ate it or drank it?

A: I drank it, yes.

Q: I think you told us that after you got back to the ranch that night you again went to sleep, I take it, and you got there early in the morning, did you?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you sleep the balance of that day?

A: Yes.

Q: And then when was it that Mr. Manson asked you to go to visit some people in jail?

A: I think it was the following day.

Q: And did you come downtown here to visit some people in jail?

A: Well, I made the attempt to visit but I didn't actually see them.

Q: Did you tell anybody in the jail facility what you knew about the murders of the last two nights?

A: No.

Q: You did talk to law enforcement officers, I take it --

A: Yes.

Q: -- when you were in the city?

Then you came into the city on two successive days in an effort to see people in jail; is that correct?

A: Well, I came once to see the people. The next day I was supposed to, but I didn't.

Q: It was the second day, then, that you took the Volvo and left the Los Angeles area; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: And when you left on that second day, you left without Tanya; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, I think you said when you left the ranch you picked up some two men, did you?

A: Boys.

Q: Two boys?

A: Yeah.

Q: Were they people you knew?

A: Well, I had met them the day before. They were hitchhiking and I gave them a ride.

Q: And then what happened, did you tell them you'd be back the next day?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you tell them when you'd be back the next day?

A: I just told them early in the morning.

Q: What time did you leave with Mr. -- with the Volvo?

A: I don't know what time -- in the morning.

Q: Was it early in the morning?

A: Yeah.

Q: And do you remember where it was that you picked up the other boys?

A: Not the street. I know it was off of Topanga Canyon Boulevard, but I don't know the street.

Q: And you took them into the New Mexico area with you; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: How are did they go with you, if you remember?

A: To Albuquerque.

Q: And were you using credit cards on that trip?

A: Yes.

Q: Whose credit cards were they?

A: One of the boys had one that was his, it was legal; and we used that most of the time until the Albuquerque incident, then I used the credit card that Bruce Davis gave to me.

Q: And the credit card that Bruce Davis gave to you was one that did not belong to him; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: You know it was stolen, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: The car broke down, I think you told, us in Albuquerque?

A: Yes.

Q: And you had made arrangements to have it towed elsewhere; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, when you started off to Albuquerque, you were going where, to Taos; is that where you were going?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you know your husband, Bob, was there?

A: Not for a fact, no.

Q: When had you last talked to him, if you know?

A: The day I took the money.

Q: That would have been on July the 4th -- July the 5th; right?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, when you got to the Taos area, you eventually did see your husband; is your correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And was that in the town of Questa?

A: Yes.

Q: You talked with him there, did you?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And you talked with a Joe Sage; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Mr. Sage actually called the family, or the ranch back in Los Angeles, in your presence, didn't he?

A: Not in my presence, no.

Q: Didn't you call the ranch from Mr. Sage's place?

A: Yes.

Q: And you talked to one of the girls back at the ranch in the family, didn't you?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: As a matter of fact, she accused you of having a big mouth or something like that, didn't she?

A: Yes.

Q: So that when you talked to -- who did you talk to, incidentally; was it Patty?

A: Yeah, Katie.

Q: When you talked to Katie, then, Katie told you that the family knew that you had told them about the murders on these two succeeding nights, didn't she?

A: I don't recall; words to that effect. She just said, "You just couldn't wait to open your big mouth, could you?"



Q: What was she referring to?

A: I don't know. I guess -- I don't know if she told me that, you know, she had spoken to Joe or heard from Joe; but that's what I figured she knew.

Q: Well, Mr. Sage told you he talked to Manson about what you told him?

A: Yeah.

Q: And then you called after Mr. Sage called, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: And that's what Sadie -- or, Katie said, "You have a big mouth"?

A: Yes.

Q: Well, at that time, now, you knew that the family knew that you had made a statement about the events that occurred on the 9th or the 10th, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you go to the police then?

A: No.

Q: You eventually came back to the Los Angeles area on two more times -- well, strike that; at least two times from the Taos area, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: How did you get back here on those occasions?

A: By plane.

Q: And who supplied the money?

A: Joe Sage.

Q: How much money did he give you?

A: Plane fare both ways -- four ways; two times.

Q: And what, if anything, were you to do in return for that money?

A: Sort of like be his old lady.

THE COURT: Be what?

THE WITNESS: Be his old lady.

THE COURT: His old lady?

THE WITNESS: Cook for him and things like that.

THE COURT: You mean live with him; is that what you mean?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: By the way, when you used the expression, "We made love," what do you mean by that?

THE WITNESS: Well, there's different terms of making love.

THE COURT: All right, when you say that you made love with this Israeli actor this night that you went there, what do you mean by that?

THE WITNESS: Intercourse.

THE COURT: Sexual intercourse?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: The night you met Watson, you said you made love to him, you meant sexual intercourse?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: And the next night when you met Manson --

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: So, are we safe in saying, when you say, "We made love," you meant sexual intercourse?

THE WITNESS: Yeah, in most cases.

THE COURT: Thank you.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: What do you mean, "in most cases," Mrs. Kasabian?

A: Well, sometimes you can make love with a person just by looking at him or just embracing; it does not have to be a physical intercourse to make love.

Q: Well, you told Mr. Sage -- did your Honor --

THE COURT: No, no, I thought better of it.

Go ahead. I'm sorry to interrupt you, Mr. Bubrick.

MR. BUBRICK: That's all right.

Q: When Mr. Sage gave you the money, you told him you were going to live with him; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: And he was talking about going to South America, wasn't he?

A: Yes.

Q: He was going to make a picture or something in South America?

A: Make movies, something like that.

Q: And you told him you'd go to South America with him, didn't you?

A: I never really committed myself positively to the statement, no.

Q: Well, you never really intended to go to South America with him, did you?

A: Not really, no.

Q: And you never really intended to live with him either, did you?

A: Well, I was living with him.

Q: How long?

A: Probably for about two weeks, three weeks, I'm not really sure.

Q: Was that as long as it took for you to make these trips to Los Angeles and back?

A: Yeah.

Q: Because after you had got Tanya in Los Angeles you never went back there again, did you?

A: I think I stayed for a day or two.

Q: But you never lived with him after that?

A: No.

Q: The real purpose was to get the money from Mr. Sage wasn't it?

A: I guess so.

Q: Did you call -- strike that.

When you talked to Katie, Mrs. Kasabian, did you find out what had happened to Tanya?

A: I don't think it was Katie that told me; I think Squeaky told me.

Q: Was this at the time of this telephone call with Katie, however, or did you call later on?

A: I think it was at this time, I'm not really positive at the moment.

Q: Well, whenever it was that you did learn about Tanya, what did you find out had happened to her?

A: That she was in custody.

Q: Well, that she was in a foster home --

A: Yes.

Q: -- or something in Los Angeles -- or, in Malibu?

A: I think she said that the Malibu police were the ones that took her, something like

that.

Q: Didn't you eventually get the name of a social worker?

A: Yes.

Q: And didn't you talk to that person?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: By phone?

A: Yes.

Q: From where?

A: From New Mexico.

Q: Do you remember that person's name?

A: No.

Q: Would you recognize it if you heard it?

A: I doubt it.

Q: Does Kroeger, Armond Kroeger, sound familiar?

A: I know a Kroeger, but not an Armond Kroeger.

Q: Well, do you know the name Kroeger in association with the social worker?

A: No.

Q: Do you remember talking to Mr. Kroeger about Tanya?

A: If that's who the social worker's name was, yes.

Q: Well, do you remember talking to the social worker about the baby?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were asked when you had left Tanya behind, weren't you?

A: I guess so; I don't know.

Q: Do you remember what you told him?

A: No.

Q: Well, you told him you left the baby on August the 1st, didn't you -- or, August the 6th?

A: I don't remember. I don't know. I don't remember.

Q: I beg your pardon. I didn't mean the 1st, I misled you there; the date was the 6th or 7th of August?

A: That's what I said?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't recall.

Q: Well, do you remember the question at the last trial:

"Did you tell Mr. Kruger that 'On the 6th or 7th of August I left Tanya with Mary Brunner and went to Arizona to meet my husband?"

"A Yes, I think I did.

"Q And so when you stated that you know that was an untruth?

"A Yes, that is obvious."

Do you remember those questions and that answer?

A: Yes; yeah, but I don't remember if I said it was the 6th or 7th. I don't remember if that's the date that I said. I don't know what date I said.

Q: You mean you think the record might be wrong?

A: Oh, I don't know about that; but I don't remember saying the 6th or 7th.

Q: But you do remember testifying at the last trial?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, eventually you came into the Los Angeles area and made a court appearance, didn't you?

A: Excuse me?

Q: You came into Los Angeles in connection with Tanya's custody and you made an appearance in court.

A: Yes.

Q: You actually talked to a judge in a courtroom, didn't you?

A: I guess so, yeah.

Q: Did you tell the judge what you knew had happened on August the 9th or the 10th?

A: No.

Q: Did you tell anybody in the courtroom what had happened on the night of the 10th?

A: No.

Q: I think you told us that eventually -- or, somewhere in connection with these custody proceedings you were directed to a Gary Fleischman; Mr. Gary Fleischman, an

attorney; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And the person that directed you to him was a Paul Rosenberg?

A: Not Paul Rosenberg, his wife.

Q: His wife?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you know Mr. Rosenberg?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Who is he?

A: He was a doctor.

Q: He is a psychiatrist?

A: A psychiatrist, yeah.

Q: Had you attended him professionally?

A: No.

Q: How did you happen to meet him?

A: Oh, right after Tanya was born I remember we took some acid and I was breast feeding and she seemed to, I don't know, be crying a lot, and I wasn't sure if it was just within myself that, you know, just normal crying or if the acid had affected her, so I went to see Mr. Rosenberg.

Q: That is Dr. Rosenberg?

A: Yes.

Q: When was Tanya born?

A: March 3rd, 1968.

Q: Now, I think you told us you then left and you got Tanya. You hitchhiked back to Florida; is that correct?

A: I stayed in New Mexico for a while.

Q: Did you hitchhike from here to New Mexico, or did you fly back?

A: From here?

Q: Yes, from Los Angeles to New Mexico.

A: No. I flew back.

Q: Then you hitchhiked from New Mexico to Florida?

A: Yes.

Q: With Tanya?

A: Yes.

Q: How old was Tanya at that time?

A: A year and a half, I guess, something like that.

Q: Do you remember how long it took you to get back to Florida?

A: To Florida? About three days.

Q: And then you stayed with your father for a while, did you, in Florida?

A: In his apartment, yes.

Q: And then eventually you went on back to New Hampshire?

A: Yes.

Q: When you got back to New Hampshire, you knew there was a warrant outstanding for your arrest, didn't you?

A: When I first got back?

Q: Yes.

A: No.

Q: Didn't you read it in the paper?

A: No.

Q: How long were you there before you read about it in the paper?

A: I don't know -- a couple of weeks. I am not real sure of the time.

THE COURT: I think you have told us you gave yourself up in December of 1969?

THE WITNESS: Yes, the first part of December.

THE COURT: How long before that did you know, or did you learn a warrant had been issued for your arrest?

THE WITNESS: The night before.

THE COURT: The night before?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Had you read about it in the paper before you knew the warrant was outstanding?

A: No. I heard it over the radio.

Q: When was that, with respect to the date that you turned yourself in?

A: The night before.

Q: So that you heard on the radio that you were wanted is that correct, the night before?

A: Yes.

Q: And you knew a warrant was outstanding for you at the same time?

A: I don't know.

Q: The night before?

A: I didn't know about a warrant. I read it in the newspaper the next day.

THE COURT: That is when your mother showed you the newspaper?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: And then when was it that you actually went to the police department?

A: My mother went that day, the next day.

Q: Did you go with her?

A: No. I stayed at the house.

Q: When did you go?

A: To my town police station?

Q: Yes, wherever you were taken in custody.

A: That day.

Q: There in New Hampshire?

A: Yes.

Q: When you were taken into custody, were you interrogated by any police officers?

A: No.

Q: When was it that you were questioned about the Tate-LaBianca murders for the first time, if you know?

A: I think a few questions were asked of me back in New Hampshire but I never gave answers. I didn't talk to anybody but as soon as I got to Los Angeles, I told my attorney.

Q: That is Mr. Fleischman?

A: Yes.

Q: You were brought back to Los Angeles by some police officers from the Los



Angeles Police Department, weren't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Mr. Gutierrez one of them, if you remember?

A: No.

Q: Whoever he was, did you talk to him about the Tate-LaBianca murders on the way back to Los Angeles?

A: No.

Q: Your only concern was to tell the truth, was it?

A: Yeah.

Q: You wanted everybody to know about the truth?

A: Yeah, I wanted to get it over with.

Q: When was it that you made a statement to the police for the first time in connection with what you actually knew about the murders?

A: I think the first time was with Mr. Bugliosi. I am not real sure right now.

Q: Now, you surrendered yourself to the police back in New Hampshire in early December of 1969; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember when you came back here to Los Angeles?

A: I think it was the next day.

Q: All right. If we can say then December 2nd or 3rd, if we can use that as a point of reference. When was it that you talked to Mr. Bugliosi for the first time?

A: I guess maybe January or February. I was still pregnant. That is about the only way I can really tell as to time.

Q: Roughly, a period of some two months, would you say?

A: Yes, I think so.

Q: Now, did you talk to anybody in law enforcement before you talked to Mr. Bugliosi?

A: I don't think so. I don't remember.

Q: Now, did you talk to Mr. Bugliosi after you were given or promised some immunity?

A: I don't think so. I am not sure.

Q: Did Mr. Bugliosi tell you that if you would testify you would be granted immunity?

A: Yeah, I think it was then, something like that. I am not real sure.

Q: But you never talked to anybody in law enforcement before you knew you were going to be granted immunity?

A: I don't think so.

Q: Can you tell us about how many times you think you may have talked to Mr. Bugliosi or members of his staff?

A: Quite a few times.

Q: What would that mean in terms of numbers?

A: Up to what point?

Q: Until today.

A: Until today?

Q: Yes.

A: Gosh, I don't know. Lots of times.

Q: As many as 10, maybe?

A: More than 10.

Q: More than 10?

A: I guess so.

MR. BUGLIOSI: This is an ambiguous question. Talk? I spoke to her five times this morning.

MR. BUBRICK: I am sorry.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Talked about the murders or what?

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Yes. Only about the murders. I don't care about any social visits you may have had.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We will object to that question.

MR. BUBRICK: I am sorry.

THE COURT: You know he was not serious about that.

MR. BUBRICK: I am sorry.

Q: I don't mean times when you might have been talking about the weather or if you had, you know, if you were in the middle of a conference and he had to take time out for lunch. I am not interested. I want to know about how many times you might have

talked to him about the facts of the Tate-LaBianca murders.

A: A lot of times. Twenty, I guess. I don't know.

Q: Did you talk to anybody other than Mr. Bugliosi about the facts of these murders, if you can remember?

A: Yeah.

Q: To Mr. Stovitz?

A: Yeah.

Q: How many times with him? Again, about the facts of the murders?

A: It wasn't really about the facts. I had one meeting with him but it wasn't about the facts as I recall. I can't really remember sitting down with Mr. Stovitz and talking.

Q: Was there a time when he showed you a lot of photographs?

A: Yeah.

Q: And they were pictures of members of the family, weren't they?

A: Yes.

Q: So that was a discussion about the facts of the murders, wasn't it?

A: Yes.

Q: Did that happen on more than one occasion?

A: The first day that I got into Los Angeles, he showed me pictures.

Q: Was he the first person you talked to rather than Mr. Bugliosi about the facts of this case?

A: Well, pictures, yes.

Q: And how about police officers that might have seen you when Mr. Bugliosi was not present?

A: Well, after I spoke to Mr. Stovitz I spoke to Mr. Patchett, not about the case, though, just with reference to my background and stuff like that.

THE COURT: Mr. who?

THE WITNESS: Mr. Patchett.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Frank Patchett, for the record, Sgt. Frank Patchett of the Los Angeles Police Department.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Anyone else that you can think of?

A: Before I spoke to Mr. Bugliosi?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't think so.

Q: Did you talk to officers after you talked to Mr. Bugliosi?

A: Yes.

Q: Oh how many occasions, if you can remember? Again about the facts of this case.

A: Not quite as many as I had with Mr. Bugliosi, but a number of times.

Q: And were those on occasions when Mr. Bugliosi might not have been present?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you remember where the conversations occurred?

A: At the jail, at the last trial, outside of jail.

Q: Were you in custody during the entire last trial?

A: Not the whole trial, no.

Q: When were you released from custody? Do you remember?

A: The date?

Q: Well, with respect to the trial's conclusion, if you know.

THE COURT: Connected with some event that may have occurred? That might help. Do you remember you testified, you were on the stand for quite some time.

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: Were you released after that or before that?

THE WITNESS: I was released before I got off -- yes, before I got off the stand.

THE COURT: You already had started to testify before you were released. Is that when you were released?

THE WITNESS: I wasn't through testimony before I was released.

THE COURT: In other words, while you were testifying you were released from custody; is that what you mean?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: I just have a few more questions, Mrs. Kasabian. You told us yesterday when you started that Mr. Watson looked about the same now as he looked at the ranch for a while; is that correct?

A: Looked the same?

Q: Yes, looks about the same now.

MR. BUGLIOSI: That is a misstatement, your Honor.

THE COURT: No. That was rather ambiguous. She said, "I see his eyes but he is much thinner now."

MR. BUGLIOSI: Also his mouth is open now I believe she testified.

THE COURT: Yes, and the mouth was open.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Were you aware of his mouth being open, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: Yesterday?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: When did you first become aware of that?

A: The first time I looked at him, I guess. I don't know.

Q: Was it before Mr. Bugliosi mentioned it in court?

A: No, because I hadn't seen him.

Q: He drew your attention to it?

A: Yes.

Q: Had he drawn your attention to it before you took the witness stand?

A: Yes.

Q: He told you that before he got on the stand, in other words; is that correct?

A: Explained to me some medical problem.

Q: That his mouth was drooping or open?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, you also told us yesterday that he is thinner now than he was at the ranch.

A: Yeah, a lot thinner.

Q: A lot thinner?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, of the four people -- let's limit it to three people now -- going to invite your attention to the night of the Tate affair, on the 9th of August.

Aside from yourself, how would you say Mr. Watson compared in size to the other two girls?

A: To the other girls?

Q: Yes.

A: A lot taller.

Q: How about in terms of weight?

A: More weight.

Q: And how about in body size? Was he bigger than the other girls?

A: I don't understand.

THE COURT: Like Katie and Sadie.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Yes, including yourself.

A: Just one other girl, Leslie.

Q: But she was there only on the 10th, is that correct? Talking about the first night.

A: The first night. What was your other question?

Q: Yes. Is he any bigger in the body than the other girls?

A: Well, he was taller. His legs are longer and his arms are longer.

Q: How about his waist?

A: I don't know. I guess his waist would be bigger too.

MR. BUBRICK: I wonder if we could get those trousers we had yesterday.

THE COURT: By the way, ladies and gentlemen of the jury, while Mr. Bubrick is looking for those trousers, when Mr. Bubrick referred to socializing, he at no time intended to infer that Mr. Bugliosi did socialize with the defendant at any time and please lest there be anybody suspect anything, nothing like that occurred. It was just a misstatement of facts.

MR. BUBRICK: Thank you. I certainly didn't intend to imply anything different.

Q: Mrs. Kasabian, I have three pair of trousers that have heretofore been introduced in evidence. I will lay them on the table before you.

Two of them appear to have the same waist and the third pair, the one on top, is obviously much smaller.

Can you tell me which of the three pairs of trousers Mr. Watson were?

A: I don't know definitely what pair it was.

Q: But you are certain it was one of the three?

A: Have to be one of the two because I am sure this (indicating) wouldn't fit.

Q: You think either the black ones or the blue jeans?

A: Yes.

Q: Can you tell us which of the girls was the smallest of the three?

A: Sadie was.

Q: So that Sadie might well have worn the very small pair of blue jeans?

A: Yes.

Q: And then the other girls, or Tex, would have worn either one of these two pairs of trousers?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you have any idea what Tex might have weighed when he was back at the ranch?

A: No, I have no idea.

Q: Do you know or can you tell us what the principal diet was at the ranch, what you ate by way of food?

A: Fruit and vegetables, brown rice, candy, ice cream.

Q: What did Mr. Watson eat, if you know?

A: The same as everybody else.

Q: Fruit?

A: Vegetables.

Q: And brown rice?

A: Yes.

Q: No meat?

A: No.

Q: No potatoes?

A: I don't recall of eating potatoes, no.

Q: How about bread and butter?

A: Yes. There was bread there.

Q: Did Mr. Watson eat bread?

A: I can't account if I ever seen him eat a piece of bread. Everybody at just about everything.

MR. BUBRICK: May I have a minute, please?

THE COURT: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: I have a couple of random thoughts here, Mrs. Kasabian. When you left the ranch after the LaBianca affair, did you tell the owner of the Volvo you were taking his car?

A: The day that I left for good?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't recall ever saying.

Q: That's Mr. Hannum, was he the owner of the Volvo?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see him the day you took the car?

A: Yes.

Q: You left early in the morning; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Was he up and about?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: Did you tell him that you were going to leave with his car?

A: I don't recall ever saying that.

Q: And did you get the key from him?

A: Maybe; I'm not really sure.

Q: Did you tell him you were going out of the City of Los Angeles with it?

A: No.

Q: Did you tell him you were going to Albuquerque with it?

A: No.

Q: When was Angel born, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: March 9, 1970.

Q: And that was, of course, after you were back here in Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

Q: When you were back in Taos, did you tell Mr. Sage about the murders?

A: Not in great detail, but --

Q: What did you tell him, if you remember?

A: I just remember saying that I had seen these people be killed and I knew who did it.



Q: Then you what?

A: I knew who did it.

Q: You knew who did it? Anything else you remember?

THE COURT: You are dropping your voice again, Mrs. Kasabian, please.

THE WITNESS: I am sorry.

What was your question?

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Anything else that you remember telling Mr. Sage in connection with the murders?

A: No, not that I can recall right now.

Q: Now, you told us yesterday that there was a sort of a oneness, Mr. Manson and you and the family would feel they were one?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you remember making such a remark? Can you elaborate on that; can you tell us what that meant to you?

A: Well, just like in perfect tune with one another.

Q: In what?

A: In tune with one another, in harmony, like, no conflicts and things like that.

Q: You mean philosophically you were in tune with one another?

A: I guess on all levels, I don't know.

Q: Well, did he tell you that he was in your mind?

A: Well, he used to say that, "I'm you and you are me."

THE COURT: "I am you and you are me?"

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: And did you think of yourself as Manson?

A: I don't know.

Q: In a philosophical sense, of course?

A: I don't know.

Q: Had you ever given any thought to his philosophy, as it affected you?

A: At the time?

Q: Yes.

A: I'm not really sure.

Q: Were you influenced by him?

A: Yeah.

Q: Completely?

A: Yeah.

Q: Pretty well under his control?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you do most anything he asked you to do?

A: Just about, yeah.

Q: Was there anything he asked you to do that you didn't do?

A: Yes.

Q: What?

A: Kill.

Q: Well, aside from that.

A: Not that I can recall right now.

Q: When you left and went to Taos in New Mexico, how long were you gone before you next saw Tanya?

A: Well, I made an appointment to speak to the social worker from New Mexico. I flew to there, -- maybe a week, I'm not really sure of the time.

Q: Did you call at any time within the week to find out about how Tanya was getting along?

A: Well, I just spoke to that social worker over the phone that one time and made a definite date to go and see him; and then once there, I was able to see Tanya.

Q: When you left, you left Tanya behind, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Weren't you concerned about Tanya's welfare?

A: Well, at the time I just really felt that she was going to be okay.

Q: What made you feel that?

A: I don't know what the word can be used to describe it. I just -- I don't know, I just felt deeply within myself that she was going to be all right.

Q: Now, you left her back with the very same people that you knew were responsible for a number of murders, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: But in spite of that, you felt that Tanya would be taken care of?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you approve of the way she was being cared for at the stage, as opposed to when you originally got to the ranch?

A: I don't understand.

Q: Well, this is now some five weeks after you have been at the ranch or the family; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: You told us yesterday that you sort of disapproved of the way Tanya was being taken care of?

A: Yeah.

Q: But I got the impression that's when you first got to the ranch; maybe I'm wrong?

A: Well, there was certain things that was done with and without me concerning her that I didn't approve of.

Q: Well, when you joined the family and turned Tanya over you knew it was with the understanding that you were not to care for Tanya, didn't you?

A: Yeah.

Q: You know that somebody other than the natural mother would take care of the baby?

A: Yeah.

Q: And you agreed to that, didn't you?

A: Not completely, no.

Q: Well, how did you voice your disagreement?

A: I don't know if I ever voiced it.

Q: Well, did you ever tell anybody, "I think I would like to take care of Tanya"?

A: No, but I did take care of her at times.

Q: You did do what? I'm sorry, I didn't hear.

A: I did take care of her at times.

Q: At times.

About how often would you see Tanya while you were at the ranch?

A: At least once a day.

Q: Was she in the same -- did she live in the same area on the ranch that you lived in?

A: Most of the time.

Q: Did you ever tell whoever was taking care of Tanya that you disapproved of the way she was taking care of your child?

A: Not that I can recall.

Q: Did the children, the three youngsters there develop bits and sores of any kind, if you remember?

A: Yeah, everybody did, including the children.

Q: You mean everybody, the adults as well as the children?

A: Some of the adults, not everybody.

Q: Did you ever take Tanya to a doctor during the time that you were at the ranch?

A: No.

Q: Were you concerned about her welfare to that degree; did you think she needed some medical attention?

A: I don't know if I ever thought about it.

Q: You never thought about that?

A: I remember washing her sores one day.

Q: Washing her sores with what?

A: Soap and wate.

Q: Mrs. Kasabian, did you ever see or observe any member of the family do anything -- refuse to do anything that Manson told them to do?

A: Not that I can recall right now.

Q: Well, again, when you say, "Not that I can recall right now," does that mean that you may have but you just don't remember now?

A: Yeah.

Q: Or that nobody ever did disobey him?

A: I don't think so. I can't remember if anybody did.

Q: Well, you were asked the same question at the last trial and you said, "No, nobody did," didn't you?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: Without any qualification?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: Because nobody ever did disobey Mr. Manson, did they?

A: Not that I ever saw somebody say, "No, I'm not going to do that or anything like that."

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Manson tell somebody to do something and that person not do it?

A: I don't think so.

Q: I think one last question: I think you told us yesterday that you felt dead when you left, came back from the Tate residence; is that correct?

A: I felt dead when I came back?

Q: Yes, when you came back from the Tate residence -- I'm sorry, the LaBianca residence; do you remember that?

A: When I came back for the LaBianca --

Q: Yes, after leaving the LaBianca residence.

A: Back at the ranch?

Q: I think you were at the beach.

A: Yeah, I just felt empty and confused at different times.

Q: Was that before or after you walked along the beach with Mr. Manson?

A: I think at one time on the beach.

Q: While you were walking with him?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: But I thought he made you feel good and made you forget everything while you walked with him.

A: I remember that, too.

Q: And it was sort of a loving situation, you loved him at that time.

A: He sort of made me feel like, I don't know, a young love, infatuation kind of thing.

Q: Well, how would you describe yourself, if you can, at the time that you came to the ranch?

A: Describe myself?

Q: Yes, can you -- how would you characterize yourself, if you are able to do that?

A: Well, I guess I was sort of down and out.

Q: Were you impressionable, would you say?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you think you would consider yourself naive?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you consider yourself suggestible, amenable to suggestion?

A: Yes, I guess so.

Q: And you were 20 years old; correct?

A: Yeah.

MR. BUBRICK: Roughly 20.

I have nothing further, your Honor.

THE COURT: Do you want to finish with this witness now, or --

MR. BUGLIOSI: Could we have our recess, your Honor?

THE COURT: At this time we will have our morning recess, ladies and gentlemen.

Once more, do not form or express any opinion in this case; do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else and please keep your minds open.

(Recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, counsel, and the defendant are present.

Miss Kasabian, you are still under oath. Would you state your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Linda Kasabian.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I just have a few more questions.

THE COURT: Go ahead.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: En route to the Tate residence on the night of the Tate murders, before you wrapped the knives and the revolver up, where were the knives and the revolver in the car?

A: The gun was in the glove box and I think the knives were on the seat, the front seat.

Q: Right next to Tex?

A: Yes, between us.

Q: Between you and Tex?

A: Yes.

Q: The three knives?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, you testified earlier that when Tex walked up the driveway to the Tate residence, he had a rope on his shoulder; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: When he, Sadie, and Katie returned to the car at the bottom of a hill, did Tex have the rope with him at that time?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever see the rope later on that night?

A: No.

Q: At any time on the night of the Tate murders or the night of the LaBianca murders, for that matter, did you see Tex stumble or fall to the ground?

A: No.

Q: When he would talk to you, specifically on the night of the Tate murders, when he had several conversations with you, would he repeat what he said over and over again?

A: No.

Q: For instance, he wouldn't say, "Wrap the knives and the revolve up, wrap the knives and the revolver up, wrap the knives and the revolve up," he didn't talk to you like that?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever creep crawl, as you explain it, into anyone's home in the day or night to take anything?

A: You mean sneak, creep crawl? No.

Q: Into someone's home.

A: No.

Q: Could you briefly explain, an LSD experience or trip?

Do they call an experience a trip?

A: Yeah.

Q: Could you briefly explain an LSD trip?

MR. BUBRICK: I am going to object to that as being improper redirect.

MR. BUGLIOSI: They went into this on cross-examination.

THE COURT: She may explain her reaction.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Right.

THE COURT: You may explain yours; tell us what you took, how much of it --

THE WITNESS: Do you just want me to recall a specific --

THE COURT: I don't know.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Well, the typical LSD trip, could you briefly explain it to the judge and jury, how it affected you?

MR. BUBRICK: I am going to object to the word "typical." I don't know if that would be a typical reaction.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We are talking about her.

THE COURT: That's why I asked her to tell how much she took, when it was, what time of day it was.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I'm not --

THE COURT: Because there is no such thing as a typical one, as I understand it.

MR. BUGLIOSI: There might be, your Honor.

THE WITNESS: It is only in relation to me.

THE COURT: Only in relation to you.

THE WITNESS: I can't say what it is to somebody else.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I am only talking about Mrs. Kasabian.

THE COURT: You tell us how much you took and what it was and its reaction on you.

THE WITNESS: Well, I am going to have to recall a specific trip now.

I remember I took a tab of what is referred to as pure Owsley acid; it was called "white lightning."

THE COURT: "White lightning"?

THE WITNESS: White lightning, yes.

And it was a very small white tablet and a pharmaceutical; and it was extremely intense,



vivid colors, things were like flowing, on the physical -- I'm talking about physical objects, things would sort of bend into each other and blend out of each other, and also it was like a very intense journey into myself, into my own mind, in my thoughts, and things like that.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Well, would you say that normally during an LSD trip, you would look inwards into yourself?

A: Yes.

Q: You'd become introspective, as it were?

A: Yeah.

Q: Try to analyze yourself?

A: Not so much analyze, just mostly ask questions.

Q: Ask questions of yourself?

A: Yeah.

Q: Searching for answers?

A: Yes.

Q: And during an LSD trip, would you normally be more aware of things around you?

A: Yeah.

Q: Colors would be brighter, more intense?

A: Yes.

Q: Tell me this, during an LSD trip did you ever see an object that wasn't in fact there?

A: Not that I can recall, no.

Q: So everything you saw during a trip was actually there?

A: Yeah.

Q: But there would be a certain distortion in terms of color, intensity, size, things like that?

A: Yeah.

Q: After you came down off the trip, would you have any difficulty remembering what took place during the LSD trip?

A: Not usually.

Q: You could remember what happened?

A: Yeah.

Q: In detail?

A: Well, just only the most vivid things, you know, that impressed on me.

Q: When you first came out here to Los Angeles after you were extradited, that is in early December 1969, did you want to tell the authorities what happened on these two nights?

MR. BUBRICK: Objected to as calling for the conclusion of the witness.

THE COURT: Overruled.

THE WITNESS: Yes, I did.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Why didn't you, Linda?

A: I had two attorneys and they instructed me not to talk to anybody about it and I didn't.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

RECROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Mrs. Kasabian, you were telling us about an LSD experience that you had with pharmaceutical LSD.

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know what dose it was?

A: Milligrams or whatever?

Q: Yes, in milligrams.

A: No, I don't think so.

Q: How did you take it?

A: Through the mouth.

Q: Was it a liquid that you took?

A: No. It was a small tablet.

Q: Do you know what a normal dose of LSD is in milligrams?

A: About 500, I would say.

Q: 500 milligrams?

A: Yeah.

Q: How about in micrograms?

A: Wait. Milligrams and micrograms I don't know.

Q: You mean they might be both the same to you?

A: Yes. I don't know. I have heard the terms but I don't know the difference between the two.

Q: In your experience, Mrs. Kasabian, did you ever learn how many normal doses of LSD could be made out of an ounce?

A: No.

Q: You have no idea of the number that could be made out of an ounce?

A: No.

Q: And is it your experience that all LSD reacts the same way with the person who takes it?

A: No, not necessarily.

Q: And is it your experience that pharmaceutical LSD is the same as street type LSD?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever take any street type LSD?

A: Oh, sure.

Q: And was your reaction the same as the pharmaceutical LSD?

A: No.

Q: What does the term street type LSD mean to you?

A: Sort of not pure, cut with, you know, with other things other than acid.

Q: Do you know what things, what they use to cut LSD with on the street?

A: For a while it was being cut with speed.

Q: That is Methedrine?

A: Yes. And, I don't know, it would be cut with various amounts of other drugs.

Q: Had you ever heard of it being cut with strychnine?

A: Yes.

Q: Anything else that you can think of it's being cut with?

A: No, not that I can recall.

Q: But you say that when you took the pharmaceutical LSD trip, that you told us about, that objects were floating around.

A: Floating around?

Q: Yes. Is that an expression you used? Physical objects were floating?

THE COURT: Flowing and blending.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: I beg your pardon. Flowing. Things were sort of merging together?

A: Yes.

Q: Then would they separate in your mind?

A: I don't quite understand.

Q: Well, would everything in the room sort of consolidate, all things flow on into the other?

A: Sort of, yes.

Q: Would they stay that way?

A: No. You know, I don't know, a motion like this (demonstrating) is all that I can tell you.

Q: The objects in the room were sort of in and out of one another too; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Isn't that really the way you remember the experience after the trip is over?

A: Yeah.

Q: You remember some things and then you don't remember others; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: How long does a trip last?

A: I don't know. I have been told some people never come down but the actual feeling of the chemical drug in your body is anywhere from eight to twelve hours.

Q: You say that you never had a strip where you imagine things being present that weren't present; is that correct?

A: No, not that I can recall.

Q: Have you ever had such an experience where you imagine things present in a room?

A: No. I felt what I imagined to be the presence of a spirit, God.

Q: Physical presence with you?

A: No, not -- well, it is hard to explain. It is just not, you know, an image, a physical image kind of thing, but just, I don't know, a feeling of a presence near me.

Q: Of some imaginary force?

A: I don't know if it was imaginary or real.

Q: Did you see anybody else in the room when you were on this trip?

A: You are not understanding me and I am not understanding you.

Q: Have you ever taken an LSD trip in an empty room, for example?

A: Not that I can recall right now.

Q: What are you trying to convey about this feeling or the image of somebody else being present?

A: I don't mean an image, a physical image. I mean the feeling of a presence near me within a room. Some people just say it is a spirit. Some people would call it God. That is what I mean.

I don't mean like I am not seeing you there, and I am on an acid trip, and I am imagining that you are there but I don't even see you. I don't see the physical person or the spirit or presence, whatever it is that I am feeling.

THE COURT: Did you ever feel like somebody was staring at you without actually seeing that person?

THE WITNESS: No.

THE COURT: In other words, you felt a presence but could not touch or see it?

THE WITNESS: Right.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Was there anything other than just a feeling of the presence of some other force or anything else that you want to call it being in the room with you?

A: I don't understand.

Q: Was it anything other than this presence that you described?

I take it this is some sort of a sensation that you have; is that correct?

A: Sensation?

Q: Yes, you have a feeling that there is a presence of something else, or somebody else?

A: Yeah, I guess so.

Q: Well, as the judge -- it is nothing you can reach out and touch?

A: Right.

Q: Well, that's what I mean, you have a feeling as if there is something else there that you can't see or hear?

A: Right.

Q: Did you ever communicate in whatever manner you do with that force?

A: No, I don't think so.

Q: Does that force ever communicate with you in an LSD experience?

A: Yeah, I have heard one particular instance that was very vivid in my mind and I felt as though, well, I was asking a question and I was searching and I received an answer.

Q: You mean you actually -- you actually felt as if there was somebody talking to you; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you could understand this on a conscious level?

A: I guess so.

Q: Well --

A: I was able to relate it to another person.

Q: In other words, after the LSD experience was over, you still remembered?

A: Yes; I still remember.

Q: The question and the answer or the response that you got?

A: Yes.

Q: And this was at a time when, of course, there was just a force present, rather than a finite being of any sort?

A: I didn't see any being, no.

Q: There was not a human being present?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever have an LSD experience in a room where the furniture seemed to float around?

A: No.

Q: Nothing ever became detached and moved around in space?

A: No, I didn't see -- no.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Just one more question, your Honor.

FURTHER REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: The feeling of looking inward and the intensity of colors and the flowing of objects, et cetera, did you experience this with street LSD as well as with the pharmaceutical LSD?

A: Yeah, you know, it's like par for the course when you take acid, that you know --

Q: This is a normal experience, to look inward?

A: Yeah.

Q: To ask yourself questions?

A: Yeah.

Q: To be more aware of things around you?

A: Depending on the acid, you know, different awareness and levels.

Q: Different levels of intensity, depending on the acid?

A: Yeah.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No more questions.

THE COURT: I have one, Mrs. Kasabian.

Just forget about this acid experience now; we'll take you back to something else.

Yesterday you told us before you went to the LaBianca home, do you recall, you saw Tex take a white capsule of some kind?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: And then you said that during the events that were there he was coherent -- well, this is the Tate, I mean -- the Tate, coming back to the Tate thing; that's when he took the capsule; is that right?

THE WITNESS: No.

THE COURT: At the LaBianca?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: You also said he appeared coherent to you, "But he acted crazy when I saw him stabbing."

Now, you saw him stabbing only at the Tate place; isn't that correct?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: Describe what you meant by "he acted crazy when I saw him stabbing."

THE WITNESS: Well, just the motions that he was going through in stabbing.

THE COURT: Well, just describe that to us.

THE WITNESS: In words?

THE COURT: Well, we weren't there, Mrs. Kasabian.

THE WITNESS: You want me to show you what I saw?

THE COURT: Show or describe or tell us what you meant when you said by "he acted crazy."

THE WITNESS: He was stabbing, going like this, and this, and this, and this.

THE COURT: Repeated stabbing?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: Was he saying anything?

THE WITNESS: I didn't hear words, no.

THE COURT: Did you see his face at that time?

THE WITNESS: I don't recall it, no.

THE COURT: Then you feel that just by the repeated stabbings, that's what you meant by "acting crazy"?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: I have nothing further, gentlemen.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions, you Honor.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further.

THE COURT: Gentlemen, approach the bench, please.

(Unreported discussion between the Court and counsel.)

(The following proceedings were had in open court in the presence of the jury:)

MR. BUGLIOSI: May the witness be excused, your Honor?

THE COURT: All right, Mrs. Kasabian, you may be excused.

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, WEDNESDAY, AUGUST 18, 1971,  
9:45 A.M.

-- oOo --



THE COURT: Good morning. I hope it is.

THE JURORS: Good morning.

THE COURT: Gentlemen, such as will listen, good morning.

People against Watson; let the record show all our jurors are present; the defendant and all counsel are present.

LINDA KASABIAN,

Resumed the stand and testified further as follows:

CROSS-EXAMINATION (Resumed) BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: I think yesterday when we stopped, Mrs. Kasabian, we were just about to start to talk about the events that occurred on the night of the 10th, the trip to the LaBiancas; but before we get into that, may I just invite your attention to a few other questions that I have, prior to starting that?

I want to invite your attention now to the incident that occurred when you left the Tate house and you stopped and the car was stopped so that the people involved might hose off.

Do you recall that?

A: Yes.

Q: And I think you said that Mr. Watson was calm and controlled his faculties and things of that nature; is that correct?

A: Yes, he seemed to be.

Q: How about you, were you calm?

A: I was scared.

Q: Well, but were you calm?

You didn't cry out or do anything like that, did you?

A: No, I didn't say anything.

Q: Did you talk to either of the people that came out, either the man or the woman?

A: No.

Q: Did you tell them, "We have just committed a horrible murder," or something like that?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: And when the gentleman that you described as sixtyish started to approach your

car did you join and run with the other three to the car?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: You didn't stay behind?

A: No.

THE COURT: The old man of 60?

MR. BUBRICK: Let's just say that the sixtyish man -- I will withdraw the adjective. I feel closer to that age than otherwise.

Q: Well, at least that gentleman came out and you joined with the other three and you ran to the car; is that correct?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And then when you got down the hill, or wherever it was, at the gas station, I think you told us there was a purchase of gas made at that time.

A: Yes.

Q: Did you say anything to the attendant?

A: No.

Q: Did you stay calm and collected in the presence of the gas station attendant?

A: I didn't say anything to him.

Q: I think you told us also, Mrs. Kasabian, that there were four changes of clothing that were taken when you first started to go to the Tate residence; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, three of them were thrown out; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: How about yours? Did yours stay behind?

A: I never changed.

Q: Did you take the change with you?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What happened to that?

A: It stayed in the car. I never bothered to change.

Q: When you were told to throw the clothing out, you never threw out the clothing that you had taken to change; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember what happened to it when you got back to the ranch?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever see it again?

A: Yes.

Q: When?

A: The next night.

Q: Did you do anything with it the second night, after the second night?

A: Not that I recall.

Q: Did you bring it back to the ranch, if you remember?

A: Yes.

Q: I think you told us that when you left the ranch the night of the 10th Charlie was driving, that is Charlie Manson was driving the car; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were in the front, in the middle of the front seat?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: And Clem was on the right-hand side of the front seat; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And I take it this was again that Ford without the back seat?

A: Yes.

Q: So there were four people sitting on the floorboard area of the back seat; is that correct?

A: Well, three on the actual floor and one person was another's lap.

Q: And then you started to drive and I think Mr. Manson was driving the car when you left the ranch; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you drove into the Pasadena area?

A: Yes.

Q: And from the Pasadena area you drove where? From the Pasadena area then next you drove to another house, is that correct? Drove around Pasadena area a while and then there was some talk about stopping at a house but Mr. Manson had seen the pictures of children or something?

A: Yes.

Q: That was in Pasadena and then you drove to another area?

A: Still in the same area.

Q: Very close to the first stopping?

A: It was in the Pasadena area.

Q: And then you drove on to a church. Was that also in the Pasadena area?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: From there you then somewhere along the line you took over and drove; is that correct?

A: No. From the church Charlie drove.

Q: Pardon?

A: From the church Charlie drove.

Q: From the church.

Somewhere you got eventually back down onto Sunset Boulevard, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Were you driving while the car was going westbound on Sunset?

A: Near the end of Sunset Boulevard I remember taking over driving.

Q: Do you remember how far west on Sunset Boulevard you got when you became involved with that white sports car incident that you told us about?

A: How far west?

Q: Yes. Were you down near the ocean somewhere, do you know?

A: I didn't see the ocean but we were down pretty far and the white sports car didn't happen until we turned around and started coming back.

Q: Then you drove from the area on Sunset all the way back across Los Angeles, eastbound; is that correct?

A: I don't know if we went through town, I can't remember.

Q: Well, were you driving when you got to the LaBianca house?

A: Yes.

Q: And had you driven continuously from the time you took over on Sunset until -- and started on the way back until you stopped at LaBianca's?

A: Yes.

Q: How long would you say that trip took?

A: I don't know.

Q: You had a pretty good idea what was going to happen when you were doing that, didn't you?

A: When I was driving?

Q: Yes, when you were driving.

A: I don't quite understand.

Q: Well, did you know that you were going to eventually wind up killing somebody, or were going to --

A: No.

MR. BUGLIOSI: This assumes a fact not in evidence, your Honor, that she is going to kill anyone.

MR. BUBRICK: That the killings might occur.

THE COURT: Her language on direct was, "I knew we were going out to kill"; that was her language on direct.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I think the question said that she was going to kill someone.

THE COURT: She used "we"; "we" were going out to kill.

Overruled.

THE WITNESS: Would you repeat it again?

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: You knew you were going out to kill; at least you had that idea?

A: Yes, I knew that was eventually going to happen.

Q: The car eventually came to a stop in front of the LaBianca house; is that correct?

A: I didn't know whose house it was. I saw Harold True's house.

Q: You recognized the house next door to the LaBianca house, didn't you?

A: Well, I noticed the house across from us on the hill, which was Harold's house.

Q: Was Harold's house on a hill or the house just directly next door to the LaBianca's?

A: Excuse me?

Q: Harold True's house, was his house and the LaBianca house side by side?

A: I don't remember seeing any other house but Harold's.

Q: Well, when you saw the house that you knew was Harold's house, did you drive again to another house --

A: No.

Q: -- to the LaBianca's?

A: No.

Q: When you stopped the car and at what you thought was Harold True's house, that's the last time that you were in that particular area that evening; isn't that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And it was while the car was stopped in front of the house that you recognized as Harold True's house, that Watson, Sadie and Leslie Van Houten got out; is that correct?

A: No, not Sadie; Kate.

Q: I'm sorry, Katie; but those three people got out of the car at the time it was stopped in front of Harold True's house?

A: Immediately after it was stopped?

Q: Well, shortly after that.

A: Yeah.

Q: I think you described the time interval as long as it take to smoke three-quarters of a Pall Mall cigarette; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Is that about the time that you were parked there?

A: No, that was about the time that they got out of the car.

THE COURT: Excuse me, maybe you are confusing something here.

On her direct testimony she said, "When I got to Harold True's house, Manson walked up the driveway"; is that correct?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: Some time after Manson walked up the driveway, he returned to the car.

THE WITNESS: Right.

THE COURT: And after he returned to the car, that's when Leslie, Katie and Tex got out of the car.

THE WITNESS: Right.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: And the time interval that Manson was gone was about as long as it took you to smoke three-quarters of a Pall Mall cigarette; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: But the car was always stationary in front of this Harold True's house; correct?

A: Yes.

Q: You had been to Harold True's house before, hadn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: When, about a year before?

A: Yeah, about a year before.

Q: With whom?

A: Charlie Melton and my husband; Jim and Julie and a few other people.

Q: What had taken place at that time, if you know?

A: We had a party.

Q: What kind of a party?

A: Kind of a party?

Q: Yes.

A: Just a party; and then we -- there was wine, there was drugs and we danced. I remember Harold had a strobe light.

Q: Did you know whether Harold True was living in that house the night you drove up there with Mr. Manson on August the 10th?

A: For a fact, did I know?

Q: Yes.

A: No, I didn't.

Q: You hadn't seen him any time within that one-year interval; is that correct?

A: Yeah, I had seen him once after that.

Q: Well, I'm sorry, I didn't mean it that way.

I mean, you hadn't been back to the house within that one-year interval?

A: No.

Q: You said something to Mr. Manson when he started walking up the driveway, didn't you, about that being Harold True's house?

A: Yeah.

Q: What, if anything, did he say?

A: No, he said, "I'm going next door."

Q: Next door?

A: Yeah.

Q: Then after Tex, Leslie and Katie got out, did Manson then get back in the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Then did you drive off immediately?

A: Yeah.

Q: There was some conversation, I take it, between Manson and Tex and the girls; is that correct?

A: Yes, there was.

Q: And when they got out did they take a change of clothes with them?

A: I don't recall seeing anything that they had.

Q: Did you see any weapons on any of the three people?

A: No.

Q: Did you see a gun on any of the three people?

A: No.

Q: All right, then you drove -- after those three people left, you got back in the car and the four of you then drove off; is that correct?

A: I got back in the car?

Q: I'm sorry, Mr. Manson got back in the car.

A: Yes.

Q: And then the four of you drove off?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Mr. Manson driving when you left the area of Harold True's house?

A: Yes, he was.

Q: And where did you then go?

A: I don't know; streets -- I just remember there were streets and houses, not far from where we had been parked.

Q: Well, did you eventually wind up at the beach?



A: Yeah.

Q: You drove all the way back through town again in the area of the ocean; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And then the car was stopped on the hill and you walked around on the beach; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened as you walked with Mr. Manson on the beach?

A: I don't know. He was talking to me and we were holding hands.

Q: Holding hands with Mr. Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: Anything else?

A: I remember I gave him some peanuts.

Q: All right, anything else?

A: I think I told him I was pregnant.

Q: All right.

A: But that's about all.

Q: How did you feel about Mr. Manson at that time?

A: I don't know.

Q: You still were in love with him, weren't you?

A: I don't know. I was really confused.

Q: Do you remember being asked at the last trial:

"Q Wee you in love with him then?

"A Walking on the beach?

"Q Yes.

"A Yes."

Do you remember that?

A: No.

Q: But you do remember testifying in the last trial, do you not?

A: Yes, sure.

Q: And as you walked down the beach with him, hand in hand, you told us about

meeting a police office; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you knew that, or you had reason to believe that there was something improper that had taken place at the LaBianca house or the house that you had just left?

A: Yes.

Q: You knew that a killing was taking place?

A: Yeah.

Q: And that Manson had sent the three people in to do the killing?

A: Yeah.

Q: When you walked hand in hand with him on the beach and you saw the police officer, did you tell him that a killing had just occurred or was occurring?

A: No.

Q: Did you say anything at all to the police officer?

A: No.

Q: Manson sort of laughed when he talked to the police officer about whether or not the police officer knew his name, didn't he?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you laugh with Manson?

A: No, I don't think so.

Q: Do you think you were sober?

A: Sober? I don't understand.

Q: Do you think you were very calm and with a sort of a sober expression?

A: I can't really remember how I felt. I don't know -- dead.

Q: Sort of in a jovial mood, Manson was in sort of a jovial mood, wasn't he?

A: Yes.

Q: Weren't you feeling very good walking down the beach with him?

A: Yeah.

Q: So you were probably feeling much as he was feeling; is that correct?

A: I guess so.

Q: As a matter of fact you said:

"Charlie and I started walking hand in hand at the beach and it was sort of nice, you know."

Didn't you say that?

A: Yeah, I can remember he made me feel sort of good inside.

Q: Just sort of made you feel good?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: You didn't feel like a zombie then, did you?

A: No, I guess -- I don't know.

Q: How long would you say you stayed in the area of the beach, Mrs. Kasabian, before you left?

A: I don't know. Not too long.

Q: When you left the area of the beach, did you all leave, all four of you leave at the same time?

A: The area? You mean in the car?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: Who was driving when you left this beach area?

A: Charlie was.

Q: Then I think you told us something yesterday that involved an Israeli or Arab actor, do you remember?

A: Yes.

Q: When did that incident occur with respect to leaving the beach area?

A: Well, however long it took us to get from that beach to Venice Beach.

Q: The incident with this person you have described as an actor occurred about when? When did you meet him for the first time?

A: The day that Sandy and I went down to the beach. I don't know the date. Sometime in July.

Q: Can you give us any idea when it was? Within a week or two weeks?

A: Probably about a week, I guess.

Q: About a week prior?

A: Yes.

Q: How did you happen to meet him?

A: We were hitch-hiking.

Q: Did he give you a ride?

A: Yeah.

Q: Where to?

A: First we stopped at a gas station and then he got some gas and he took us to his apartment and fed us.

Q: To this apartment in Venice, the one you went to on the 10th?

A: To his apartment, yes.

Q: What happened there?

A: We ate, took showers, made love, left, talked.

Q: You, Sandy, and the actor?

A: No. Sandy slept while the actor and I made love.

Q: How long would you say you were there on that occasion?

A: I don't know.

Q: That is the first time you met this gentlemen, I take it?

A: Yes.

Q: Then you left that area -- and I am talking about the night that you met the actor -- did you then eventually get back to the ranch?

A: What? When I was with Sandy?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: How did you get back to the ranch that evening or that day, if you remember?

A: I think he gave us a ride not exactly to the ranch but in the vicinity of the ranch.

Q: When you were driving from the area on the beach where you had been walking hand in hand to the next beach as you have described it, how did the subject involving this actor come about, if you remember?

A: Well, Charlie asked us all if we know anybody at the beach. Everybody said no and then he said to me, he said, "Well, what about that man that you and Sandy met?"

Q: Had you told him about meeting this actor on the prior occasion?

A: Not that I remember, no.

Q: How would he know that you and Sandy had met an actor, if you know?

A: I don't know.

Q: Then he suggested that you kill him; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Gave you a pocket knife?

A: Yes.

Q: Gave Clem a gun?

A: Yeah.

Q: And you went in back into the house; is that correct?

A: Back into the house?

Q: You went into the apartment then?

A: To the apartment building, yes.

Q: Yes. And I think the first time you went in you went with Mr. Manson; is that correct?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And you knocked on the door on the fourth floor; is that correct?

A: Yes, I think so.

Q: Why was it that you told Mr. Manson that the actor lived in any particular building in the neighborhood?

A: I was afraid.

Q: Afraid of what?

A: Of Charlie.

Q: Well, but he didn't know where this actor lived, did he?

A: No.

Q: And he didn't even know if that was the area, did he?

A: No.

Q: Well, had it occurred to you that you might be jeopardizing somebody's life if you took Manson into that apartment building?

A: I don't know, but when I got into the building I decided to knock on the wrong

door. I don't know what my thoughts were.

Q: But the thought never occurred to you not to enter the building at all?

A: Not that I can remember.

Q: Then you went up to the fourth floor with Mr. Manson; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And then you left and you came back out when whoever responded to your knock appeared and you said something about the wrong person; is that correct?

A: Say that again.

Q: You knocked on the door and somebody responded to the knock; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: That is while Mr. Manson was there?

A: No.

Q: Who was there with you then?

A: Sadie and Clem.

Q: I see. I am sorry. Then you said something about the wrong person?

A: Yes.

Q: And then the three of you left?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: When you got out Mr. Manson was gone at this time, wasn't he?

A: Well, he had left as we were entering the building.

Q: I think you told us you hitch-hiked back up toward this building called the Feed Bin.

A: The house next door to it.

Q: And you stayed there for a little while; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: I think you told us, Linda, Mrs. Kasabian, yesterday also that somewhere along that ride after you left the area of Harold True's house you stopped and you had some milkshakes or something like that.

A: Yes.

Q: When did that occur?

A: Well, right after we left the house and then I was supposed to throw the wallet out but I didn't and we got on the freeway and went to a gas station and I put the wallet in the ladies room. It was right there that we got the milkshake.

Q: This was after this incident involving the stopping at Harold True's house or the LaBianca house?

A: Yes.

Q: I take it you had no trouble getting or drinking your milkshake, did you ?

A: I don't know. I don't know.

Q: But you ate it or drank it?

A: I drank it, yes.

Q: I think you told us that after you got back to the ranch that night you again went to sleep, I take it, and you got there early in the morning, did you?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you sleep the balance of that day?

A: Yes.

Q: And then when was it that Mr. Manson asked you to go to visit some people in jail?

A: I think it was the following day.

Q: And did you come downtown here to visit some people in jail?

A: Well, I made the attempt to visit but I didn't actually see them.

Q: Did you tell anybody in the jail facility what you knew about the murders of the last two nights?

A: No.

Q: You did talk to law enforcement officers, I take it --

A: Yes.

Q: -- when you were in the city?

Then you came into the city on two successive days in an effort to see people in jail; is that correct?

A: Well, I came once to see the people. The next day I was supposed to, but I didn't.

Q: It was the second day, then, that you took the Volvo and left the Los Angeles area; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: And when you left on that second day, you left without Tanya; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, I think you said when you left the ranch you picked up some two men, did you?

A: Boys.

Q: Two boys?

A: Yeah.

Q: Were they people you knew?

A: Well, I had met them the day before. They were hitchhiking and I gave them a ride.

Q: And then what happened, did you tell them you'd be back the next day?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you tell them when you'd be back the next day?

A: I just told them early in the morning.

Q: What time did you leave with Mr. -- with the Volvo?

A: I don't know what time -- in the morning.

Q: Was it early in the morning?

A: Yeah.

Q: And do you remember where it was that you picked up the other boys?

A: Not the street. I know it was off of Topanga Canyon Boulevard, but I don't know the street.

Q: And you took them into the New Mexico area with you; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: How are did they go with you, if you remember?

A: To Albuquerque.

Q: And were you using credit cards on that trip?

A: Yes.

Q: Whose credit cards were they?



A: One of the boys had one that was his, it was legal; and we used that most of the time until the Albuquerque incident, then I used the credit card that Bruce Davis gave to me.

Q: And the credit card that Bruce Davis gave to you was one that did not belong to him; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: You know it was stolen, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: The car broke down, I think you told, us in Albuquerque?

A: Yes.

Q: And you had made arrangements to have it towed elsewhere; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, when you started off to Albuquerque, you were going where, to Taos; is that where you were going?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you know your husband, Bob, was there?

A: Not for a fact, no.

Q: When had you last talked to him, if you know?

A: The day I took the money.

Q: That would have been on July the 4th -- July the 5th; right?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, when you got to the Taos area, you eventually did see your husband; is your correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And was that in the town of Questa?

A: Yes.

Q: You talked with him there, did you?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And you talked with a Joe Sage; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Mr. Sage actually called the family, or the ranch back in Los Angeles, in your

presence, didn't he?

A: Not in my presence, no.

Q: Didn't you call the ranch from Mr. Sage's place?

A: Yes.

Q: And you talked to one of the girls back at the ranch in the family, didn't you?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: As a matter of fact, she accused you of having a big mouth or something like that, didn't she?

A: Yes.

Q: So that when you talked to -- who did you talk to, incidentally; was it Patty?

A: Yeah, Katie.

Q: When you talked to Katie, then, Katie told you that the family knew that you had told them about the murders on these two succeeding nights, didn't she?

A: I don't recall; words to that effect. She just said, "You just couldn't wait to open your big mouth, could you?"

Q: What was she referring to?

A: I don't know. I guess -- I don't know if she told me that, you know, she had spoken to Joe or heard from Joe; but that's what I figured she knew.

Q: Well, Mr. Sage told you he talked to Manson about what you told him?

A: Yeah.

Q: And then you called after Mr. Sage called, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: And that's what Sadie -- or, Katie said, "You have a big mouth"?

A: Yes.

Q: Well, at that time, now, you knew that the family knew that you had made a statement about the events that occurred on the 9th or the 10th, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you go to the police then?

A: No.

Q: You eventually came back to the Los Angeles area on two more times -- well, strike that; at least two times from the Taos area, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: How did you get back here on those occasions?

A: By plane.

Q: And who supplied the money?

A: Joe Sage.

Q: How much money did he give you?

A: Plane fare both ways -- four ways; two times.

Q: And what, if anything, were you to do in return for that money?

A: Sort of like be his old lady.

THE COURT: Be what?

THE WITNESS: Be his old lady.

THE COURT: His old lady?

THE WITNESS: Cook for him and things like that.

THE COURT: You mean live with him; is that what you mean?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: By the way, when you used the expression, "We made love," what do you mean by that?

THE WITNESS: Well, there's different terms of making love.

THE COURT: All right, when you say that you made love with this Israeli actor this night that you went there, what do you mean by that?

THE WITNESS: Intercourse.

THE COURT: Sexual intercourse?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: The night you met Watson, you said you made love to him, you meant sexual intercourse?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: And the next night when you met Manson --

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: So, are we safe in saying, when you say, "We made love," you meant sexual intercourse?

THE WITNESS: Yeah, in most cases.

THE COURT: Thank you.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: What do you mean, "in most cases," Mrs. Kasabian?

A: Well, sometimes you can make love with a person just by looking at him or just embracing; it does not have to be a physical intercourse to make love.

Q: Well, you told Mr. Sage -- did your Honor --

THE COURT: No, no, I thought better of it.

Go ahead. I'm sorry to interrupt you, Mr. Bubrick.

MR. BUBRICK: That's all right.

Q: When Mr. Sage gave you the money, you told him you were going to live with him; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: And he was talking about going to South America, wasn't he?

A: Yes.

Q: He was going to make a picture or something in South America?

A: Make movies, something like that.

Q: And you told him you'd go to South America with him, didn't you?

A: I never really committed myself positively to the statement, no.

Q: Well, you never really intended to go to South America with him, did you?

A: Not really, no.

Q: And you never really intended to live with him either, did you?

A: Well, I was living with him.

Q: How long?

A: Probably for about two weeks, three weeks, I'm not really sure.

Q: Was that as long as it took for you to make these trips to Los Angeles and back?

A: Yeah.

Q: Because after you had got Tanya in Los Angeles you never went back there again, did you?

A: I think I stayed for a day or two.

Q: But you never lived with him after that?

A: No.

Q: The real purpose was to get the money from Mr. Sage wasn't it?

A: I guess so.

Q: Did you call -- strike that.

When you talked to Katie, Mrs. Kasabian, did you find out what had happened to Tanya?

A: I don't think it was Katie that told me; I think Squeaky told me.

Q: Was this at the time of this telephone call with Katie, however, or did you call later on?

A: I think it was at this time, I'm not really positive at the moment.

Q: Well, whenever it was that you did learn about Tanya, what did you find out had happened to her?

A: That she was in custody.

Q: Well, that she was in a foster home --

A: Yes.

Q: -- or something in Los Angeles -- or, in Malibu?

A: I think she said that the Malibu police were the ones that took her, something like that.

Q: Didn't you eventually get the name of a social worker?

A: Yes.

Q: And didn't you talk to that person?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: By phone?

A: Yes.

Q: From where?

A: From New Mexico.

Q: Do you remember that person's name?

A: No.

Q: Would you recognize it if you heard it?

A: I doubt it.

Q: Does Kroeger, Armond Kroeger, sound familiar?

A: I know a Kroeger, but not an Armond Kroeger.

Q: Well, do you know the name Kroeger in association with the social worker?

A: No.

Q: Do you remember talking to Mr. Kroeger about Tanya?

A: If that's who the social worker's name was, yes.

Q: Well, do you remember talking to the social worker about the baby?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were asked when you had left Tanya behind, weren't you?

A: I guess so; I don't know.

Q: Do you remember what you told him?

A: No.

Q: Well, you told him you left the baby on August the 1st, didn't you -- or, August the 6th?

A: I don't remember. I don't know. I don't remember.

Q: I beg your pardon. I didn't mean the 1st, I misled you there; the date was the 6th or 7th of August?

A: That's what I said?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't recall.

Q: Well, do you remember the question at the last trial:

"Did you tell Mr. Kruger that 'On the 6th or 7th of August I left Tanya with Mary Brunner and went to Arizona to meet my husband?"

"A Yes, I think I did.

"Q And so when you stated that you know that was an untruth?

"A Yes, that is obvious."

Do you remember those questions and that answer?

A: Yes; yeah, but I don't remember if I said it was the 6th or 7th. I don't remember if that's the date that I said. I don't know what date I said.

Q: You mean you think the record might be wrong?

A: Oh, I don't know about that; but I don't remember saying the 6th or 7th.

Q: But you do remember testifying at the last trial?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, eventually you came into the Los Angeles area and made a court

appearance, didn't you?

A: Excuse me?

Q: You came into Los Angeles in connection with Tanya's custody and you made an appearance in court.

A: Yes.

Q: You actually talked to a judge in a courtroom, didn't you?

A: I guess so, yeah.

Q: Did you tell the judge what you knew had happened on August the 9th or the 10th?

A: No.

Q: Did you tell anybody in the courtroom what had happened on the night of the 10th?

A: No.

Q: I think you told us that eventually -- or, somewhere in connection with these custody proceedings you were directed to a Gary Fleischman; Mr. Gary Fleischman, an attorney; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And the person that directed you to him was a Paul Rosenberg?

A: Not Paul Rosenberg, his wife.

Q: His wife?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you know Mr. Rosenberg?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Who is he?

A: He was a doctor.

Q: He is a psychiatrist?

A: A psychiatrist, yeah.

Q: Had you attended him professionally?

A: No.

Q: How did you happen to meet him?

A: Oh, right after Tanya was born I remember we took some acid and I was breast

feeding and she seemed to, I don't know, be crying a lot, and I wasn't sure if it was just within myself that, you know, just normal crying or if the acid had affected her, so I went to see Mr. Rosenberg.

Q: That is Dr. Rosenberg?

A: Yes.

Q: When was Tanya born?

A: March 3rd, 1968.

Q: Now, I think you told us you then left and you got Tanya. You hitchhiked back to Florida; is that correct?

A: I stayed in New Mexico for a while.

Q: Did you hitchhike from here to New Mexico, or did you fly back?

A: From here?

Q: Yes, from Los Angeles to New Mexico.

A: No. I flew back.

Q: Then you hitchhiked from New Mexico to Florida?

A: Yes.

Q: With Tanya?

A: Yes.

Q: How old was Tanya at that time?

A: A year and a half, I guess, something like that.

Q: Do you remember how long it took you to get back to Florida?

A: To Florida? About three days.

Q: And then you stayed with your father for a while, did you, in Florida?

A: In his apartment, yes.

Q: And then eventually you went on back to New Hampshire?

A: Yes.

Q: When you got back to New Hampshire, you knew there was a warrant outstanding for your arrest, didn't you?

A: When I first got back?

Q: Yes.

A: No.



Q: Didn't you read it in the paper?

A: No.

Q: How long were you there before you read about it in the paper?

A: I don't know -- a couple of weeks. I am not real sure of the time.

THE COURT: I think you have told us you gave yourself up in December of 1969?

THE WITNESS: Yes, the first part of December.

THE COURT: How long before that did you know, or did you learn a warrant had been issued for your arrest?

THE WITNESS: The night before.

THE COURT: The night before?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Had you read about it in the paper before you knew the warrant was outstanding?

A: No. I heard it over the radio.

Q: When was that, with respect to the date that you turned yourself in?

A: The night before.

Q: So that you heard on the radio that you were wanted is that correct, the night before?

A: Yes.

Q: And you knew a warrant was outstanding for you at the same time?

A: I don't know.

Q: The night before?

A: I didn't know about a warrant. I read it in the newspaper the next day.

THE COURT: That is when your mother showed you the newspaper?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: And then when was it that you actually went to the police department?

A: My mother went that day, the next day.

Q: Did you go with her?

A: No. I stayed at the house.

Q: When did you go?

A: To my town police station?

Q: Yes, wherever you were taken in custody.

A: That day.

Q: There in New Hampshire?

A: Yes.

Q: When you were taken into custody, were you interrogated by any police officers?

A: No.

Q: When was it that you were questioned about the Tate-LaBianca murders for the first time, if you know?

A: I think a few questions were asked of me back in New Hampshire but I never gave answers. I didn't talk to anybody but as soon as I got to Los Angeles, I told my attorney.

Q: That is Mr. Fleischman?

A: Yes.

Q: You were brought back to Los Angeles by some police officers from the Los Angeles Police Department, weren't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Mr. Gutierrez one of them, if you remember?

A: No.

Q: Whoever he was, did you talk to him about the Tate-LaBianca murders on the way back to Los Angeles?

A: No.

Q: Your only concern was to tell the truth, was it?

A: Yeah.

Q: You wanted everybody to know about the truth?

A: Yeah, I wanted to get it over with.

Q: When was it that you made a statement to the police for the first time in connection with what you actually knew about the murders?

A: I think the first time was with Mr. Bugliosi. I am not real sure right now.

Q: Now, you surrendered yourself to the police back in New Hampshire in early December of 1969; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember when you came back here to Los Angeles?

A: I think it was the next day.

Q: All right. If we can say then December 2nd or 3rd, if we can use that as a point of reference. When was it that you talked to Mr. Bugliosi for the first time?

A: I guess maybe January or February. I was still pregnant. That is about the only way I can really tell as to time.

Q: Roughly, a period of some two months, would you say?

A: Yes, I think so.

Q: Now, did you talk to anybody in law enforcement before you talked to Mr. Bugliosi?

A: I don't think so. I don't remember.

Q: Now, did you talk to Mr. Bugliosi after you were given or promised some immunity?

A: I don't think so. I am not sure.

Q: Did Mr. Bugliosi tell you that if you would testify you would be granted immunity?

A: Yeah, I think it was then, something like that. I am not real sure.

Q: But you never talked to anybody in law enforcement before you knew you were going to be granted immunity?

A: I don't think so.

Q: Can you tell us about how many times you think you may have talked to Mr. Bugliosi or members of his staff?

A: Quite a few times.

Q: What would that mean in terms of numbers?

A: Up to what point?

Q: Until today.

A: Until today?

Q: Yes.

A: Gosh, I don't know. Lots of times.

Q: As many as 10, maybe?

A: More than 10.

Q: More than 10?

A: I guess so.

MR. BUGLIOSI: This is an ambiguous question. Talk? I spoke to her five times this morning.

MR. BUBRICK: I am sorry.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Talked about the murders or what?

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Yes. Only about the murders. I don't care about any social visits you may have had.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We will object to that question.

MR. BUBRICK: I am sorry.

THE COURT: You know he was not serious about that.

MR. BUBRICK: I am sorry.

Q: I don't mean times when you might have been talking about the weather or if you had, you know, if you were in the middle of a conference and he had to take time out for lunch. I am not interested. I want to know about how many times you might have talked to him about the facts of the Tate-LaBianca murders.

A: A lot of times. Twenty, I guess. I don't know.

Q: Did you talk to anybody other than Mr. Bugliosi about the facts of these murders, if you can remember?

A: Yeah.

Q: To Mr. Stovitz?

A: Yeah.

Q: How many times with him? Again, about the facts of the murders?

A: It wasn't really about the facts. I had one meeting with him but it wasn't about the facts as I recall. I can't really remember sitting down with Mr. Stovitz and talking.

Q: Was there a time when he showed you a lot of photographs?

A: Yeah.

Q: And they were pictures of members of the family, weren't they?

A: Yes.

Q: So that was a discussion about the facts of the murders, wasn't it?

A: Yes.

Q: Did that happen on more than one occasion?

A: The first day that I got into Los Angeles, he showed me pictures.

Q: Was he the first person you talked to rather than Mr. Bugliosi about the facts of this case?

A: Well, pictures, yes.

Q: And how about police officers that might have seen you when Mr. Bugliosi was not present?

A: Well, after I spoke to Mr. Stovitz I spoke to Mr. Patchett, not about the case, though, just with reference to my background and stuff like that.

THE COURT: Mr. who?

THE WITNESS: Mr. Patchett.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Frank Patchett, for the record, Sgt. Frank Patchett of the Los Angeles Police Department.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Anyone else that you can think of?

A: Before I spoke to Mr. Bugliosi?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't think so.

Q: Did you talk to officers after you talked to Mr. Bugliosi?

A: Yes.

Q: Oh how many occasions, if you can remember? Again about the facts of this case.

A: Not quite as many as I had with Mr. Bugliosi, but a number of times.

Q: And were those on occasions when Mr. Bugliosi might not have been present?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you remember where the conversations occurred?

A: At the jail, at the last trial, outside of jail.

Q: Were you in custody during the entire last trial?

A: Not the whole trial, no.

Q: When were you released from custody? Do you remember?

A: The date?

Q: Well, with respect to the trial's conclusion, if you know.

THE COURT: Connected with some event that may have occurred? That might help. Do you remember you testified, you were on the stand for quite some time.

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: Were you released after that or before that?

THE WITNESS: I was released before I got off -- yes, before I got off the stand.

THE COURT: You already had started to testify before you were released. Is that when you were released?

THE WITNESS: I wasn't through testimony before I was released.

THE COURT: In other words, while you were testifying you were released from custody; is that what you mean?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: I just have a few more questions, Mrs. Kasabian. You told us yesterday when you started that Mr. Watson looked about the same now as he looked at the ranch for a while; is that correct?

A: Looked the same?

Q: Yes, looks about the same now.

MR. BUGLIOSI: That is a misstatement, your Honor.

THE COURT: No. That was rather ambiguous. She said, "I see his eyes but he is much thinner now."

MR. BUGLIOSI: Also his mouth is open now I believe she testified.

THE COURT: Yes, and the mouth was open.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Were you aware of his mouth being open, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: Yesterday?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: When did you first become aware of that?

A: The first time I looked at him, I guess. I don't know.

Q: Was it before Mr. Bugliosi mentioned it in court?

A: No, because I hadn't seen him.

Q: He drew your attention to it?

A: Yes.

Q: Had he drawn your attention to it before you took the witness stand?

A: Yes.

Q: He told you that before he got on the stand, in other words; is that correct?

A: Explained to me some medical problem.

Q: That his mouth was drooping or open?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, you also told us yesterday that he is thinner now than he was at the ranch.

A: Yeah, a lot thinner.

Q: A lot thinner?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, of the four people -- let's limit it to three people now -- going to invite your attention to the night of the Tate affair, on the 9th of August.

Aside from yourself, how would you say Mr. Watson compared in size to the other two girls?

A: To the other girls?

Q: Yes.

A: A lot taller.

Q: How about in terms of weight?

A: More weight.

Q: And how about in body size? Was he bigger than the other girls?

A: I don't understand.

THE COURT: Like Katie and Sadie.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Yes, including yourself.

A: Just one other girl, Leslie.

Q: But she was there only on the 10th, is that correct? Talking about the first night.

A: The first night. What was your other question?

Q: Yes. Is he any bigger in the body than the other girls?

A: Well, he was taller. His legs are longer and his arms are longer.

Q: How about his waist?

A: I don't know. I guess his waist would be bigger too.

MR. BUBRICK: I wonder if we could get those trousers we had yesterday.

THE COURT: By the way, ladies and gentlemen of the jury, while Mr. Bubrick is looking for those trousers, when Mr. Bubrick referred to socializing, he at no time intended to infer that Mr. Bugliosi did socialize with the defendant at any time and please lest there be anybody suspect anything, nothing like that occurred. It was just a misstatement of facts.

MR. BUBRICK: Thank you. I certainly didn't intend to imply anything different.

Q: Mrs. Kasabian, I have three pair of trousers that have heretofore been introduced in evidence. I will lay them on the table before you.

Two of them appear to have the same waist and the third pair, the one on top, is obviously much smaller.

Can you tell me which of the three pairs of trousers Mr. Watson were?

A: I don't know definitely what pair it was.

Q: But you are certain it was one of the three?

A: Have to be one of the two because I am sure this (indicating) wouldn't fit.

Q: You think either the black ones or the blue jeans?

A: Yes.

Q: Can you tell us which of the girls was the smallest of the three?

A: Sadie was.

Q: So that Sadie might well have worn the very small pair of blue jeans?

A: Yes.

Q: And then the other girls, or Tex, would have worn either one of these two pairs of trousers?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you have any idea what Tex might have weighed when he was back at the ranch?

A: No, I have no idea.

Q: Do you know or can you tell us what the principal diet was at the ranch, what you ate by way of food?

A: Fruit and vegetables, brown rice, candy, ice cream.

Q: What did Mr. Watson eat, if you know?

A: The same as everybody else.



Q: Fruit?

A: Vegetables.

Q: And brown rice?

A: Yes.

Q: No meat?

A: No.

Q: No potatoes?

A: I don't recall of eating potatoes, no.

Q: How about bread and butter?

A: Yes. There was bread there.

Q: Did Mr. Watson eat bread?

A: I can't account if I ever seen him eat a piece of bread. Everybody at just about everything.

MR. BUBRICK: May I have a minute, please?

THE COURT: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: I have a couple of random thoughts here, Mrs. Kasabian. When you left the ranch after the LaBianca affair, did you tell the owner of the Volvo you were taking his car?

A: The day that I left for good?

Q: Yes.

A: I don't recall ever saying.

Q: That's Mr. Hannum, was he the owner of the Volvo?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see him the day you took the car?

A: Yes.

Q: You left early in the morning; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Was he up and about?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: Did you tell him that you were going to leave with his car?

A: I don't recall ever saying that.

Q: And did you get the key from him?

A: Maybe; I'm not really sure.

Q: Did you tell him you were going out of the City of Los Angeles with it?

A: No.

Q: Did you tell him you were going to Albuquerque with it?

A: No.

Q: When was Angel born, Mrs. Kasabian?

A: March 9, 1970.

Q: And that was, of course, after you were back here in Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

Q: When you were back in Taos, did you tell Mr. Sage about the murders?

A: Not in great detail, but --

Q: What did you tell him, if you remember?

A: I just remember saying that I had seen these people be killed and I knew who did it.

Q: Then you what?

A: I knew who did it.

Q: You knew who did it? Anything else you remember?

THE COURT: You are dropping your voice again, Mrs. Kasabian, please.

THE WITNESS: I am sorry.

What was your question?

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Anything else that you remember telling Mr. Sage in connection with the murders?

A: No, not that I can recall right now.

Q: Now, you told us yesterday that there was a sort of a oneness, Mr. Manson and you and the family would feel they were one?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you remember making such a remark? Can you elaborate on that; can you tell us what that meant to you?

A: Well, just like in perfect tune with one another.

Q: In what?

A: In tune with one another, in harmony, like, no conflicts and things like that.

Q: You mean philosophically you were in tune with one another?

A: I guess on all levels, I don't know.

Q: Well, did he tell you that he was in your mind?

A: Well, he used to say that, "I'm you and you are me."

THE COURT: "I am you and you are me?"

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: And did you think of yourself as Manson?

A: I don't know.

Q: In a philosophical sense, of course?

A: I don't know.

Q: Had you ever given any thought to his philosophy, as it affected you?

A: At the time?

Q: Yes.

A: I'm not really sure.

Q: Were you influenced by him?

A: Yeah.

Q: Completely?

A: Yeah.

Q: Pretty well under his control?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you do most anything he asked you to do?

A: Just about, yeah.

Q: Was there anything he asked you to do that you didn't do?

A: Yes.

Q: What?

A: Kill.

Q: Well, aside from that.

A: Not that I can recall right now.

Q: When you left and went to Taos in New Mexico, how long were you gone before you next saw Tanya?

A: Well, I made an appointment to speak to the social worker from New Mexico. I flew to there, -- maybe a week, I'm not really sure of the time.

Q: Did you call at any time within the week to find out about how Tanya was getting along?

A: Well, I just spoke to that social worker over the phone that one time and made a definite date to go and see him; and then once there, I was able to see Tanya.

Q: When you left, you left Tanya behind, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Weren't you concerned about Tanya's welfare?

A: Well, at the time I just really felt that she was going to be okay.

Q: What made you feel that?

A: I don't know what the word can be used to describe it. I just -- I don't know, I just felt deeply within myself that she was going to be all right.

Q: Now, you left her back with the very same people that you knew were responsible for a number of murders, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: But in spite of that, you felt that Tanya would be taken care of?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you approve of the way she was being cared for at the stage, as opposed to when you originally got to the ranch?

A: I don't understand.

Q: Well, this is now some five weeks after you have been at the ranch or the family; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: You told us yesterday that you sort of disapproved of the way Tanya was being taken care of?

A: Yeah.

Q: But I got the impression that's when you first got to the ranch; maybe I'm wrong?

A: Well, there was certain things that was done with and without me concerning her that I didn't approve of.

Q: Well, when you joined the family and turned Tanya over you knew it was with the

understanding that you were not to care for Tanya, didn't you?

A: Yeah.

Q: You know that somebody other than the natural mother would take care of the baby?

A: Yeah.

Q: And you agreed to that, didn't you?

A: Not completely, no.

Q: Well, how did you voice your disagreement?

A: I don't know if I ever voiced it.

Q: Well, did you ever tell anybody, "I think I would like to take care of Tanya"?

A: No, but I did take care of her at times.

Q: You did do what? I'm sorry, I didn't hear.

A: I did take care of her at times.

Q: At times.

About how often would you see Tanya while you were at the ranch?

A: At least once a day.

Q: Was she in the same -- did she live in the same area on the ranch that you lived in?

A: Most of the time.

Q: Did you ever tell whoever was taking care of Tanya that you disapproved of the way she was taking care of your child?

A: Not that I can recall.

Q: Did the children, the three youngsters there develop bits and sores of any kind, if you remember?

A: Yeah, everybody did, including the children.

Q: You mean everybody, the adults as well as the children?

A: Some of the adults, not everybody.

Q: Did you ever take Tanya to a doctor during the time that you were at the ranch?

A: No.

Q: Were you concerned about her welfare to that degree; did you think she needed some medical attention?

A: I don't know if I ever thought about it.

Q: You never thought about that?

A: I remember washing her sores one day.

Q: Washing her sores with what?

A: Soap and wate.

Q: Mrs. Kasabian, did you ever see or observe any member of the family do anything -- refuse to do anything that Manson told them to do?

A: Not that I can recall right now.

Q: Well, again, when you say, "Not that I can recall right now," does that mean that you may have but you just don't remember now?

A: Yeah.

Q: Or that nobody ever did disobey him?

A: I don't think so. I can't remember if anybody did.

Q: Well, you were asked the same question at the last trial and you said, "No, nobody did," didn't you?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: Without any qualification?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: Because nobody ever did disobey Mr. Manson, did they?

A: Not that I ever saw somebody say, "No, I'm not going to do that or anything like that."

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Manson tell somebody to do something and that person not do it?

A: I don't think so.

Q: I think one last question: I think you told us yesterday that you felt dead when you left, came back from the Tate residence; is that correct?

A: I felt dead when I came back?

Q: Yes, when you came back from the Tate residence -- I'm sorry, the LaBianca residence; do you remember that?

A: When I came back for the LaBianca --

Q: Yes, after leaving the LaBianca residence.

A: Back at the ranch?

Q: I think you were at the beach.

A: Yeah, I just felt empty and confused at different times.

Q: Was that before or after you walked along the beach with Mr. Manson?

A: I think at one time on the beach.

Q: While you were walking with him?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: But I thought he made you feel good and made you forget everything while you walked with him.

A: I remember that, too.

Q: And it was sort of a loving situation, you loved him at that time.

A: He sort of made me feel like, I don't know, a young love, infatuation kind of thing.

Q: Well, how would you describe yourself, if you can, at the time that you came to the ranch?

A: Describe myself?

Q: Yes, can you -- how would you characterize yourself, if you are able to do that?

A: Well, I guess I was sort of down and out.

Q: Were you impressionable, would you say?

A: Yeah.

Q: Do you think you would consider yourself naive?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you consider yourself suggestible, amenable to suggestion?

A: Yes, I guess so.

Q: And you were 20 years old; correct?

A: Yeah.

MR. BUBRICK: Roughly 20.

I have nothing further, your Honor.

THE COURT: Do you want to finish with this witness now, or --

MR. BUGLIOSI: Could we have our recess, your Honor?

THE COURT: At this time we will have our morning recess, ladies and gentlemen.

Once more, do not form or express any opinion in this case; do not discuss it among

yourselves or with anybody else and please keep your minds open.

(Recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, counsel, and the defendant are present.

Miss Kasabian, you are still under oath. Would you state your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Linda Kasabian.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I just have a few more questions.

THE COURT: Go ahead.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: En route to the Tate residence on the night of the Tate murders, before you wrapped the knives and the revolver up, where were the knives and the revolver in the car?

A: The gun was in the glove box and I think the knives were on the seat, the front seat.

Q: Right next to Tex?

A: Yes, between us.

Q: Between you and Tex?

A: Yes.

Q: The three knives?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, you testified earlier that when Tex walked up the driveway to the Tate residence, he had a rope on his shoulder; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: When he, Sadie, and Katie returned to the car at the bottom of a hill, did Tex have the rope with him at that time?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever see the rope later on that night?

A: No.

Q: At any time on the night of the Tate murders or the night of the LaBianca murders, for that matter, did you see Tex stumble or fall to the ground?

A: No.



Q: When he would talk to you, specifically on the night of the Tate murders, when he had several conversations with you, would he repeat what he said over and over again?

A: No.

Q: For instance, he wouldn't say, "Wrap the knives and the revolver up, wrap the knives and the revolver up, wrap the knives and the revolver up," he didn't talk to you like that?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever creep crawl, as you explain it, into anyone's home in the day or night to take anything?

A: You mean sneak, creep crawl? No.

Q: Into someone's home.

A: No.

Q: Could you briefly explain, an LSD experience or trip?  
Do they call an experience a trip?

A: Yeah.

Q: Could you briefly explain an LSD trip?

MR. BUBRICK: I am going to object to that as being improper redirect.

MR. BUGLIOSI: They went into this on cross-examination.

THE COURT: She may explain her reaction.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Right.

THE COURT: You may explain yours; tell us what you took, how much of it --

THE WITNESS: Do you just want me to recall a specific --

THE COURT: I don't know.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Well, the typical LSD trip, could you briefly explain it to the judge and jury, how it affected you?

MR. BUBRICK: I am going to object to the word "typical." I don't know if that would be a typical reaction.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We are talking about her.

THE COURT: That's why I asked her to tell how much she took, when it was, what time of day it was.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I'm not --

THE COURT: Because there is no such thing as a typical one, as I understand it.

MR. BUGLIOSI: There might be, your Honor.

THE WITNESS: It is only in relation to me.

THE COURT: Only in relation to you.

THE WITNESS: I can't say what it is to somebody else.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I am only talking about Mrs. Kasabian.

THE COURT: You tell us how much you took and what it was and its reaction on you.

THE WITNESS: Well, I am going to have to recall a specific trip now.

I remember I took a tab of what is referred to as pure Owsley acid; it was called "white lightning."

THE COURT: "White lightning"?

THE WITNESS: White lightning, yes.

And it was a very small white tablet and a pharmaceutical; and it was extremely intense, vivid colors, things were like flowing, on the physical -- I'm talking about physical objects, things would sort of bend into each other and blend out of each other, and also it was like a very intense journey into myself, into my own mind, in my thoughts, and things like that.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Well, would you say that normally during an LSD trip, you would look inwards into yourself?

A: Yes.

Q: You'd become introspective, as it were?

A: Yeah.

Q: Try to analyze yourself?

A: Not so much analyze, just mostly ask questions.

Q: Ask questions of yourself?

A: Yeah.

Q: Searching for answers?

A: Yes.

Q: And during an LSD trip, would you normally be more aware of things around

you?

A: Yeah.

Q: Colors would be brighter, more intense?

A: Yes.

Q: Tell me this, during an LSD trip did you ever see an object that wasn't in fact there?

A: Not that I can recall, no.

Q: So everything you saw during a trip was actually there?

A: Yeah.

Q: But there would be a certain distortion in terms of color, intensity, size, things like that?

A: Yeah.

Q: After you came down off the trip, would you have any difficulty remembering what took place during the LSD trip?

A: Not usually.

Q: You could remember what happened?

A: Yeah.

Q: In detail?

A: Well, just only the most vivid things, you know, that impressed on me.

Q: When you first came out here to Los Angeles after you were extradited, that is in early December 1969, did you want to tell the authorities what happened on these two nights?

MR. BUBRICK: Objected to as calling for the conclusion of the witness.

THE COURT: Overruled.

THE WITNESS: Yes, I did.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Why didn't you, Linda?

A: I had two attorneys and they instructed me not to talk to anybody about it and I didn't.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

RE-CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Mrs. Kasabian, you were telling us about an LSD experience that you had with

pharmaceutical LSD.

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know what dose it was?

A: Milligrams or whatever?

Q: Yes, in milligrams.

A: No, I don't think so.

Q: How did you take it?

A: Through the mouth.

Q: Was it a liquid that you took?

A: No. It was a small tablet.

Q: Do you know what a normal dose of LSD is in milligrams?

A: About 500, I would say.

Q: 500 milligrams?

A: Yeah.

Q: How about in micrograms?

A: Wait. Milligrams and micrograms I don't know.

Q: You mean they might be both the same to you?

A: Yes. I don't know. I have heard the terms but I don't know the difference between the two.

Q: In your experience, Mrs. Kasabian, did you ever learn how many normal doses of LSD could be made out of an ounce?

A: No.

Q: You have no idea of the number that could be made out of an ounce?

A: No.

Q: And is it your experience that all LSD reacts the same way with the person who takes it?

A: No, not necessarily.

Q: And is it your experience that pharmaceutical LSD is the same as street type LSD?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever take any street type LSD?

A: Oh, sure.

Q: And was your reaction the same as the pharmaceutical LSD?

A: No.

Q: What does the term street type LSD mean to you?

A: Sort of not pure, cut with, you know, with other things other than acid.

Q: Do you know what things, what they use to cut LSD with on the street?

A: For a while it was being cut with speed.

Q: That is Methedrine?

A: Yes. And, I don't know, it would be cut with various amounts of other drugs.

Q: Had you ever heard of it being cut with strychnine?

A: Yes.

Q: Anything else that you can think of it's being cut with?

A: No, not that I can recall.

Q: But you say that when you took the pharmaceutical LSD trip, that you told us about, that objects were floating around.

A: Floating around?

Q: Yes. Is that an expression you used? Physical objects were floating?

THE COURT: Flowing and blending.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: I beg your pardon. Flowing. Things were sort of merging together?

A: Yes.

Q: Then would they separate in your mind?

A: I don't quite understand.

Q: Well, would everything in the room sort of consolidate, all things flow on into the other?

A: Sort of, yes.

Q: Would they stay that way?

A: No. You know, I don't know, a motion like this (demonstrating) is all that I can tell you.

Q: The objects in the room were sort of in and out of one another too; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Isn't that really the way you remember the experience after the trip is over?

A: Yeah.

Q: You remember some things and then you don't remember others; is that correct?

A: Yeah.

Q: How long does a trip last?

A: I don't know. I have been told some people never come down but the actual feeling of the chemical drug in your body is anywhere from eight to twelve hours.

Q: You say that you never had a strip where you imagine things being present that weren't present; is that correct?

A: No, not that I can recall.

Q: Have you ever had such an experience where you imagine things present in a room?

A: No. I felt what I imagined to be the presence of a spirit, God.

Q: Physical presence with you?

A: No, not -- well, it is hard to explain. It is just not, you know, an image, a physical image kind of thing, but just, I don't know, a feeling of a presence near me.

Q: Of some imaginary force?

A: I don't know if it was imaginary or real.

Q: Did you see anybody else in the room when you were on this trip?

A: You are not understanding me and I am not understanding you.

Q: Have you ever taken an LSD trip in an empty room, for example?

A: Not that I can recall right now.

Q: What are you trying to convey about this feeling or the image of somebody else being present?

A: I don't mean an image, a physical image. I mean the feeling of a presence near me within a room. Some people just say it is a spirit. Some people would call it God. That is what I mean.

I don't mean like I am not seeing you there, and I am on an acid trip, and I am imagining that you are there but I don't even see you. I don't see the physical person or the spirit or presence, whatever it is that I am feeling.

THE COURT: Did you ever feel like somebody was staring at you without actually seeing that person?

THE WITNESS: No.

THE COURT: In other words, you felt a presence but could not touch or see it?

THE WITNESS: Right.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Was there anything other than just a feeling of the presence of some other force or anything else that you want to call it being in the room with you?

A: I don't understand.

Q: Was it anything other than this presence that you described?

I take it this is some sort of a sensation that you have; is that correct?

A: Sensation?

Q: Yes, you have a feeling that there is a presence of something else, or somebody else?

A: Yeah, I guess so.

Q: Well, as the judge -- it is nothing you can reach out and touch?

A: Right.

Q: Well, that's what I mean, you have a feeling as if there is something else there that you can't see or hear?

A: Right.

Q: Did you ever communicate in whatever manner you do with that force?

A: No, I don't think so.

Q: Does that force ever communicate with you in an LSD experience?

A: Yeah, I have heard one particular instance that was very vivid in my mind and I felt as though, well, I was asking a question and I was searching and I received an answer.

Q: You mean you actually -- you actually felt as if there was somebody talking to you; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And you could understand this on a conscious level?

A: I guess so.

Q: Well --

A: I was able to relate it to another person.

Q: In other words, after the LSD experience was over, you still remembered?

A: Yes; I still remember.

Q: The question and the answer or the response that you got?

A: Yes.

Q: And this was at a time when, of course, there was just a force present, rather than a finite being of any sort?

A: I didn't see any being, no.

Q: There was not a human being present?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever have an LSD experience in a room where the furniture seemed to float around?

A: No.

Q: Nothing ever became detached and moved around in space?

A: No, I didn't see -- no.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Just one more question, your Honor.

FURTHER REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: The feeling of looking inward and the intensity of colors and the flowing of objects, et cetera, did you experience this with street LSD as well as with the pharmaceutical LSD?

A: Yeah, you know, it's like par for the course when you take acid, that you know --

Q: This is a normal experience, to look inward?

A: Yeah.

Q: To ask yourself questions?

A: Yeah.

Q: To be more aware of things around you?

A: Depending on the acid, you know, different awareness and levels.

Q: Different levels of intensity, depending on the acid?

A: Yeah.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No more questions.



THE COURT: I have one, Mrs. Kasabian.

Just forget about this acid experience now; we'll take you back to something else.

Yesterday you told us before you went to the LaBianca home, do you recall, you saw Tex take a white capsule of some kind?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: And then you said that during the events that were there he was coherent -- well, this is the Tate, I mean -- the Tate, coming back to the Tate thing; that's when he took the capsule; is that right?

THE WITNESS: No.

THE COURT: At the LaBianca?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: You also said he appeared coherent to you, "But he acted crazy when I saw him stabbing."

Now, you saw him stabbing only at the Tate place; isn't that correct?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: Describe what you meant by "he acted crazy when I saw him stabbing."

THE WITNESS: Well, just the motions that he was going through in stabbing.

THE COURT: Well, just describe that to us.

THE WITNESS: In words?

THE COURT: Well, we weren't there, Mrs. Kasabian.

THE WITNESS: You want me to show you what I saw?

THE COURT: Show or describe or tell us what you meant when you said by "he acted crazy."

THE WITNESS: He was stabbing, going like this, and this, and this, and this.

THE COURT: Repeated stabbing?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: Was he saying anything?

THE WITNESS: I didn't hear words, no.

THE COURT: Did you see his face at that time?

THE WITNESS: I don't recall it, no.

THE COURT: Then you feel that just by the repeated stabbings, that's what you meant by "acting crazy"?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: I have nothing further, gentlemen.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions, your Honor.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further.

THE COURT: Gentlemen, approach the bench, please.

(Unreported discussion between the Court and counsel.)

(The following proceedings were had in open court in the presence of the jury:)

MR. BUGLIOSI: May the witness be excused, your Honor?

THE COURT: All right, Mrs. Kasabian, you may be excused.

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, MONDAY, AUGUST 23, 1971

9:45 A.M.

-- oOo --

THE COURT: Good morning.

THE JURY: Good morning, your Honor.

MR. BUBRICK: Good morning, your Honor.

MR. KAY: Good morning, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Good morning, Judge.

THE COURT: People against Watson

Let the record show all jurors are present, defendant and all counsel are present.

Gentlemen, as we recessed last Friday, one juror said he did not get the blood types of the various persons.

If it is agreeable with you, I can read off the blood types and if you don't agree with the testimony given by Mr. Granado, you tell me.

Is that agreeable?

MR. KAY: Yes, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, your Honor.

THE COURT: Mr. Joseph Granado testified that the blood types of the following people were as follows:

Steven Parent, Type B, with the sub-grouping of MN.

Wojciech Frykowski, Type B, sub-grouping MN.

Abigail Folger, Type B, sub-grouping MN.

Jay Sebring, Type O, sub-grouping MN.

Sharon Tate Polanski, Type O, sub-grouping M.

Is that correct, Gentlemen?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, your Honor.

MR. KEITH: Yes, your Honor.

THE COURT: You may proceed.

MR. BUGLIOSI: There is a stipulation first, if your Honor please. We are looking for the diagram right now.

May it be stipulated that Officer Jerome Boen, who has already testified on the stand, was recalled by the People, duly sworn and testified, that the direction of the fingerprint on the outside of the front door of the Tate residence was downward and away from the edge of the door; in other words, it was in that direction (indicating).

It was away from the edge of the door and in a downward direction.

MR. KEITH: About a 45-degree angle?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes. That would be the right ring finger. The right ring finger was in a downward direction away from the edge of the door.

So stipulated?

MR. KEITH: So stipulated.

MR. BUBRICK: So stipulated.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The People call Deana Martin.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

DEANA MARTIN GUERIN,

called as a witness by the People, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Take the stand and be seated.

Would you state and spell your name, please?

THE WITNESS: Dena Martin Guerin, D-e-a-n-a, M-a-r-t-i-n; G-u-e-r-i-n.

THE COURT: That is Mrs. Guerin, I take it?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: Your maiden name was Deana Martin?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: You are the daughter of Dean Martin, the singer?

A: Yes.

Q: And the actor?

A: Yes.

Q: Mrs. Guerin, do know an individual named Dennis Wilson?

A: Yes.

Q: And were you ever at Mr. Wilson's residence at 14400 Sunset Boulevard in West Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

Q: Near Will Rogers Park?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you ever attend a party at Mr. Wilson's residence in July of 1968?

A: I am not sure if it was July or October, but I was there at a party, yes.

Q: And who was at the party with you?

A: Terry Melcher, Allen Warrnick, Annie Marshal, Gwen Wells, Peaches Marion Book, B-o-o-k -- did I say Gwen Wells?

THE COURT: Yes, you did.

THE WITNESS: And Dean Moorehouse and Greg Jacobson.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Did the party ever leave Dennis Wilson's residence and proceed to the address 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: Yes, it did.

Q: Was Terry Melcher living at that address at that time?

A: Yes, he was.

Q: And you are aware that this is the address where Sharon Tate and her husband, Roman, later lived?

A: Yes.

Q: What time of the day did it proceed to the Melcher residence, this party?

A: When it started to get dark -- 7:30, 8:00.

Q: Okay; and how long did the party continue on at the Melcher residence?

A: I'm not sure; about four hours while I was there.

Q: Okay.

A: I don't know how long it went on after.

Q: Directing your attention to defendant Charles Watson, have you ever seen this man before?

A: I can't be sure.

Q: Okay.

I show you people's 36 for identification, a photograph.

Do you know who is shown in that photograph?

A: Looks more like -- looks more like him here, when I knew him.

Q: You say it looks more like him; about whom are you referring when you say "him"?

A: Charles Tex Watson.

Q: So this photograph to you looks like a photograph of Charles Tex Watson; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, this party in either July or October of 1968 that ended up at the Melcher residence, was Mr. Watson at that party?

A: At what residence?

Q: The Melcher residence.

It started out at Dennis Wilson's residence, then it proceeded up to Terry Melcher's at 10050 Cielo Drive.

Was the person shown in the photograph, Mr. Watson, was he at that party?

A: I can't be too sure. It seems like he was.

He wasn't at Dennis' on Sunset, but I think that he was at Terry Melcher's, I'm not that

sure, though.

Q: He resembled the way he looks in the photograph here?

A: Yes.

Q: In other words, he had long hair at the time?

A: Yes.

Q: He did not have short hair like he does now?

A: No, much bigger.

Q: This individual whom you saw at Mr. Melcher's residence, whom you think was Charles Watson, how tall was he?

A: Six two.

Q: Rather tall?

A: Yes.

Q: And did this person identify himself by name?

A: No.

Q: Did you know what his name was?

A: I knew of two Charlies.

Q: Who are these two Charlies?

A: Charles Manson and the other one, I only knew as "Charlie."

I never spoke with him, though.

Q: So this man whom you say looks like the man shown in the photograph here, people's 36, this man's name, as far as you know, was Charlie?

A: To the best of my knowledge, yes.

Q: But it definitely was not Charles Manson?

A: No, it was not.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here another photograph, your Honor; may it be marked people's next in order?

I think it is people's 301 or 302.

THE COURT: The last we have is 301.

You want it marked 302?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, your Honor.

Q: Showing you people's 302 for identification, does this also appear to be a

photograph of Mr. Watson?

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, I am going to object to that as being leading and suggestive.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I will withdraw it.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Showing you people's 302 for identification, do you know who is shown in that photograph?

A: It would look more like Charles Watson than the man seated over there.

Q: And this looks like the gentleman who was at the Melcher residence at that party

--

MR. KEITH: Object to the question --

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: -- in July or October of 1968?

A: Yes, sir.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

CROSS EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH:

Q: How well did you know Charles Manson?

A: I met him two times.

Q: Did you ever talk to him?

A: Yes.

Q: At length?

A: Not really, no.

Q: Do you remember the substance of any of the conversations you had with Manson?

A: I remember him talking with a friend of mine, Allen Warrnick.

He and a few of his girlfriends were putting him down terribly, saying terrible things about him and I got very mad at him. I didn't say anything to him.

Q: I am lost because you used "him," rather than a name.

Q BY THE COURT: Who was being put down, Manson or Warrnick?

A: Warrnick.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Warrnick was being put down by Manson?

A: Yes, and his girlfriends. I didn't like this.

Q: Warrnick's girlfriends or Manson's girlfriends were being put down?

A: Manson's girlfriends.

Q: Were also putting down Warrnick?

A: Yes.

Q: And where did this conversation take place?

A: Pacific Coast Highway; Dennis Wilson's second house.

Q: Was that the first occasion when you met Manson?

A: Second.

Q: Do you remember any of the conversation that you may have had with him on the first occasion?

A: No, I was introduced.

Q: No conversation, then, other than introductions, and some chit chat, perhaps?

A: Right.

Q: Was there any kind of an argument, getting back to the second conversation, again, between Warrnick and Manson?

A: No, I just didn't like the things that Manson and his girlfriends were saying to Allen, and so I told Allen that we should leave.

Q: You were with Allen at that time?

A: Yes.

Q: And Manson was making derogatory remarks about --

A: Yes, he was.

Q: -- Allen Warrnick?

Was, by any chance, Warrnick being referred to as a member of the establishment or a pig or words to that effect?

A: No.

Q: This party at Melcher's, did the party circulate throughout the house or was it confined to one particular room or rooms, if you recall?

A: To the best of my knowledge, I think people were just roaming around.

Q: Did you ever see the person whom you knew as Charlie -- not Charlie Manson -- but the other Charlie at Dennis Wilson's --

A: No.



Q: -- on any occasion?

A: I never did.

Q: Did you ever see or meet a man by the name of Dean Moorehouse at Dennis Wilson's?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: One occasion or more than one occasion?

A: Two occasions.

Q: Did you ever talk to Dean Moorehouse?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And did he at that time, when you saw him, or those times, to be more accurate, appear to be living at Dennis Wilson's?

A: Yes, at the one on Sunset; there was a log cabin like, in the back, a guesthouse, where he lived.

Q: Do you have any idea how long Dean Moorehouse may have lived in the log cabin?

A: No, I have no idea.

Q: Apparently, Dennis Wilson had two homes; is that correct?

A: He had the one first near Will Rogers State Park, whatever, and then the lease ran out and he had Greg Jacobson find him another one to rent, which was the one on the Pacific Coast Highway.

Q: Now, at which residence did Dean Moorehouse live? The first or the second?

A: The first.

Q: This conversation that you were present at where Manson made derogatory remarks about your escort, Mr. Warrnick, was that at the first or the second Wilson residence?

A: Second.

Q: Incidentally, Mrs. Guerin, was that the only occasion you were ever at the Melchers when this party continued from Dennis Wilson's home to the Melcher in either July or October, 1968?

A: No, I had been there many times.

Q: Was this all prior to the time Mrs. Polanski moved in there?

A: Yes.

Q: In other words, you were never there after Mrs. Polanski moved in?

A: No, never.

Q: When you say July or October, that is quite a spread.

Where there parties on both those dates?

A: No.

Q: Those months?

A: I believe it was October, because I was on my way to South Africa to make a movie October 12th, '68, and the party was a week or two before that.

Q: Were you there in July also, if you remember? That is, July 1968?

A: In July I was in Tuscon making a movie and I flew in for my sister's wedding and on that occasion, which was July 21, '68, I went down to Dennis Wilson's house once and then I went back to Tucson.

Q: All right. But my question was -- and I didn't put it with enough particularity apparently -- were you at the Melcher residence in July 1968 as well as in October 1968, if you recall?

A: Yes. I was there quite a bit. I have known Mr. Melcher for 11 years.

Q: But the only time you think Mr. Watson may have been there was on this October occasion? Is that what your are telling us?

A: This is right.

Q: And you are not sure that he was even there, are you?

A: That is right.

MR. KEITH: I have nothing further.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

THE COURT: Thank you, Mrs. Guerin

MR. BUGLIOSI: The People called Terry Melcher.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

TERRENCE MELCHER,

called as a witness by the People, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Take the stand and be seated. Would you spell your name?

THE WITNESS: Terrence Melcher, T-e-r-r-e-n-c-e; M-e-l-c-h-e-r.

THE CLERK: Thank you

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: Mr. Melcher, what is your occupation?

A: I am a producer of recordings and television programs.

Q: You are actress Doris Day's son?

A: That is correct.

Q: Mr. Melcher, did you previously reside at the address 10050 Cielo Drive in the City of Los Angeles?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: During what period of time did you live there, the approximate.

A: About two and a half to three years, beginning summer of '66.

Q: Between the summer of 1968 and, let's say, early 1969?

A: Right.

Q: And you leased the residence?

A: Correct.

Q: From whom?

A: Mr. Altobelli.

Q: Is that Rudy Altobelli?

A: That is right.

Q: A-l-t-o-b-e-l-l-i?

A: Right.

Q: And when you moved out of the Cielo address, do you know who the next tenants were?

A: Mr. Altobelli leased the house to the Polanskis.

Q: That is Sharon Tate and Roman Polanski?

A: That is right.

Q: Do you know Charles Manson?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: When is the first time you met Charles Manson?

A: Sometime during the summer of 1968.

Q: Where did you meet him?

A: At the home of a friend of mine named Dennis Wilson.

Q: Was that at Dennis' address located at 14400 Sunset Boulevard?

A: It was.

Q: All right. Is Dennis Wilson a drummer for the Beach boys recording group?

A: He is.

Q: And he is a friend of yours?

A: He has been for a long, long time.

Q: Do you recall what Mr. Manson was doing inside Mr. Wilson's residence?

A: I believe he was living there and the day I met him he was playing the guitar and singing songs.

Q: I take it you eventually left the Wilson residence that day. Did someone take you home from the Wilson residence?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was that?

A: Dennis drove me home.

Q: Was anyone else in the car?

A: Manson was in the car, yes.

Q: Where was he located in the car?

A: In the back seat.

Q: So Dennis drove you home to the address 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: Yes.

Q: And Manson was in the back seat?

A: Correct.

Q: Did either Manson or Wilson get out of the car at your address?

A: No, sir.

Q: They dropped you off at the gate?

A: Yes.

Q: And then you entered and they turned around and left?

A: Right -- well, it wasn't at the gate. It was inside the gate, in the parking area.

Q: You entered the gate?

A: Right.

Q: You got out of the car and then they left?

A: Right, that is correct.

Q: When is the next time that you saw Mr. Manson, if at all?

A: I think about a year later.

Q: Do you know the approximate month?

A: I did some while back -- in fact, I think that we ascertained it was about May of 1969.

Q: May of 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: Was the next time that you saw Mr. Manson?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And where did you see him at that time?

A: That was at an old movie ranch, at the Spahn Ranch.

Q: Spahn Ranch?

A: Right.

Q: Chatsworth, California?

A: That is correct.

Q: Do you know Greg Jacobson?

A: Yes.

Q: Would you briefly explain your acquaintanceship with Mr. Jacobson?

A: Mr. Jacobson was in my employ as a talent scout and from time to time, although he wasn't in my employ at the time, he took me to Spahn Ranch.

Previous to that, he had from time to time brought either composers and/or performers in to audition for me, to record, and that is how I happened to be at the Spahn Ranch that May of 1969.

Q: You went out to the Spahn Ranch to audition someone?

A: That is right.

Q: Mr. Manson?

A: That is right.

Q: And was it at Mr. Jacobson's suggestion that you went out to Spahn Ranch to audition Charles Manson?

A: That is right.

Q: So Mr. Jacobson told you about Charles Manson, the fact that he was an artist or he played the guitar and sang?

A: Right.

Q: When you went out there in May of 1969 to the Spahn Ranch, were you with Mr. Jacobson?

A: Uh-huh, yes, I was.

Q: Anyone else?

A: No.

Q: Did Mr. Manson in fact perform for you?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: Played the guitar?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: Sang songs?

A: Yes.

Q: How long did this audition take place?

A: Perhaps an hour.

Q: Where did it take place?

A: It's hard to pin down. The buildings weren't really inhabitable, they were mostly living outside and it was in a, I suppose you might call it, a gully.

Q: Behind the buildings?

A: Right.

Q: After you listened to Mr. Manson sing and play his guitar, did you talk to Mr. Manson?

A: Briefly.

Q: What did he say to you?

A: Not too much. He expressed a keen desire to record and I asked him a few basic questions; I gave him a few basic suggestions and found out that he wasn't in any

union, like the AFL, which is a musician's union, or AFTRA, which is the vocalists' union; and therefore he couldn't really professionally record.

He told me that he didn't want to join those unions.

Q: Did you give Mr. Manson any money?

A: I did, yeah.

Q: How much?

A: I think it was \$50.

Q: Why did you give him the \$50?

A: Well, they all seemed to be hungry.

Q: When you say "all," whom are you referring to?

A: Well, there were maybe 30 people there.

Q: Manson and several girls?

A: Well, just Manson and a lot of people.

Q: So you felt sorry for them and you gave Mr. Manson \$50?

A: Well, sorry, or charit -- yeah, perhaps sorry.

Q: When you heard Mr. Manson play the guitar and sing were you impressed with Mr. Manson as a singer and a guitarist?

A: No, I wasn't.

Q: Did you end up recording Mr. Manson?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: Is the reason you did not do so that you were just not impressed with him?

A: That, and also the previous reasons that I gave, which were that --

THE COURT: He was not a union member?

THE WITNESS: Correct, sir.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Did you convey the fact that you were not interested in Mr. Manson, did you convey this fact to Mr. Jacobson?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: When is the next time, if at all, that you saw Mr. Manson?

A: I told Mr. Jacobson that the only way I could see Manson being recorded would be if someone with a remote recording unit were to bring it to the ranch, itself, because he wouldn't be allowed into a professional studio without union status; so I went back

there with a friend named Mike Dacy and Jacobson, maybe three or four or five days later, a week later, I'm not certain.

Q: You went back to Spahn Ranch?

A: Right; so that Mr. Dacy might have a chance to hear him sing and play.

Q: Did Mr. Manson then perform for Mr. Dacy?

A: Right.

Q: In your presence?

A: Right.

Q: And was Greg Jacobson also there?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Directing your attention to defendant Charles Watson, whom I am pointing to right here, have you ever seen him before?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: When did you see Mr. Watson for the first time?

A: Sometime in the summer of 1968.

Q: Where at?

A: At Dennis Wilson's house.

Q: On Sunset Boulevard?

A: Yes.

Q: Have you ever seen Mr. Watson inside your former residence at 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: Yes.

Q: Approximately how many times?

A: I can't be certain -- several. Watson was a friend of Wilson's and Jacobson's and was often tagging around with either or both of those men, so whenever they would drop by -- not "whenever," but often when they would drop by he would be with them.

Q: Can you give us an approximate number of times that you saw Mr. Watson inside your former residence at 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: I would say approximately six. It's a very rough, rough guess.

Q: Do you recall what part of your former residence Mr. Watson was in on any of these occasions?



A: He could have been in one room or he could have been in all the rooms; I really don't know. I wasn't keeping track.

Q: During what period of time was Mr. Watson at your residence? You said six times -- encompassing, let's say, what period?

A: I guess it would all be -- I'm sorry, let me retract that; All six times would have fallen somewhere in the summer of 1968.

Q: To your knowledge did Mr. Watson ever stay overnight at your residence?

A: No.

Mr. Jacobson took care of my house for me for about four months while I was in Europe doing some recording.

Q: When was that?

A: That was in, I believe I left in the fall of 1968 and Watson may have stayed there then.

Q: You don't know?

A: I'm not certain; it's possible.

Q: Did you have a Jaguar car around this period of time?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Did you ever loan Dean Moorehouse that car?

A: I did.

Q: Do you know the approximate date?

A: No, I don't, but I am sure that --

Q: In the summer of '68, again?

A: -- in your records -- yes.

Q: To your knowledge did you loan the car to Mr. Moorehouse and Mr. Watson?

A: I loaned it to Mr. Moorehouse.

Q: Was Mr. Watson present when you did this?

A: I believe that Mr. Watson went along with Mr. Moorehouse on the trip, yeah.

Q: During the summer of 1968 did Mr. Watson look the way he does right now?

A: Well, he wasn't wearing a tie.

Q: What about his hair?

A: It was a little longer.

Q: What about his weight?

Would you care to have him stand up?

A: Well, he is thinner.

Q: He is thinner now?

A: Yeah.

THE COURT: Did he have a beard?

THE WITNESS: Not that I recall, sir.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: These six times that you met Mr. Watson, did you notice anything at all unusual about him?

A: Nothing at all, except that he was very pleasant, friendly.

THE COURT: What was the last thing you said, sir?

THE WITNESS: I said --

THE COURT: You said that he was pleasant and --

THE WITNESS: Very pleasant and friendly.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thanks you.

No further questions.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH:

Q: Mr. Melcher, were there about 30 people present in this gully the first time that you listened to Manson perform?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And had you ever met Manson before that date at Dennis Wilson's, or any other place, when you actually went to the Spahn Ranch?

A: Could you rephrase that?

Q: Yes.

You went to the Spahn Ranch --

A: Right.

Q: -- in May or so of 1969; correct?

A: Correct.

Q: And your purpose in going there was to listen to Manson audition for you; correct?

A: Correct.

Q: Now, had you ever met or seen Manson before that time?

A: Yes, as I testified I met him at Dennis Wilson's house the previous summer.

Q: Had you seen him at Dennis Wilson's once or more than once?

A: I'm not -- I'm not really certain. I don't mean to appear vague, but if I ever went to Dennis Wilson's it wasn't to see Manson.

Q: I gather that; Dennis Wilson was a friend of yours?

A: Right, and so was Jacobson and Jacobson was also living there at the time, so --

Q: And I suppose you also had business dealings with those two people, Wilson and Jacobson?

A: Not really.

Q: But, in any event, you do remember seeing Manson at Wilson's house?

A: Correct; once, I do.

Q: You only have an outstanding recollection of seeing him once there?

A: Yes, the reason for that is because he sang some of his songs that particular day.

Q: Did you ever have a discussion with Mr. Manson at Dennis Wilson's? Any kind of an extended conversation beyond introductions?

A: Not that I recall, no, sir.

Q: And were any of Manson's so-called girls with him at the time you saw Manson and heard him play at Dennis Wilson's?

A: There were quite a few girls there. I don't know if I could classify them as Manson's girls, or whose girls they were, really.

Q: Now, directing your attention back to the Spahn Ranch, were there a number of people in this gulley at the time you heard Manson play?

A: Yes.

Q: And were they both young girls and young boys or largely young girls?

A: It was probably maybe a three to one ratio of women to men.

Q: And did Manson do all the singing or did the girls and other people there join in.

A: From time to time they all joined in.

Q: Did Manson appear to be the leader of this songfest?

A: Most definitely.

Q: And why do you say most definitely. We are talking about the first occasion now.

A: Well, he sat on a rock, a large rock, surrounded by the rest of the people and he played the guitar and none of the others played any instruments except for, I believe, there were maybe several tambourines and he sang songs and they occasionally joined in and it was his party. There was no question about that.

Q: Was there some difficulty in getting down to this gully, Mr. Melcher? In other words, was the access to it difficult?

A: There was a very narrow -- I am not sure what I would call it -- it was a pathway along the side of a cliff with a rope that went down to the gully.

Q: Did you have to use the rope in order to aid your descent?

A: Well, unless you were terribly agile. It was safer to use the rope, yes, I would say that.

Q: Did Manson lead the way down to the bottom of the gully, if you know?

A: I don't really recall.

Q: Did you see Mr. Watson at the Spahn Ranch on this first occasion that you went there and auditioned Manson?

A: I don't recall that either, sir.

Q: Was Greg Jacobson with you on this first occasion?

A: Yes, sir, he was.

Q: And did he go in the gully with you?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: Did Manson appear to react in any particular way when you told him that he couldn't record, unless he was a union member? In other words, did he appear disappointed or mad or upset or did he appear --

A: No.

Q: -- unmoved?

A: The latter.

Q: Did you tell him at that time that you weren't impressed with his singing and guitar playing? By "him," I refer to Manson?

A: Well --

Q: Just yes or no.

A: I am not really certain of that either. If one is in the business of recording people, auditioning them, both vocally and as a composer, you learn to adapt a certain amount of --

THE COURT: Reserve?

THE WITNESS: That is a good way of putting it.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Diplomacy would be another good word to use?

A: Yes. I think if I said anything at all, it was probably to the effect that I would --

Q: "Don't you call me, I'll call you"?

A: I would be in touch with him through Mr. Jacobson.

Q: All right. Now, you did go back a few days later?

A: Right.

Q: And did you again go down to the gully?

A: Right.

Q: And again did it appear to be Manson's show?

A: Oh, yes.

Q: Did it appear to you, Mr. Melcher, to be sort of staged, the whole performance?

A: The first time it didn't, but the second time it did.

Q: And am I using the correct word, "staged"?

A: Staged?

Q: Use your own word.

A: That will do -- staged or rehearsed or whatever you would like.

Q: Again, Manson appeared to you to be the leader?

A: Oh, yes.

Q: And did you see Mr. Watson on this second occasion?

A: I don't recall that either.

Q: Did you ever go back again to the Spahn Ranch?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: Did you ever see Manson after that?

A: No, I didn't. My reason or reasons, rather, for going there on both occasions was as a favor to Mr. Jacobson, not that I was really, you know, looking --

Q: I understand.

A: -- for a new singer.

Q: Now, on these occasions that you recall Mr. Watson being at your home, were you giving parties on these occasions or did he just happen to drop by with Mr. Wilson or Mr. Jacobson or both? Do you understand the question?

A: Yes.

Q: Tell me if you don't understand and I will rephrase it.

A: Yes, I do. Was I giving parties? Others who were present at my house one evening when I had, I suppose you would call it, a buffet dinner for Dennis Wilson and Greg and all the people who were living at Dennis' house say that Watson was there, but I am not sure of that either and the rest of the times, they weren't -- I don't believe they were parties at all. They were merely dropping by in the afternoon, sort of visits.

Q: Is there any doubt in your mind that Mr. Watson was there at all at your house on any occasion?

A: I am sure he was there on several occasions.

Q: And he appeared to you to be tagging along with either Wilson or Jacobson; is that right?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And I take it he didn't have much to say? Mr. Watson, that is?

A: Well, I never got to know him, really.

Q: You wouldn't describe him as a scintillating personality, would you, when you saw him at your home, I take it?

A: The visits were, as I recall, brief and he was along with a friend. He was a friend or -- well, let's say a friend of a friend.

Q: And your reaction to Mr. Watson was limited to believing that he was a friendly, pleasant fellow, right?

A: Uh-huh, that is correct.

Q: You had no philosophical discussion with him, did you?

A: Not that I recall, no.

Q: Now, when did you leave the Cielo Drive residence for the last time? I mean, what was the approximate date?

A: Sometime in -- sometime around, well, it was just after the New Year of 1969.

Q: And was this buffet dinner that you gave, at which you think Mr. Watson was present, the last time you saw him, to your knowledge, until court today? If you don't remember, say so.

A: No, as I said previously, I am not certain whether or not Mr. Watson was present at that buffet dinner.

I recall that testimony and that buffet was maybe a year and half prior to my leaving the Cielo residence.

Q: Could you describe to us how Mr. Watson appeared to you physically when you observed him at your residence on these half a dozen or so occasions when he was with Wilson or Jacobson or both? Maybe I could make some suggestions.

A: All right.

Q: He didn't appear as thin as he does now, for one thing; is that right?

A: Well, I am not really sure. I have been told that he has lost a lot of weight and I have read that.

Q: Don't tell us what you read or heard from other people. We have to elicit your testimony from your own personal knowledge and not what other people told you or not what you may have read. You understand that, don't you?

A: Yes, sure, okay.

Q: Do you remember anything about his physical appearance in 1968, when you saw him on these occasions? Did he appear neat or did he appear dirty or was he smelly or was he well groomed? Did he wear old clothes? Did he wear modish clothes? Do you remember anything?

Did he look like a hippie or did he look straight?

A: Well, if I had to choose between his having appeared as a hippie or as a straight, as you put it, I would say a hippie.

Q: Now, what led you to that belief?

His hair was about as long as your is, was it?

A: I think so.

Q: And he didn't have the beard, though, is that correct, to the best of your recollection?

A: Not that I recall, no, sir.

Q: And did he wear blue jeans?

A: I presume so. That's what most young people wear.

Q: But you don't recall independently --

A: No, I didn't.

Q: -- whether he wore --

A: I didn't take snaps.

Q: Did he wear love beads and leather thongs and things like that?

A: I don't recall that, either.

Q: You don't recall whether or not his clothes were even dirty or disheveled, do you?

A: All I know is that he didn't have on a tie or tails or --

Q: All right, he didn't wear a business suit, obviously.

A: That's correct.

Q: But you wouldn't classify him as a hippie, would you, just because he didn't wear a coat and tie?

A: I don't classify anybody as a hippie, sir.

Q: Therefore, you wouldn't classify Mr. Watson as a hippie when you saw him?

A: Well, I did for your purposes, when you asked me whether he was a hippie or a straight.

THE COURT: You were limited to two choices, so you took the one?

THE WITNESS: That's right.

Q BY MR. KEITH: What you are telling me is I used some inadequate language in posing the question in the first place?

A: Not --

Q: Because you don't feel that anybody is a hippie --

A: Well --

Q: -- or you feel that it is a bad description of anybody?

A: I wouldn't say inadequate; I would say -- well, I'm not certain what I would say about that.

Do you classify yourself as a straight, perhaps, or how do you --

MR. KEITH: I have to; I wear a coat and tie.



I don't have any further questions.

THE WITNESS: I don't know how to classify --

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: During the summer of 1968, though, you haven't seen Mr. Watson except, of course, in the newspapers?

A: He may have been at the Spahn Ranch on either or both of my two visits there, but not that I recall.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thank you.

No further questions.

THE COURT: Thank you, sir; you may be excused, Mr. Melcher.

MR. BUGLIOSI: People call Dean Moorehouse.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

THE WITNESS: I am not going to be sworn; I have already talked to the D.A. about that, I was going to make a statement.

THE COURT: Do you affirm? Do you affirm?

THE WITNESS: I will tell the truth because I am truthful with myself; therefore, I will be truthful here.

THE COURT: Then you will affirm; is that correct, sir?

THE WITNESS: All right.

THE CLERK: Will you raise your right hand?

THE COURT: You are not going to swear, you are going to affirm.

THE WITNESS: Isn't my statement satisfactory, Judge.

THE COURT: I'm afraid not. All testimony must be -- you either affirm or swear to tell the truth; we cannot accept a statement, Mr. Moorehouse.

THE WITNESS: This isn't what the D.A. told me.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I'm not aware of any conversation with you, Mr. Moorehouse, about that.

THE WITNESS: Maybe Mr. Sartuche, I told him I wouldn't be sworn in.

THE COURT: Who is Sartuche?

THE WITNESS: He said that I can make a statement that I will tell the truth.

THE COURT: Then you just affirm that you will tell the truth, sir, but you must

raise your right hand to affirm.

THE WITNESS: All right.

THE CLERK: You do solemnly affirm that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth, this you do under the pain and penalty of perjury?

THE WITNESS: I do.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

Now, would you take the stand and be seated, please; and would you state and spell your name?

THE WITNESS: Dean Moorehouse.

THE CLERK: And the first and last names?

THE WITNESS: D-e-a-n; M-o-o-r-e-h-o-u-s-e.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

DEAN MOOREHOUSE,

called as a witness by the people, testified as follows:

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: Do you have an occupation, sir?

A: Yes, I have an occupation?

Q: What is that occupation?

A: I go around turning people onto the truth.

Q: Are you somehow associated with a religion?

A: No, I have no religion.

Q: What truth are you talking about?

A: There is only one truth.

Q: What truth is that?

A: There would be no way for me to communicate this to you.

Q: Have you ever been convicted of a felony?

A: Yes.

Q: What felony is that?

A: I was convicted of selling LSD.

Q: Do you know Dennis Wilson, Mr. Moorehouse?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: And you knew him as a drummer for the Beach Boys recording group?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever live with Mr. Wilson at his residence located at 14400 Sunset Boulevard in West Los Angeles?

A: Yes, I lived there for a time.

Q: During what period of time did you live there?

A: June 1968 till almost September 1968.

Q: Do you know the defendant, Charles Tex Watson, seated at the counsel table in front of you?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: When did you meet Mr. Watson for the first time?

A: Sometime after I was at Dennis'; I couldn't say exactly how long.

Q: Where did you meet Mr. Watson for the first time?

A: At Dennis Wilson's place.

Q: Did you ever live at Wilson's residence?

A: You already asked me that, but I would say again, "Yes."

Q: I knew you had been there; you have lived there?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever live there with Mr. Watson?

A: Charles stayed there for a time, yes.

Q: What period of time did Mr. Watson live at the Wilson residence with you?

A: I would say roughly around the last two months that I was there, something like that, six weeks or two months.

Q: This is the summer of 1968?

A: That's correct.

Q: Do you know Charles Manson?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: And when and where did you meet Mr. Manson for the first time?

A: I met him in San Jose in 1968.

Q: Did Mr. Watson introduce you to him?

A: No.

Q: I take it you know Terry Melcher.

A: Excuse me, I'm sorry I made an error, not deliberately; but I met Charlie in '67, June of 1967, instead of 1968.

Q: You met Charles Manson in June of 1967 in San Jose?

A: Mm-Hmm.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Manson down here in Los Angeles?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: At Spahn Ranch?

A: I saw him at Spahn Ranch.

Q: You have a daughter named Ruth?

A: That is correct.

Q: And did Ruth live with Mr. Manson and the other people at Spahn Ranch for a period of time?

A: She was there, yes.

Q: How old is Ruth?

A: She is 18 or 19; I think she's 19.

Q: Now, do you know Terry Melcher?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: Did you ever go to Mr. Melcher's home or residence at 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: Yes.

Q: And when did you go there for the first time?

A: Sometime in the summer of 1968.

Q: What was the occasion for your going to Mr. Melcher's residence?

A: He invited me to come.

Q: How many times would you say you have been to Mr. Melcher's residence?

A: Oh, it's hard to say exactly, but I suppose six or eight times.

Q: During what period of time?

A: In the summer of 1968 from probably July to the end of August.

Q: Did you ever go to Mr. Melcher's former residence at 10050 Cielo Drive with Mr. Watson?

A: One time.

Q: Just the one occasion?

A: That I can remember, yes.

Q: When was that?

A: It would be sometime right toward the end of August.

(Missing page)

Q: Was there a party there in July of 1968 where Greg Jacobson was present?

A: He was staying there, also, so he was there, I'm sure.

Q: What about Deana Martin?

A: She came to one party there, yes.

Q: And Ellen Warrnick?

A: I don't know. I don't recognize the name.

Q: Let me ask you --

A: Allen.

Q: Ellen Warrnick?

A: No. I know an Allen. I don't know his last name, but there was a young fellow by the name of Allen there.

Q: To your knowledge, was there ever a party at Dennis Wilson's that ended up at Terry Melcher's?

A: Yes.

Q: There was?

A: Yes, there was.

Q: And what is the date of that party?

A: I suppose sometime around July sometime, I think.

Q: 1968?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Mr. Watson at that party?

A: Yeah. He was staying, I think, at Dennis' at that time, I believe.

Q: And then Mr. Watson accompanied the group to Mr. Melcher's former residence?

A: I don't believe he did.

Q: Do you know a sergeant from the Los Angeles Police Department named Sgt. Gutierrez?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: He has interviewed you with respect to this case?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you recall telling him that Mr. Watson and you stayed overnight at the Cielo address on the date of this party?

A: I don't think so. I can't recall telling him that. I don't believe that Tex came to that party.

Q: So the only time that you definitely remember seeing Mr. Watson at the Cielo address was the time you borrowed the car from Terry Melcher?

A: That is correct.

Q: When was the first time that you saw Mr. Watson in the company of Mr. Manson?

A: The only time that I can recall would be at the Spahn Ranch.

Q: Approximately what date?

A: That would have been the first part of September.

Q: What year?

A: 1968.

Q: Prior to September 1968, did you ever see Mr. Watson ingest LSD or any other type of drug?

MR. KEITH: May I have that question read.

THE COURT: Yes.

(Record read by the reporter.)

THE WITNESS: When you put the question that way, no, not prior to 1968.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Well, when you first met Mr. Watson at Dennis Wilson's residence, during that period of time was Mr. Watson using drugs?

A: We took some trips together.

Q: Some LSD trips?

A: Yes. I believe we tried -- we took some acid together.

Q: How many times, approximately?

A: Several times.

Q: Would you just give me some idea what you mean by several? Three, four, twenty, twenty-five?

A: I suppose something like three or four or five.

Q: Any other type of drug, other than LSD?

A: Some grass.

Q: Marijuana?

A: Some hash.

Q: You say grass, g-r-a-s-s?

A: All psychedelics.

Q: You say grass, you mean marijuana?

A: Yes.

Q: When you say hash, you also mean hashish?

A: Hashish.

Q: You mean a type of marijuana?

A: Approximately, yes.

THE COURT: Would you give us the time when you had these trips, Mr. Moorehouse, please?

THE WITNESS: The time?

THE COURT: Yes, approximately when was it?

THE WITNESS: Sometime between -- I think that Tex came there sometime in July and I say he was there until the end of August, when we left for my trial and during that period of time, I suppose it would be stretched or spread over that period of time at different times, but I don't say precisely.

THE COURT: 1968?

THE WITNESS: 1968 in July and August.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Other than the LSD, the marijuana, and the concentrated marijuana called hashish, did you see Mr. Watson use any other type of drug?

A: We at one time had some THC.

Q: THC?

A: Yes. That is the synthetic derived marijuana.

Q: When did you take THC?

A: Sometime in that period of time. I couldn't say.

Q: Summer of 1968?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Any other type of drug?

A: Nothing but psychedelics and I think this encompasses all the psychedelics that we used.

Q: To your knowledge, during this period when you and Mr. Watson would use these drugs, to your knowledge, did Mr. Watson know Mr. Manson?

A: Probably he had met him by then, because Charlie would come and visit Dennis.

THE COURT: We have got two Charlies. Which Charlie do you mean?

THE WITNESS: Charlie Manson. You asked me if he know Manson during that period of time.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: During the period that you and Mr. Watson were using these drugs, to your knowledge, did Mr. Watson know Mr. Manson?

A: I believe that he met Charlie when Charlie would come there. I imagine that he met him. I am pretty sure he would have.

Q: During the time that Mr. Watson was using these drugs, was he living at Dennis Wilson's with you?

A: That is correct.

Q: Mr. Watson was not living out at the Spahn ranch with Mr. Manson?

A: That is correct.

Q: That occurred later?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH

Q: Is it Mr. Moorehouse, is that the proper way to --

A: Dean is fine.

Q: All right. Did you see Mr. Manson often, Dean, after you first met him in San Jose in 1967?

A: Quite often during the period of time from June until, I think about -- well, for a



month I saw him quite frequently. Then I saw him very infrequently for, until sometime in September, I think was the last I saw him; for about a month, I saw him quite regularly, then just a few times after that.

Q: This was in '67 you are telling us about?

A: '67.

Q: Then did you begin to see him more often in 1968?

A: I went down to L.A. in 1968 and then I did see him more frequently, yes.

Q: And you were attracted to Mr. Manson, weren't you?

A: Yes.

Q: There was something about him that drew you to him; isn't that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And was Manson the one that turned you on to acid?

A: That is correct.

Q: You hadn't taken it before you met Manson; right?

A: No, but I determined to take it long before that.

Q: And can we say that acid to you was a new and sort of beautiful experience?

A: I thank God every moment for LSD, yes.

Q: Tell us why you thank God for LSD.

A: Because I found out who I am and what I am.

Q: And is this when you were on a trip there was some new awakening or realization that befell you?

A: That is correct.

Q: And perhaps you could tell us what this awakening was?

A: I found out who I was and what I am.

Q: And who are you?

A: I am a son of God.

Q: All right. Did you discuss this new sort of -- I don't want to use the word religious awakening because you don't believe in any particular religion -- but did you discuss this new self-realization with Charles Manson?

A: To a degree, not as much with him as with other people that came to me.

Q: In other words, you sort of took up the banner for LSD, did you?

A: No, I wouldn't categorize it that or categorize it that way. I simply became a Pilgrim, a link between two worlds and those who are ready to receive the truth, they would find me and I would share what I had with them.

LSD doesn't do it. LSD is a catalyst that clears the minds so you can have two choices. You can either choose the lie that everybody is living in this dimension or you can choose the truth that elevates you and lifts you into the next dimension.

Q: And you found truth through the use of LSD?

A: It was a catalyst that opened my mind, yes.

Q: And did you tell Mr. Watson about this truth you found through the use of LSD as a catalyst?

A: He was a searcher. Yes, I did share with him.

Q: And as a result, Mr. Watson ingested LSD?

A: Not because of my telling him to ingest it, no.

Q: So far as you know, he hadn't tried it before you?

A: Oh, I think that he had.

Q: But at any rate, Mr. Watson appeared to react -- how shall I put it -- react favorably?

A: Totally favorably, yes. He became more --

Q: Excuse me. I didn't mean to interrupt.

A: He became a more beautiful person all the time.

THE COURT: Was there complete empathy then between you and him?

THE WITNESS: It was very close to that. There was something, a vestige of ego within him was still there and some still within me, but otherwise, it was a closer and closer thing all the time, yes.

Q BY MR. KEITH: In your experience, does acid help to destroy one's ego or to suppress it?

A: It does.

MR. BUGLIOSI: That calls for a conclusion of the witness and is ambiguous.

THE COURT: What did it do to you?

THE WITNESS: It helped me to -- in fact, it opened the way for me to experience the ego death, yes.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Did it do that with Mr. Watson, if you know?

A: I would say, yes. I would describe it that way.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I move to strike that as a conclusion.

THE COURT: We will let it stand.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Now, during 1968 when you were living with Mr. Watson, you found him to be a beautiful person; is that correct?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Was he pleasant?

A: Yes.

Q: Was he friendly?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see him engage in any violent sort of conduct?

A: Nothing but love.

Q: You never saw him strike anybody?

A: Never.

Q: Or threaten to hit anybody?

A: That is correct.

Q: Or threaten to hurt anybody?

A: He just gave away his possessions.

Q: That is the next subject I was getting to. You see what is going on in my mind. Was this something you discussed with Mr. Watson, the giving away of one's possessions?

A: He saw the example of what happens when you let the truth prevail.

Q: When you found the truth, was it your belief that owning property was sort of a bad concept?

A: May I make a little statement to clarify that, to answer the question?

THE COURT: If it answers the question you may.

THE WITNESS: I discovered that you cannot own anything at all, nothing at all, and I don't say that ownership is bad because everyone has to go through this whole thing of trying to own things before they can be freed from it. I believe that would answer your question.

Q BY MR. KEITH: You don't own anything now?

A: Nothing. Anyone could have anything that I have, including myself.

Q: And did you convey this belief to Mr. Watson when you were living with him at either Dennis Wilson's or Spahn Ranch?

A: I shared this with him, yes.

Q: And at that time, at the time that you shared this concept of nonownership of property and of sharing possessions, did Mr. Watson own certain personal property?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: He had a car, didn't he?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And he also had some camera equipment?

A: Yes.

Q: That appeared to you to be expensive?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: He gave his truck away, didn't he?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: He gave that to your daughter, Ruth?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: And he gave all his camera equipment away?

A: Yes.

Q: Didn't he?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you go with him to the Spahn Ranch in September of 1968?

A: Yes.

Q: Or thereabouts.

And when you went to the Spahn Ranch neither of you had a thing?

A: That is correct.

Q: Did you, beyond the clothes on your back?

A: That is right.

Q: So Mr. Watson had given away everything he owned?

A: That is correct.

Q: And did he believe to your knowledge, with you, that one should share one's possessions with everybody else?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: And did he also believe to your knowledge that the best way to live was not to be hampered by material things?

A: That is correct.

Q: You and Mr. Watson continued to take LSD while you were at the Spahn Ranch, didn't you?

A: I believe we had a couple of trips there, that would be the extent of it.

Q: Did you live in a tent at the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: And was this by a stream or --

A: A dry creek bed, yes.

Q: A dry creek bed; and did you go down by the dry creek bed and take a few tabs of acid now and again with Mr. Watson?

A: I don't know if we went together on any trips there. I can't remember for sure. But I know that I did on about two or three times, probably took a trip, and whether Tex was at the same time, I'm not sure. I can't remember for sure.

Q: The more acid Tex took, would it be fair to say, the more beautiful sort of person he became?

A: When I knew him, yes; it was always nothing but getting free of more and more of his hangups.

Q: And did you and Mr. Watson discuss your mutual hangups together?

A: I don't know if we talked about our hangups; I imagine we did.

Q: You didn't have any at that time, because of your experience with LSD as a catalyst; and my question is assuming facts not in evidence, but did you discuss with Mr. Watson or have talks with him about how to live and how to get --

A: Yes.

Q: -- the most out of life?

A: Yes, we did that.

Q: Did you discuss the subject of love with him occasionally?

A: Certainly.

Q: What did you and he talk about on that subject, in substance or effect?

Of course, we can't get the exact words.

A: Just like the Beatles said, "All you need is love."

Q: Did you listen to the Beatles' songs?

A: Yes, all of the psychedelic music; I dig it.

Q: And did you listen to the Beatles' songs at the Spahn Ranch?

A: I don't think we had a radio when we were there. We just --

Q: How long did you stay at the Spahn Ranch, if you remember?

A: I was there about 10 days or two weeks.

Q: That's all?

A: That's all I was there.

Q: Is that when you went north to Ukiah?

A: No, I came there after I returned from Ukiah.

Q: And where did you go after you left the Spahn Ranch?

A: Well, as I say, I was living as a pilgrim so I just went out on the road and I couldn't tell you -- whatever place it led me.

Q: Did you leave Mr. Watson at the Spahn Ranch --

A: Yes, he stayed there.

Q: -- when you left?

A: That's correct.

Q: Was Charlie Manson at the Spahn Ranch when you left after this two-week pilgrimage?

A: Yes, he was there.

Q: Incidentally, were you at the Spahn Ranch for the purpose of this pilgrimage?

A: I was just there because Charlie said, "There's a tent down there and if you want to stay there for a while, you are welcome."

Q: The Charlie you are mentioning was Charlie Manson, not Charlie Watson?

A: Yes, Charlie Manson.

Q: When you were at the Spahn Ranch did you see Manson from time to time?

A: From time to time, yes.

Q: Were there young girls at the Spahn Ranch at the time?

A: There were some there, yes.

Q: Were there some --

A: And some young --

Q: Were there some young men, too?

A: Yes.

Q: Did the young girls appear to you to outnumber the young men at the time that you were at the Spahn Ranch?

A: Seemed like it was fairly well balanced at that time, I don't know.

Q: Were they living there at the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: By "they," I am referring to the young girls and young men.

A: There were a certain number of young girls and young men living there, yes.

Q: Did they appear to you to be drawn in some way to Manson?

A: Oh, yes.

MR. KEITH: Would this be a convenient place?

THE COURT: If you want to.

MR. KEITH: I want to go over some notes.

THE COURT: Very well.

Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will have our morning recess at this time.

So once more, do not form or express any opinion in this case; do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else and please keep an open mind.

We will have a short recess.

(Recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, counsel, and the defendant are present.

Mr. Moorehouse, will you state your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Dean Moorehouse.

THE COURT: Thank you, sir.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Mr. Moorehouse, Dean, what is your age now, sir?

A: 51.

Q: On these occasions when you were with Charles Manson, did you ever discuss the subject of the establishment with him?

A: Of course.

Q: And what were the substance of those conversations or discussions concerning the establishment, if you can recall?

A: Well, anybody who knows where it is at, knows where the establishment is at, and we just simply -- it would be the same with anybody you would talk with about the establishment.

Q: What do you mean when you use the term "the establishment"?

A: Everybody until they find the one true living God are idolaters and they worship the dollar and we know that this infamous vicious system is going to come down.

Q: Did you discuss that subject that you have been telling us about with Mr. Manson?

A: I am sure we did.

Q: On one occasion or more than one occasion?

A: It is something that, whenever heads get together, you will maybe say you have discussed something about what the establishment is doing right at that moment, some of their various depredations and vicious crimes and so on.

We might discuss it, yes, I mean, the rape of Mother Earth and all the other things.

Q: What you are telling us now is the substance of the discussions you have had with Mr. Manson on the subject of the establishment?

A: It would be the same with anyone.

Q: But we have got to stick with the question.

A: Well, I would have gone over these things with Charles Manson, yes. We would have discussed then at different times.

Q: And did you ever discuss the subject of psychedelic drugs with Mr. Manson?

A: Certainly.

Q: And what was the substance of those discussions, just the substance or effect, now, not verbatim conversations.

A: Well, the conversation on psychedelics would be simply that these are the things that are turning on millions of people.



Q: Were both you and he generally in favor of the use of psychedelics?

A: Well, we certainly were entirely in favor of using them ourselves; now, as far as me advising other people to use them, no, I don't do that now and I didn't then.

Q: But it was Mr. Manson who first persuaded you --

A: No, he didn't.

Q: -- to take LSD?

A: I was ready for a year and I was more than willing to take it, because I informed him of the fact that I wanted to take acid.

Q: So you were philosophically and emotionally on the threshold, so to speak, to take LSD?

A: For a year before that, yes.

Q: Did you discuss the subject of sharing possessions --

A: Certainly.

Q: -- with Mr. Manson?

A: Absolutely. In fact --

Q: Did he believe, as you believed, that the best sort of life one can lead was to share everything with everyone else?

A: He is a man of faith, as I am; and, yes, he certainly inoculated through his example and through the discussions we had, I learned to give up this idea that we can own something.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Watson together -- Tex, that is, as you call him -- with Mr. Manson?

A: Oh, yes, on different occasions they were together.

Q: Did Mr. Watson, to you, appear to be drawn to Mr. Manson as the others were?

MR. BUGLIOSI: This calls for a conclusion.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Did you ever discuss with Mr. Manson the subject of ego destruction, as you have put it?

A: Yes.

Q: And what were the substance of those conversations or -- if there were more than one?

A: The substance would be that you got to die to live, and the ego has got to die, the personality has got to die.

Q: Did you ever discuss the subject of -- strike that.

Did you, in fact, or were you able to or have you been able to submerge your ego?

A: Yes, Dean Moorehouse died.

Q: When you say that, do you mean you have lost your identity?

A: Yes.

Q: And I believe you did tell us you discussed this same subject with Mr. Watson, the loss of ego?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you ever discuss with Mr. Manson the subject of death?

A: Oh, of course.

Q: And what did you and he talk, say, about that subject?

A: Same again as those who are turned onto the truth know that there is no --

Q: I am speaking of when one actually dies and gets buried in the ground.

A: There is no death.

Q: And perhaps you could expartitate a little bit on your conversation with Manson that there is no death?

A: It is said in all the sacred scriptures and this is the same --

Q: You've got to confine yourself to what you and Mr. Manson talked about.

A: We would also interject the sacred scriptures and that would be included in the Bhagavadgita and it is in the Bible where Jesus said it and these are the things that I particularly talked about, because I have studied the Bible for many, many years, "Whosoever loses his life shall find it. Whosoever shall saveth his life, shall lose it." That is what Jesus said. That is why I am saying, the same thing.

Q: Did Mr. Manson believe that, to your knowledge?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever heard or participate in any conversation between Manson and Watson on these same subjects that I have been covering with you?

A: I can't recall any particular time the three of us sat down and talked about the metaphysical things, not really, not any time.

At different times, I talked to both of them, but so far as the three of us sitting down and discussing it, I can't recall any particular time.

Q: Did you ever hear anyone refer to Mr. Manson as Jesus Christ or the Messiah or the Second Coming of Christ or any deity Mr. Manson?

A: Yes. I have heard discussions about J.C., concerning Charlie Manson.

MR. BUGLIOSI: J.C. meaning Jesus Christ, for the record?

THE WITNESS: Yes, but the world doesn't know who J.C. is, you know.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Did I ask you if you ever discussed the subject of your views about the establishment with Mr. Watson?

A: I can't recall any specific thing that we discussed, but I say when any two people who are aware of the truth get together -- I mean we certainly would take at least a passing glance at whatever the establishment is doing.

Q: Did Mr. Watson, when you knew him, appear to have been able to successfully lose his ego identity?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Calls for a conclusion, vague and ambiguous.

THE COURT: May I have that, please.

(Record read.)

THE COURT: I will allow that.

THE WITNESS: Everything that Charles Watson was going through was indicative of the fact that he was letting the ego die.

The fact that you give away everything that you have, you cannot do that very readily and do it with joy and without any regrets and not be losing the ego.

And also the love that he was expressing toward me and others is also indicative.

MR. KEITH: Nothing further.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: I have a few more questions, your Honor.

How many times have you taken LSD, approximately?

A: 150 or 200 times. I don't know.

Q: Could you explain an LSD trip for the jury?

A: LSD is a catalyst is the best way to describe it and when the fullness of time has come, then the infinite gave us a little pill. In the era of the pill, here is a pill that blows

peoples' minds. It simply clears away all the conditioning, at least for a time, while the trip is on, so that people can see the truth and they can see the lie. This is what you experience.

Q: How long is a trip?

A: It could vary all the way from 8 to 16 hours, depending on which psychedelics you use.

Q: During a trip are colors normally brighter?

A: Yes, they are. I mean, for the first time you see the colors and you see things as they truly are.

Q: Are sounds a little louder?

A: Everything is accentuated because it raises the level of your awareness.

Q: So it make you more aware of everything?

A: It does, yes.

Q: Would you classify an LSD experience as an enjoyable experience, pleasurable?

A: Not every part of it, no; if you keep walking into your head you are going to open doorways that scare you, because you are going to see all the things that you have been and all the things that you have done.

Q: But, by and large, would you consider it a pleasureable experience?

A: It is such a hard question to answer.

Q: Would you say you have taken it 150 or 200 times, so apparently you are getting something out of it or you wouldn't have taken it; right?

A: I am finding myself, but to find yourself one must not only experience the beauties that your accentuated awareness gives you, but one must also face one's self and see what one has done and one has been, and you open the doors to veritable hell, door after door to hell.

I walked through hell to be freed from all of this.

Q: You know what the word "introspective" means?

A: Of course.

Q: Looking within; okay?

A: Yes.

Q: Would you say that an LSD trip normally, or in every occasion, causes you to

look within yourself?

A: Yes and no. I mean, the person who is not ready -- you see, we are all in the process of evolution, mentally, spiritually and physically.

When a person is not evolved to the point where he is not ready to confront the truth, then he will simply -- he may have some pleasurable trips, just digging the colors and the increased awareness; but when he finally steps into the presence of the truth, then he may be frightened terribly and he may, what you call, have a bad trip.

Now, it happens that my evolution was to such a place that I was ready for the truth, the confrontation; and through I was terrified, I was able to face it and recognize it and to embrace it and then to become it.

Q: During an LSD trip did you ever see an object that wasn't, in fact, there?

A: There is no such thing. Whatever you see is there.

Q: In other words, you don't see anything under LSD that doesn't exist; you don't, for example, see a bus or a tree that really isn't there; is that correct?

A: Your mind is creating what is there; whatever you see is there.

Q: So you don't see any object that doesn't in fact, exist in front of you; is that correct?

A: No.

Q: It is not correct, what I am saying?

A: No, it is correct, excuse me.

Q: That's what I'm saying.

And you are aware of everything that is going on during a trip?

A: Well, if you want to close your eyes and dwell on that, the inner thing completely, then you could very well detach yourself from the physical activity outside and just keep watching and walking inside your head; but if your eyes are open and you are looking out of your eyes, then you are aware of everything that happens in a very, very enhanced way, yes.

Q: Later on, after you have come down off the trip, can you look back and remember what took place during the trip?

A: Eventually, I believe that you recall everything; you may not recall it immediately, but you will eventually know whatever -- but you wouldn't do anything physical that you

wouldn't remember, in a physical plane.

Q: So everything --

A: At least, I wouldn't.

Q: So everything you do during an LSD trip, physically, could you remember later on?

A: I do. Now, I can only speak for myself.

Q: What would you normally do during an LSD trip?

Just give the judge and the jury an example, what you do for eight hours.

A: It might be anything. I might sit with my eyes closed, listening to music or just meditate out in nature; or I might go out and simply enjoy everything that is happening and just go out and love everything and everybody, just walk around and dig it.

Q: So you'd meditate or you'd go out and you'd kind of soak up the atmosphere?

A: Well, I don't know if you would call it soaking it up; you would just go out and enjoy it. You would just, for the first time, realize how beautiful everything was.

I was dead until I took LSD.

Q: I thought you said that Dean Moorehouse had already died?

A: I was dead until I took LSD, and then found --

Q: -- now you are alive again?

A: That vivified me, yes.

When Dean Moorehouse died after nine months of this psychedelic experience, then the real me was born and began to become what it will ultimately be.

Q: Does the "real me" referring to yourself, have a name?

A: The truth.

Q: So your name is the truth now?

A: You could call me that. Jesus Christ is the truth; he's the truth incarnate.

Q: But you still respond to the name Dean Moorehouse?

A: This is good enough for now, until I lay down this old bag of bones and go home; this name is all right for me, it doesn't make any difference.

Q: Now, you were in Mr. Watson's presence on many, many occasions; right?

A: Yes.

Q: And you had many, many discussions with him; right?

A: I would -- yes, I would say so.

Q: And many of these discussions involved philosophy, beliefs, attitude, things like that?

A: Well, I took, you know, this philosophy thing, it's just --

Q: I'm just using words now; we have to communicate with each other by words.

A: It goes beyond philosophy. I don't have much time for foolosophy.

Q: All right, tell the judge and the jury some of the philosophical discussions you had with Mr. Watson.

A: Well, we talked about most of the things that have already been elaborated upon here, the death of the ego.

Q: All right, let's stop there and then we'll go on later.

What did Mr. Watson say about the death of the ego?

A: He knew that this was necessary. We talked about the fact that he ego had to die.

Q: When did he tell you this?

A: Sometime in these two months that we were together.

Q: This was before Mr. Watson went up to Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes, we spent the time at Dennis Wilson's.

Q: To your knowledge when you were living with Mr. Watson at Dennis Wilson's place, Mr. Watson had not yet lived with Mr. Manson; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: Mr. Watson later moved out to Spahn Ranch and lived with Mr. Manson.

A: He stayed there after we went to the ranch at that time, when I came back from my trial.

Now, to the best of my knowledge, he didn't live there at the ranch prior to that.

Q: So when you were having these discussions with Mr. Watson about ego death or, taking these LSD trips with him, he was not yet living with Mr. Manson?

A: That is correct.

Q: And Mr. Watson told you at Dennis Wilson's place in the summer of 1968 that he believed that the ego should die?

A: This would have been part of our discussion, yes.

He knew that, and the ego, if you understand -- would you are to have -- to know what I define the ego as?

Q: Yes, go ahead.

A: That's the personality, the being; in other words, your name is written on a birth certificate in the society and then when you get old enough you start writing your name, yourself, and pretty soon you believe that you are Joe Doaks or whatever; but that's not really you, this is just a sum of experiences in one lifetime, and you are walking around thinking you are a lawyer or a cop or whatever, and you begin to think that that's what you are, and you are not that at all.

Q: Do you believe that you have lived many lives before this one?

A: Well, yes, and yet there is only one life. It is a continuum of existence and we separate it into compartments so that we can operate in a seeming free-will atmosphere.

Q: But you have lived centuries ago, yourself?

A: I have lived for eons of time.

Q: What other discussion did you have with Mr. Watson in addition to ego death?

A: It would cover the whole gamut of the turned on experience, of all the things that have to happen to you before you can be free of this dimension of existence.

Q: What did Mr. Watson say?

A: He was listening to me or I wouldn't have been talking to him.

Q: Was he saying anything?

A: He was agreeing. I don't lay a trip on anybody, only those that are ready that are seeking, that come to me. Those are the only ones that I share what I have, because I am not trying to convince anybody of anything. Love can only draw.

Q: Did Mr. Watson say anything about the establishment?

A: Just the same as what I would say about it. We talked about it.

Q: What did he say?

A: The establishment is just doing its thing too. I am not putting the establishment down.

Q: I am just talking about Mr. Watson now. You can understand my questions, I am sure.



What did Mr. Watson say about the establishment?

A: I can't recall anything specifically he would have said.

Q: The essence of what he said was what?

A: That the establishment is just simply doing the earth in.

Q: Watson told you this?

A: We would have discussed this but I can't say any particular time he said exactly these words.

Q: I don't mean the exact words, but the substance of what Mr. Watson told you was that the establishment was doing the earth in; is that correct?

A: Any heads would -- this is what we would have to discuss at different times. I can't just say any time that those are the words that Tex said, but he would be in agreement when we talked about the establishment that this is what is happening.

Q: Would it be a fair statement to say that you are antiestablishment?

A: No, it wouldn't.

Q: You are not against the establishment?

A: Except spiritually.

Q: So spiritually you are against the establishment?

A: Spiritually I am for life and so therefore all that lives in death and puts out death, naturally, that would be antagonistic to the truth. In essence, it is not being antagonistic to anything. It is that force being antagonistic to the truth.

Q: You feel that the establishment is harmful; is that correct?

A: The establishment has to be.

Q: Okay.

A: It has to be.

Q: So you are against the establishment, because it is harmful; is that correct?

A: I wouldn't say that. I know it has to be, so I cannot really say I am against it. I will point out errors and its defects, but I will never say take it away, change it, do away with it, because I know that it has to happen.

It is only in this kind of a ying and yang -- positive and negative sort of thing that my soul can grow. If I hadn't been part of the establishment and gone through that trip, I couldn't evolve and be free. I had to learn in that school. This is the school where we

learn.

Q: You don't like what the establishment is doing, let's say, to Mother Earth; is that correct?

THE COURT: Aren't you straying rather far afield?

MR. BUGLIOSI: I think that is a determination, your Honor, for the prosecution who knows this case fairly well unless --

THE COURT: That is a determination by the Court, too.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I mean as to whether we are or not.

THE COURT: Whether you are going far afield is determination by the Court, not the prosecution.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May we approach the bench?

THE COURT: Yes.

(Whereupon, the following proceedings took place at the bench, outside the hearing of the jury:)

MR. BUGLIOSI: I apologize. What I am trying to do with this witness is prove that Mr. Watson was against the establishment before he ever met Mr. Manson, which is extremely relevant.

THE COURT: He says, how do you prove that by what this guy says?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Because he had conversations with Watson. If he is against the establishment, and it turns out that Mr. Watson was in agreement with him, it took place before he met Manson.

THE COURT: But he is telling he is not against the establishment, that you have got to live through the establishment.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I am asking questions. He is playing with words. He doesn't want to pin himself down by words, but I think it is very relevant what Mr. Watson's state of mind was before he met Mr. Manson.

THE COURT: No. I think we are going too far afield on this thing.

MR. KAY: You see what the problem is on this is that this witness refused to talk to the prosecution.

THE COURT: So you are going to penalize him now?

MR. KAY: No, but he did call up Mr. Keith and talk to him on the telephone, so this is

the first chance we have had to talk to him.

We have some important questions to ask him and he has been very evasive.

MR. BUGLIOSI: But the point is, your Honor, the main thrust of the defense, as I understand it, is that Manson is the one who completely changed Watson's mind on everything. They are going to argue this. I think in the opening statement, it is obvious that this is their trust.

We are trying to show through this witness that Watson had these antiestablishment ideas before he even met Manson or before he even started to live with Manson. I think it is very relevant.

MR. BUBRICK: The other problem is as to what each considers to be the establishment --

THE COURT: Well, this guy's only personal beliefs I don't think mean a thing to me. His ideas of death and life, I don't see how that is going to enlighten us at all about what happened on the night of the 9th or the 10th of August.

MR. BUGLIOSI: But it is their position that Manson is the one that chose this guy. We are trying to show that this guy had these ideas before he even met Manson.

THE COURT: You are going this as part of your case in chief?

MR. BUGLIOSI: In the first place, they brought it up on cross-examination, your Honor, the defense did.

Secondly, this guy is from Minnesota. We had to bring him back here. We would hate to bring him back on rebuttal, as long as he is on the stand now. The fact that Watson took LSD before he met Manson, I think again is relevant.

THE COURT: All right. You brought that out.

MR. BUGLIOSI: What I am trying to bring out is the fact that Watson had these antiestablishment views before he even met Manson.

THE COURT: Ask him what Watson said and not what he believes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: That is what I am doing.

THE COURT: Go ahead and do that.

(The following proceedings were had in open court, in the presence of the jury:)

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Directing your attention back to this summer of 1968 -- this is now before Mr. Watson went out to Spahn Ranch and lived with Mr. Manson -- how

would you summarise or categorize Mr. Watson's belief with respect to the establishment, his attitude with respect to the establishment?

MR. BUBRICK: Object to that, your Honor. I think it calls for the conclusion of the witness. Let him tell us.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: What did Mr. Watson say about the establishment?

A: I couldn't specifically recall anything that he said about the establishment.

Q: I don't mean his exact words verbatim; I mean the substance of what he said about the establishment.

A: This I couldn't even recall.

Q: But he would be agreeing with you; is that correct?

A: Yes. And I would be very happy to say what I feel about it.

Q: So when you and he spoke about the establishment, it was your feeling that he was agreeing with you; is that correct?

A: I would say that, yes.

Q: And your feeling about the establishment is that they are very harmful to many things; is that correct?

A: The establishment is certainly on a trip that is destructive of, yes, the earth that gave us life.

Q: And you felt that Mr. Watson was in agreement with you on that?

A: I would say that he was at that time.

Q: I show you people's 302 for identification, this photograph. Do you know the man who is depicted in that photograph?

A: Well, it could be Charlie Watson, but it is such a poor likeness, it could be somebody else. That looks a lot like him. It isn't that good of a picture.

Q: Does this photograph resemble -- is this a photograph that looks like a person in this photograph is Charles Watson to you, but it is not a good photograph; is that correct?

A: It could be him.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

RECROSS EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH

Q: Mr. Moorehouse, or Dean, Mr. Watson knew Mr. Manson, did he not, before Mr. Watson and you went to the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: He had to your knowledge, hadn't Mr. Watson seen and talked to Mr. Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: At Dennis Wilson's house?

A: Yes.

Q: Before he went to the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: And isn't it a fact, Dean, that when you had these discussions about the establishment and about ego, et cetera, et cetera, with Mr. Watson, that you did most of the talking and he did the listening?

A: That is true. I thought that I made that very clear.

MR. KEITH: I have nothing further.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: Did you have any discussions with Mr. Watson about the establishment and things like that before Manson came to Dennis Wilson's residence?

A: I couldn't say.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

THE COURT: Thank you, sir. You may be excused.

MR. BUGLIOSI: People call Sgt. Varney.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

DUDLEY D. VARNEY,

called as a witness on behalf of the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you.

Take the stand and be seated; will you state and spell your name?

THE WITNESS: Dudley D. Varney, V-a-r-n-e-y.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: What is your occupation, sir?

A: I am a police officer, Los Angeles Police Department, assigned to robbery-homicide division.

Q: On the date August the 9th, 1969, did you proceed to the address 10050 Cielo Drive?

A: Yes.

Q: About what time did you arrive there?

A: Approximately 1:00 o'clock in the afternoon, sir.

Q: What was your purpose for going to that address on that date and time?

A: I was sent there to assist in an investigation, sir.

Q: When you arrived on the premises did you see a white Rambler?

A: I did.

Q: And this was Steven Parent's car?

A: To the best of my knowledge, yes.

Q: I show you people's 250 for identification --

MR. BUGLIOSI: Has this been remarked, your Honor?

THE COURT: No.

MR. BUGLIOSI: It has not? Okay.

I have here, your Honor, a manila envelope with a piece of bullet slug contained therein, previously marked people's 250.

May this be remarked people's 250?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I am removing a bullet slug, sir, or a portion of a bullet slug from the envelope.

Have you ever seen that --

A: Yes, I have.

Q: -- fragment of a bullet before?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: When did you see it for the first time?

A: It was lying on the rear seat of the white Rambler in the driveway on Cielo Drive.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May it be stipulated that the white Rambler about what he is talking is Steven Parent's car?

So stipulated?

MR. BUBRICK: So stipulated.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: What did you do with this fragment bullet after you found it?

A: I placed it in that envelope, initialed the envelope and book it at property division, Los Angeles Police Department, as evidence.

Q: Do you see your initials anywhere on this envelope?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: Is that --

A: DDV on the upper --

Q: DDV; that's Dudley --

A: D. Varney.

MR. BUGLIOSI: All right.

Your Honor, I have here another manila envelope; contained therein is a cellophane wrapper and contained within the cellophane wrapper are what appear to be four fragments of a bullet.

May the four fragments be collectively remarked people's -- the last exhibit, your Honor, I think was people's 250?

THE COURT: 250, yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May these be collectively remarked people's 251 for identification?

THE COURT: They may be so marked/

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I am removing four fragments of a bullet, sir, from this cellophane wrapper.

Have you ever seen these fragments of a bullet before?

A: Yes, I have.

Q: Where did you see them for the first time?

A: They were lying in the base or the bottom portion of the right-hand door of the white Rambler parked in the driveway on Cielo.

Q: On August the 9th, 1969?

A: That's correct, sir.

Q: And what did you do with these four fragments after you found them?

A: I received those -- they were actually retrieved by Sgt. Lee.

Q: In your presence?

A: In my presence; they were placed in that bag and he marked it and then I transported them to the property division and booked them as evidence.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thank you.

No further questions.

MR. KEITH: No questions.

THE COURT: Thank you, sir; you may step down.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Call Sgt. Lee.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

WILLIAM J. LEE,

called as a witness on behalf of the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you.

Take the stand and be seated. Would you state and spell your name, please.

THE WITNESS: William J. Lee, L-e-e.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: What is your occupation and assignment, Sergeant?

A: Police officer for the City of Los Angeles, assigned to the Scientific Investigation Division, firearms and explosive unit.

Q: What is your training and experience in the field of firearms identification?

A: I was an infantry rifleman and automatic rifleman during the service, World War II.

At that time I received training in the operation and nomenclature of hand and shoulder and automatic weapons.

After going to the police academy I again learned the nomenclature and operation of



hand weapons and shoulder weapons.

I studied at the major weapons manufacturers of the United States, including Colt, Smith & Wesson, Hi-Standard, Remington and Winchester.

I studied the firearms identification at the FBI, Washington, D.C. for a short period of time.

I have studied the manufacturing of ammunition at Du Pont and Remington.

I have been assigned in the firearms identification section for a total of approximately eight and a half years, during which time I have run and conducted many test involving the fixing of ammunition through weapons.

I have studied under such experts in the field as Irwin Uhde, U-h-d-e and DeWayne Wolfer.

I'm an instructor of police science at El Camino College, where I have been for 13 years. Part of my curriculum is firearms identification.

I have read many books on the subject and I have taken known test bullets and made comparison of them, as well as shell casing from know weapons; and I have studied these under the microscope.

I have testified in Municipal and Superior court in the State of California as an expert witness.

Q: Is that the extent of our background, sir?

A: Basically.

Q: I show you people's 40 for identification, a revolver.  
Have you ever seen that revolver before?

A: Yes, sir, I have.

Q: When did you see the revolver for the first time?

A: I first observed this revolver on December the 16, 1969.

Q: At the Los Angeles Police Department?

A: Yes, sir, that is correct.

Q: What type of a revolver is that?

A: This is a double-action revolver. It is called a double-nine and sometimes this is referred to as a Buntline Special, due to the length of the barrel. It is a frontier or cowboy type weapon.

Q: You say double-action. What do you mean by that?

A: In order to fire this particular weapon, it may be fired one or two ways. The double action refers to the pulling of the trigger alone.

THE COURT: Have you checked that?

THE WITNESS: I don't intend to fire it, your Honor.

THE COURT: You check it now, Sergeant.

THE WITNESS: The cylinder is open and I observe nine empty cylinders.

THE COURT: Very well.

THE WITNESS: The operation of this particular weapon involved the term double-action, which requires only that I pull the trigger to cock the hammer and fire the weapon.

A single-action revolver, such as this, gives the appearance of being, is one which if you pull the trigger nothing would happen until after you cocked the weapon. This would be single-action, where I cock the weapon and pull the trigger to fire. The double-action is simply firing it by pulling the trigger.

Q: That weapon fires what? Nine rounds?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: There is a place for nine cartridges in the cylinders?

A: That is correct.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, would this be a convenient time?

THE COURT: Yes.

Ladies and gentlemen of the jury we will recess at this time until 1:30. Please heed the usual admonition.

The spectators will remain seated until the jurors leave.

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, MONDAY, AUGUST 23, 1971

1:45 P.M.

-- oOo --

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, defendant and all counsel are present.

You are still under oath, so restate your name for the record, Sergeant.

THE WITNESS: William J. Lee, L-e-e.

THE COURT: You may proceed.

WILLIAM J. LEE,

resumed the stand and testified further as follows:

DIRECT EXAMINATION (RESUMED) BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: What is a hair trigger, do you know; have you ever heard of that term, hair trigger?

A: Yes, the term hair trigger usually refers to the fact that where the sear of the trigger and the hammer notch, that point at which the trigger hangs up on the hammer, a hair trigger would be on that simply used a very, very slight weight to cause the hammer to fall forward, rather than a normal or heavy weight of the weapon.

Q: So with a hair trigger you don't have to apply much pressure to the trigger at all to fire the gun?

A: That's correct.

Q: Is this a hair trigger revolver?

A: No, it is not, no.

Q: Do you have to apply a certain amount of pressure to fire this revolver?

A: Yes.

Q: On August 10, 1969, Sergeant, did you receive three bullets from one Dr. Gaston Herrera, a deputy medical examiner for the Los Angeles County Coroner's office?

A: I did.

Q: I show you People's 177 and I am removing a bullet slug from People's 177. The bullet slug is also People's 177. Have you ever seen that bullet slug before?

A: Yes, I have.

Q: Where and when did you see it for the first time?

A: I first observed this on August the 10th, 1969, at the coroner's office.

Q: All right. You see that on the front portion of this manila envelope it says, "Wojciech Frykowski, August 10, 1969, 12:45 p.m., Dr. Herrera." Is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: On the reverse side of this envelope you see your signature?

A: I do.

Q: What does it say?

A: "Received from Dr. Herrera 8-10-69, 12:45 p.m."

Q: Then your name "Lee" L-e-e?

A: That is correct.

Q: So you received this bullet slug then from Dr. Herrera on August the 10th, 1969, 12:45 p.m.?

A: Yes.

Q: Showing you People's 195 for identification. On the outside of an envelope it says, "Steven Parent, August 10, 1969, 2:00 p.m., Dr. Herrera." On the reverse side do you see your handwriting?

A: I do.

Q: What does this say?

A: "Received from Dr. Herrera 8-10-69, 6:15 p.m., Lee."

Q: Did you receive the bullet that I am removing now from this envelope? Did you receive that bullet slug on August the 10th, 1969, from Dr. Herrera?

A: I did.

Q: I show you People's 186 for identification. On the cover of the envelope it says "Steven Parent," again and it says "August 10, 1969, 2:00 p.m., Dr. Herrera."

Removing a bullet slug from inside the envelope, have you ever seen that bullet slug before?

A: Yes, I have.

Q: When did you see it for the first time?

A: First observed this also at 6:15 p.m., on August the 10th, 1969, when I received it from Dr. Herrera.

THE COURT: May I have that number again, please?

MR. BUGLIOSI: 186.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, do your records show it as having been entered before?

THE COURT: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: With Dr. Noguchi, I believe.

THE COURT: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: 185.

THE COURT: And 186, yes, except Dr. Noguchi did not testify that 185, a slug -- he said came from Parent.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, he did.

THE COURT: Oh, I thought you said Frykowski.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The first one, 177 is for Frykowski. People's 185 is for Parent.

THE COURT: Okay. Go ahead.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: From 186, People's 186, I am removing a bullet slug from the envelope. You say you have seen that bullet slug before?

A: I have.

Q: And did you receive this from Dr. Herrera on August the 10th, 1969, at 6:15 p.m.?

A: I did.

Q: And do you see that writing by you on the reverse side of the envelope?

A: I do.

Q: It says, "Received from Dr. Herrera 8-10-69, 6:15 p.m., Lee." Is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: On the following day, August the 11th, 1969, did you receive another bullet from Dr. Noguchi?

A: I did.

Q: I show you people's 166 for identification, an envelope, and I am removing from the envelope a bullet slug, which is also marked people's 166.

Have you ever seen that bullet slug before?

A: I have.

Q: Is this the bullet that you received from Dr. Noguchi on August 11, 1969?

A: It is.

Q: And on the reverse side of this envelope it says -- or, on the front side, it says, "This bullet was recovered between Mr. Parent's shirt and back, found loosely during fluoroscopic examination" -- I'm sorry, Jay Sebring, "This bullet was recovered between his shirt and back, found loosely during fluoroscopic examination at 10:15 August 10, 1969."

On the reverse side, what does it say?

A: "Received from Dr. Noguchi 8-11-69, 9:45 a, Lee."

Q: "A" stands for a.m.?

A: It does.

Q: What did you do with these four bullets after you received them from Dr. Herrera and Noguchi?

A: I took them to the crime laboratory, to my office, where I locked them in a file after examining them.

Q: So you booked them into evidence, then, at the Los Angeles Police Department?

A: Not specifically as a matter of property; but specifically keeping them in my own custody as property for the Los Angeles Police Department.

Q: What caliber bullets are all of these slugs?

A: .22 long rifle.

Q: By long rifle, what do you mean by that?

A: The .22 caliber rimfire cartridges are in three different categories; The .22 short, the .22 long and the .22 long rifle.

Now, the .22 short, which is the shortest of the three, has a very short shell casing in conjunction with a 29-grain bullet, which is a short bullet.

The .22 long uses the same bullet that is used in the .22 short; namely, the 29-grain bullet, but it uses a longer shell casing.

The .22 long rifle is a 40-grain bullet, approximately 40 grain weight, and the longest shell casing, the same that is used with the long; so the .22 long rifle is a 40-grain bullet, in this particular case, without the rest of the cartridge.

Q: Let me ask you this: Besides the caliber of a bullet, are all bullets the same or are they made up of different materials, different coating, et cetera?

A: They are made up of different materials and coatings.

Q: And coatings?

A: Yes.

Q: What about these four bullets that I have just shown you, people's 166, 185 -- 166, 177, 185 and 186; what type of bullets are these?

A: Those are lead bullets which have been casted with a copper or brass wash,

similar to a term known as Lubaloy, which is a trade name for another particular cartridge.

It is a coating which is applied to the lead, ostensibly to reduce friction in the gun barrel and the bore.

Q: Are you saying, then, that apart from their present damaged condition, all four of these bullets were the same type of bullet?

A: I believe so, yes.

Q: What are lands and grooves in a firearm?

A: The gun barrel, in order to project a bullet or projectile must impart to an elongated projectile a twist or spin so that it will fly through the air with gyrostatic stability, or in its normal course, so that it does not tumble and yaw and pitch.

The lands and grooves are actually the inner surface of the gun barrel and the lands and the grooves are formed at the time of manufacturing of the rifling, as such.

A common method for this to occur is that the bar stock, or the solid round stock, is first drilled to the approximate caliber that the finished product will be. That hole is then reamed or polished to the caliber that is desired; in this particular instance, approximately .22 caliber.

Now, this will be a smooth bore. In order to give the bullet a twist or rotation, a series of helical grooves are cut in this particular surface by the use of an object called a breech or hook cutter.

The breech is placed in the gun barrel and actually removes or displaces a part of the metal so that the part that is cut away or moved away would then be called the grooves, while that portion remaining and that has not been cut away, is called the lands.

Now, these lands, then, are the raised portion in the gun barrel and they have a twist to them, entirely --

Q: The grooves, then, would be the indentations inside the rifle, or the revolver barrel?

A: That is correct.

Q: And the lands, then, would be the ridges?

A: Yes.

Q: That area between the grooves?

A: Right.

Q: And I take it that people's 40, the revolver in front of you, also has lands and grooves; is that correct?

A: It does?

Q: How many lands and how many grooves?

A: Six land and six grooves.

Q: Not all firearms have the same number of lands and grooves; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: Some would have what?

A: Four, two, six, five, seven, ten; different numbers.

Q: Do barrels of firearms have what is called imperfections?

A: Yes, they do.

Q: This is in addition to the lands and grooves?

A: Yes.

Q: What are these imperfections and what causes them?

A: Well, imperfections on the surfaces of the lands and the grooves are those created during the manufacture of the firearm by chips in the gun bore, abrasives in the gun or as the broach is drawn through, which will impart different rough spots to the inner bore of the weapon; and these may also get additional imperfections from improper storing conditions and firing of different types of ammunition.

Q: Have you ever seen the barrel of any firearm that did not have imperfections on it?

A: No, I did not.

Q: They all have imperfections?

A: Yes.

Q: When the bullet passes through the barrel of a firearm do the lands and the grooves and the imperfections cut into the side of the bullet as it passes through the barrel?

A: Well, the lands of the gun do cut into the bullet and the bullet actually swedges out or expands to fire in the area called the grooves; and at this time the imperfections of the gun barrel do come in contact with the surface of the bullet.



Q: Do these lands and grooves and imperfections leave some type of an identifying imprint on the bullet?

A: Generally.

Q: This identifying imprint is called what?

A: Stria.

Q: S-t-r-i-a?

A: Yes.

Q: Does the imprint or do the imprints and stria form some type of a pattern on the bullet the same as the lands and grooves and imperfections?

A: Generally, yes.

Q: Only probably in reverse?

A: That is correct.

Q: In other words, a obtrusion, imperfection inside the barrel, would cause an indentation on the bullet?

A: Yes, a gouge mark; that is correct.

Q: And vice-versa?

A: Yes.

Q: Taking a look at these four bullet slugs again, People's 176 -- let's keep the bullet slugs on the envelope so we don't get any confusion here -- People's 166, People's 177 People's 185 and People's 186, four bullet slugs; is that correct, sir?

A: Yes.

Q: And looking at this revolver here, People's 40, did you ever conduct any type of an examination between these four bullets and this revolver to determine whether or not these four bullets came from this revolver?

A: I did.

Q: And when did you conduct that examination?

A: As I recall, it was December the 22nd, 1969.

Q: At the Los Angeles Police Department?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Will you please explain in detail to the jury what examination or test you conducted with respect to those four bullets and that revolver?

A: Yes. I obtained the revolver and a stock of ammunition similar to the ones that I obtained from the coroner's office, except the ones I obtained were brand new for my test shots.

I then did fire this revolver into a water recovery tank which is located in the police department premises.

Q: Why did you use a water recovery tank?

A: Water does not have a tendency to wide the sides of the smaller bullet like the .22 and shine them and cause friction and remove the stria.

Q: So that you fired new cartridges then, new bullets from that revolver?

A: Yes.

Q: At the Los Angeles Police Department?

A: I did.

Q: You may continue.

A: I then recovered my test shots from the water recovery tank and I took them, my test shots, to a comparison microscope also located in my office, along with these particular items before me, People's 166, 177, 185 and 186.

Now, the comparison microscope is essentially two microscopes side by side. These are connected by a prism bridge.

So that by looking through my binocular ocular eyepieces I am able to see the stages of the two individual microscopes and the evidence which is on the stages of the microscopes, the bullet holders.

By observing through the oculars I am able to look at the bullet on one side, my test shot on the other side, one at a time, the bullets I received from the coroner's office, and I was able to rotate these bullets and make an evaluation at this time.

Q: So the purpose of your comparison then was to determine whether those four bullets in front of you right now and the test fired bullets came from one and the same gun?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: That is the whole purpose of your comparison?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: As a result of your examination, your test, your comparison, did you form an

opinion as to each one of those four bullets?

A: I did.

Q: Let's take the Frykowski bullet first. I believe that is 177.

What opinion did you form with respect to that bullet concerning that revolver, People's 40?

A: I formed the opinion that although I was unable to make a positive comparison, and that I would be unable to state that this bullet came specifically from People's 40, the revolver, however, it did have the same specifications, the same number of lands and grooves, the same direction of twist, and same width of lands and grooves.

So it was my opinion that the Frykowski bullet could have come from the revolver, but unable to state positively that, due to the lack of stria on the bullet.

Q: The Frykowski bullet in front of you now, People's 177, had six lands and six grooves on it?

A: It does.

Q: And did you determine from the test fired bullet, that the test fired bullet also had six lands and six grooves on it?

A: Yes, it did.

Q: And what about the land and groove width? You say they were the same?

A: Yes.

Q: What is the measurement on those widths?

A: The gun land was approximately 55 thousandths of an inch width and the gun groove approximately 60 thousandths of an inch width.

Q: And the land and groove width on People's 177, the Frykowski bullet, is identical to the land and groove width on the test fired bullet?

A: Yes, it was, approximately.

Q: Now, you mentioned that People's 177 has the same twist as the test fire bullet?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: When a bullet leaves the muzzle of a firearm and proceeds towards its target, it twists, you say in a certain direction?

A: Yes.

Q: And the twist of all bullets coming from People's 40 is what? Left or right?

A: They would be right twist.

Q: In other words, the bullet as it proceeded toward the target, would turn in a clockwise direction, would spin clockwise as it proceeded toward the target?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And People's 177 was fired from a gun with a right twist; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: But you could not make a positive identification?

A: That is right.

Q: Because of insufficient stria?

A: That is true.

Q: Insufficient markings on the bullet?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Would you say that everytime a bullet is fired and it passes through the barrel of a firearm, say, into a human body, that there is always stria left on the bullet?

A: Not necessarily, no.

Q: Why not?

A: Well, many factors. It might be due to the type of bore of the weapon, the coating of the bullet. The stria may be wiped as it enters the body.

It may be wiped by any surface that it contacts prior to coming to rest, for instance, clothing and skin, bones, things of this nature.

Q: And with respect to that Frykowski bullet, people's 177, did it appear that much of the stria had been removed?

A: Yes. There was not much stria present on the Frykowski bullet.

Q: And you then theorized that the stria could have been removed when the bullet passed through Mr. Frykowski's body.

A: That is possible.

Q: Those bullets are coated bullets? They are not noncoated?

A: That is correct. They are coated.

Q: Do coated bullets lend themselves more readily to receiving stria than noncoated or what?

A: No. The coating has a tendency to prevent stria from becoming on the surface of

the bullet more than the lead.

Q: So noncoated bullets lend themselves more readily to receiving stria than coated bullets?

A: Yes.

Q: And those four bullets are coated bullets?

A: They are.

Q: Were there any markings or characteristics on the Frykowski bullet which would rule out the possibility that it was fired from people's 40?

A: No, not in my opinion.

Q: So people's 177 could have been fired from people's 40?

A: It could have, yes.

Q: Let's look at the Sebring --

THE COURT: 166.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Take a look at the Sebring bullet next, people's 166.

Did you form any opinion as to whether or not that bullet was fired from people's 40, the revolver?

A: I did.

Q: And what is that opinion?

A: It is my opinion that this bullet, people's 166, was fired from this revolver, people's 40.

Q: Is that a positive conclusion on your part?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: Is there any doubt in your mind whatsoever that people's 166, that bullet, was fired from people's 40, that revolver?

A: No, sir.

Q: You are positive about that?

A: Yes.

Q: What about the parent bullets? There are two of them; People's 186 and 186. Let's take 185 first.

Did you form any opinion with respect to that bullet slug?

A: Yes. This bullet was quite distorted. I was able to form the opinion that it had six

lands and grooves with the right-hand twist but unable to make a positive comparison between this Parent bullet and my test shots due to it's condition.

Q: Insufficient stria?

A: Yes.

Q: And very damaged?

A: Yes.

Q: Were there any markings on that bullet, people's 185, any markings or any characteristics which would rule out the possibility that it was fired from people's 40?

A: No.

Q: As to people's 185, could it also have been fired from people's 40, the revolver?

A: Yes.

Q: What about people's 186, the next bullet slug?

A: People's 186, the Parent bullet, did have six lands and grooves with a right-hand twist, the same land and groove width. I was unable to positively compare this to People's 40, the gun, again due to lack of stria.

Q: No characteristics on 186 that would rule out the possibility that it was fired from this revolver?

A: No.

Q: So it could have been?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: In the days of Lee Jones and Ray Pinkert we used the term striations. Any difference between striations and stria?

THE WITNESS: One is a plural, your Honor.

THE COURT: Striation is singular and stria plural?

THE WITNESS: Yes, sir.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Things are becoming more mod, your Honor.

THE COURT: I guess so.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Showing you people's 250 for identification, which is a fragment of a bullet, have you ever seen that fragment before?

A: Yes, I have.

Q: Where did you see it for the first time?

A: I believe I first observed this fragment on April the 7th, 1970.

Q: April the 7th, 1970 for the first time?

A: Yes, I believe that is correct.

Q: Who gave it to you at that time?

A: I received that from the property section of the Los Angeles Police Department.

Q: All right.

What is people's 250? Does it appear to be a part of a bullet?

A: Yes, it did to me.

Q: What caliber?

A: I was unable to state what caliber.

Q: Too small?

A: Too small, yes.

Q: Did you ever try to make or try to conduct any test to determine whether people's 150, that fragment of a bullet, came from people's 40?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Why not?

A: Too small.

Q: Looking at people's 251 for identification, four fragments of a bullet, have you ever seen those four fragments before?

A: Yes, I have.

Q: Where did you see them for the first time?

A: Inside the paneling of the right passenger door of an Ambassador vehicle license MPK --

Q: Steven Parent's car?

A: To the best of my knowledge, yes.

Q: What date was that?

A: August the 9th, 1969.

Q: In the driveway of the Tate premises?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you book these four fragments of bullets into evidence?

A: No. I believe they were booked by Officer Varney.

Q: V-a-r-n-e-y?

A: Yes.

Q: From the Los Angeles Police Department?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever make an effort to conduct an examination to determine whether these four segments came from any bullet fired from People's 40, the revolver?

A: No, it wasn't --

Q: Why not?

A: There was not sufficient material to do that.

Q: Did you form any opinion whether People's 250, the one piece of fragment, and People's 251, the four pieces, came from the same bullet?

A: I formed the opinion they did not.

Q: Why did you form that opinion?

A: The hole in the upholstery that was made by the four fragments was such a nature that I believed that the bullet that entered that was not deterred in its flight path; and if the portion 250 would have been removed from that during flight, I believe the bullet would have been upset and not entered the upholstery or the door or been damaged to the degree that it was.

Q: So you believe, then, that People's 250, the one piece of fragment, came from a different bullet than the four fragments, People's 251?

A: I believe so, yes.

Q: Sergeant, what is a shell casing?

A: A shell casing is one part of a complete cartridge. Normally, there are four parts to a cartridge, the projectile or bullet; the shell casing, the primer or primer cup and the powder load in front of the weapon; and the .22 caliber rim fires, we actually have a priming compound, but it is not a separate part so that the priming compound is actually out into the rim of the shell casing and we do have the metallic cup, I guess you would call it, as the casing.

The cartridge casing is a metallic cup which contains the bullet, the priming compound and the powder.

Q: When a revolver is fired, do the shell casings remain in the cylinder?



A: Yes, they do.

Q: They are not ejected onto the ground?

A: No, they are not.

Q: The shell casing, then, has to be manually removed from the cylinder by the person operating the firearm --

A: Yes.

Q: -- or some other person?

A: That's correct, yes.

Q: And with firearms other than revolvers, such as automatics or semi-automatics, the shell casings are ejected onto the ground; is that correct?

A: Yes, semi-automatics or automatics are ejected.

Q: When the round is fired?

A: Yes.

Q: On the date, November 19, 1969, did you proceed to Spahn Ranch in Chatsworth, California, for the purpose of recovering shell casings?

A: I did.

Q: Did you, in fact, recover any shell casings from the premises of Spahn Ranch?

A: I did.

Q: How many?

A: As I recall, I recovered 22 expended shell casings at that time.

Q: What caliber were they?

A: .22 long rifle.

Q: .22 caliber; right?

A: Yes, sir, rim fire.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a photograph depicting an area of brown and also contains a picture of Sgt. Lee.

May it be marked People's -- I'm sorry, it was previously marked People's 253.

May it be remarked People's 253?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 253 for identification.

Do you know what is shown in that photograph, Sergeant?

A: Yes, sir, I do.

Q: What is shown in that photograph?

A: This is an area of the Spahn Ranch, approximately 200 feet, the direction I believe to be east of the residence at the location.

Q: There are several buildings at Spahn Ranch; right?

A: Yes, there are.

Q: Right off Santa Susana Road?

A: Yes.

Q: This area depicted in this photograph is behind the buildings?

A: It is.

Q: Is this the area from which you recovered the 22 .22 caliber shell casings?

A: The general area.

Q: There were 22 of them, you say?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Where were 22 .22 shell casings?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: What did you do with those shell casings?

A: I took them to the Los Angeles Police Department where I made comparisons between those shell casings and the test shots that I fired through People's No. 40, the revolver.

Q: Okay. On the date April the 15th, 1970, did you again go out to Spahn Ranch to recover additional shell casings?

A: I did, yes.

Q: And did you, in fact, recover any shell casings on that date?

A: I did.

Q: How many?

A: 23.

Q: From the same place, same area?

A: The same general area, yes, sir.

Q: When a revolver is fired, are any marks left on the firing pin?

A: Yes.

Q: What type of marks are these?

A: It is called the firing pin impression and may consist of actual indentations or compression marks in conjunction with stria many times.

Q: Does each firing pin leave an identifying mark on the shell casing that it strikes?

A: Generally it does.

Q: And can you identify the firearm from which a shell casing came by examining the firing pin marks on the shell casing?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, you have testified earlier that you test fired that .22 caliber revolver there, people's 40; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And I take it you manually ejected the shell casings after you fired them; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Did you ever compare the firing pin marks on the test fire shell casings with the firing pin marks on the shell casing found at Spahn Ranch?

A: I did.

Q: Did you form any opinion as a result of your comparison?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: What is that opinion?

A: It is my opinion that of the total cartridge casing which I recovered at the Spahn Ranch -- I believe the total to be 45 -- of that amount 15 were fired from People's No. 40, this revolver.

Q: So you found 15 .22 caliber shell casings at Spahn Ranch which you have formed the positive opinion that they were fired from that revolver, people's 40?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And you did that by a comparison of the firing pin marks on the shell casing?

A: I did.

Q: Those 15, then, had the same firing marks on the shell casings as the test firing shell casings had?

A: Yes.

Q: I show you people's 249 for identification, a manila envelope containing two live cartridges and seven shell casings.

Have you ever seen those two live cartridges and seven shell casings before?

A: Yes, I have.

Q: Where did you see them for the first time?

A: I first observed these December the 19th -- no, excuse me, December 16, 1969, at the Los Angeles Police Department.

They were in a package, as I recall, with people's No. 40, the revolver.

Q: Now, I notice that these seven shell casings here do seem to have some marks on the rim of the shell casing; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And these are caused by the firing pin hitting the rim?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did you form any opinion as to whether or not these seven shell casings here were fired from this revolver, people's 40?

A: I did.

Q: What is that opinion?

A: It is my opinion that the seven shell casings were fired in people's 40, the revolver.

Q: Is that a positive opinion?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Any doubt in your mind about it?

A: None whatsoever.

Q: How did you form that opinion?

A: This is, again, done by the use of the comparison microscope where I can observe the two marks in juxta-position, or next to each other; and observed them at that point.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thank you, Sergeant.

No further questions.

MR. KEITH: I don't have any questions.

MR. BUBRICK: No questions.

THE COURT: You may be excused, Sergeant.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We will call Frank Struthers.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

FRANK STRUTHERS,

called as a witness on behalf of the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you.

Take the stand and be seated; and would you state and spell your name, please?

THE WITNESS: Frank Struthers, S-t-r-u-t-h-e-r-s.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: How old are you, Frank?

A: 17.

Q: Was Rosemary LaBianca your mother?

A: Yes.

Q: Did your mother have a business?

A: Yes.

Q: What type of business?

A: Dress shop.

Q: Where was that located?

A: On Figueroa.

Q: In Los Angeles?

A: In Los Angeles.

Q: And Leno LaBianca was your step-father?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Mr. LaBianca the president and chief stockholder of Gateway Markets in Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a photograph of a female Caucasian.

May it be marked people's next in order?

THE COURT: It has no previous marking?

MR. BUGLIOSI: No, your Honor.

THE COURT: 303.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have here a photograph of a male Caucasian.

May it be marked people's next in order, 304?

THE COURT: 304.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Frank, I show you people's 303; is that a photograph of your mother?

A: Yes.

Q: And people's 304, is that a photograph of your step-father, Leno?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you live with your mother, Frank, with your mother and step-father at 3301 Waverly Drive in Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

Q: Did anyone else live with you there?

A: No.

Q: How long had you and your mother and Leno lived at that address?

A: About a year.

Q: Do you have a sister?

A: Yes.

Q: What is her name?

A: Susan Ray.

Q: Susan -- what's the last name?

A: Ray.

Q: Ray?

Is she married now?

A: No.

Q: Was her name ever Susan Struthers?

A: Susan Struthers.

Q: She did not live with you and your mother and Leno?

A: No.

Q: Directing your attention, Frank, to the first week of August, 1969, did you go to Lake Isabella?

A: Yes.

Q: And do you know what day you went up there?

A: A Friday or Saturday, I believe.

Q: The first week of August?

A: Yes.

Q: The 7th or 8th?

A: Yeah.

Q: And whom did you go there with?

A: With some friends of my parents and their son, the Saffies.

Q: After you arrived at Lake Isabella did Rosemary and Leno come up there later?

A: They came up and brought their boat up; and they came up the next week and took the boat back, on a Friday.

Q: Now, let's go back just a couple steps here, now -- excuse me.

-- do you know what day in August that you went to Lake Isabella?

A: Friday; Friday or Saturday.

Q: Do you know what date?

A: No, I don't.

Q: But you say a week after you arrived there Rosemary and Leno came up?

A: Almost a week; about five days.

Q: So you didn't go up there, then, on August the 8th to Lake Isabella?

A: Yes.

Q: You are aware that your mother and Leno passed away on August the 10th, 1969; you are aware of that?

A: Yes.

Q: So it was a week earlier, then, that you went up to Lake Isabella?

A: Uh-huh.

Q: 1st or 2nd or 3rd of August; is that correct?

A: Yeah, I guess. I can't remember the dates, I'm sorry.

Q: Then how long after you were at Lake Isabella, how many days later did Leno and Rosemary come up to Lake Isabella?

A: About five days.

Q: Okay. Did they come up there on a Saturday?

A: Yes.

Q: And how long did they stay up there?

A: A day.

Q: And then they came back to Los Angeles?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: Did you go back with them?

A: No.

Q: Did anyone go back with them?

A: My sister.

Q: Susan?

A: Yes.

Q: Did they return to Los Angeles on Saturday, August the 9th?

A: Yes.

Q: And when did you leave Lake Isabella?

A: The next day.

Q: So you left Lake Isabella August 10, then, 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: A Sunday?

A: Yes.

Q: And with whom did you return to Los Angeles?

A: With the people I went up there with, the Saffies.

Q: Saffies, S-a-f-f-e?

A: i-e-s.

Q: S-a-f-f-i-e-s?

A: Yes.

Q: And when did you arrive here in Los Angeles?

A: Sunday night about 8:00 p.m.



THE COURT: A.M.?

THE WITNESS: P.M.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: so you arrived here in Los Angeles on Sunday, August the 10th, 1969, at about 8:00 p.m.; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And what did you do after -- well, let me withdraw that.

Did the Saffies drop you off at your residence, 3301 Waverly Drive?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you do after you arrived at the residence?

A: I had my baggage with me, came up the driveway, put part of the baggage away in the garage; and all the doors were locked and I couldn't get in the house, so I came back down the driveway and called the house; nobody was home. I called the house --

Q: Where did you call the house from?

A: From a phone booth nearby.

Q: Nobody answered, of course?

A: And then called my sister to come over and pick me up, and we went back to the house.

Q: What time did you go back to the house?

A: It was around 9:00 o'clock to 9:30.

Q: At night?

A: Uh-huh.

Q: Was your sister accompanied by a person named Joe Dorgan?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened after you and your sister, Susan, and Joe Dorgan returned to the house at around 9:30 p.m.?

A: We went inside.

Q: How did you get in?

A: With the key.

Q: Where did you get the key?

A: From the car.

Q: Whose car?

A: My mother's car that was in the driveway.

Q: A Thunderbird?

A: Yes.

Q: And you went in through the back door?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened after you entered the back door of the residence?

A: We came in through the back door, leads to the kitchen -- and on to the dining room; and Susan stayed out of the house, more or less, she was in the kitchen, stayed in the kitchen; and Mr. Dorgan and I went into the living room where we found Leno LaBianca in the living room.

Q: Was he lying on his back?

A: Yes.

Q: And he appeared to be dead?

A: Yes.

Q: And you and Mr. Dorgan then did what?

A: Left the house, and some neighbors called the police.

Q: You had several dogs, did you not, that lived on the premises there?

A: Two.

Q: What type of dogs were they?

A: A Labrador retriever and a poodle.

Q: Where were the dogs when you and Dorgan arrived on the premises?

A: Inside the house.

Q: Inside the house?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: When you entered the residence, were the lights on or off?

A: Off most everywhere with the exception of one room or two rooms.

Q: What about the shades on the windows?

A: They were drawn.

Q: They were drawn?

A: (Nods head.)

Q: You have to answer out loud.

A: They were drawn.

Q: Were they normally drawn?

A: No.

Q: How long after you called the police did the police arrive?

A: A couple of minutes.

Q: And did you then reenter the house with them or did you stay outside?

A: I stayed outside; Mr. Dorgan reentered the house with them.

Q: When is the next time, Frank, that you entered the residence?

A: About a week later.

Q: Did you discover anything missing?

A: Mrs. LaBianca's wallet.

Q: Pardon?

A: Mrs. LaBianca's wallet.

Q: Your mother's wallet?

A: Yes.

Q: That was missing?

A: Right.

Q: That is the only thing that you discovered missing; is that correct?

A: I think so.

Q: How about your mother's watch? Was that missing too?

A: I think that was missing also.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May I have just a moment, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Frank, I show you people's 65 for identification. Have you ever seen that wallet before?

A: Yes.

Q: Whose wallet is that, Frank?

A: My mother's wallet.

Q: Rosemary's?

A: Yes.

Q: Removing a photograph, Frank, from inside the wallet, you recognize what that is

a photograph of?

A: Yes.

Q: What is that?

A: Of my graduation.

Q: Where did you graduate from?

A: Junior High School.

Q: And your mother was at the graduation?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions, your Honor. Thank you Frank.

THE COURT: Just a moment. Any questions?

MR. BUGLIOSI: They might have a question.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Frank, when did you first realize that your mother's wallet was missing?

A: The next week when I went through the house.

Q: Were you just taken back to the house with the officers and told to go through and see if there was anything you could determine was missing?

A: Yes.

Q: And when had you last seen the wallet?

A: Up at Lake Isabella.

Q: Is that one that your mother always carried?

A: Yes.

Q: Were you looking particularly for the wallet when you discovered it wasn't in the house?

A: Well, it was in her purse all the time.

Q: Just part of a big purse; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: Were there other items of value in the house that were there?

A: Yes.

Q: Mr. LaBianca had a coin collection; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Was that in the house?

A: No.

Q: Was that gone?

A: Yes. Nobody knew where that was until a little while later we found out it was in a safe deposit box.

Q: I see. Was there other jewelry around the house?

A: Yes.

Q: And that was untouched, I take it?

A: Yes.

Q: And the only thing you discovered missing was the wallet; is that correct?

A: Uh-huh.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

THE COURT: Thank you. You may be excused.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thank you very much.

People call Ruth Sivick.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

RUTH SIVICK,

called as a witness by the people, testified as follows

THE CLERK: Thank you.

Take the stand and be seated.

Will you state and spell your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Ruth Sivick, S-i-v-i-c-k.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: Mrs. -- is it Mrs. or Miss?

A: Mrs.

Q: Mrs. Sivick, what is your occupation, ma'am?

A: I manage a dress shop.

Q: What is the name of the dress shop?

A: Sporty Knit.

Q: Directing your attention to August of 1969, did you know a woman by the name of Rosemary LaBianca?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Would you briefly explain your acquaintanceship with her?

A: She was my dearest friend and business partner.

Q: She was a partner with you in the business?

A: Yes.

Q: That you now own or --

A: No, previously.

Q: What was the name of that one?

A: Boutique Carriage.

Q: On Figueroa?

A: That is correct.

Q: And you of course knew her husband Leno LaBianca?

A: Yes.

Q: When was the last time that you saw Mrs.LaBianca alive?

A: Friday, August the 8th.

Q: 1969?

A: Right.

Q: About what time of day?

A: About 4:30.

Q: In the afternoon?

A: Yes.

Q: Where were you and she at that time?

A: Well, we had just come back from a buying trip from town.

Q: And were you at your business or at her house?

A: No, at the place of business.

Q: Now, after 4:30 p.m. on August the 8th, 1969 did you ever speak to her, let's say, over the telephone?

A: Saturday morning, August the 9th.

Q: Did she call you or did you call her?

A: No, she called me.

Q: And what was the conversation at that time?

A: Well, she had told me she was going up to Lake Isabella and wouldn't be back until 3:00 or 4:00 o'clock the next morning and if I would feed her animals while she was gone.

Q: Her two dogs?

A: Three dogs.

Q: And did you in fact go to Mr. and Mrs. LaBianca's residence to take care of the dogs?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And when did you go there?

A: I guess I arrived between 6:00 and 6:15.

Q: P.M.?

A: Yes.

Q: On what date?

A: August the 9th.

Q: The same day you spoke to her?

A: Yes.

Q: Incidentally, you never spoke to her after that?

A: No, I did not.

Q: And had you been to that residence on many prior occasions?

A: Yes.

Q: At 3301 Waverly Drive?

A: Yes.

Q: And how did you enter the home on this particular Saturday, August the 9th, 1969 at about 6:00 p.m. or thereabouts?

A: Well, I parked my car on the street and walked up the driveway, took the key from underneath the mat and walked in the front door.

Q: You opened the front door with a key?

A: Yes.

Q: And what did you do after you entered?

A: Greeted the dogs and went to the refrigerator, took the food and fed the animals and then left the Labrador retriever out in the back yard for a little romp.

Q: Did the retriever come back into the house before you left?

A: Oh, yes.

Q: How long did you stay inside the residence?

A: I would say about 30 minutes.

Q: Now, you say you got some food out of the refrigerator.

A: That is right.

Q: I show you people's 206 for identification.

Directing your attention to the refrigerator depicted therein, is this the refrigerator in the LaBianca residence, in the kitchen?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: You notice that the words "Helter skelter" are printed on that refrigerator door. Were those words on the door when you were inside the residence at 6:00 p.m. on August the 9th?

A: No.

Q: When you got the food out of the refrigerator did you grasp the handle of the refrigerator door?

A: Oh, yes.

Q: I take it that would be the only way for you to open it; is that correct?

A: I believe so.

Q: Did you enter the living room of the residence?

A: No, I don't think so. I think I went just to the family room.

Q: How long did you stay inside the residence?

A: About 30 minutes.

Q: When you left did everything appear to be in order inside the residence?

A: Yes.

Q: Were all the doors locked when you left?

A: Yes.



Q: Were the windows open or closed?

A: I didn't check the windows.

Q: Did you notice whether they were open or closed?

A: No, I didn't.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thank you. No further questions.

THE COURT: Just a moment.

MR. BUBRICK: No questions.

THE COURT: Thank you. You may be excused.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions, your Honor.

Is there any objection to receiving pictures 303 and 304 into evidence at this time to show to the jury?

THE COURT: Any objection?

MR. KEITH: No.

THE COURT: They may be received.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I will pass them among the jury.

The people call as their next witness Mr. John Fokianos.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

JOHN FOKIANOS,

called as a witness by the people, testified as follows

THE CLERK: Thank you.

Take the stand and be seated.

Would you state and spell your name, please.

THE WITNESS: John Fokianos, F-o-k-i-a-n-o-s.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY

Q: What is your occupation?

A: News vendor.

Q: Whereabouts is your stand located?

A: Corner of Hillhurst and Franklin in the Los Feliz area.

Q: How long have you had a news stand there?

A: Since 1945, going on 26 years.

Q: Did you know Leno and Rosemary LaBianca when they were alive?

A: Yes, as customers.

Q: How long had they been customers of yours?

A: Oh, I would say at least two years and probably longer. I don't know exactly but at least that long.

Q: Directing your attention to the early morning hours of Sunday, August the 10th, in between 1:00 and 2:00 o'clock in the morning.

Did you have occasion to see Mr. and Mrs. LaBianca?

A: Yes, I did. I would say it was probably closer to 2:00.

Q: Where were they when you saw them?

A: They were traveling in their car.

Q: Were you at your news stand?

A: Yes.

Q: And did they stop and buy a paper from you?

A: Yes, they did.

Q: And did you have any conversation with them?

A: Yes, we did.

Q: Without telling us the exact conversation, what was the general subject matter of the conversation?

A: It was about the Tate mishap.

Q: The Tate murders?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, what kind of car were they in?

A: I forget their car now. They had a boat attached to it.

Q: They had a boat on a trailer attached to the car?

A: Yes, right.

Q: Do you recall whether or not the car was a Thunderbird?

A: Well, they have a Thunderbird and they have another car too but I don't remember exactly what the car was now. This is about two years ago.

Q: But you do remember that they were towing a boat at the time?

A: Yes. And it was about, like I say, about 2:00 o'clock in the morning. I did remember but right now I forget it.

Q: Did you sell them any newspaper?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What did you sell them?

A: I sold them a daily Herald and I believe it was a Sunday Examiner. I gave them an insert from the Times because that had the Tate incident in it whereas the other didn't have it yet.

Q: Did they ask for that or did you give it to them?

A: Well, like I say we were talking about two or three minutes there in the morning and they had just come back from their trip over there at Lake Isabella and I just told them about it and this was something that was really new to them. They hadn't heard about it before.

She was in extreme shock when she heard about it, you know. She just couldn't hardly believe it but he, of course, controlled himself a little bit better. It was something that was new to her and she took it quite badly. She was shaken up over it.

Q: Did they appear, other than talking about the Tate murders, did they appear to be in general good spirits at the time you saw them?

A: I would say so. They were a little bit tired because they had just come from a trip but I would say so.

MR. KAY: I have no further questions.

MR. BUBRICK: No questions.

THE COURT: Thank you, sir, you may be excused.

MR. KAY: People call Officer Rodriguez.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

WILLIAM RODRIGUEZ,

called as a witness by the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you. Take the stand and be seated.

Will you state and spell your name, please?

THE WITNESS: William Rodriguez, R-o-d-r-g-u-e-z.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY

Q: Officer Rodriguez, what is your current occupation and assignment?

A: I'm a police officer for the City of Los Angeles, presently assigned to Southwest Division Patrol.

Q: Where is that located, Southwest?

A: Southwest section of Los Angeles.

Q: Now, directing your attention to August of 1969, where were you assigned at that time?

A: I was assigned to Hollywood Division Patrol.

Q: How long had you been a police officer at that time?

A: Approximately 14 months.

Q: Now, on Sunday night, August the 10th, 1969, did you have occasion to go to 3301 Waverly Drive in the City of Los Angeles?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Why did you go there?

A: I received a radio call to that location.

Q: Were you on patrol at that time?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Now, approximately what time did you arrive at 3301 Waverly?

A: Approximately 10:35 p.m.

Q: Now, without telling -- well, did you see any people outside?

A: Yes, there was a group of approximately three people outside.

Q: Was one of them Mr. Struthers?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: All right. Now, without telling us what was said, did you have a conversation with these three people?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And did you then approach the house?

A: Yes. Yes, sir, I did.

Q: Now, you'll see to your right there appears to be a diagram, which is 201 -- I believe it has already been marked, your Honor -- does this appear to you to be a diagram of the LaBianca residence at 3301 Waverly?

A: Yes, it does.

Q: No, when you first went up to --

THE COURT: 201 has not yet been marked.

MR. KAY: Excuse me; I believe Officer Granado testified from it, your Honor, but I will ask that it be remarked 201.

Q: Now, Officer Rodriguez, when you approached the residence did you enter?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Where did you enter?

A: I entered through the front door, which was right here.

MR. KAY: Now, your Honor, I have a photograph marked Exhibit 91.

May this be remarked Exhibit 91?

THE COURT: It may be so remarked.

MR. KAY: You could resume the stand for a moment.

Q: Officer Rodriguez, I show you Exhibit 91, do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: What is depicted in that photograph?

A: That was the crime scene at my arrival at 3301 Waverly Drive.

Q: In other words, it shows two red sofas and a picture of a male in blue pajamas?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Is this an accurate representation of the scene that you saw when you -- after you entered the front door of the residence at 3301 Waverly?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Now, did you approach the body of the male in the blue pajamas?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Did you notice anything protruding from his stomach?

A: I observed a large fork; it appeared to be a barbecue fork or large carving fork of some kind.

Q: Whereabouts was that in his stomach?

A: It was in the mid-section of the body.

Q: Did you see anything apparently written on his stomach?

A: I observed the middle portion of his body to be carved up. At that time, I didn't recognize the writing.

Q: Now, you notice that there appears in this photograph to be a white pillow on the male's head about the area of his head; did you notice that?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And what type of pillow is that?

A: It was a type of pillow you'd put on your Couch.

Q: A sofa pillow, throw pillow?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, when you first went up to the front door did you notice whether there appeared to be any damage to it?

A: There didn't appear to be any damage to the front door.

Q: And was your partner with you just before you entered the house -- did you have a partner with you?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: What was his name?

A: Officer Tony.

Q: And when you went into the house, where did Officer Tony go?

A: Officer Tony was at the back door, or at the rear of the house.

Q: Now, when you entered the house, were there any lights on in the house?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Do you remember where the lights were on?

A: I don't recall which lights were on, but the lights were on inside the house.

Q: If you could step down from the stand a minute, Officer Rodriguez, when you entered the front door -- you will notice that there are two sofas drawn here in the living room -- where in relation to these sofas on Exhibit 201 was the body of the male in the

blue pajamas?

A: The boyd was laying right up against the sofa.

Q: In other words, on 201 there are two sofas, one seems to be drafted and one that somebody has drawn in in ink, and there is a spot there and it says on the drawing "Spot."

Is that where you saw the body of the male?

A: Yes, sir.

THE COURT: Excuse me; will you straighten something out for me, please?

We have one diagram identified by Mr. Granado as Exhibit 242 as the diagram of the LaBianca residence.

Is this the same as 201 that you have here?

MR. BUGLIOSI: No, the one you have just named --

THE COURT: 242.

MR. BUGLIOSI: -- that's the one with the bloodspots on the premises and Mr. Granado pointed out where the various bloodspots were found and the type.

THE COURT: This one does not have it?

MR. KAY: That is right; I am sorry, your Honor.

THE COURT: All right.

Q BY MR. KAY: Now, the body of the male in the blue pajamas, was the male flat on his back?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Now, when you first entered the living room, besides observing the body of the male in the blue pajamas, what else did you observe?

A: I observed blood on the wall, what appeared to be written in blood, "Death to Pigs."

I observed the picture was taken off where this was written and I observed a dog running around the house, the inside of the house.

Q: How many dogs do you remember seeing in the living room area?

A: I remember one dog; and later another dog appeared from one of the rooms.

Q: Now, after you saw the male in the blue pajamas on the living room floor, what, if anything, did you do?

A: I went back to the radio car and requested an ambulance, a supervisor, and a back-up unit.

Q: How long did it take for the back-up unit and the supervisor to get there?

A: Approximately five minutes, three to five minutes.

Q: From your training, Officer, did you know enough not to touch anything at the scene?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did you ever go into any other room besides the living room?

A: No, sir.

Q: Now, was the supervisor that arrived Sgt. Cline?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And did he take over the investigation, once he arrived?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did you check to see whether there were any doors in the house that were open?

A: I didn't check the entire house, but I observed the door on the east side of the house open. I believe that was leading into the living room.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have a photograph marked 209 here, Exhibit 209. May it be remarked Exhibit 209?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: Thank you.

Officer Rodriguez, I show you Exhibit 209. Do you recognize what is depicted in the Photograph 209?

A: Yes. This is the door on the east side of the house that I observed to be open.

Q: And was it wide open or just ajar?

A: It was ajar.

Q: Approximately how long did you remain at the LaBianca residence?

A: Approximately three hours.

Q: Did you move or touch anything inside the residence?

A: No, sir.

MR. KAY: I have no further questions.



CROSS EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH

Q: Officer, did you ever discover the body of Mrs. LaBianca?

A: I didn't.

Q: Who did, if you know?

A: Sgt. Cline.

Q: How long was that after Sgt. Cline arrived that he found Mrs. LaBianca?

A: Approximately a minute after he arrived.

Q: You didn't look around the house, I take it, when you first were there to see if anybody else may have been hurt or injured?

A: No, sir.

Q: How many doors did you locate about the LaBianca premises?

A: I didn't go around checking the doors.

Q: Didn't you check the one that you found open?

A: I could see it from the front door, looking into the living room and into the dining room. I observed the door open.

Q: Where is the dining room on that diagram?

A: This is the front door I entered and I observed the door right over here. It says "Den."

Q: It says "Den"?

A: Yes.

Q: It is a door leading from the den then and not the dining room?

A: From the porch into the den. I was able to observe it from the front door and from the living room without going into that room.

Q: Had anybody gone out of that door while you were there?

A: No, sir.

Q: Where is Waverly Drive on that diagram, Officer? Is that on the far right-hand corner?

A: Yes, far right-hand corner.

Q: Is that the driveway leading off from Waverly Drive?

A: Yes. This would be the driveway right here.

Q: Where is north on that map?

A: I believe north would be up here. This would be east.

Q: Did you make what you might call an intensive search of the house while you were on the premises?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: You just protected the premises? Was that your main function?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And what have you?

A: Yes.

Q: When you first arrived at the house did the young Struthers boy say anything to you about his mother?

A: He was pretty upset and pretty hysterical.

Q: I understand but did he say anything about his mother?

A: I don't believe he did.

Q: One further thing: I couldn't quite understand your testimony about, it sounded as if you found a picture off the wall, and underneath the picture was some writing in blood. I didn't quite catch that.

A: As I entered the house, I observed where a picture had been taken off the wall. I observed the picture lying on the floor. This was on the north wall of the living room as you enter the doorway and where the picture had been, written in what appeared to be blood was "Death to Pigs."

Q: Did you have any conversation with the Struthers boy about how he got in the house?

A: I believe I did.

Q: What did he tell you?

A: I believe he entered through the rear door, the kitchen door.

Q: By the use of a key?

A: I don't recall.

Q: Did he tell you whether or not he circled the house to ascertain whether any doors may have been left open, such as that door on the east side of the house that you found open?

A: I don't recall.

Q: Did you find a place on the wall where that picture that you saw lying on the floor may have been hung?

A: Yes. Had it been hung, it would have covered that "Death to Pigs."

MR. KEITH: I have nothing further.

MR. KAY: Nothing further, your Honor.

THE COURT: Thank you, sir. You may be excused.

We will have our afternoon recess at this time.

Ladies and gentlemen, once more, please heed the usual admonition.

(Afternoon recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson,

Let the record show all jurors, counsel and defendant present.

MR. KAY: People call as their next witness, Sgt. Edward L. Cline.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

EDWARD L. CLINE,

called as a witness by the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you?

Take the stand and be seated.

Would you state and spell your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Edward L. Cline, C-l-i-n-e.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY

Q: Sgt. Cline, what is your occupation and current assignment?

A: Police officer for the city of Los Angeles, attached to burglary-auto theft division.

Q: How long have you been a police officer for the city of Los Angeles?

A: 17 years.

Q: And were you assigned to the homicide division for any period of that time?

A: Approximately six years, yes.

Q: Now, directing your attention to August 10, 1969, where were you assigned?

A: To Hollywood Division patrol.

Q: Now, further directing your attention to about 10:45 p.m., did you have occasion to go to the address of 3301 Waverly in the city of Los Angeles on August the 10th, 1969?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And so you arrived there about 10:45?

A: That's correct.

Q: Did you see people out in front of the house when you arrived?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Did you enter the residence?

A: I did.

Q: I show you exhibit 91, which has been remarked, Sgt. Cline.

Do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: And what is depicted?

A: That of a male body, two couches, a table or coffee table, a fork protruding from the abdominal area of the male victim; and pieces of furniture.

Q: Now, is that an accurate photograph of the scene at 3301 Waverly as you saw it when you entered the residence on August the 10th, 1969?

A: Yes, sir, it is.

Q: Did you have occasion after you entered the residence -- and I take it this is the living room area; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: Did you have an occasion to go to the main bedroom area?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What, if anything, did you find when you went to the main bedroom area?

A: I found the body of a female laying face down on the floor.

Q: First before I show you a photograph, if you can leave the stand a minute and show the jurors on exhibit 201 exactly where the bedroom is where you found the body of the female.

A: It was in this area here.

THE COURT: Now is that room marked on that diagram?

MR. KAY: That is marked "Bedroom" and it has the word "Spots" on it and it has two apparent spots. It is in the lower left-hand corner of the house portion of the exhibit.

THE COURT: The southwest corner of the building, is that correct, officer, the southwest room?

THE WITNESS: It would be the southwest room, yes, that is right.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have a photograph here. It is exhibit 93.

May it be remarked exhibit 93 for the purpose of this trial?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: Sergeant, I show you exhibit 93.

Do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: What is depicted?

A: That of a female body with clothing pulled over the head, some puncture wounds in the area of the buttocks and, of course, the rug and a small settee, whatever they call it.

Q: What is the woman wearing in that photograph?

A: It appeared to me to be a negligee type nightgown.

Q: And also does it appear that she has a robe on besides the nightgown?

A: I don't know if that was a robe or not. I did not move it. It was in that position when I saw it.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have here two other photographs, one is numbered 212.

May that be remarked 212 for the purpose of this trial?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: Now, first, I show you what you have in your hand now, exhibit 212.

Do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: And is that showing a photograph of the same body that is in exhibit 93?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: That is just a different view of it?

A: Just the lower extremity, yes.

Q: And showing you another portion of the room that is not depicted in exhibit 93?

A: That is correct.

Q: And does that appear to you to be an accurate photograph of the scene as you saw it?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: I show you exhibit 213.

Do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: And does that photograph show the body of the female that is depicted in exhibit 93 and exhibit 212, but a view of the front portion of the body and or the portion of the bedroom that is in front of the front portion of the body?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: And does that appear to be an accurate photograph of the way the scene looked to you when you discovered the body on August 10, 1969?

A: Yes, it is.

THE COURT: May I see those three, officer, please?

Thank you.

Q BY MR. KAY: Now, after you found the body of the female that is depicted in Exhibit 93 and 212 and 213, what, if anything, did you do?

A: I then went out and called the ambulance drivers back to the scene, as they were leaving.

Q: Had they already pronounced the male dead?

A: Yes, they had.

Q: And then did they come and examine the female?

A: They did.

Q: And did they pronounce her dead?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you make sure that nobody touched the bodies of the male and the female until the homicide unit arrived?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, Sergeant, going through the house did you notice any unusual writings to

be on the walls of the house?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: First, in the living room area did you notice any unusual writings?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you notice?

A: On the -- it would be the north wall as you enter the front door there was "Death to Pigs" written on the wall.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have Exhibit 204 here; I'm not sure whether or not it has been remarked.

THE CLERK: No, it hasn't.

MR. KAY: May it be remarked for the purpose of this trial, 204?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: Sergeant, I show you Exhibit 204. Do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: What is depicted?

A: The writing, "Death to Pigs"; several pictures hung on the wall.

Q: Did you determine what that appeared to be written in; that is, "Death to Pigs"?

A: It appeared to be blood, to me, at the time.

Q: Now, you see that there is a picture -- well, there are several pictures on the wall below the writing "Pigs" and there also appears to be a picture leaning against the wall, that is not hung on the wall.

Did you notice that to be in the position it is in that photograph?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And approximately how wide an area did this writing, "Death to Pigs" cover?

A: If I recall correctly, four and a half to five feet, possibly.

Q: So the letters were pretty big?

A: Yes, they were.

Q: Now, approximately how high off the floor was "Death to Pigs" written?

A: Six and a half to seven feet, possibly.

Q: So, in other words -- how tall are you?

A: I'm six feet.

Q: So if you were to have done that writing, would you have to reach up with your arm to do it?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, what other writings did you observe besides "Death to Pigs" in the living room?

A: On the next to the entry, the door, the front door, I believe, on the left-hand side near the upper jam, was the word "Rise."

Q: Did that also appear to be written in blood?

A: Yes, it did.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have here Exhibit 205. May it be remarked 205 for the purpose of this trial?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: Sergeant Cline, I show you Exhibit 205. Do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: And does it show the word "Rise" written on the upper left -- well, the portion just to the left of the front door?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: Now, approximately how high off the ground was that word written?

A: It is approximately the same, six and a half to seven -- may not seven feet, mix and a half feet, I would say -- maybe seven feet, yes.

Q: And this was right to the left of the front door?

A: To the left of the jam, yes.

Q: Now, did you go to any other portion of the house?

A: Yes, I went to the dining area and the kitchen.

Q: Now, once you were in the kitchen did you notice any unusual writings?

A: I noticed some writing on the door of the icebox.

Q: What did you observe to be written on the door of the icebox?

A: "Helter-Skelter."

Q: And did this also appear to be written in blood?



A: Yes, it did.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have here Exhibit 206.

May it be remarked Exhibit 206 for the purposes of his trial?

THE COURT: That has already been marked.

MR. KAY: Has it? Thank you.

Q: Sergeant Cline, I show you Exhibit 206. Do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: Does that show "Helter-Skelter" on the refrigerator door?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that an accurate photograph?

A: Yes.

Q: In other words, "Helter-Skelter," "Rise," and "Death to Pigs," the three photographs all appear to you to be accurate photographs of how the scene looked when you saw it on the night of August the 10th?

A: That's correct.

Q: Where was the writing, "Death to Pigs," and "Rise" in relation to the bodies of Leno and Rosemary LaBianca, if you could step to the Exhibit 201 and point out for the jury exactly where they were?

A: The wall is in the area here -- this is where the "Death to Pigs" was written on this wall.

Q: Now, let's see if we can describe that; That would be --

THE COURT: The north wall of the living room.

Q BY MR. KAY: -- of the living room?

A: And the body of Mr. LaBianca, was in this area here.

Q: Where it says "Spot"?

A: Right.

Q: Between the two sofas?

A: Right; and from this area the body of Mrs. LaBianca was in this location here, in relation to that "Death to Pigs."

Q: Now, what about "Rise"?

A: "Rise" was right over this door here; and, of course, the same relation; the male body was here and the female body was here.

THE COURT: Is that the southeast room of that building?

THE WITNESS: Southwest, your Honor.

THE COURT: Not where you found "Rise"?

THE WITNESS: No, that's correct, yes.

THE COURT: Southeast?

THE WITNESS: Southeast; it would be here, the body; the male body here and the female body here.

Q BY MR. KAY: I notice in the living room here it says "Front door" and then just to the right of that there is a "R"; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: That is about the general location where you found the word "Rise"?

A: That is correct.

Q: Now, you see on the diagram that there is a kitchen here. Where was the refrigerator located?

A: At the very -- at this right here, at this location here.

Q: It is marked "R-e-f-r-i-g."

A: Yes.

Q: And that refers to the refrigerator that you found the word "Helter skelter" to be written on?

A: That is correct.

THE COURT: You have been referring to exhibit 201.

MR. KAY: That is correct, your Honor. Thank you.

Q: Sergeant, did you preserve the scene until the fingerprint men and the photographic unit arrived?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Did you tell everyone else to get out of the house besides yourself?

A: There was no one in the house but myself.

I entered the house and had my uniformed personnel seal the area and I was the only one that entered at that time.

Q: Now, did you notice anything to be wrong with any of the windows in the house?

A: Only one window and that was in the living room.

Q: What type of a window was that?

A: Those were louvre-type windows.

Q: What did you notice to be wrong with the louvred window in the living room?

A: One louvre had been taken out and stood on end and leaned against the wall.

Q: Approximately how large was this louvered window?

A: Oh, four, four and a half inches wide, about two and a half feet long, maybe two feet.

Q: In other words then just by removing that louvred window a person couldn't get into the house that way, could they?

A: No. The screen was still intact on the outside.

Q: Was the screen damaged in any way?

A: No, it was not.

Q: Approximately how long were you at the scene?

A: Two and a half hours, approximately.

Q: And did detective Sgt. Galindo arrive while you were there?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you remove any item of evidence at all from the scene?

A: None.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, do you have the other photographs there?

THE COURT: Yes.

MR. KAY: Thank you.

Counsel, may it be stipulated that the female depicted in exhibit 93, 212, and 213 is Rosemary LaBianca?

MR. KEITH: Yes.

MR. KAY: And may it be stipulated that the male depicted in exhibit 91 is Leno LaBianca?

MR. KEITH: So stipulated.

MR. BUBRICK: Yes.

MR. KAY: Thank you.

Nothing further

CROSS EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH

Q: Did the inscriptions on the walls appear to you to have been written by the same person, and on the refrigerator door also?

MR. KAY: That calls for a conclusion, your Honor.

THE COURT: Did the letters appear similar?

THE WITNESS: It appeared similar, yes.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Did any handwriting expert arrive at the scene while you were there preserving it?

A: I have no idea, counselor. I left before some of them got there.

Q: Were there any chairs in the living room?

A: Yes.

Q: Addressing your attention to exhibit 204 for identification, showing the inscription "Death to the pigs," directly below appears some kind of a picture.

Do you see that? It is a brown painting of some kind.

A: Yes.

Q: And was that brown painting resting on the floor when you first arrived at the scene in the condition that it is now?

A: Yes. That is a burlap type material with a painting on it and it is, as you see it there, it is resting on the floor standing on end.

Q: And what is it resting against?

A: It is leaning against I believe it was a small table, I am not sure, or possibly it could have been a chair. I am not sure but I think there was a service table there, a small table where you leave -- I think this lamp was standing on that table.

Q: Just to identify the burlap painting further, you see a red "X" -- not a "X," a check mark.

A: Yes.

Q: Somebody has placed on the photograph itself.

A: Yes.

Q: And there is also a rectangle drawn in red above the inscription to which you have referred. That was something that was placed on this photograph for whatever

purpose we don't know, but at any rate that wasn't on the wall at the time?

A: No, it was not, no.

Q: And the same with the red check mark?

A: That is correct.

Q: That is something that has been placed on the photograph, obviously?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you observe any picture hanger on the wall by this inscription which we have been talking about?

A: There was a nail in the wall.

Q: Is that visible in this photograph?

A: I am not sure if it is or not.

It seems to me it was up in this area some place.

Q: By "this area," you are referring to within the area outlined by this red ink?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Was the ambulance leaving with Mr. LaBianca in it when you called it back?

A: No. He had just given us a copy of the ambulance slip, which is the pink slip and then, of course, they don't remove the body until -- they don't. The Coroner removes the body.

Q: Referring again to 204, were there any chairs or tables or sofas or couches below this inscription "Death to pigs" that doesn't show up in the photograph?

A: There was -- I think there was a small table that this lamp was resting on, a short table, but I don't recall any chair being in this vicinity, or high table, so to speak.

Q: You weren't one of the investigating officers assigned to the LaBianca case, I take it?

A: No, I was not.

Q: Did you actually measure the height of these inscriptions "Death to pigs" and "Rise"?

A: No, I did not.

Q: So your six and a half feet to seven feet is an approximation?

A: Just an estimate, yes.

Q: Was anything at all disturbed in the master bedroom where you discovered Mrs.

LaBianca while you were there?

A: Yes.

Q: What was that?

A: The end table on the left side of the bed, two of the drawers were open and there was some papers on the floor, two \$1 bills. The lamp was turned over and lying on the floor.

Q: You say that there were two \$1 bills lying on the floor?

A: Yes.

Q: And the photographs which you identified, were they taken while you were there? These are the photographs of the master bedroom, showing --

A: Some of them were taken when I was there, but the majority of them, I was on the exterior of the home.

Q: Those photographs, then, show how the place looked, that bedroom, for instance --

A: Yes.

Q: -- looked when you first saw it; is that a fair statement?

A: The portions of it that are portrayed in those photos, yes.

Q: Do the photographs show the dollar bills lying on the floor?

A: The photo that I was shown here be the district attorney did not depict that.

Q: They do depict the lamp that was turned over, do they not?

A: Yes.

Q: At least, one of them does?

A: One of them does.

Q: The things that you observed that were disturbed were the lamp and a table and this drawer that had been pulled out?

A: Well, the drawer and the little end table are all the same unit; the drawer was in that end table.

Q: I see.

A: It hadn't been moved, the drawer had just been pulled out and the papers were on the floor.

Q: When you speak of an end table, I'm going to show you Exhibit 212 and ask you

if that is the end table to which you are referring, which is shown in the upper part of the photograph by the lamp?

A: No, this is the right side of the bed. The end table is on the left side, over here as you enter.

Q: So there is no photograph of this end table that you were shown, at any rate, at this proceeding?

A: Not at this proceeding, no.

Q: Is that something that is turned over by the lamp, which is obviously on the floor?

A: Well, that was the stand for the lamp; that is turned over.

Q: At least, appeared to you that that table that is on its side supported the lamp?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, was the end table that you spoke of turned over, also --

A: No.

Q: -- on its side?

A: It was upright.

Q: There was just a drawer that was pulled out?

A: Partially open, yes.

Q: And the drawer wasn't on the floor, it was still inside the table, but it was just partially open; is that correct?

A: Yes, that's correct.

MR. KEITH: I have nothing further.

MR. KAY: Just a few questions, your Honor.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY

Q: Sgt. Cline, on this photograph that Mr. Keith showed you, Exhibit 204, with the writing "Death to Pigs," did it appear to you that this painting, which I believe you said was burlap --

A: Yes.

Q: Did it appear to you that the painting once was hung on the wall where the writing "Death to Pigs" is in this photograph?

A: Yes, I assumed that it was.

Q: In other words, the painting was approximately the same size as the words

"Death to Pigs"?

A: Approximately, yes.

Q: A long painting?

A: Yes, it is an oblong.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have here a large photograph marked Exhibit 200.

May it be remarked Exhibit 200 for the purposes of this trial?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: Sgt. Cline, I show you Exhibit 200, which is an aerial photograph, and I show you the house in the middle of the photograph, do you recognize that to be the LaBianca home?

A: It appears to be the home, yes.

Q: In other words, there is a long driveway in front of it?

A: Yes, and a large wall next door -- or, bordering the drive.

THE COURT: Is the LaBianca home marked on there?

MR. KAY: Yes.

THE COURT: How is it marked?

MR. KAY: Well, there is an open door and it looks like blue or purple, and then there is something in red which probably says, "LaBianca residence," but it's faint.

MR. BUGLIOSI: "LaBianca residence."

MR. KAY: It is faint, but it says, "LaBianca residence."

THE COURT: Can you circle that with red now, the LaBianca residence?

MR. KAY: I will circle it with a red grease pencil.

THE COURT: Fine.

MR. KAY: No further questions.

THE COURT: Thank you, Sergeant, you may be excused.

MR. KAY: People call as their next witness, Detective Danny Galindo.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in this cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.



DANNY GALINDO,

called as a witness by the people, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you. Be seated and would you state and spell your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Danny Galindo, D-a-n-n-y; G-a-l-i-n-d-o.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY

Q: Sgt. Galindo, what is your occupation and assignment?

A: I am a police officer for the City of Los Angeles, assigned to Robbery-Homicide Division.

Q: And how long have you been a police officer in the City of Los Angeles?

A: 25 years, one month and two weeks.

Q: When are you going to retire?

A: Right after this case is over.

Q: Sgt. Galindo, now directing your attention to August the 10th and 11th, 1969, what was your assignment?

A: I was working on Robbery-Homicide Division.

Q: And did you have occasion on those dates to go to the address at 3301 Waverly Drive, and more specifically on August the 11th, 1969, did you go there?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And approximately what time did you arrive there?

A: Approximately 1300 hours -- I am sorry -- about 1:00 o'clock in the morning.

Q: You are not in the army now.

A: 1:00 o'clock in the morning.

Q: What, if anything, did you do when you first arrived there?

A: I talked to Inspector McCauley and other policemen who had been at the scene ahead of me.

Q: Now, during the daylight hours of August the 11th, 1969, did you direct certain aerial photographs to be taken of the LaBianca residence?

A: Yes.

Q: Sgt. Galindo, I show you Exhibit 200, and directing your attention to the

residence that is encircled in red with a red grease pencil, in the middle, do you recognize that to be the LaBianca residence?

A: Yes, sir, I do.

Q: Is this one of the aerial photographs that you directed to be taken?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Now, also during the daylight hours of August the 11th, do you perform a search of the grounds at 3301 Waverly and the grounds adjacent to the residence?

A: I directed a search to be made.

Q: What were you looking for?

A: Weapons, clothing, anything of evidentiary value that could be determined was associated to the tragedy at that location.

Q: Did you find any weapons, either knives, guns or anything else?

A: Not without the premises; I did within the premises.

Q: Did you find anything at all outside the residence as far as bloody clothing or knives or any type of weapons?

A: No, we cleaned up the yard fairly well, improved the ecology somewhat, but nothing that was found.

Q: Well, I take it that none of the other officers, then, found anything, either?

A: No, sir, they didn't.

Q: Well, were any other clothes, any other bloody clothes found other than the clothes that Mr. and Mrs. LaBianca were wearing at the time they were murdered?

A: Not to my knowledge, no, sir.

Q: So when you say you found clothing inside, you are referring to the clothes that Mr. and Mrs. LaBianca were wearing?

A: Weapons and clothes within the premises, yes.

Q: Sgt. Galindo, I show you exhibit 91. Do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, sir, I do.

Q: Is that a photograph of Mr. LaBianca?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: And did he look that way when you arrived at the scene?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did you notice that there is something protruding from Mr. LaBianca's abdomen?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you determine what that was?

A: Yes.

Q: What was it?

A: It was a serving fork from a carving set.

MR. KAY: I have here, your Honor, exhibit 207. May it be remarked 207?

THE COURT: It has already been marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: Sgt. Galindo, I show you exhibit 209. Do you recognize that?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: All right.

Was that the fork that was protruding from Mr. LaBianca's abdomen?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And about how far was this fork, if we turned it in this manner, about how far was this fork stuck into Mr. LaBianca's abdomen?

A: It was pushed in all the way to the bifurcation of the two tines.

Q: In other words, to this point right here, the bifurcation of the two tines?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever make a search of the LaBianca home to determine whether or not there were any other kitchen utensils that appeared to be similar to the fork that you found protruding from Mr. LaBianca's abdomen?

A: Yes, sir, I did.

Q: Did you find any?

A: Yes, sir.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have here a brown manila envelope marked exhibit 214.

May it be remarked exhibit 214 for the purpose of this trial?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

MR. KAY: I am going to take this back to the desk here so we don't get it mixed up.

Q: Sgt. Galindo, I removed from this envelope four kitchen utensils. Do you recognize these?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: And did you find these in the LaBianca home?

A: Yed. I found them in the top drawer just to the right of the stove in the kitchen in the LaBianca home.

Q: And do they have exactly the same design and handles as the fork that you found protruding from Mr. LaBianca's abdomen?

A: Yes. They are all a set.

THE COURT: Keele product; is that correct?

THE WITNESS: I think so.

MR. KAY: It says Flint.

Q: Did you find any newspapers lying on the coffee table in front of Mr. LaBianca's body?

A: Yes. There was a major portion of the Sunday Times laying on the coffee table and a piece of the paper was also on the floor.

Q: In other words, these had the date August the 10th on them?

A: Yes, sir, they did.

Q: Did you notice anything to be wrapped around Mr. LaBianca's neck?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What was that?

A: That was the lamp cord, rather whitish lamp cord, about 14 gauge wire, and it reached from, the male end of the plug reached from his neck, and the other end, it was still connected to a rather massive lamp that was sitting on top of a round coffee table or end table.

Q: Is that the white lamp that is depicted in this photograph, exhibit 91?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: And there appears to be a white cord that goes in this photograph underneath a white sofa pillow?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: So, in other words, one end was still connected to this white lamp and the other end was wrapped around Leno LaBianca's neck?

A: That is right.

Q: Did you notice Mr. LaBiana's head to be in anything?

A: Later when I removed the pillow, I noticed that it was, that there was a pillow slip covering his entire head.

Q: In other words, had the entire pillow slip been pulled over his head?

A: It was completely enveloping his head and part of his neck.

Q: Was the cord tied around the pillow case, around the neck portion?

A: I don't remember.

The neck area was rather bloody and difficult to determine exactly how the wire -- you could see that the wire was wrapped around his neck.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have exhibit 210 here. May it be remarked 210 for identification for the purpose of this trial. It is a knife.

THE CLERK: Previously marked.

THE COURT: It has already been marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: Sgt. Galindo, I show you exhibit 210. Where did you see that, if anywhere, before for the first time?

A: The first time I saw that knife was at the morgue at the Coroner's office in the hands of Dr. Katsuyama.

Q: Did you notice whether in the LaBianca residence there were any other knives that looked like that?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And were there?

A: Yes, there were. There was a whole set of them.

Q: I take it that you never did see this knife actually at the LaBianca residence; is that true?

A: That is true.

Q: You didn't see it until Mr. LaBianca's body was taken to the Coroner's office?

A: That is true.

Q: Did you observe a Coroner to come out to the LaBianca house while Mr. LaBianca's body was still there?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you notice the Coroner turn Mr. LaBianca's body over so that he would be

lying on his stomach?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: That was after the fork had been removed, I take it?

A: Yes.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have here a photograph, exhibit 90.

May it be remarked exhibit 90 for the purpose of this trial?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: Sgt. Galindo, I show you people's exhibit No. 90. Do you recognize what is depicted in that photograph?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: What is depicted?

A: It shows the back of Leno LaBianca and some leather thongs wrapped around his wrist and appears to be wearing a gold or gold colored wrist hand of some kind and bloody clothing and his blue pajamas.

Q: In other words, his wrists were tied together behind his back?

A: Yes, they were.

Q: With what appeared to be leather thongs?

A: Yes, sir; they looked like leather shoe laces, from boots.

MR. KAY: Your Honor, I have here exhibit 92.

May it be remarked exhibit 92 for the purposes of this trial?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. KAY: Now, Sgt. Galindo, after you removed the white little throw pillow, the sofa pillow from the head area of Leno LaBianca, I show you exhibit 92.

Is this what you observed?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: So, in that photograph it does appear that the cord is wrapped around the pillow case which is around Mr. LaBianca's head?

A: It appears to be going that way. However, I get a better glimpse of it when the body was turned over, and there was no question then that the cord was wrapped around his neck.

The cord seems to get lost into the pillow slip in this photograph.

Q: Now, did you notice whether or not there was anything written on the stomach of Leno LaBianca?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And is that depicted in this photograph, exhibit 92?

A: Partially; almost all of the lettering appears.

Q: And what is the words that is written there?

A: W-a-r.

Q: War?

Did you determine what it appeared to be written with?

A: No; however, it appeared as though it had been done with some very sharp instrument because it left a rather large, angry welt along the lines of the markings.

THE COURT: In other words, that was not painted on, that was carved into the stomach, is that it, these letters?

THE WITNESS: It was more -- it appeared to be more superficial, but a little deeper than superficial, your Honor.

THE COURT: But not painted on; those letters were not painted on?

THE WITNESS: Oh, no, they were scratched in there, scratched right into the flesh.

Q BY MR. KAY: Did it appear to you that something like one of the tines of this fork could have done that?

A: It is quite possible, yes.

Q: Were those scars where the word "war" was, was they dry at the time you observed the body or were they still moist?

A: No, they were dry, bloody dry.

THE COURT: Are you going to another topic now?

MR. KAY: This would be a good point, your Honor.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen, we will recess at this time until 9:30 tomorrow morning.

Once again, do not form or express any opinion in this case; do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else; please keep an open mind.

Sergeant, you are directed to return at 9:30 tomorrow morning.

(At 4:00 o'clock p.m. a recess was taken until Tuesday, August 24, 1971 at 9:30 a.m.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, counsel and the defendant are present.

You may proceed.

MR. BUGLIOSI: People call Brooks Poston.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

BROOKS POSTON,

called as a witness by the People, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Take the stand. Be seated.

Would you state and spell your name, please?

THE WITNESS: Brooks Poston, B-r-o-o-k-s P-o-s-t-o-n.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: What is your present occupation?

A: Handyman in Shoshonee.

Q: You live in Shoshonee, California?

A: Yes.

Q: That is S-h-o-s--

A: h-o-n-e-e.

Q: S-h-o-s-h-o-n-e-e?

A: Yes.

Q: That is a little town --

A: Just outside of Death Valley.

Q: How far from Bishop?

A: From Lone Pine it is about 156 miles and from Bishop I don't know how far that is from there, not too far.

Q: Are you a former member of Charles Manson's family?

A: Yes.



Q: When and where did you meet Mr. Manson for the first time?

A: In June of 1968 at Dennis Wilson's residence, 14400 Sunset Boulevard.

Q: Who was with Manson at that time?

A: A girl named Brenda McCann, Lynn Frome, Sandy Good, Diana Lake and another girl that left. I don't remember her name.

Q: Did you take up living at Wilson's residence?

A: Yes.

Q: From what period of time?

A: About two to three weeks.

Q: Did Manson and these girls you referred to, did they also live there during that period of time?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson and the girls eventually leave Wilson's residence?

A: Yes.

Q: When?

A: In June of '68.

Q: Did you leave with them?

A: Yes.

Q: Where did you and Manson and the girls go?

A: To Spahn's movie ranch.

Q: This was in June of '68?

A: Yes.

Q: How long did you stay at Spahn Ranch with the family?

A: I was at the Spahn Ranch until October the 31, 1968.

Q: What were your duties there as a member of the family?

A: Shoveling manure in the barns and took care of the horses and rented them out. I was a cowboy.

Q: Do you know the defendant Charles Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: When and where did you meet Charles Watson for the first time?

A: In August 1968.

Q: At Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: And he became a member of the family approximately around that time?

A: Later. He arrived with another man.

Q: Dean Moorehouse?

A: Yes, Dean Moorehouse. Then I believe he accompanied Dean to Dean's trial in Ukiah and then both he and Dean came back.

Q: In September 1968?

A: Yes.

Q: And then Watson became a member of the family?

A: Yes.

Q: What did Tex Watson normally do around the Spahn Ranch?

A: He worked on George's cars and trucks.

Q: By that do you mean George Spahn?

A: The owner of the ranch.

Q: The 83-year old blind owner of the ranch?

A: Yes, and on some of Charlie's cars. Charlie would bring cars that were all torn apart and Tex would do what he could to get them going again.

Q: Did Manson and his family ever leave Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: When was the first time they left?

A: The family as a whole left on October 31st.

Q: 1968?

A: Yes.

Q: Where did the family move to?

A: Barker's Ranch.

Q: That is in Inyo County, California?

A: Yes.

Q: And did anyone stay behind at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes, Lynn Frome --

Q: That is Squeaky?

A: Yes. Squeaky and Katie, Patricia Krenwinkel, Sadie, and two or three others.

Q: And Manson and the rest of the family moved up to Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: While the rest of the family was at Barker Ranch, that is Manson, you and the others, did Manson ever leave Barker Ranch for Los Angeles and then return to Barkers?

A: Yes.

Q: When is the first time he did that?

A: He left in November.

Q: 1968?

A: Yes.

Q: When he returned to Barker Ranch did he say anything about what was happening in Los Angeles?

A: Yes, he said, "The shit's coming down."

Q: Did he say what he meant by that?

A: Yeah, that the revolution, the Black-White war was in the process of happening.

Q: This was in November of 1968?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he leave for Los Angeles several more times?

A: Yes.

Q: And when he returned, what would he say?

A: He also said the same thing; he said that it was really coming down fast.

Q: On New Year's Eve of 1969 did Manson again return to Barker Ranch from Los Angeles?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, I think where Manson went would be a conclusion of this witness, unless he was there, or knew about it.

THE COURT: I think he's correct, Mr. Bugliosi.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: On New Year's Eve of 1969 did Charles Manson again arrive at Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he say where he had been?

A: He said he had been down to the city.

Q: And when he said "city," what would he normally be referring to?

A: Los Angeles.

MR. BUBRICK: I think it would be a conclusion of this witness, your Honor.

THE COURT: Well, I will let it stand.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: What did he say when he returned on New Year's Eve of 1969?

A: He said, "Are you hep to what the Beatles are saying"?

Q: Who was he saying this to?

A: Well, the entire family, the ones that were there at that time.

Q: What did he say the Beatles were saying?

A: He said that the Beatles were telling it like it is and that they were programming the people to helter-skelter.

Q: Okay; so he started talking about helter-skelter; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And did he use helter-skelter in any particular type of a phrase?

How would "helter-skelter" come up in his speech; would he just say, "helter-skelter"?

A: No, when he is talking about the war, the revolution.

Q: I am not asking you what he meant by "helter-skelter," I am asking you how it would come up.

A: That's when he would say it, when he was talking about how it was coming down in the cities; he would say, "Helter-skelter is coming down fast."

Q: So the context in which he said it is, "Helter-skelter is coming down fast"?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, prior to New Year's he used to say the s-h-i-t was coming down fast?

A: Yes.

Q: But this particular occasion he came back to Barker and said, "Helter-skelter is coming down fast"?

A: Yes.

Q: So he substituted the word "helter-skelter" for "s-h-i-t"; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Thereafter it was always "helter-skelter is coming down"?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson ever tell you what helter-skelter meant?

A: Well, helter-skelter was supposed to be the same as the s-h-i-t, this race war that was coming down, that was to happen.

Q: The race war between blacks and white?

A: Yes.

Q: Did the family ever move from Barker Ranch?

A: Yes, in the early part of January, the first group left.

Q: 1969?

A: 1969.

Q: And where did they go?

A: They went to a house in the city and I was there with two other girls and then I went down about, oh, a week later and --

Q: What house is this?

A: To a house on Gresham Street in Canoga Park.

Q: How long did the family stay in the Gresham Street house in Canoga Park?

A: I was there for about one month and most of the family was there.

Q: While at Gresham Street did Mr. Manson ever discuss a white Beatles' album?

A: Yes, we had the album there.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here a double-white album previously marked People's 266.

May it be remarked People's 266?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Is this the double-white album that you referred to? Did it look like this on the outside?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson and the family frequently play this double-white album?

A: Yeah, it was played constantly.

Q: Is this the album?

A: Yes.

Q: You had a record player there?

A: Yes, stereo.

Q: Did Manson indicate what he thought the relationship was, if any, between himself, the Beatles and this double-white album?

A: Yeah; he said the Beatles were talking to him through the album.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I have here six sheets of paper, containing lyrics to songs.

May these six sheets of paper be collectively marked People's 267? They were previously marked 267 in the last trial.

THE COURT: They may be so marked.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I show you People's 267, Mr. Poston. Do you recognize these words as being the lyrics to the songs contained within that double-white album?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you recognize some of the songs -- "Helter-Skelter"?

A: Yes, "Helter-Skelter."

Q: "Dear Prudence"?

A: Yes.

Q: "Glass Onion"?

A: Yes.

Q: "I'm So Tired," songs like that?

A: Yes.

Q: Directing your attention to the song, "Helter-Skelter," you do recognize these lyrics?

A: Yes.

Q: And I notice that there are some lyrics in the song, "Look Out Helter-Skelter, Helter-Skelter, she's coming down fast."

Would that be a common phrase in Manson's family?

A: Yes.

Q: And members of the family were saying this all the time?

A: Yes

Q: What about Tex Watson, did you ever hear him say that, that helter-skelter was coming down fast?

A: Yeah.

Q: Frequently?

A: No, because I didn't talk to him that much; but whenever we would say something, it would generally be one of Charlie's phrases.

Q: So you did hear Mr. Watson say helter-skelter was coming down fast; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Directing your attention to the song, "Blackbird," did Mr. Manson ever indicate who blackbird was?

A: Yes, he said the blackbird was the black man.

Q: Directing your attention to some lyrics in the song, "Blackbird," blackbird singing in the dead of night, take these broken wings and learn to fly, all your life you were only waiting for this moment to arrive."

Do you remember those particular words to the song?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson ever tell you what he thought those words meant?

A: Yes, he said that the Beatles were telling the black man to rise up, to revolt, that now was the time.

Q: Black man to rise up against whom?

A: The white man.

Q: Directing your attention to the song, "Piggies," do you recall that song in the album?

A: Yes.

Q: Particularly directing your attention to the lyrics, "In their eyes there's something lacking, what they need's a damn good whacking"; did Mr. Manson ever tell you what those words meant?

A: Yeah.

Q: What did he say?

A: He said that the black man should whack the white man and it was the Beatles

were again telling the black man it is time to rise up and to put a stop to the white man, the whitey.

Q: Directing your attention to the last few lines in the song, it says, "Everywhere there's lots of piggies living piggy lives, you can see them out for dinner with their piggy wives clutching forks and knives to eat their bacon"; do you remember that verse?

A: Yes.

Q: Did members of the family sing that verse?

A: Well, members of the family used to sing verses out of all these songs.

Q: Did Mr. Manson ever place any particular interpretation on those words?

A: Not to me.

Q: There is a song in this double-white album called "Revolution 1"; is that correct? Not "Revelation 1" but "Revolution 1"; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And there are no words to that song; is that correct?

A: Those standard lyrics, as far as I remember.

Q: Did the family play that song frequently, "Revolution 1"?

A: Yeah, it was played quite a bit; people would sit in front of the speaker with their ear up to the speaker trying to catch all the phrases in the background, because the Beatles were supposed to be talking under the awareness of most people.

Q: Did Manson ever say that he heard a particular word in the background of "Revolution 1"?

A: He heard "Rise."

Q: R-i-s-e?

A: "R-i-s-e."

Q: Did you hear that word?

A: Well, after I started listening to it and after Charlie told me it was in there I heard it.

Q: You thought you heard it?

A: Yes.

Q: You, of course, have heard of Revelation 9?

A: Yes.



Q: A chapter in the last book of the New Testament?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson say that Revolution 9 had any relationship to Revelation 9?

A: Revelation 9 was supposed to be talking about the helter-skelter too, and that Revolution 9 was the Beatles way of saying that this is the time, that you better get ready because it is going to happen.

Q: Did Manson say that Revelation 9 spoke about helter-skelter too?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Revelation 9 say that, the chapter in the New Testament?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he say that referred to helter-skelter?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson ever discuss the relationship of anything between the Beatles and Revelation 9?

A: He said the Beatles were the four-headed locusts that were talked about in there?

Q: In Revelation 9?

A: Yes.

Q: While at Gresham, the Gresham Street address in Canoga Park, did Manson ever go into detail about the black-white conflict?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he discuss this with you?

A: Yes.

Q: And with several other members of the family?

A: It wasn't so much a discussion. He just told us.

Q: All right. Would this be in January or February of 1969?

A: About February '69 or early part.

Q: What did Mr. Manson say?

A: He said -- there was a bunch of the guys up in the bedroom on the top floor and he said that it is like God is sitting up and he is in his creation and he is looking at everything going on and he is tired of the games.

And it is like he says "Move" and everyone is jockeying into position for helter-skelter. And that what this amounts to is that the black man is going to rise up and revolt and complete Whitey's Karma, and that he is going to do this by coming out of the ghetto --

Q: The black man?

A: Yes -- and going into some rich piggy homes in the Bel Air and Hollywood districts and commit atrocious murders and smear blood on the wall and write "Pig" on the wall and this was designed to get the white man angered, so that he would run into the ghetto because of the viciousness of the murders.

Q: Who would run into the ghetto?

A: The white man.

Q: Would go after the black man?

A: Yes.

Q: You may continue.

A: And start shooting down the mongrels, in other words, the ones that weren't the true black man and the ones that the true black man didn't have any use for either, and that all it would do, all it would do is shoot the garbage man and the people who were with Whitey anyway, and that the real black man, the black Moselms, would be in the ghettos hiding and after the white man had done this, he would come out of the ghettos and he would say, "Look what you have done to my people. Help me."

Q: Who would come out of the ghettos?

A: The real black man, the Black Moslems, come out of the ghetto and say, "Look what you have done to my people. Help me."

And this would divide the white man into two factions and he said one faction would be the nigger lovers and the other faction would be -- well, the other faction would be the nigger haters.

Q: You may continue.

A: And these two groups would fight among each other until they wipe themselves out, or until only a few were left and then the black man would come out and he would destroy the rest of them, except for Charlie's people.

We were supposed to be in the desert in a hole and the group was supposed to grow to 144,000, and when the revolution was over and Blacky had cleaned up Whitey's mess,

which that was what he had always done, then Charlie and family would come back out of the hole and that the black man would turn everything over to Charlie, and that Charlie would scratch him on his fuzzy head and kick him in the ass and tell him to pick the cotton.

Q: Charlie would say this to the black man?

A: Yes.

Q: So during helter-skelter, during this black-white war, Charlie said that he and the family would be living in this hole in the desert?

A: Yes.

Q: And during helter-skelter the family would grow to 144,000 people?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he mention the twelve tribes of Israel?

A: Yes. He said like it was the Romans turn to be on the crosses and that we were the Christians and that we were like the original 12, would get back to the original 12 tribes.

Q: Which would be 144,000?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson ever discuss the relationship between the black man and the white man?

A: He said that the black man was Whitey's slave and that he was designed to fetch for him, that white man was closest to God and that the black man was put on earth to serve Whitey.

Q: So the ultimate result then of this helter-skelter, this black-white war, is that the black man would turn over the power to Charlie and his family?

A: Yes.

Q: Turn over the reins of power; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: When did Manson and his family leave the Gresham Street address?

A: In the last part of February of '69.

Q: Did certain members of the family go one place and others go somewhere else?

A: Yes. The family was split up.

Q: Where did you go?

A: I went back to Barker's Ranch in the desert.

Q: With anyone else?

A: A guy named T.J. and a girl named Juanita, Pooh Bear, Mary Brunner's baby.

Q: Where did the remainder go?

A: I understand they went to the Spahn's Ranch and that Chuck Green and Clem and someone else was supposed to stay at the Canoga Park house and keep it

Q: When was the next time you saw Manson and the family?

A: September '69.

Q: At Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you live with the family in a month or so?

A: Well, I didn't live with the family but they were in that area.

Q: You lived in the vicinity of the family?

A: They lived in the vicinity of us.

Q: Okay. At Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: And eventually you left Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: In October of 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know what date?

A: October the 2nd, 1969.

Q: Where did you go?

A: Shoshonee, California.

Q: You and who else?

A: Paul Crockett.

Q: I am sure Manson had many discussions with you about many subjects; is that correct?

A: They were seldom discussions.

Q: Well, he lectured or he spoke about many subjects?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he ever talk about the subject of death?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he say?

A: Told me a few times to die, to give it up. He said that death was only a game and that as long as you are willing to experience death, you don't have to, that you can live forever.

And that if you are afraid to die, then you will have to experience it, you know, have to go through it and when we came up to the desert, he said that he was going to go out in the desert and the desert was going to kill him and then he was going to come back and he was going to kill us one way or the other.

Q: Did he ever say anything about sin?

A: He had some songs that he had written. One of them, there was a line in it that said, "There ain't no crime. There ain't no sin."

Q: Did he ever say that there wasn't any wrong or there wasn't any right?

A: The same song has "There ain't no right or wrong."

Q: Did Manson frequently say that there was no right or wrong?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Charles Manson ever ask you to kill anyone?

A: Yes.

September '69.

Q: Where at?

A: At Barker's Ranch.

Q: Would you relate the circumstances of this particular conversation?

A: Charlie and I were in the lower house -- there was two houses there and he was talking to me about being with the family or not being with the family and he said, "If you are with us, you will take this knife," and he showed me it looked like a small machete -- "you will walk to Shoshonee and sneak into the sheriff's house and cut his throat."

Q: Did he actually leave the knife there?

A: Yes.

Q: He walked off?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you go into Shoshonee and do anything?

A: No.

Q: Why not?

A: Because I didn't want to.

Q: You didn't want to kill anyone?

A: No.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thank you. No further questions.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH

Q: Mr. Poston, did you believe in what Mr. Manson told you about helter-skelter?

A: At first it seemed pretty far out to me but then after a while it started making more and more sense because, I don't know, you can go out on the street and I could see people were up tight, and a lot of people were tense.

Q: Did you believe in the bottomless pit?

A: Well, I never thought that it really existed but I was going for it because it sounded like a good place to get away from everything.

Q: Did you try to look for the bottomless hole in Death Valley?

A: We all went around the hills looking for it.

Q: This was at Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: When you say "We all did," did that include Mr. Watson looking for the bottomless pit?

A: When we first got up there he had a guy named Cupid and Paul and Clem --

Q: Cupid is Beausoleil?

A: Yes.

Q: Go ahead.

A: And Clem and Paul Watkins and me and I think Tex got in on that trip too, Charlie took us walking around over the hills in back of Barker's Ranch and there was a couple of springs there and he was saying that, "Well, I'm sure that the entrance to the hole is inside that spring down underneath there because of the water," et cetera.

Q: So everybody that was there with Mr. Manson seriously looked for the

bottomless pit?

A: I don't know if they seriously looked for it but everybody said they were.

Q: Did anybody tell you while they were looking for the bottomless pit, "Well, I know this is a big joke but I am going to go along with the gag anyway; or words to that effect?

A: No.

Q: Manson had some hold over you, didn't he?

A: Yeah.

Q: And could you describe what you mean when you say he had a hold over you?

A: When I came in he said, "Give up your thoughts, submit, submit your will, give up your own identity. Do what your love says do. Live in love."

Believing that he was Jesus Christ I was trying to do the things that he asked or the things that he said.

Q: Did you do anything in particular to give up your ego and your life and your identity, some particular act?

A: Like how do you mean?

Q: At the Gresham Street house, for instance, did you just lay motionless for a few days or was that someone else?

A: That was another place; that was Spahn's Ranch.

Q: What did you do?

A: I didn't do anything. I just laid there. I was on acid.

Q: Three days?

A: I don't know if it was three days or not. I am not convinced that it was three days. It doesn't seem like three days to me. I laid down before the sun was going down and I got back up and the sun is just a little further down than it was.

THE COURT: Did you say you were on acid?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Did Charlie tell you to do this? Did Charlie Manson?

A: No, he didn't say for me to lay down.

Q: What did he say?

A: He said, "Give it up." He said, "Give up your thoughts."

Q: Did Manson tell you to give it up, give up your thoughts, more than once?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you hear Manson tell others to do the same, to give it up, and to give up your thoughts, in addition to you? Maybe not in those exact words but was the sense the same?

A: Yes. I have heard him talk a few times that way.

Q: When Manson talked to you, he was lecturing you; isn't that right?

A: Yes.

Q: And it wasn't just you alone. It was other members of the family at the same time; isn't that a fair statement?

A: Sometimes he would talk to me by myself. I assumed that he did that with most everybody.

Q: But sometimes did he talk with you together with other members of the family?

A: He would talk to all of us at times.

Q: This was usually in the evening, wasn't it?

A: Yes.

Q: And it was both at Gresham Street and Spahn Ranch?

A: And Barker's Ranch.

Q: And he talked to you?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Mr. Poston, did I hear right when you said you believed he was Jesus Christ?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Did other members of the family ever express to you or anybody in your presence that they believed that Manson was Jesus Christ?

A: So far as I know, no one ever said "Charlie is Jesus Christ."

Q: When you say "so far as I know," you mean --

A: Because I never heard anyone say it in those words until afterwards, until after I got out.

Q: Until after you left the family?

A: Yes.



Q: Then did other people tell you they also had thought he was Jesus Christ?

A: Yes.

Q: Who were these people?

A: Paul Watkins for one.

Q: Anybody else?

A: I guess not.

Q: When Manson was lecturing on these subjects that you have gone over with us, did all the people who were listening to him lecture appear to listen very attentively and hang on his every word?

A: I would say that most everyone was listening pretty close to what Charlie was saying. He was the center of attention when he was talking.

Q: Was Charlie Manson the one that told people what to do at Gresham Street and Spahn Ranch and Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Would you describe Charlie Manson as the leader of the family?

A: Yes.

Q: Would you describe him as more than a leader, almost a dictator? In other words, his word was law?

A: Well, he would put it out in such a way that you might get the idea that you didn't necessarily have to go along with it. Only he put it out in such a way that you felt you better go along with it.

Q: What would happen if you didn't go along with it or didn't you ever find out?

A: Well, I haven't been done in yet.

Q: This song that you told us about, is this a song -- I am not talking about the Beatles songs now -- but was this a song concerning the subject of sin that Manson wrote himself?

A: Yes.

Q: And did it go like this, Mr. Poston:

"There is no good.

"There is no bad.

"There is no crime.

"There is no sin."

A: No, not that way because I think Charlie was rhyming it. I am not even sure that the good and bad part came in that song.

Q: Well, were there other songs that Charles Manson wrote and sung that expressed this same idea, although in different words?

A: He wrote quite a few songs.

Q: Did any of them discuss, any of those songs, if you remember, discuss the concept of no sin or no good or no bad?

A: I don't remember if he had those lines -- that line in any of his other songs.

Q: Did he ever tell you it was all right to kill?

A: When he was up in the desert.

Q: And when was this?

A: '69, September --

Q: And --

A: He said --

Q: Did he tell just you, alone, or where there others present, that there was nothing wrong with killing people?

A: That was about the same time that he was going to Shoshonee and kill the sheriff.

Q: I understand that, but --

A: I mean, it was in the same --

Q: Did he express this thought -- excuse me, I didn't mean to talk at the same time; but, go ahead.

A: It was at the same time; in other words, it was a conversation, mentioned part of like he was leading up to it, what he finally told me.

Q: Was anybody else present besides you and Mr. Manson?

A: Well, he took me off down to the cabin to talk to me.

Q: Did you ever hear him tell other members of the family that there was nothing wrong with killing people, on other occasions?

Wasn't that part of his philosophy?

A: Let's see, "If you are willing to die, then you should be willing to kill."

Let's see, Brenda McCann was there on one of those -- she was one of them that was there.

Q: "When you are willing to die you should be willing to kill"?

A: Yeah.

Q: Was that part of a song Mr. Manson wrote or was it just simply part of his philosophy that he lectured you on?

A: Well, that was just one of the things that he told me.

Q: Did he discuss the subject of being willing to kill in front of other members of the family, in your presence?

A: That was that time when he used those words.

Q: That was what time, when he asked you to go to Shoshonee?

A: No, there was another time before that.

Q: Who was present on that occasion?

A: Brenda McCann -- I think Clem was there, I'm not sure.

Q: Can you tell us whether or not Watson would have private conversations, maybe not in your presence that you could hear, but appear to have private conversations with other members of the family on philosophical subjects --

A: Watson?

Q: Oh, no, Manson; if I said "Watson," I misspoke.

MR. KAY: That calls for conclusion, your Honor, if he didn't hear the conversations.

MR. KEITH: That's right; I'll withdraw the questions.

Q: When you first met Mr. Manson, that was at where, again, Dennis Wilson's house?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you see a gentleman by the name of Dean Moorehouse there?

A: That's who I arrived with.

Q: Ah, you knew Dean before?

A: Yes, I met Dean in Ukiah.

Q: And you and he traveled down to Southern California?

A: Yes.

Q: And how did you and Dean find your way to Dennis Wilson's house?

A: We came in on the Coast Highway 1 and went to Topanga Lane; Dean said that Charlie lived there.

He said he was looking for a guy named Charlie, and he went to a place called Topanga Lane, which is on Malibu; and we went down and Lynn came walking out of the house, Lynn Frome.

Q: Had you known her before?

A: No.

Q: All right.

A: But she knew Dean, and Dean said he was looking for Charlie and she said, "Okay," and she jumped in the car and she took us to Dennis Wilson's.

Q: And was Charlie at Dennis Wilson's at that time when you first arrived with Dean Moorehouse?

A: Yes.

Q: On either that occasion or some other occasion, did you see Dean Moorehouse kneel and kiss Charlie Manson's feet?

A: No, it wasn't that occasion; Charlie kissed his feet.

Q: Charlie --

A: Yeah, that was the first thing I saw Charlie do.

Q: Kiss Dean Moorehouse's feet?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did that have some kind of an unusual effect on you?

A: Well, to coin a phrase, it blew my mind.

Q: What do you mean by blew my mind?

A: Well, it was like a surprise, because he came walking out of the house -- I thought he was going to kick us out, because he came walking out of the house, really sternly, I guess; and he walked up and then he recognized Dean and he ran over and bent down and kissed his feet, hugged him and welcomed him.

Q: Did something happen at Dennis Wilson's place that made you want to stay with Charles Manson and his group?

A: Yes.

Q: And what was that?

A: That was the time that Dean knelt in front of Charlie.

Q: So the first time you met Charles Manson he knelt in front of Dean Moorehouse?

A: Yeah.

Q: But later on -- here's where I have gotten mixed up -- Dean Moorehouse knelt --

A: Yeah.

Q: -- in front of Manson?

A: Yeah.

Q: And what happened on that occasion?

A: Dean came up on his hands and knees like a little dog and he looked up at Charlie and Charlie was sitting on a couch and he was tuning his guitar, and he kind of glanced down at Dean and he said, "Are you willing to die?" And he looked back to his guitar and continued tuning; and Dean shook his head, "Yes," and Charlie said, "Then you can live forever." And I was sitting in a chair and I was on acid and I decided that was -- that was where I wanted to be.

Q: And so you decided to stay with Manson and his family after observing this episode --

A: Yes.

Q: -- between Dean and Charles Manson ?

Is that when you started to believe that Manson may have been Jesus Christ?

A: Yeah.

Q: And later on was that belief confirmed in some way; in other words, you really, truly believed --

MR. BUGLIOSI: "Confirmed"?

I will object on the grounds you don't mean what you say

THE WITNESS: I don't believe anymore -- so, it was stronger after.

Q BY MR. KEITH: That is what I mean.

A: As time went on, my feeling got stronger.

Q: What did Manson do to make your feeling grow stronger?

A: A lot of times he would go through his on-the-cross routine, like he'd stretch his hands back like this and moan.

Q: Indicating, for the record, that your hands are outstretched --

A: Yeah, and he'd moan.

Q: He would do what?

A: Moan, you know, "Oh," and go through things -- I suppose it is a sound you'd make if you had nails in your arm.

Q: Did he ever tell you that he had been on psilocybin?

A: Yes.

Q: That he had been on a psilocybin trip and that he actually was crucified on that trip?

A: Yes. He told us that he was on psilocybin, that he was laying on a mattress and he was with a girl named Mary and he felt it coming on and he fought it and he'd raise up but then it would get really strong and it would pull him back down onto the mattress and Mary was at his feet and she's crying and he's telling Mary, "Don't worry," that everything is all right and that he did that for quite a while.

He kept fighting it and finally he gave up, and he said it is like when he gave up it's like he went through something and when he came out he saw through everyone's eyes and that he saw the soldiers standing around, Roman soldiers, and that he felt the -- you know, while he was fighting it, he felt the spear in his side -- spear or sword -- and that he could feel the nails.

Q: Now, he was describing to you what he experienced on a drug trip, psilocybin?

A: Yes.

Q: You know what psilocybin is, don't you?

A: No.

Q: No?

A: No.

Q: You never tried psilocybin?

A: As far as I know, I haven't.

Q: Did Manson or anybody else tell you it was a psychedelic drug, something like LSD?

A: Well, I assumed that it was.

Q: You took LSD, did you not?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you take it at Dennis Wilson's?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you take it at Gresham Street?

A: No.

Q: Did you take it at the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you take it at the Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you go any other places with Manson and his group besides the places I have just enumerated?

A: The day they left Dennis Wilson's house they went to a place somewhere along the coast on a fire road, took a fire road entrance.

Q: Was that in the Topanga Canyon area, is you know?

A: I don't know, because I was in the back of a van, and the van didn't have too good of a windows in it, so I didn't see where we went, but we were on the coast.

Q: Well, did you stop someplace?

A: Well, when we finally got up to where there was a trailer -- there was one trailer, I don't know, there might have been two -- but there was on trailer sitting there and it was supposed to have been an old fire road.

Q: Did you live there for a while?

A: No, they just went there for just, like -- well, we left that night -- there for about two hours.

Q: Where did you go?

A: Went to Spahn's ranch.

Q: And that's where you settled?

A: Yes.

Q: Manson treated the girls in the family as if they were slaves, didn't he?

A: Not at first, it didn't seem to me that way.

Q: But later on at the Spahn Ranch did it seem that way?

A: Later on, after I saw him knock down a couple of girls, it became pretty well evident that if he wanted them to do something that he wanted it done.

Q: And you felt something of the same way, didn't you? In other words, you didn't cross Mr. Manson in any way except when he told you to go to Shoshonee and kill the sheriff?

A: Right.

Q: Did you see anybody else amongst the family members that disobeyed Manson?

A: No.

Q: Wouldn't it be fair to say that he had almost absolute control over every member of his family?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Calls for a conclusion, your Honor.

THE COURT: Those that you know of when you were there.

MR. BUGLIOSI: It is too broad a question, your Honor. I think it calls for a conclusion. How does he know the state of mind, let's say, of someone else, unless that person told him?

THE COURT: He can tell what it appeared to him to be like.

MR. BUGLIOSI: It calls for a gross conclusion on the part of this witness.

THE COURT: Overruled.

MR. BUGLIOSI: About absolute control.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Can you answer that question?

A: I don't know if it was absolute control but I know that he was more or less in charge, that if he wanted something done or if he wanted something, it generally got that way.

I don't know if he had absolute control, but it seemed like on some of the people he had pretty good control.

Q: Did you see much of Charles Watson at either Dennis Wilson's or the Spahn Ranch or Barker Ranch or any other place you may have gone?

A: No. I didn't see a whole lot of him.

Q: Did you ever see, when you did see Mr. Watson, did you ever see him ingest any LSD or use marijuana or hashish or psilocybin?

A: Yes.

Q: Could you tell us what you have seen in that connection? In other words, can you tell us when and where you can remember you saw Watson take drugs?



A: I know he got stoned up in the desert in September when he came up there.

Q: Do you know what drug he used to get stoned on?

A: Marijuana.

Q: In September, 1969, did you see any acid around the Barker Ranch?

A: They didn't offer me any then.

Q: I take it you didn't see any around?

A: No.

Q: When you say "they," to whom do you refer, generally?

A: The people that were still in the family like for instance, I was talking about Tex being stoned, there was Brenda, Bruce, a few other people were up there, but they didn't make any overtures toward me to take any.

Q: Did you use marijuana at the Barker Ranch?

A: Not in September.

Q: How do you know that Mr. Watson was stoned? Perhaps you could describe his symptoms.

A: I assumed he was stoned because I saw him a few times at Spahn's Ranch when he would be stoned, because we all would be stoned then and he had --

Q: Excuse me?

A: He had particular mannerisms.

Q: That is what my very next question was: What were his mannerisms?

A: I suspected.

When he would get stoned, he would sit with his mouth sort of open and his eyes real wide and he would just generally sit there.

Q: How many occasions would you say you have seen Mr. Watson manifest these symptoms of being stoned? Just about every time you saw him?

A: No.

Q: Often?

A: No, not that often. I saw him about four times, I think, at Spahn's Ranch and once or twice before we left the Barker's Ranch, the first time in February of '69 up there, and then that once in September of '69.

Q: And he would sit there with his mouth open and his eyes having an odd glaze, or

something to that effect?

A: Well, they were, they would be really wide, like, I don't know, he would open them like he was seeing something that blew his mind, that was really surprising, or that he was waking up.

Q: Did you travel with any -- by travel, I mean were you close friends with any particular person or persons within the Manson group, such as Paul Watkins?

A: No, I wasn't. I didn't have any real tight friends there because, like I say, I was the bottom of the totem pole, so far as the rank went. Like I wasn't as strong as the other guys, strong inside. Like Charlie would say, you have got to be strong and I just wasn't there.

Q: So you didn't pal around with any of the other guys?

A: No, not too much.

Q: How about any of the girls?

A: No. I talked to Clem a few times before we went up there. We were still at Spahn's Ranch. I talked -- I didn't really talk, but Sandy Good, talked to her a few times because she was going through similar changes as I was.

Q: When you use the term "going through changes," that is kind of a common expression --

A: Yes.

Q: -- isn't it?

A: Yes, among the family.

Q: Among the family?

A: Yes.

Q: What do you mean by that?

A: Going through changes is like experiencing what you don't want to experience or getting through all of your inhibitions, getting rid of your hang-ups, giving up your thoughts.

Q: Anything else on the subject of going through changes, or have you covered this subject?

A: That covers pretty good on it.

Q: Were you able to give up your thoughts?

A: No.

Q: You didn't? Was there a time when you sort of began to believe that maybe Manson wasn't the Jesus Christ that you had originally come to believe he was?

A: Yes.

Q: And was this at or about the time of the incident when he told you to go to Shoshonee and kill the sheriff?

A: No. It was before that.

Q: So you had become somewhat disenchanted with Mr. Manson as a person and as a messiah a little bit before him telling you to go to kill the sheriff?

A: Yes, quite a while before.

Q: How much before?

A: About five months before.

Q: And this would be sometime in April, 1969?

A: Around April was when I really started looking at it.

Q: You started to question some of Manson's concepts, I take it, about that time?

A: Yes.

Q: And by the time --

A: Not necessarily his concepts, but what he said, you know, sounded good, but what went on wasn't necessarily that way.

Like he talked about freedom but, boy, I felt anything but free.

Q: So you began to believe Manson wasn't practicing what he was preaching? Is that a fair way to put it?

A: Pretty close, yes.

Q: And so by the time September rolled around and you were ordered to go kill the sheriff, you weren't about to do any such thing, were you?

A: No.

Q: Because by that time you had realized that Manson was something of a fraud, hadn't you?

A: Well, I figured that I had been deceived through my own stupidity, through my -- I was pretty gullible because I didn't have much experience when I met Charlie.

Q: But you came to your senses?

A: Through help.

Q: When you say "through help," is this through self-help or through talking to other people?

A: Both.

Q: And did you go to a psychiatrist?

A: No.

Q: But you talked to other, wiser people?

A: Well, I talked to a man who happened to come up there and I started telling him, like -- that was my first opportunity to try to play Charlie, when I was up there, and this would be like --

Q: Oh, we have got to --

A: In February.

Q: -- keep the record straight. When you say "up there," where were you?

A: In Barker's Ranch.

Q: This was in February of 1969?

A: Yeah, in February, about the last week of February or the first week of March.

Q: All right, go ahead.

A: A guy came up there and I started trying to play Charlie, because all this time, like I knew I wasn't Charlie --

Q: But did Charlie try to make everybody identify with him as if they were him and he were them?

A: Yeah, he said, you know, "I'm you and you are me and it's all one, we are all the same."

Q: This was part of Charlie Manson's philosophy, wasn't it?

A: Yeah.

Q: And a very integral part of his philosophy?

A: Yes.

Q: This oneness concept; isn't that right?

A: Yes.

Q: Okay.

Now, somebody came up in February or March of 1969 and you talked to this person; is

that right?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were playing Charlie Manson at that time?

A: Yeah, I was trying to play out Charlie's programs, like I knew I didn't have it, really, but what I could do is use all the words that I had heard.

Q: When you say, "Charlie Manson's programs," did Charlie Manson try to program or computerize you, turn you into a robot?

A: He didn't try, but he did a good job.

Q: Okay.

Now, who was the gentleman that came up in February or March of 1969 to Barker Ranch?

A: Paul Crockett.

Q: And Paul Crockett is a miner or was a miner at that time; isn't that right?

A: They were prospecting, him and another guy.

Q: And you still know Paul Crockett, don't you?

A: Yes, I live with him.

Q: He lives in Shoshonee -- obviously, if you live with him?

A: Yeah.

Q: And did Paul Crockett help you?

A: I would say so.

Q: Did you seek help from him or did Paul Crockett volunteer?

A: No, I didn't at first. What I did at first was like I'd tell Paul that well, "Helter-skelter is coming down and you have got to get your shit together because black is going to rise and revolt."

I was using all the words that Charlie told me.

Q: You were Charlie?

A: I was trying to play Charlie; and then he'd look at me as if I was some sort of moron --

Q: Well, you were, weren't you?

A: Obviously -- and he's say, "Well, you can go for that if you want to, but I don't necessarily want some of it."

Q: So did you --

A: So --

Q: Excuse me.

Did you continue your relationship with Mr. Crockett that you had formed in February and March of 1969?

A: Yeah, because he surprised me, because he's the first one I ever heard say no to it.

I didn't know you could say no to it.

Q: Say no to what, sir?

A: To the programs, to the helter-skelter. He would say, "You can go for it," but that he didn't have to go for it. He didn't have to go for the idea of it.

Q: So in September when you were told to kill the Sheriff by Manson, you were strong enough within yourself to tell Manson, "Go stuff it," or words to that effect?

A: No, I didn't say anything, I just looked at him because at that time I figured it was better to keep my mouth shut.

Q: You were still a little frightened of him?

A: Oh, it was like -- it was more like being smart, like I was afraid, later on.

At first when Charlie got there I just, like it made me mad because he was coming up and he was always coming around bothering us; he'd come over constantly and interfere with what we were doing.

Q: When is this?

A: In September '69.

Q: All right.

A: And they started carrying knives, and this was like, I hadn't seen them with knives; I had a report during the interim between February of '69 and September of '69 that they were playing with machine guns, and that surprised me; and then he comes up and they are wearing knives.

Q: Who was wearing knives?

A: The guys and some of the girls, even.

Q: Did anybody tell you, Manson or any of his followers, that helter-skelter had actually come down?

A: No, it was still -- well, Tex told me once at the swimming pool, he said, "Whew, it's coming down fast, brother"; so it was still coming down, it hadn't hit, I guess.

Q: Is that when -- you said, "Swimming pool"; is that a swimming pool at the Barker Ranch?

A: There is a little swimming pool at the Barker's Ranch.

Q: Did you see Barbara Hoyt at Barker Ranch in September of '69?

A: Yes.

Q: And what was she like?

A: Well, to me, most of the young girls looked kind of afraid.

Q: Did you ever hear Charles Manson describe how to kill somebody with a knife or gun or any other weapon?

A: Describe how to kill?

Q: Yes, sort of a dry run.

A: No, he just told us that he could kill us, that he was going to.

THE COURT: Mr. Keith, I think it is a good time.

We will recess, ladies and gentlemen, till tomorrow morning at 9:30.

During the recess do not form or express any opinion in this case, do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else and please keep an open mind.

9:30 tomorrow morning.

(At 4:00 o'clock p.m. a recess was taken until Thursday, August 26, 1971 at 9:30 a.m.)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, THURSDAY, AUGUST 26, 1971

9:40 A.M.

--oOo--

THE COURT: Good morning.

THE JURORS: Good morning.

THE COURT: Gentlemen.

People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors are present; all counsel and the defendant are present.

BROOKS POSTON,

resumed the stand and testified further as follows:

THE CLERK: You have been previously sworn.

Would you retake the stand and state your name for the record?

THE WITNESS: Brooks Poston.

CROSS EXAMINATION (Resumed) BY MR. KEITH

Q: Mr. Poston, at the close of yesterday's session, we were discussing generally your relationship with a gentleman by the name of Paul Crockett; do you remember that?

A: Yes.

Q: And Mr. Crockett, I believe you told us, was a prospector or miner living in the Death Valley area; is that correct?

A: He had come there from Carlsbad, New Mexico, and --

Q: And you first met him in -- sometime in the early months of 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: And you met him in the Death Valley area?

A: At Barker's Ranch.

Q: And did Mr. Crockett, to your knowledge, also meet Mr. Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: And were there conversations, to your knowledge, between Manson and Crockett?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, at some time in 1969, did Mr. Crockett tell you that he did not believe what Mr. Manson had been lecturing the family members about?

MR. KAY: Well, that calls for hearsay, your Honor.

THE COURT: I didn't get that question.

(Record read.)

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. KEITH: At some time in 1969 did you become disenchanted with Mr. Manson's philosophy of life?

A: Yes.

Q: Did this come about in some manner through your association with Mr. Crockett? Without going into what he may have told you?



A: Yes.

Q: In other words, this was one factor, your association with Mr. Crockett and your disenchantment with Manson's ideas and way of life?

A: I had wanted to leave Charlie for two or three months previous to that but it is like I couldn't do it.

Q: Two or three months previous to what?

A: Previous to the time that I met Mr. Crockett.

Q: Did Mr. Crockett give you some kind of inner strength to oppose Manson or combat him?

A: The way he would talk about the things that Charlie said, in other words, I would be saying the words that Charlie used and he would make it clear to me that he wasn't necessarily going for it.

In other words, that is the first person I had ever seen who hadn't. Just like I figured well, if he doesn't have to go for it, why should I?

Q: So your answer to my question was sort of an explanation. Now, I will ask it again; Did Mr. Crockett assist you in your eventual disenchantment with Mr. Manson?

A: Yes, after asking him for help.

Q: So in September 1969, when you were asked by Manson to kill the sheriff in Shoshonee, what was your state of mind regarding Mr. Manson at that time? Do you understand the question?

A: How do you mean?

Q: All right. I suppose I can put it more directly.

At that time you had realized that Mr. Manson was not all he was cracked up to be?

A: Yes.

Q: You were not under his control in September 1969. Would that be a fair statement?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Did Manson ever tell you why he wanted you to kill this sheriff in Shoshonee?

THE WITNESS: Yes. He said "If you are with us."

THE COURT: "If you are with us." Do you know whether he had ever met the

sheriff up there?

THE WITNESS: Yes, I had met him.

THE COURT: I mean Manson.

THE WITNESS: Manson? I don't know. I think he might have during the floods that happened there. They were stuck down in Shoshonee and I think the sheriff ran them off.

THE COURT: I see. Thank you. Go ahead, Mr. Keith.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Going to another subject, Mr. Poston, I would like to get the chronology of your experiences in the Manson family, because it is sometimes confusing about who went where and when.

You first met Manson at Dennis Wilson's; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: And this was when you came down with Dean Moorehouse?

A: Yes.

Q: And this was in June or so of 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: And did you meet Mr. Watson at Dennis Wilson's?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: When was the first time you ever saw Mr. Watson, the defendant here?

A: Approximately in August of 1968 at Spahn's Ranch.

Q: All right; so did you stay at Dennis Wilson's?

A: Yes.

Q: You, yourself?

Did you ever stay at a location in Topanga Canyon in a house or motor van or some structure?

A: No.

Q: So you moved directly from Dennis Wilson's to Spahn's Ranch?

A: Yes, except for that time that I told you about the fire road; but that was only like two or three hours there.

Q: Yes; and you stayed at Spahn's Ranch from when to when?

A: From about the 3rd or 4th week in June of '68 to October 31, '68.

Q: How do you fix the date at October 31; did some event happen that sticks in your mind or what?

A: It was just some of the girls were talking about it being Halloween.

Q: About what?

A: They were talking about it being Halloween.

Q: Did you ever see -- let's stick to this chronology subject: Then you went to Barker Ranch in Death Valley; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: From Spahn's Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever return to Spahn's Ranch after October 31, 1968?

A: In December of 1969.

Q: And did you live continuously in the desert from October 31, '68 to December '69?

A: No.

Q: Did you go anywhere while you were living at Barker Ranch for any extended period with any of the family members?

A: No.

Q: Do you understand the question?

When you said you didn't live continuously at the Barker Ranch from the end of October to December '69, do you mean by that you took little trips, places, or did you mean that --

A: Are you talking October 31, '68 to December '69?

Q: Yes.

A: I went for about one month to the Gresham Street house in Canoga Park and about the second week of January '69 through till the third week of February of '69, then back to Barker's Ranch; and I stayed there except for about a week in August of '68 -- I mean '69 -- and I went to Kingman, Arizona and then back to Barker's Ranch, when I moved to Shoshonee.

Q: How far is Shoshonee from Barker's? You may have told us.

A: About 67 miles.

Q: At Gresham Street for this month period was Manson there?

A: Yes.

Q: And some of the girls were there?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see Mr. Watson there?

A: No.

Q: Did you see very much of Mr. Watson at all during your life with the family?

A: Not a great deal.

Q: Would you consider yourself close to the defendant, Mr. Watson, a close friend?

A: What I saw of him I liked.

Q: I understand that, but let me put it --

A: But not close friends.

Q: Let me put it in simpler language: Did you pal around with him?

A: No.

Q: Mr. Watson wasn't at the Barker Ranch all the time you were there, was he?

A: No.

Q: Would you say you stayed at the Barker Ranch longer --

A: Yes.

Q: -- then any other member of the family?

A: Yes.

Q: Except, perhaps, for Paul Watkins; was he with you all the time?

A: No.

Q: Where were you at the time Manson told you to die, if he told you to die?

A: Well, there was more than one time.

Q: I'm sorry, I thought there was only once.

How many times did Manson tell you to die?

A: About 20 times.

Q: As a result of one of Manson's exhortations that you die, didn't you actually try to die?

A: Well, that was what I was doing for about two months, when he told me to die and I expected to die, because it's what he told me to do.

Q: When you say you were doing this for two months, were you at Barker Ranch at that time or elsewhere?

A: About a week or a week and a half, maybe two weeks before we went to Barker's Ranch on October 31, '68, we took a great big acid trip.

Q: Who is "we"?

A: The family.

Q: Was the acid trip taken in sort of a group setting?

A: Yes. And it turned out to be a pretty big freakout. In other words, people were floundering around and jumping in the fireplace and breaking windows and breaking mirrors.

Q: Everyone was on acid so far as you knew?

A: Yes.

Q: How many people were involved in the freakout, would you say? Just your best estimate?

A: I don't really know. There was about --

Q: Would there have been as many as 20 or 10?

A: There was probably about 10 to 15 people.

Q: Was Mr. Watson, if you recall, participating in the freakout?

A: I don't think he was.

Q: Could you describe the freakout to us? You started to and then I am afraid I interrupted and asked you how many people were present.

A: Describe the freakout?

Q: If you can't, you can't.

A: People were laying in the fireplace. People were yelling and hollering. Just like they took two tabs -- we took tabs of acid and it came on really strong.

Q: When you say "we," so far as you know everyone took two tabs of acid?

A: Yes. I saw it passed out, handed out, and furniture was torn up, overturned. Some of the water faucets in the ranch out there were left on. There was water all over the floor.

People were falling in and out of the fireplace. Somebody would lay in the fireplace and somebody would pull them out.

There were people on the floor moaning in agony, it sounded like, and people were hitting each other, biting each other. They were tearing up the mirrors, walls, the windows.

Q: Sounds like one big orgy.

A: What?

Q: Sounds like one big orgy.

A: An orgy?

Q: Yes. Do you know what that means?

A: That wasn't my idea of an orgy.

Q: All right.

THE COURT: Can you fix the time again for us, please, when this occurred?

THE WITNESS: About two weeks before -- about the second week in October of '68.

Q BY MR. KEITH: All right.

Now, we were discussing Manson telling you to die.

A: Uh-huh. I haven't forgotten.

Q: All right.

So go ahead with your recitation.

A: After that, that was about the heaviest acid trip I ever took and all along in front of this Charlie had been telling me to give it up, you know, at various times, because it is all in your imagination. It is not real. Nothing is real. Nothing matters.

And like all of a sudden I began to see it that way and I started seeing Charlie as when he would say to give it up, that he really meant it. He wasn't kidding.

And believing pretty firmly that he was Jesus Christ, that is what I thought I should do, and so I started taking more acid because I figured acid would be the easiest way because I figured if you get so stoned on acid you would just die.

So I started taking acid and I took, for about a week straight, I took a tab -- maybe a couple of times it was one day and then the next day and then I would skip a day and take another tab and then skip a day and take another tab and that went on for about, oh, I guess five days.

Q: Then what happened?

A: Then was the time that I laid on the couch, you know, that I am supposed to have laid there for three days.

Q: But you don't know how long you laid there? You have to answer out loud.

A: No.

And while I laid down on the couch, once before that, and I was looking at Charlie and I could feel like a vacuum cleaner -- it is the only way I can describe it -- he was laying down on the couch facing me and I was laying down on the couch and while I was looking at him, it was like everything inside my head was being sucked out and drawn toward him and I fought because I wasn't sure that I wanted to let it go and somehow I got out of that one.

Q: You didn't.

A: I didn't do it. I didn't give it up and after that it is like that I was, I don't know, I was one-pointed, that was the thing I was supposed to do so far as I knew to die, to physically die.

Charlie told me to die and the only kind I ever saw was when my father died and when he died, boy, he died.

Q: Did you ever hear Charlie tell any other members of the family, that is Charlie Manson, tell any other members of the family they ought to die?

A: Oh, yes. Asked them if they died yet.

Q: How would they respond? In varying ways?

A: I remember one time in Barker's Ranch somewhere I think in December or November of '68 and Cupid and Clem and Paul Watkins and myself and Charlie were in the smaller house. There are two houses at Barker's Ranch.

Q: And what happened on this occasion?

A: And he went down the line and he said, "Have you died?" And he asked Paul and Paul said, "Yes."

And he says, "Have you died?" and he asked Clem and he asked Cupid and he asked me; and obviously I hadn't died, so I said, "No."

Q: Then what happened, if anything?

A: Well, that it's like -- now, it seems like those guys lied.

Q: But did Charlie do anything -- Manson do anything to you when you told him you

hadn't died?

A: He said, "Are you afraid to die?"

I said, "Yeah."

Q: Was that the end of that episode or --

A: Well, it was pretty close, because he didn't like fear in one of the people that was supposed to be living with him; he wanted them to get rid of it all.

Q: Did Mr. Manson do anything specific to try to draw the fears out of the members of the family?

A: Yes, scare you to death.

Q: And how did he scare them to death, if you know?

A: Well, I don't know how he did it with each one of those others, individually.

Q: You can't tell us what you didn't see; just what did he do to you?

A: Well, with me every time he'd come around, it was like the teacher was back in school, like when you were a little kid and the teacher goes out of the room, everybody starts yelling and hollering and having a good time; the teacher comes back in and everyone settles down and gets quiet.

And it's like every time he would leave, I would feel relieved, I would feel like, boy, I've got another two days I can live; then he would come back and all he would have to do was just look at me and sometimes he'd say, "Are you still thinking?" and "Haven't you given up your thoughts?" and "You have to die so that you can live" -- until I was convinced that I had to die.

Q: All right. Now, was there something about Mr. Manson's eyes that were unusual, in your opinion?

I will put it to you --

THE COURT: Well, let him think; let him answer it.

Did you understand the question?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. KEITH: I don't mean some physical defect --

A: I know. To me it is like he had very penetrating eyes, because when he would really stare at you, concentrate at you, it's like he could look through you.

Q: How many acid experiences do you think you have had, Mr. Poston?



A: About 20.

Q: And did that all take place at the Spahn Ranch or also at the Barker Ranch?

A: Also at Barker Ranch.

Q: Your heaviest acid experiences were during the week when you were trying to die; is that a fair statement?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see acid available at the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: I shouldn't say "at the ranch"; let me put it --

A: Spahn's Ranch.

Q: Did you see it there?

A: Yes.

Q: And was it kept in any particular place, sort of a communal grab bag or --

A: No, they would give it to one of the girls to go stash someplace, or Charlie would give it to one of the girls.

Q: To your knowledge, was acid available at any time for anybody that wanted it?

A: As far as I know; only Charlie liked to keep, you know, pretty strict rules. He wanted everybody to take acid together.

Q: Was acid taken together?

A: Yes.

Q: You have told us about one incident where there was a freakout. Were there other incidents or instances when you were present when acid was taken communally?

A: Yeah.

Q: Was this at the Spahn's Ranch?

A: Spahn's Ranch and Barker's Ranch.

Q: Did you know of any other drugs being supplied to the members of the family besides LSD?

A: Mescaline.

Q: Anything else?

A: Marijuana, hashish; I think once there was opium.

Q: Have you ever heard of a drug psilocybin?

A: I've heard of it; I don't know that it was there.

Q: Have you ever heard of THC?

A: Synthetic grass? Once.

Q: That is the THC?

A: That's the synthetic grass, as far as I know.

Q: How about the MDA; have you ever heard of that drug?

A: No.

Q: Have you ever seen -- do you know what speed is?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever take any speed, yourself?

A: Once.

Q: While you were with the family?

A: No.

Q: You don't know whether or not there was any speed at the Barker Ranch or Spahn Ranch or Dennis Wilson's, or anywhere else you were with the family?

A: No; Charlie didn't want any of that type.

Q: Manson didn't like downers, isn't that correct, seconal, sleeping pills?

A: As far as I know, yeah.

Q: He didn't like people to come around the farm -- the ranch, with downers, did he?

A: I don't believe he approved of it.

Q: Downers are what, in your estimation?

A: A downer is something that will make you --

Q: Depressed?

A: Well, I don't know if it would depress you, but somewhat sluggish to where you couldn't respond too actively.

Q: You told us yesterday that you believed you were quite gullible, if you recall?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you believe the acid may have made you even more gullible?

MR. KAY: Calls for a conclusion, your Honor.

THE COURT: I think he can answer that. What effect did this acid have on you?

THE WITNESS: I would say that the acid did have an effect in that way. I was pretty

naive, anyway, because I talked to Dean Moorehouse and he told me some of the things that Charlie told him and I hadn't taken acid and it sounded good to me.

Q BY MR. KEITH: With you, the acid made it even sound better; is that right?

A: Yeah, more real.

Q: Now, did you observe any changes in Mr. Watson at all from the first time you saw him until the last time you saw him?

A: How do you mean, changes -- like physical?

Q: Physical changes.

A: Physically, his hair grew longer and he had a beard. The first time I saw him, he didn't have a beard, and he had a beard then at Barker's, September; and he got rid of it.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Watson strike anybody or threaten to hurt anybody?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Watson act, oh, aggressively towards anybody -- do you know what I mean, sort of domineering or assertive?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Watson work on Charlie Manson's vehicles, the dune buggies --

A: Yes.

Q: -- and the trucks and so forth?

When he wasn't doing that, he was just goofing around; is that right?

A: Well, if you are talking about the dune buggies, the only time I saw those was in September, when he wasn't at Barker's Ranch.

Q: September what year?

A: '69; when he wasn't at Barker's Ranch doing that, I don't know where he was.

Q: So you saw him at Barker's Ranch working on the dune buggies?

A: Yes.

Q: When were the dune buggies first brought to Barker's Ranch?

A: Tex and Bruce and Brenda came up with a rail dune buggy.

Q: By Tex you are referring to Mr. Watson?

A: Yes, right at the first of September of '69, and that was the first time one of the

dune buggies came up and they left a couple of days later and came back in the same dune buggy and then a few other dune buggies started arriving along with a Toyota, a jeep, and there was a blue sparkled one, a really bright yellow dune buggy, another sort of off-yellow one.

I am not sure which one of them they retouched, camouflaged it, but there were to my knowledge about three dune buggies besides the rail job.

THE COURT: Rail job?

THE WITNESS: Rail. It doesn't have a body on it, just made with rails and roll bars and things.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Were the dune buggies used primarily to try and locate the bottomless pit or did they have other functions also?

A: Well, I think what they were going to do, they were going to use them to move with.

Charlie said that they would go from place to place. They would stay in one place for a couple of days and then move, that they would move at night, preferably with a full moon night, because then you wouldn't have to use lights and airplanes coming over wouldn't be able to see you.

Q: Was this after the revolution had started?

A: No. I think that was then because Charlie came into the yard a few times in dune buggies at night, you know, when they were in process of changing camps and at least that is what he said they were doing. They were used to bring supplies up the wash too.

Q: I think you told us yesterday, didn't you, that dune buggies were used to go about Death Valley looking for the bottomless pit?

A: No.

Q: Didn't you say that?

Did Charlie ever tell you that -- strike that -- people at Barker's Ranch did, however, engage in looking for the bottomless pit, didn't they?

A: They were looking for the hole. Charlie said everything was holes, that the whole world was a hole. The sun was a hole in the sky.

That since everything was a hole of some sort or another, and that he was a hole in the infinite, through which God talked, that all his thoughts or all the words that he said

were not his but of God -- that the logical solution would be the hole, to find the hole that goes down into the city, the golden city underneath the ground, and it talks about it in the Revelations.

Q: The people up there were looking for the hole?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Manson perform what you would term miracles?

A: Fooled me, but other -- no, no miracles, other than telling Dean Moorehouse could live forever, which necessarily can't be classified as a miracle.

Q: Did you know Juanita Wildbush or Wildberry? I can never get it.

A: It was Wildbush. Now it is Berry.

Q: All right.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Wildberry?

THE WITNESS: No, just plain Berry.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Berry?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Dropped the bush.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Do you know anything about a transaction where she gave Mr. Manson some money?

A: Only what I heard on that one, on that situation that she gave Charlie a great deal of money and a camper, a Dodge camper.

Q: Was this at Barker Ranch?

A: No. That was at Spahn Ranch.

Q: Were you there at the time when that occurred?

A: I was at Spahn's. That was just a short time before -- well, I guess about three or four weeks before we left to go to Barker's.

Q: This would have been in October of '68?

A: It was September '68, I think September to October.

MR. KEITH: I have no further questions.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: Was this Juanita a schoolteacher at one time?

A: Well, I have heard that she taught school in Roswell, New Mexico, but that was

after she left the family. She said she came from New Jersey and her father was some sort of a lawyer, some sort -- not a trial lawyer but a corporation lawyer, and she had been living in Mexico and she had a boyfriend down there that she was going to go back to see and she was traveling through, to go back down there, when she picked up a couple of girls from the family and they brought her to Spahn's.

Q: When Manson explained to you -- just a few more questions -- when Manson explained to you about how helter-skelter was going to start in February 1969 at the Gresham Street address, Tex Watson wasn't there at that time, was he?

A: No.

Q: Do you know where he was?

A: I heard that he was with his lawyer settling an insurance settlement of some kind.

Q: You eventually left Barker's in October 1969 because of what? You were fed up with the family?

A: Yes. I was tired of what was going on up there. I wanted to get out of it and besides that the police told us to walk out and inform them the next time Charlie came to the ranch.

Q: Do you know a man by the name of Bill Vance?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Bill live with the family for a while?

A: For a couple -- well, about a week, I guess. He stayed at the Gresham Street house but while I was around he never really lived there.

Q: What about at the Spahn Ranch?

A: At the Spahn Ranch I assumed that he lived with the family. I don't know because I wasn't there when he was there.

Q: What type of a relationship with Manson?

A: I don't think he was completely subservient to Charlie.

Q: Why do you say that?

A: Well, Bill was as old or older. It seemed like he was about five or six years older than Charlie and he was a great big guy.

Q: About six two?

A: At least and seemed like he had his own trip going on; in other words, he had his

own -- he was still working at the ranch, and he was working at Spahn's Ranch.

The Gresham Street house so far as I know was Bill Vance's. That is where we got that house and he was working at the ranch, to take over the ranch again from George, was to get the family reinstated there and I have heard that he was interested in robbing.

Q: Robbing?

A: Yes.

Q: Commit robberies?

A: Robberies and burglaries and things like that.

Q: On his own?

A: Yes.

Q: Independent of Charlie?

A: Yes.

Q: You felt he wasn't completely subservient to Charlie?

A: I don't think he was.

Q: What about Bruce Davis? Have you ever heard of a man named Bruce Davis?

A: Yes.

Q: Bruce was a member of the family; right?

A: So far as I know he was, yes.

Q: And he lived at Spahn Ranch with the family for a while?

A: I don't know. I assumed that he did.

Q: Was Bruce with the family up at Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: In September and October of 1969?

A: In September, yes. When I was there, he was with the family.

Q: Describe or explain the relationship between Bruce Davis and Charles Manson.

A: It seemed to me that Bruce was competing with Charlie. He was trying to be an equal with Charlie or even he -- he was loud-mouthed.

Whereas when Charlie would generally speak most of the people in the family would keep silent and listen, unless he asked them something directly or he said, "What do you think," or, "Say something."

But Bruce would interrupt Charlie when he was talking and he talked in a real loud

voice, and it seemed like that he like the power that he had when Charlie wasn't around because he could have one of the girls run and fetch him something.

Q: You got the impression that Bruce Davis wasn't subservient to Charlie either?

A: It seemed to me that he had more ego than any of the other guys I ever saw there. So that he hadn't given it up to Charlie.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thank you. No further questions.

RECROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH

Q: Was Watson subservient to Charlie?

A: I never knew him to disobey anything that Charlie said.

MR. KEITH: I have nothing further.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

THE COURT: Thank you, sir. You may be excused.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We will call Paul Watkins.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the matter now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

PAUL ALLEN WATKINS,

called as a witness by the People, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you. Take the stand and be seated; would you state and spell your name, please?

THE WITNESS: Paul Allen Watkins, W-a-t-k-i-n-s.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I believe we have a stipulation here just for clarification, for the jury.

May it be stipulated that Charles Manson was released from Federal Prison at Terminal Island in March of 1967?

So stipulated?

MR. BUBRICK: So stipulated.

MR. KEITH: So stipulated.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May it be further stipulated that Manson and several other



members of the family, Krenwinkel, Atkins, Van Houten and several other girls were arrested in early October, 1969, at Barker Ranch in Inyo County, California?

It was between October 10 and 12, 1969; so stipulated?

MR. KEITH: I will so stipulate.

MR. BUGLIOSI: And the arrests were not for the Tate-La Bianca murders.

So stipulated.

MR. BUBRICK: So stipulated.

MR. KEITH: So stipulated.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: Mr. Watkins, do you presently reside in Shoshonee, California?

A: Yes.

Q: And you live with Brooks Poston?

A: Yes.

Q: And Paul Crockett?

A: Yes.

Q: And you were also a former member of Charles Manson's family?

A: Yes.

Q: And you know defendant Watson, I take it?

A: Yes.

Q: Where and when did you first meet Mr. Watson?

A: In Dennis Wilson's house in the early summer of 1968, around July.

Q: Was Watson a member of the family at that time?

A: Not as far as I knew, no.

Q: Was Watson living at Dennis Wilson's at that time?

A: It appeared so, yes.

Q: How would you describe Watson during that period, the summer of 1968, at Dennis Wilson's?

A: Oh, I'd describe him as a young boy about six feet tall with shaggy brown hair about half as long as mine; and he had a truck and was just a really nice guy.

Q: What about girls?

A: Well, there was always girls around.

Q: Around him?

A: Dennis' house -- yeah; the only time I saw him was around Dennis' house.

Q: Did you see Tex around the girls?

A: Yeah.

Q: When and where did you meet Mr. Manson for the first time?

A: In the spring of 1968 in Topanga Canyon.

Q: So you met Mr. Manson before Mr. Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you meet Mr. Manson at a home there in Topanga Canyon?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was with Manson at the time?

A: About three guys and 10 girls.

Q: You eventually became a member of Manson's family?

A: Yes.

Q: When was that?

A: In the summer of that same year, '68.

Q: After the family moved from Dennis Wilson's to Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: The family had moved to Spahn Ranch from Dennis Wilson's and you became a member of the family at Spahn?

A: I heard they were at Dennis Wilson's; I didn't know that.

Q: But you became a member while they were living at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Around July of 1968?

A: Yes.

Q: And how long did you stay at Spahn Ranch with the family?

A: I stayed with the family -- not necessarily at Spahn's Ranch -- until October 31 of 1968.

Q: What happened at that time?

A: The whole family moved from Spahn's Ranch to the Barker Ranch.

Q: How long did the family stay at Barker Ranch?

A: Until about mid-July of 1969 -- no, mid-January.

Q: 1969.

A: Yes.

Q: At that point did the family then move down to the Gresham Street address?

A: Yes.

Q: In Canoga Park?

A: Yes.

Q: And they stayed there for how long?

A: About two months, or months and a half.

Q: Now, when the family left the Gresham Street address, Brooks Poston and a few others went back to Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: But Manson and the rest of the family went there?

A: At the Gresham Street --

Q: No --

A: When we moved from the Gresham Street house?

Q: Yes.

A: Went to the Spahn Ranch.

Q: How long did you stay at the Spahn Ranch?

A: I stayed there till May.

Q: Of what year?

A: Of '69.

Q: Where did you go from there?

A: I went to the Barker Ranch.

Q: And you stayed at Barker Ranch at that time and went where?

A: October of 1969.

Q: And you left Barker Ranch at that time and went where?

A: To Shoshonee.

Q: To live with Crockett and Poston?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Manson ever tell you when and how he started his family?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he say?

A: He said, it's when he got out of jail he started driving around town, riding around town on a bus --

Q: Riding around town where on a bus?

A: In San Francisco, I understood.

Q: The Haight-Asbury District?

A: He just said he started riding around town; and he went to the Haight-Asbury District and met a lot of flower children and started meeting girls and found out that girls were real easy there, real easy to get next to; and he said he just started getting more girls and more girls together and met Ella --

Q: Ella Jo Bailey?

A: And Mary --

Q: Ella Jo Bailey?

A: Yes.

Q: Mary Brunner?

A: Yes.

Q: Susan Atkins?

A: Yes.

Q: Squeaky?

A: Yes.

Q: That's Lynn Frome?

A: Yes. He said he met her there.

Q: Anyone else?

A: Not there. Then he said he went down the Coast and met Katie.

Q: Patricia Krenwinkel?

A: Yes -- said he got a Volkswagen bus and started driving around --

Q: He and the girls were driving around in a Volkswagen bus?

A: Yes; and they traded the bus for a school bus and started driving around and got more and more girls, he said; and then drove down the coast, made a trip to El Paso, Texas, and at the same trip they went to New Mexico.

He said they eventually wound up in Topanga Canyon, where I met them.

Q: Which is the spring of 1968?

A: Yes.

Q: I take it that Manson discussed helter-skelter with you; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Many times?

A: Many times.

Q: And he told you that helter-skelter was what?

A: It was a great big revolution, a big revolution where the black people would fight against the white people and everyone would fight against everyone else.

Q: Did he tell you how helter-skelter would start?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he say?

A: He said that some spades from Watts --

Q: Spades from Watts?

A: Yes.

Q: Go ahead.

A: -- would go into the rich piggy district up in Bel Air and just commit some really vicious murders, smearing blood all over everything and just hang limbs all over the place, and just really make some really vicious looking murders; and then he would go back and hide in the ghetto, in the cellars.

Q: Who would?

A: The spades; and then the white man in retaliation for all this vicious murders, would go into the ghetto and start shooting black people; and he would only shoot what he called Uncle Tom niggers, the garbage men and the ones that he could see; and he say the true black race would be hiding because they knew what was going to happen, and then --

Then the Black Muslims would come out of hiding and appeal to the American public by media of television and say, "Look what you have done to my people," thereby splitting the white man into two factions or many factions, but specifically two, those who were for black people and those who were against them.

They would start fighting each other, and then after they fought for a while and killed each other off, then the black people would come back and kill off the remaining whites; but all the while the family, who would be all white, would be hiding in the desert and then --

Q: Hiding where in the desert?

A: In a hole, in a big, big hole that was supposed to be in the desert, according to Charlie's prophecy; and then after the black people had killed everyone, they would re-establish the establishment and have the power.

Then they would get tired of it after a while and they would turn -- well, then Charlie would come up out of the hole with the family and they would have had their stomach full of killing and then they would recognize Charlie and turn everything over to him and he'd scratch him on his fuzzy head and kick him in the butt and tell him to go pick the cotton, and then we'd all live happily ever after.

Q: Did Manson ever say anything about whether the black man would know how to start helter-skelter?

A: Yeah.

Q: When did he say this?

A: In the spring of '69.

Q: Where at?

A: At Gresham house one time.

Q: What did he say?

A: He said the only thing Blacky knows is what Whitey showed him; and so that someone was going to have to show Blacky how to do it.

Q: Did he ever make any further statement about showing the black man how to do it?

A: Yeah, I was contemplating leaving the family and becoming very disheartened with the whole thing. He said --

Q: When was this, now? Let's establish the time.

A: This was in May of 1969.

Q: At Spahn Ranch?

A: At Spahn Ranch.

Q: What did Charlie say?

A: He said, "We are going to have to show Blacky how to do it."

Q: So in the spring of 1969 at Gresham, in Canoga Park, he said, "Someone is going to have to show Blacky how to do it"; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: In late May, was it, 1969, at Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Charlie said, "We are going to have to show Blacky how to do it"?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, when Manson said this, what effect, if any, did it have on you?

A: Had a heck of an effect because I already knew how he had said it. It was supposed to be done and I didn't want to kill anybody. I didn't want to show him how to do it.

Q: So what did you do?

A: I left, left the family and went to the desert.

Q: How long after Manson told you that "We," apparently referring to the family, were going to have to do it, did you leave?

A: That day.

Q: You went up to Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: You didn't want to have anything to do with helter-skelter?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: Because you knew this would involve killing?

A: I suspected such.

Q: You didn't want to kill anyone?

A: Correct.

Q: Did Charles Tex Watson ever speak about helter-skelter?

A: Yeah.

Q: What did he say?

A: He never said too much. He just liked to say "The shit is coming down, " every once in a while, "really coming down fast," which everyone around the family said that

all the time -- "coming down fast."

Every time someone would go into the city and come back up to the ranch, say "Oh, boy, it's coming down fast. You should see it. Boy! Blacky is just really up tight. It is coming down fast."

I remember one time, which really impressed me that Tex really had gone for the whole idea of helter-skelter, when him and Ella and Mary went down to the city to do something and they came back and they both, they were all three of them shaking like leaves, you know, panting.

I met them coming up the road and they were like they had been running from something.

I said, "What's going on?"

They said, "Boy, it's really coming down," Tex said. He said, "It's really insane down there and it's coming down right now. I mean it's happening today."

I thought -- I just had never been impressed -- that is when I first became impressed that Tex was really -- really went for the idea.

Q: Of helter-skelter?

A: Yes. It was really real to him. It was really real to me, too.

Q: Did you come back to the ranch to pick up supplies in August of 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: You left for Barker's in May of '69 and then you came back in August of '69 to pick up supplies?

A: Yes.

Q: While you were there in August of 1969 -- was this early August '69?

A: Sometime in August. I don't actually recall. Yes, it would be early August.

Q: Before the Tate-LaBianca murders?

A: I don't know when they were.

Q: They were August 9th and 10th, 1969.

A: Oh, it would be around then.

Q: Okay. Did Tex say anything to you during that period about helter-skelter or the black man?

A: Yes. He said "Blacky really got his shit together. He is uptight and coming down



fast."

Q: This is what Tex told you?

A: He was sitting in there working on some dune buggies in the saloon. There was a big dune buggy in the saloon. He was standing there working on it.

Q: He said blacky was uptight?

A: Yeah.

Q: Charles Manson, of course, was the head of the family; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Did Manson ever tell you what role the women had in the family?

A: Yeah.

Q: What did he say?

A: Well, he said it like this: He said that first God created the white man and then he created woman for his pleasure and to serve him and then he created black men to be the servant for them. That is the way he said it.

Q: To be the servant for whom?

A: For the white man and the white woman.

Q: Did Manson frequently speak about the function of a woman, the role of a woman?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever hear him speak about the function of a woman in front of Tex Watson?

A: I don't recall any exact instance where Tex was there but I know Charlie talked about it all the time about how women were supposed to do what men said.

Q: Would Charlie say this to the entire group?

A: Yes, all the time.

Q: So very frequently, Charlie spoke to the whole family and told them that woman should what? Serve the men?

A: Yes.

Q: In this group, would there be Patricia Krenwinkel?

A: Yes.

Q: And Susan Atkins?

A: Yes.

Q: And Leslie Van Houton?

A: Yes.

Q: This would be at nighttime around the fire?

A: Just about all the time. He impressed that point upon everyone.

Q: Including those three girls: Katie, Sadie, and Leslie Van Houton?

A: Yes.

Q: And you assumed that Tex was also present during many of these discussions?

A: I assume such.

Q: Did you ever see any girl in the family tell any man to do anything?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever see any girl in the family tell Tex Watson to do anything?

A: No.

Q: Do you recall any incident at Spahn Ranch where Tex Watson gave instructions to other members of the family?

A: Just once instance.

Q: What instance was that?

A: The only time I ever saw him do anything like that, we took a trip up Devil Canyon. Charlie told us to go to Devil Canyon and survey the canyon.

Q: When was this?

A: About the time we were living in the Gresham Street address and moving to Spahn Ranch.

Q: This would be about March of 1969?

A: Yeah.

Q: And where is Devil's Canyon in relation to Spahn Ranch?

A: It is over a hill east.

Q: Would you relate this incident?

A: Well, on that particular trip Tex was sort of leading the trip.

He was leading us up mountains. "We got to go to that mountain over there," and we would go over and look at that mountain.

Then "We've got to get up on top of that mountain over there," and we would get up on

top of that mountain.

"We've got to go down there."

We all got pretty perturbed at him because he led us all over the hills.

Q: Who was Tex leading? You and who else?

A: Me and Clem.

Q: Clem Tufts?

A: Yes, and some girls, Gypsy and Snake and Stephanie.

Q: Stephanie Schram?

A: I don't know.

Q: Her name was Stephanie?

A: Yes.

Q: Who else?

A: I think that was all that was on that trip.

Q: Tex and about five other people?

A: Yeah.

Q: You have taken LSD, of course?

A: Yes.

Q: About how many times?

A: Somewhere between 150 and 200 times.

Q: What effect would this LSD have on you?

A: On me?

Q: Yes.

A: Depending upon the dosage and the kind of LSD that it was, it would have a great effect or not very much.

Q: What type of an effect?

A: The type of an effect is everyone is familiar with sleeping pills. Sleeping pills kind of make you drowsy and make you want to go to sleep.

LSD has the opposite effect. It makes you wake up and it just makes you really super awake.

As a matter of fact you get so wide awake that you don't like it because you just can't go to sleep and you can't keep from -- you just really get woke up and you imagine, some

people if they were really in a very awake state, they get very tense and get very electric.

Q: You became very aware of everything around you?

A: Yes, really aware. That would go along with waking up.

It actually does so far as I see heighten awareness. You become aware of little things you never saw before.

Q: For instance?

A: Like texture of things and the smells of things and you spend a lot of time looking at things that you never noticed before like leaves and rocks and people's noses and just all kinds of things that you never saw before, but you never hallucinate. You never see anything that wasn't there. I never did.

Just what I saw was there. So far as hallucinations went I would only sometimes I would see auras or halos around things, like everything would have a sort of a tint around it, like a halo or a glow.

Q: You never saw an object while under the influence of LSD that wasn't in fact there?

A: Yes, I never saw anything you couldn't just pick up and move it around or something that wasn't really there anyway.

Q: Were you aware of everything you were doing while you were under the influence of LSD?

Like I have taken LSD at times and you are aware of what you are doing while you are doing it, but then later on the effect of it wears off and you are not aware of what you were doing then, and it remains like a dream that you had that you don't very well remember.

Q: Say you took a trip, while on a trip? Let's say you took a trip from Spahn Ranch to Canoga Park.

A: Yes.

Q: Later on would you remember that?

A: Perhaps, depending upon the dose you took

If you took a heavy dose, you may be so preoccupied with looking at the doorknob or something, or looking at something else or thinking about something, or looking at

something else or thinking about something else that you had no awareness at all of having gone anywhere, just the fact that you were in a car.

Q: Normally, you would remember what took place?

A: Normally you would because normally I didn't take doses that huge.

Q: Did you ever see Charles Manson take LSD?

A: Yes.

Q: How about Patricia Krenwinkel?

A: Yes.

Q: Susan Atkins?

A: Yes.

Q: And Leslie Van Houton?

A: Yes.

Q: Frequently, at least these four?

A: Yes.

Q: What about other drugs? Were other drugs used in the family?

A: Yes.

Q: Like what?

A: We used other psychedelic, psyche-pharmaceuticals. Psilocybin, mescaline, a small amount of belladonna, hashish, marijuana and opium a few occasions, peyote.

Q: How many times have you taken belladonna?

A: Approximately 20 times.

Q: What effect did belladonna have on you?

A: Belladonna is -- I drew a picture of how LSD was in relationship to sleeping pills. Well, belladonna is more like a sleeping pill, except for like a psycho-pharmaceutical. It doesn't affect the body only, it affects the mind. It affects the body in such a way that it lays you down flat. Then your mind has an experience you could say.

Q: Kind of knocks you out?

A: Knocks you out, yes. Then you do hallucinate and you do see things that aren't there.

Q: Did you ever take LSD with Tex Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: On how many occasions?

A: Well, one occasion which I told you about earlier and then I guess about five times.

Q: During what period of time?

A: All the time I knew him when I was with the family from the summer of '68 until the summer of '69.

Q: How would Tex act when he was under the influence of LSD?

A: Really weird.

Q: Could you describe that to the judge and jury?

A: He was always -- he always acted different than most people did because I can remember many times we would take a trip and Tex would come on, in other words, he would start being affected by it before anyone else would.

I would already have taken the tablet and be waiting for it to have an effect and he would already be -- his eyes would be popping open like he was seeing things that was hard to believe and he would start moving his head around just really in a weird fashion looking around.

So it became apparent that he was coming on before I was and was generally weirdly coordinated, didn't have -- it seemed like it really had a strong effect on him.

Q: You say that while Tex was under the influence of LSD he was weirdly coordinated?

A: Yes.

Q: Would you elaborate on that a little bit?

A: He just -- most of the time I remember he would just sit down because it seemed like his body would move around, and in a really weird fashion; like sort of flowing around like a drunk would.

Q: You are describing the way Tex would act under the influence of LSD?

A: Yes.

Q: That is why you say he was weirdly coordinated?

A: Yes.

Q: Would you say normally he would sit down?

A: Except for a couple of trips when he was up running around, but normally on

heavy trips, and the family would take a trip together, just sit down and watch the trip.

Q: Tex would sit down and watch the trip?

A: Yes.

Q: Would you describe him as being carefree while under the influence of LSD?

A: I'd describe him as being carefree all the time.

Q: Each time under the influence of LSD?

A: Yeah.

MR. BUGLIOSI: That is all. No further questions.

THE COURT: Suppose we have our morning recess at this time.

Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will have our morning recess at this time and again please heed the usual admonition.

(Recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, all counsel and the defendant are present.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, may I just ask two or three more questions?

THE COURT: Go ahead.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You have heard of speed, of course?

A: Yes.

Q: What type of drug is speed?

A: It is an amphetamine.

Q: Was there quite a bit of speed out at the ranch?

A: Not until late spring of '69.

Q: And from that point on there was quite a bit of speed out at the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you take speed on several occasions?

A: Yes.

Q: What effect would speed have on you?

A: Speed is a waker-upper. It is a wake-up pill, but it is not like LSD is a waker-upper; it just wakes up your body, like you have a lot of body energy.

Q: It animates you, gives you energy?

A: Yeah, you could stay up for three or four days at a time.

Q: But it doesn't affect the mind?

A: Not directly, no -- you might get your mind affected if you stayed up for three or four days at a time.

Q: But the direct effect of the speed is to affect you physically, not mentally?

A: Yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK

Q: Mr. Watkins, do you remember how you characterized Tex in the last trial? Do you remember being asked to describe Mr. Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember how you described him now?

A: Yes.

Q: How do you describe him?

A: Sort of a dumb old country boy.

Q: Anything else.

A: Not that I recall.

Q: You also said he didn't really care about too many things. Do you remember that?

A: Yes, sir. He was a carefree type.

Q: You didn't say carefree; you just said he didn't care about too many things.

A: I don't actually recall.

Q: You said he was always fixing something or doing something?

A: Yes.

Q: He didn't say much?

A: Yes.

Q: But you like him?

A: Yes.

Q: Was he a dumb old country boy, so far as you were concerned?

A: No. He just act like it. I knew he wasn't.

Q: How did he act dumb?

A: Well, not really stupid type dumb, just kind of like a little puppy, a little puppy



dog. You would say a puppy dog was dumb, because it will run up, you know, and just be real happy, to something that might be of danger.

Q: He didn't know a danger situation when he saw one?

A: I am not saying that. I am saying like he was so likable and so happy all the time. He was just like, you know, you would think he was dumb.

Q: He wasn't very philosophical, was he?

A: No, not to me.

Q: Did you ever hear him say anything that was original or new, something you hadn't heard Manson say before?

A: I don't think so.

Q: Well, did he talk much about anything at all that you remember while you were around him?

A: No, not much.

Q: He usually was pretty busy working on mechanical objects of one sort or another?

A: Yes.

Q: He stayed pretty close to the dune buggies, the trucks, the automobiles, or things of that nature?

A: That is correct.

Q: And perhaps other mechanical contrivances, didn't he?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: He never really got involved in the philosophy of Manson or the Manson family as such, did he?

A: Oh, I wouldn't say that.

Q: What I mean is, he wasn't a lecturer. He didn't talk to the group about philosophy?

A: No. I never heard him do any lecturing.

Q: I can appreciate that as a member of the family he might, you know, repeat helter-skelter or the stuff is coming down?

A: Definitely being there you either buy it or you don't. And if you stay there you buy it.

Q: And he bought it; is that right?

A: Yes, it was apparent to me.

Q: What is that?

A: It was apparent to me.

Q: You were buying it, too, for a long time, weren't you?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: As a matter of fact, you thought Manson was Jesus Christ, didn't you?

A: That's correct.

Q: And you thought, really and truly, that he was Jesus Christ, didn't you?

A: Really and truly.

Q: And you thought he was the Christ who had been crucified, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: You thought he was the true Christ?

A: Yes.

Q: How long did you feel that way about him?

A: Up until the time of when I became really disheartened with the family and he started telling me how he was going to have to show blacky how to do it, how to start helter-skelter.

Q: Can you fix that in terms of time for us?

A: Yeah, late -- when I began to look around and see that things weren't the way I thought they were would be about the spring of 1969; and I still would have fleeting feelings of maybe, well, he really is and I'm messed up, because I got away from him, you know, I'd still have feelings like that as far as a year, year and a half afterwards; but as they would come in, then I would look at them as it is a matter of weeding out my own consciousness and getting myself straight.

Q: You mean that after you had separated from the family you would still think about Manson and his philosophy?

A: The thoughts still lingered in my mind, yes.

Q: And were you still not sure whether he was right?

A: Yeah.

Q: In other words, there was a kind of feeling of ambivalence; you didn't know

whether to believe or disbelieve at that time?

A: Right.

Q: And you couldn't make yourself decide whether or not what he told you was true or not true?

A: I sooner or later did, yes.

Q: Can you tell us, Mr. Watkins, how that change that came about in your thinking relates, if it does, to your meeting with Paul Crockett?

A: Yes, well --

Q: Did it happen at or about the time you met somebody by the name of Mr. Crockett?

A: Yes, it did. I will tell you about it. I was telling you I began to get rather disgusted and disheartened with what was going on at the ranch, because it got to be a revolution type scene where everyone was talking about revolution and we were collecting guns and building dune buggies and things like that --

Q: Let's stop this; let's tell us about collecting guns.  
When did you start to do that?

A: It was about the spring of 1969.

Q: Who collected the guns?

A: Oh, Danny brought a gun --

Q: Danny DeCarlo?

A: Yes.

Q: A member of the family?

A: You could call him that; he hung around.

Q: Pretty frequently, did he?

A: Yes.

Q: And for some period of time?

A: Yes.

Q: And he brought guns; who else did?

A: Phil Vance brought a gun.

Q: Well, Phil Vance was pretty much of a thief, wasn't he?

A: Yes.

Q: Didn't he turn the proceeds of that over to Mr. Manson?

A: Sometimes.

Q: How did the family live?

A: We got our food from the back of supermarkets. The girls would go in the back of the supermarkets --

Q: Garbage runs, things like that?

A: Garbage runs.

Q: Anything else?

A: Later on, if things got to be towards more my disliking, we started getting credit cards and going out and -- now, on hot credit cards and things -- and buying all kinds of stuff.

Q: Did you participate in that at that time?

A: No -- I used credit cards to get gasoline a couple times.

Q: Credit cards that were stolen or, at least, didn't belong to you?

A: Well, if they were stolen, I never knew about it. In other words, it would be just a credit card, "Where did this come from?" "Oh, someone gave it to me."

Q: You really didn't care where it came from?

A: No, I just wanted to get gas in the truck or something.

Q: What else; how else other than credit cards?

Incidentally, did you ever buy food with credit cards?

A: Yes; I never did, but I have seen it done.

Q: Did they buy clothing with credit cards?

A: Yes.

Q: Did they buy any weapons with credit cards, if you know?

A: Yes.

Q: Did they?

A: Yes.

Q: What did they buy with credit cards?

A: Knives.

Q: Were these the knives that the girls carried?

A: Well, the knives that everyone carried.

Q: Everyone carried -- did you carry a knife?

A: Yes.

Q: It wasn't unusual for everybody to have a knife, was it?

A: No.

Q: Anything else you can think of?

A: Tires, batteries, battery acid, dune buggy parts.

Q: On credit cards?

A: Yes.

Q: Anything else?

A: That's about all I can think there was; I think we covered just about most of the stuff.

Q: Is this now while you are Spahn Ranch?

A: And after, yes.

Q: How about at Barker's?

A: There is no stores at Barker Ranch.

Q: How did they live up there, do you know?

A: Took runs into the city.

Q: You mean they came back to Los Angeles?

A: Yes, go back and forth to Los Angeles or Las Vegas.

Q: And buy things there and bring them back to the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Are there any stores at all around the Barker Ranch?

A: No.

Q: Is that anywhere around Olancho?

A: It is over 100 miles, I think, or maybe about 100 miles away.

Q: From Olancho?

A: Yes.

Q: Are you familiar with the Olancho area?

A: Yes.

Q: Have you ever stayed around there?

A: For a few days in Independence.

Q: Is Independence close to Olancho?

A: Yes.

Q: How far?

A: I think it is about 30 miles up the valley.

Q: 30 miles north of Olancho?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever live with the family at Olancho?

A: No.

Q: Are there any stores or anything of that nature in Olancho that you know of?

A: Yes.

Q: Is it some sort of a community?

A: Yes.

Q: About how large, if you know?

A: I think it is rather small, but I was relating to you -- I didn't finish answering your question -- about what Paul Crockett had to do with me changing my mind around there.

He just sort of -- I was already really discontent with the whole thing, and just talking with him, he was like a link into the outside world, someone who I could communicate to on the outside world.

Q: Was he a miner or anything that happened to be in the neighborhood?

A: A prospector in the Barker Ranch country. We just started talking and I would say something that was real to me, like "Helter-skelter is coming down," and he said, "You really believe that?"

I would look at him like is it possible to not believe it, you know. I thought everyone believed it, you know. I thought it was a way out.

Q: For the sake of saving time then I take it as a result of your conversation with Mr. Crockett, there were certain doubts that formed in your mind about the relevancy of Mr. Manson's philosophy; is that correct?

A: Yes. There were doubts and decisions on my part that I made.

Q: Did you actually leave the family at that time?

A: Yes.

Q: And that is what? In the summer of '69?

A: Yes.

Q: And you went where?

A: To the Barker Ranch.

Q: That is before the family got there; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And was your living at the Barker Ranch, or this Barker Ranch area, quite independent of the fact that the family came up there later on?

A: Quite independent, yes.

Q: You had nothing to do with the family once you went to the Barker Ranch area; is that correct?

A: I had nothing to do with them once they went?

Q: Yes.

A: I still had something to do. They were all friends.

Q: I mean aside from any socializing or seeing them.

A: I wasn't going to get involved in their trip any more.

Q: Were you up there with Mr. Crockett perhaps?

A: Yes.

Q: And Mr. Poston?

A: Yes.

Q: Three of you?

A: Some other fellows too.

Q: Whatever you were doing up there was, as I say, quite independent of the fact that the family happened to come up there later on?

A: Yes.

Q: I think you said you met Manson and the group in 1968; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: And that was at Dennis Wilson's?

A: No. That was at Summit Drive in Topanga Creek.

Q: Had you ever been with the family at Dennis Wilson's home?

A: Yes.

Q: Is this prior to meeting or becoming a member that you met Manson and the family?

A: That was the day on which I did join up with them.

Q: Well, you met, I thought you said, you saw Manson and some of the family at Wilson's in the summer of '68.

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: And how many people did Manson have with him then, if you remember?

A: Less than before. There was five girls and he and Brooks Poston and Clem.

Q: Was Poston somebody you happened to meet after he joined the family? You met him for the first time after he was a family member?

A: Yes.

Q: You hadn't known him before then, I take it?

A: No, I hadn't.

Q: When did you meet Watson? In August of '68 or thereabouts?

A: That first night when I went over to Dennis' house I met him there.

Q: The first time you went to Dennis' you saw Watson?

A: It would be June or July of '68.

Q: At any rate, the first time you went to Dennis' you saw Watson there; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: How did you happen to get to Dennis', if you remember?

A: Yes. I drove there in a truck with Charlie Manson.

Q: You had met Manson prior to this occasion; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: How long had you know Manson before you went to Dennis Wilson's?

A: A few months.

Q: Had you been sort of palling around with him?

A: No. I'd only met him on one previous occasion a few months prior.

Q: The day you came up there with him and the day you met Watson you obviously had met Manson somewhere along the line; is that correct?

A: Yes.



Q: Was he taking you up to introduce you to the family?

A: Well, the family was staying at the Spahn Ranch then. He was taking me up to introduce me to Dennis.

Q: I thought there was some of the girls living at Dennis', also members of the family.

A: Not at that time.

Q: Let's confine ourselves then to this day on which you met Watson. I thought that was the very first time you met Dennis also.

A: It was.

Q: It was in the summer of '68?

A: Yes.

Q: And that is when Manson brought you up there?

A: Yes.

Q: Were there any girls there at that time?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you meet the girls then?

A: They weren't Charlie's girls. They were some other girls.

Q: Do you remember who they were?

A: I remember their faces and remember one of their names, a girl named Diane is all I can remember.

Q: Diane Lake?

A: No. I said it wasn't any of the girls in the family that were there.

Q: How long did you stay then?

A: Just for a few hours.

Q: Was your home in California at that time, Mr. Watkins?

A: Yes.

Q: You came from California originally; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: How long had you been away from home if you were away from home at all?

A: At that time I had been away from home for two years.

Q: What area of the state do you call home?

A: This area.

Q: Los Angeles area?

A: Yes.

Q: How old were you then?

A: 18.

Q: Can you tell us your first impressions of Watson when you met him at Dennis Wilson's that night?

A: Hardly anything. I didn't hardly have any impression. I just sort of noticed he was a person there and didn't really pay him too much mind.

Q: Did you talk to him at all?

A: No, not other than hello, how do you do.

Q: Do you remember how he was dressed?

A: No.

Q: Did you use any drugs that night?

A: Yes.

Q: What did you use?

A: We smoked some marijuana that night.

Q: Did you get to talk to Watson at that time?

A: No. I don't believe he smoked it with us.

Q: He didn't use it at all then, as far as you know?

A: Not that night.

Q: Not that night?

You went on, then, from -- you went to the Spahn Ranch, then, in the summer of '68, is that about when you joined the family?

A: Yes.

Q: And if I remember correctly, you stayed at the Spahn Ranch until about October of '68; is that correct?

A: Yes, October 31.

Q: And then, if our chronology is right, in October of '68 you went to Barker's Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: And you stayed there until sometime after the first of the year in 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: Then in January of '69 you came down to Gresham Street; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: And you stayed there until March-April of '69, a couple of months?

A: Mm-hmm.

Q: And then after that March-April date of '69, you moved back to the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yeah, except we moved one house in between there; we moved to a house up in Mulholland Drive.

Q: How long did you stay there?

A: Oh, about 10 days.

Q: Then, with the exception of that, in early '69, March-April of '69, you stayed at Spahn Ranch until about June of '69, the summer of '69?

A: Yes.

Q: And then in the summer of '69, June or thereabouts, you went back up to Barker's until October of '69; right?

A: Yes.

Q: And that's when you left the family and went to Shoshonee; is that right?

A: That's when I left the desert and went to Shoshonee -- well, left Barker Ranch; it's still in the desert.

Q: Now, I think you said when you met Watson, he had a truck, and I take it some other possessions, did he?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know what happened to the truck?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened to it?

A: Eventually gave it to Charlie.

Q: Is that a common procedure --

A: Yes.

Q: -- everybody gave their worldly possessions to Charlie; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: And then Charlie just took control of them, did he?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Charlie then treat it as his own?

A: Yes.

Q: Did it become, in fact, his own?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you turn anything over to Manson when you joined the family?

A: My whole life.

Q: Well, I am talking now of any material matter that you may have had?

A: I didn't have anything.

Q: When you say you turned your whole life over, you mean your spiritual being; is that correct?

A: My body and my mind and everything else that goes along with it.

Q: As a matter of fact, that was a pretty common thing; that was demanded of everybody who joined the family, wasn't it?

A: Yes.

Q: The family actually was Charlie's law and Charlie's will, wasn't it?

A: You could say that.

Q: And he demanded total submission from all the men and women alike, didn't he?

A: Yes.

Q: Even in sexual matters?

A: Yes.

Q: He controlled everything there was about the person; is that right?

A: As much as he could.

Q: Well, did you ever see anybody in the family who didn't submit himself completely and totally to Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was that?

A: Oh, everyone in the family, just about, or everyone at one point or another would do something, they would stand up and say no sometimes, or even if they didn't stand

up and say no, they'd leave; or he'd say to do something and they just wouldn't do it.

Q: Did you actually see that happening?

A: Not very much. It happened a few times, and then it just -- with that one person, and then it wouldn't happen anymore.

Q: You mean somebody might resist on one occasion and then not again?

A: On a few occasions someone might resist, but then you generally wouldn't after that.

Q: But there would come a time when there would be total submission to Manson; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: If he remained in the family?

A: Yes.

Q: Were those the only two alternatives, either total submission or leaving?

A: Yes, those were the only two alternatives.

Q: Was there much discussion about dying along the -- in the Manson philosophy?

A: Yes.

Q: Was it understood that everybody in the family should be willing to die for Manson or for one another?

A: Yes.

Q: Were statements like that made from time to time?

A: Yes.

Q: By whom?

A: By Charlie.

Q: What would he say in those regards?

A: Well, he said that everyone had to die in one way or another, either physically or you had to do it in your mind.

"To die is to submit, totally." He said that death was total submission.

Death was something that Charlie talked about a lot; that was his whole trip, as far as I knew.

Q: Did Manson distinguish between physical death and ego death?

A: Yes, yes.

Q: How would he do that?

A: Well, a lot of times a person would have an ego death and they wouldn't physically die; but a lot of times there was no differentiation to -- say, in Brooks Poston's case, Charlie just told him, he said, "Die," and Brooks figured he meant die; and so Brooks laid down on the couch and really tried to die.

Q: To physically die, didn't he?

A: Yeah, he laid there for three days --

Q: Without moving, as far as you know?

A: Yes.

Q: Without getting up; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: No food?

A: Nothing?

Q: No water?

A: Huh-uh.

Q: And whatever bodily functions occurred, just occurred, didn't they, during that three-day period?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever do anything like that at Mr. Manson's command?

A: Well, I did a similar thing one time. We were at the Fountain of the Worlds and we were at a meeting of all the big shots of the Fountain of the Worlds and they was all talking about their Guru and how great he was; and Charlie was going to demonstrate how great he was, and so he told me -- he told me, "Would you go" -- no, wait, they told us that their Guru had hung on the cross up there from three days, and Charlie told me if I would go hang up there for a week, and so I got up and walked out the door and started figuring how I was going to get up on that thing. And then he came out and told me not to do it; he proved his point.

Q: But you went toward the cross in all sincerity, didn't you?

A: Yeah.

Q: You were prepared to hang on that cross, to really hang on the cross, weren't you?

A: For a week, yeah.

I couldn't figure out how to do it, though; I needed some help to get up there.

Q: But you never said, "No, that's an impossibility, Charlie, I'm not going to do that"?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: Or, "I won't do that"?

A: No.

Q: Or, "I can't do that"?

A: No, I never said that.

Q: As a matter of fact, wasn't there some incident you witnessed, Mr. Watkins, that involved a coconut?

A: Oh, I didn't witness, I just was told about it at one time.

We was sitting around the bus and he told -- no, I witnessed it, yeah -- he told Sadie to get up and go to Rio de Janeiro and bring him a coconut.

Q: And she got up and started to leave?

A: She got up and headed out the door; and he stopped her, he had already proved his point.

THE COURT: He told her to go where?

THE WITNESS: Rio de Janeiro.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: She didn't know whether they grew them there, but she left?

A: Yeah.

Q: But she left because he told her to leave?

A: Yeah; she was supposed to bring him half a coconut.

THE COURT: So far, you have been telling us how Manson would tell you and everyone else to die. Did Manson ever talk about himself dying?

THE WITNESS: Oh, yeah.

THE COURT: Or hanging on a cross, himself?

THE WITNESS: Oh, yes; apparently he had done it already.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: He told you he had, that he was the Christ who was crucified, didn't he?

A: Well, he was a lot shrewder than that. He never would come out and flat say, "I'm the Christ that was crucified."

He would say it in every other way, but say that; in other words, he would super hint at it. He never really -- the closest he ever came to flat saying, "I'm Jesus Christ," was just flat saying, "I'm Jesus Christ"; but then he would always stipulate and say that "You are Jesus, too."

Q: But didn't you tell the Court last time that Manson said he was the Christ that died on the cross 2,000 years ago?

A: Yeah, that's when one time in an experience he sort of acted the whole thing out, the crucifixion scene type.

Q: But you were asked the question, "Did Manson say that he was the Christ that died on the cross 2,000 years ago?" and you said, "Yes."

Do you remember that question and that answer?

A: Yes, I remember that; it was in that experience -- excuse me for saying that he never did say it, but most of the time he wouldn't say it. Most of the time he would just play the part.

Q: As a matter of fact, after he told you that he was Christ who had been crucified, he demonstrated his crucifixion, didn't he?

A: Yes.

Q: And you believed it was real, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: I take it he was stretched out on the ground at that experience, wasn't he?

A: Yes.

Q: And he demonstrated the nailing of the hands?

A: Yes.

Q: And the spear thrust?

A: Yes.

Q: And I take it with appropriate sound effects?

A: Yes.

Q: All of which you believed was actually happening, didn't you?

A: Yes. I believed he was re-experiencing it. It was like there was an element of doubt in my mind, but that is what he used to work at all the time, to rid that element of doubt out of everybody's mind.



You can believe something and still have a few reservations and I still had a few reservations for quite a while.

Q: But actually when you were seeing and hearing and listening to Manson you had no reservation, did you?

A: Yes, all those come later when you start thinking later on.

Q: You started to think when you were lucky enough to meet Mr. Crockett; is that right?

A: No. I would get off on my own and walk in the hills and think sometimes.

Q: What would you do after you did all your thinking?

A: I would generally go get right back into it again.

Q: Right back into Mr. Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: I think you told us that death was a big thing with Manson. He had quite a thing going about death, didn't he?

A: Yes.

Q: And did he ever tell you that he thought you would do people a favor by killing them?

A: Yes.

Q: Can you elaborate and explain that to us?

A: Well, he used to say that death was the ultimate trip; in other words, that that was peace, that was total submission, that was harmony and everything that was good and so that really when you killed someone, you just liberated them. That when someone died or if you killed them, he would say, in order to tell you that, you should have no qualms about being willing to die for someone or being willing to kill someone if he asked you to. Like, say, we should all be willing to do anything for anyone with no limit on it.

Q: When he talked to you about killing people so that he could live, was he talking or distinguishing between a physical death and an ego death?

A: Not at that point. I did have thoughts at that point that you are thinking, thoughts of what does he really mean. Did he really mean kill them or did he mean just kill them so far as their ego goes mentally and this is when I began to see that he was putting

something together here.

Q: When did you see this?

A: All along, actually, but I would suppress my own thoughts, in other words, according to what I believed was true, and then there was a certain part of myself that would think and see things go on and see him tell people things like that, tell me things like that, but I would always suppress those thoughts until I got to an environment where I could bring them out and express them and that environment was when I met Paul Crockett and Brooks Poston later on.

Q: But up until the time you met Paul Crockett, you really believed that?

A: Yes. I suppressed anything inside of myself that was contrary to being a good family member.

Q: You really believed that death was necessary so that one could live again?

A: Yes. I was trying to do it myself.

THE COURT: Did anybody try to do Charlie a favor by liberating him?

THE WITNESS: Not that I ever saw.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Do you remember the conditions that used to exist when Manson would talk about helter-skelter? Was it usually on an acid trip?

A: Yes.

Q: And a lot of these occurred at the Gresham Street house?

A: Yes. That is when I got really tense.

Q: Was there an available supply of LSD around when you lived at Gresham Street with the group?

A: Yes.

Q: Was it just passed out by somebody?

A: On Charlie's say-so it was, yes.

Q: Could you have acid, you know, when the whole family wasn't together if you wanted it?

A: That was a no-no. You didn't do that.

Q: Did Manson ever give anybody acid without giving it to the whole family, if you know?

A: Yes.

Q: He would pass it out?

A: It was okay if he did it. I mean if he gave somebody a trip, you know, but if you went and got a trip yourself and took it, that was your ego.

Q: Were these group discussions something that happened fairly frequently?

A: Yes.

Q: And was acid being used fairly frequently during these group discussions?

A: Not always because you can't take acid everyday.

Q: A trip will last about 12 hours?

A: Yes.

Q: You take it normally every other day?

A: No. Sometimes we would only take it once every two weeks and sometimes we got -- at the Gresham Street house we were taking it about once a week.

Q: Did Manson always take acid when everyone else did?

A: I think so. It looked like it.

Q: But you never really saw him take it?

A: Oh, yes, I did. I have seen him eat the tablets.

Q: Have you taken many trips with Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: How many did you take with him?

A: About, it seems like about 30 to 50, something like that, quite a few.

Q: Within the period of time that you lived with the family?

A: Yes.

Q: That includes Spahn, Gresham, and Barker?

A: Yes.

Q: Where would you say you took the greatest number of those trips?

A: At the Gresham Street house.

Q: And that would have been then between January and March or so of '69; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you live with the family -- I am sure you did -- between March of '69 and June of '69 at the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Was acid being used there then?

A: It is more like May than June.

Q: Or May.

A: Yes. Was acid being used?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: Almost as frequently as at Gresham Street?

A: Yes.

Q: Same sort of a deal when the family would get together and helter-skelter was being discussed?

A: Yes.

Q: What other things went on at the family or at Spahn Ranch other than discussions about helter-skelter? Everybody have an occupation?

A: What do you mean by occupation?

Q: Well, did you have anything to occupy your time?

A: Charlie pretty much kept everybody busy. Everybody kept busy.

Q: How about the girls?

A: The girls all kept busy, too.

Q: Were the girls permitted to just sort of loaf around? Sunbathe?

A: sometimes.

Q: How about horseback riding? Were they permitted to do that?

A: Yes.

Q: Pretty regularly?

A: Yes.

Q: However, they all had things that had to be done first; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Chores that had to be performed?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever see Barbara Hoyt and Diane Lake around Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: When everybody was using acid, were they using acid, if you know?

A: Yes.

Q: And they were taking the same sort of trips during helter-skelter discussions?

A: Yes.

Q: Was there a great deal of sexual activity going on at the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: If you know, were Barbara and Diane participating in that?

A: I don't know so much about Barbara but I know about Diane.

Q: She was?

A: Uh-huh.

Q: You spoke about the role of the women at the ranch as being there to please man and to serve man; is that right?

A: Yes. The woman was for man.

Q: When you wanted the services of a lady or you wanted a young gal, was there any difficulty about it?

A: No.

Q: Was there any order or sequence in which you could do things?

A: Well, generally, you just told him what you wanted, or if you wanted to make love, you would just take them by the hand and go make love.

Q: Take any girl that you wanted; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: Anybody your fancy chose?

A: Yes.

Q: And they didn't have a right to object or resist?

A: No, they didn't.

Q: Did you know any of the girls who wouldn't participate with the men on the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: And anything they had to do?

A: Yes.

Q: Who?

A: Sandy and Bo and Sherry Cooper. Girls would always go through their thing where they would resist you. A few of them would.

Q: Just those that you have named?

A: Yes.

Q: Did they have something going on between themselves?

A: Well, yes, generally it was for some reason.

Q: I think you told us something about a trip that you took in Devil's Canyon when Tex was sort of leading you up and down the hills. Do you remember that?

A: Yes.

Q: That was in early '69. Was that an acid trip?

A: Yes.

Q: Everybody was on acid?

A: Yes.

Q: I take it you didn't object to climbing the hills aimlessly; is that a good expression?

A: No, I didn't object to it.

Q: You just went along?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you suggest any hills that one ought to climb?

A: Yes.

Q: And you climbed them; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: Did the girls suggest any hills to be climbed?

A: No.

Q: They just followed along, did they?

A: Yes.

Q: Were there any other men other than you and Tex there?

A: Just Clem.

Q: Clem?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he suggest a hill that ought to be climbed?

A: No. I don't remember him doing any of that.

Q: What were you looking for, if you know?

A: We were looking to see what we could see, to see how much there was to see there.

Q: You were not looking for the hole in the back of Spahn Ranch?

A: No. The idea of Devil's Canyon was, we was going to use the canyon -- first of all, the road to the desert was supposed to go through the canyon, the dune buggy road, and we was going to have camps in the canyon where we could high-grade dune buggies.

Q: Highgrade?

A: Highgrade them.

Q: Do something to them?

A: Yes, make them, build them.

Q: Were there many dune buggies at the ranch at this time?

A: Got to be two before I left.

Q: Are you talking about Spahn Ranch now?

A: Yes.

Q: I take it Devil's Canyon is somewhere in the Spahn Ranch area?

A: Yes.

Q: You think there were two dune buggies there?

A: Yes.

Q: Were they fairly new?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know how they got there?

A: Yes.

Q: How?

A: One girl came with a Volkswagen and we scrounged up \$1,300 somewhere and we took the Volkswagen and \$1,300 to a shop and asked for two dune buggies and they gave us two dune buggies.

Q: Did the Volkswagen originally belong to somebody who had just joined the family?

A: Yes.

Q: She was then devoting or donating all of her worldly goods to the family; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: And then when the dune buggies, I take it, were purchased and built, or whatever you did when them, they became Mr. Manson's; right?

A: Well, it was understood that they belonged to us as a family but Charlie controlled everything around there.

Q: Including the dune buggies?

A: Yes.

Q: And their use?

A: Yes.

Q: You told us that on some of your LSD experiences there was a kind of a super-waker-upper or something of that nature; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: Didn't it also serve to increase your energy?

A: LSD?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: You became very energized as a result of using it?

A: Yes.

Q: Very active?

A: Yes.

Q: However, it didn't impede any normal functions; you could walk under it, couldn't you?

A: Sure.

Q: You could drive a car?

A: Well, depending upon the dose.

Q: All right.

Well, if you took a real large dose you just got swacked out, didn't you?

A: Yeah, you couldn't walk or anything.



Q: How long would that nonwalking sensation last?

A: It would depend upon the dose you took. I took a dose once that put me in that state for two days.

Q: But that's an exceedingly large dose?

A: Exceedingly large, yes.

Q: But for the day by day routine nobody ever took a dose like that, did they?

A: No.

Q: They took a dose so they could continue to function, didn't they?

A: Yes.

Q: You felt very much energized and very much pepped up under the influence of it, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever take acid and speed together?

A: Not on purpose.

Q: Why not?

A: Because they don't mix.

Q: You have never done that, yourself, I take it?

A: I have, but not on purpose.

Q: What happened to you when you did take it?

A: It happens like sometimes you get LSD that's mixed with speed, and you eat it and think it's LSD but it's really mixed with speed, so you wind up eating both of them; both of the chemicals, and what happens is just, it doesn't -- they don't go well together; many times it will make for a bad experience.

Q: You mean you have a bad trip?

A: Yeah.

Q: But nothing other than that, nothing physically that happens to you?

A: That's what happens, the speed is a physical thing, and so you become -- it affects you physically where the LSD is more affecting you mentally; and so then you become torn between the physical trip that is happening to you and the mental trip that is happening to you and you find yourself going back and forth.

Q: But really they both tend to increase your energy output, don't they?

A: No, they do, but you are trying to put them in one -- both -- and it is a completely different thing.

They do increase your energy, both of them do.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Manson demonstrating during the course of these helter-skelter discussions the killing of people?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Watson do it?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever see anybody demonstrate the killing of people?

A: Well, I saw one time, Charlie demonstrated how to kill someone, but he wasn't doing it like, now -- like, "Here, I'm going to show you how to kill someone; here, let me demonstrate."

He was trying to kill me.

Q: That was some kind of a choking experience; is that right?

A: Yeah.

Q: That was a part of this dying bit that he wanted you to go through?

A: Yeah.

Q: And obviously you survived that because, I think --

A: Obviously.

Q: -- and you survived it without any physical injury, didn't you?

A: Yes.

Q: Was that another time when you were both on acid?

A: Yes.

Q: And he was asking you -- he wanted you to die, didn't he?

A: Yeah -- no, he was -- now, I guess you could say that.

Q: Well, he choked you for a bit and let go of you, didn't he?

A: Yeah.

Q: You didn't fight or resist him at all, did you?

A: That's not true.

Q: Well, did you fight him off?

A: I didn't fight him, but I did resist him; emotionally I resisted him. It was what you

call being afraid; and mentally I resisted him.

I wasn't going for the idea of dying, but then there was a point to where I ceased to resist him mentally and emotionally.

Q: Well, how would you make known the fact that you were emotionally and mentally resisting him?

A: Shaking like a leaf.

Q: You mean while he was holding your neck?

A: Yeah.

Q: But you never said, "Let go, Charlie"?

A: No; and then by mentally resisting, I would look at him, like, "What the heck is going on?" Trying to understand what he was doing.

Q: Why didn't you just ask him to let you go?

A: Because I had only known him for about a month and I'd listened to his philosophy a lot and talked with him a lot; and so I kind of figured it was just weird, I kind of figured that there was something to me to learn out of the whole thing.

Q: There might be some reason for it?

A: Yeah, there was a reason for it and there was a bunch of the guys around and I didn't see any sense in fighting.

Q: Wasn't this -- hadn't you by this time already gotten the idea that Charlie was Jesus Christ?

A: No, not by that time. He was just Charlie; I had only known him for a month.

Q: And you don't think that you felt that Jesus Christ could be doing no harm?

A: No, I wasn't thinking that. I was more thinking -- he had once said that if you don't fear death, that you could never die; so in my mind I looked at it as I was being tested, that if I was going to fear death that he would have gone ahead and killed me -- and I still firmly believe that today, because he was sincere in his eyes and he was sincere in the way he was going about doing it.

Q: And you thought that that was actual physical death rather than ego death?

A: I thought he was just going to flat kill me.

Q: But he let you go without your saying any word to him; is that correct?

A: He let me go the very instant I ceased to fear him.

Q: How did you make that know; did you stop shaking?

A: It becomes very apparent at that point, because you relax. If you are not afraid, then you just relax.

Q: So when you relaxed he let you go; is that right?

A: Yeah, when I relaxed he let me go.

Q: When did you, Mr. Watkins, first become aware of belladonna?

A: When I was about 16 years old.

Q: Where?

A: In a Hopi Indian reservation in northeastern Arizona.

Q: Did you ever see belladonna while at the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: When?

A: In the spring of 1969 I went out and -- I saw it along, because it grows all around there.

Q: What form does it take?

A: It takes a form of a green plant, but it has got heart-shaped leaves and big white lillies --

Q: Some kind of a flower plant?

A: Big prickly balls.

Q: What did you do with it?

A: Well, I used to dig it up, and it has roots that are like yams -- and chop the roots up and make tea of the roots and drink the tea.

Q: You sort of brew it up, then?

A: Yeah.

Q: Was that done at Spahn Ranch, if you know?

A: Yes.

Q: On how many occasions?

A: On one occasion.

Q: Was that when you did it?

A: That's when I did it.

Q: What year was this, or what month?

A: Spring of '69.

Q: And where was it done at the ranch?

A: In the semi-trailer.

Q: Now, is the only way one takes the plant by brewing the roots?

A: By brewing the roots.

Q: Can you chew the root, too?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever do that?

A: Yes.

Q: On how many occasions?

A: A dozen occasions.

Q: Was that while you were around the ranch, also?

A: No, I never took it around the ranch. I only did it because they asked me to.

Q: Who asked you to?

A: Charlie asked me to.

Q: Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: Was there some sort of a group gathering when this was done?

A: Yes, people were watching what I was doing.

Q: Were you the one who was actually brewing it up?

A: Yes.

Q: I think you told us you had used it, what, a dozen times before this occasion; is that right?

A: I had used it about 20 times before that occasion.

Q: But 12 times by chewing the roots?

A: Approximately.

Q: And the rest by stewing or by brewing?

A: Drinking the tea or eating the seeds.

Q: What effect did it have on you?

A: Very, very, very strong drug effect.

Q: Like what?

A: Like, first noticeable effects are very, very thick saliva forming in your mouth, and you have a hard time swallowing.

Q: Is that saliva condition something you could call cotton mouth?

A: Yes, you just get a very bad cotton mouth and a very awful odor, then you get nauseous, really nauseated, that lasts for three or four hours, and then depending on the dose, it will lay the body down.

Q: In other words, you would pass out?

A: The trip will continue.

Q: How long does the trip continue?

A: Three days to a week.

Q: In lighter quantities, what happens short of passing out?

A: In the lighter quantities you could still walk around.

Q: Function?

A: Walk around and function.

Q: Did the drug have a tendency to dehydrate you, Mr. Watkins, if you know?

A: Belladonna?

Q: That is what I am talking about? Belladone.

A: Yes.

Q: You get very dehydrated?

A: Yes.

Q: Emaciated?

A: Emaciated?

Q: You know, kind of dried up?

A: Yes. You can say it emaciates you if you want to, I guess. I am not sure what that words means.

Q: Just being very dry?

A: I always carried a canteen whenever I would take that.

Q: To replenish what? The bodily fluids?

A: Yes.

Q: With water?

A: Yes.

Q: How often would you take it when you did take it?

A: One time I took it -- it would vary. I would go on a binge and maybe take it every three or four days, in order to stay constantly on it. Spread it out over two or three weeks. Or I would take one very strong trip and then not take any for a few months, then take another one and not take any for a week. There was no pattern to how it was done.

Q: Is the effect pretty much the same, whether you drink the juice or chew the root?

A: Well, all except for the physical effect. If you chew the root, you get a root in your stomach that you are likely to throw up.

Q: Is the physical reaction to the drug the same?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: Would this be a good time to recess, Mr. Bubrick?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen of the jury we will recess at this time until 1:30. Once more, please heed the usual admonition.

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, THURSDAY, AUGUST 26, 1971

1:40 P.M.

-- oOo --

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, counsel and defendant present.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Mr. Watkins, please.

PAUL ALLEN WATKINS,

resumed the stand and testified further as follows:

THE CLERK: You've been previously sworn.

Would you restate your name for the record?

THE WITNESS: Paul Watkins.

CROSS-EXAMINATION (Resumed) BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Mr. Watkins, I think this noon when we broke we were talking about belladonna and you were telling us about the batch you were brewing up in Spahn Ranch.

Do you recall that?

A: Yeah, I recall that.

Q: And you said that it was being prepared in some sort of a tea form, something to drink, I take it?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, when that was being prepared, was Mr. Watson there, if you know?

A: Yes, he was there.

Q: And did you see him do anything about the belladonna you were using?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he do?

A: He took a chunk of root about three-quarters of an inch long and about an inch in diameter and walked off chewing on it.

Q: Did you see him again that day?

A: No, saw him three days later.

Q: Three days later?

A: Yes.

Q: And what, if anything, did you notice at that time?

A: I noticed that he was bruised, was cut from one end to the other and had a big blackened, red and blue eye, looked like he had been in a heck of a fight.

Q: Can you fix the time of the year that this occurred in?

A: Yeah, it would be spring of 1968 -- no, '69.

Q: March-April of '69?

A: April.

Q: April of '69?

A: Seems like about April.

Q: And you had gone for three whole days; is that correct?

A: Yes. It seemed like about three days.

Q: Did you ever see him use belladonna at any other time?

A: No.

Q: I think you told us this morning -- I am sorry. Did you want to say something?

A: I just left shortly thereafter.

Q: I think you told us this morning you prepared this preparation at the request of



Mr. Manson; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he tell you why he wanted it prepared?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he say?

A: He said he wanted to poison some guy. We were driving through the hills and we met some guy that kicked us off his land.

So he said he wanted to poison him and asked me if I knew any poisons and so I said, "Yeah."

So I made him up a batch of poison.

Q: This batch of poison that you are telling us is the belladonna that you were preparing?

A: Yes; also poison if you take too much.

Q: How much did you prepare, if you remember?

A: About a gallon.

Q: Did you ever see what became of that?

A: So far as I know, it got put on the shelf in the trailer and that was the last time I saw of it.

Q: I think you told us also this morning that in heavy doses, belladonna has a tendency to knock you out, as you put it; correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And with milder doses, however, you can function; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Does it have any peculiar characteristics on the body after you have taken it?

A: Yes.

Q: Like what?

A: Well, say, if you took a mild dose, a mild dose will only take you like on a three-day trip. Then you would have blurry vision for about a week after that and you would have a hard time moving your body and you forget what you was thinking about and forget what you was talking about.

You may be talking about something and then all of a sudden forget what you was

doing and ask somebody to remind you of what you were saying or something.

Q: Now, did you ever take belladonna and speed together?

A: Yes. That is a common thing for people who take belladonna.

As a matter of fact, the Indians have an organic speed that they take with it, another plant on the desert.

They take the two together, because one puts you down and the other one compensates for the physical effect and keeps you up. The idea is so that you can still walk around and function and still operate.

Q: At the time that you took belladonna and speed together, did you thereafter continue whatever you happened to be doing?

A: What?

Q: Well, what happened when you took belladonna and speed at the same time?

A: It still doesn't cut down on the heaviness of the hallucination.

Belladonna is a hallucinogen. People call LSD a hallucinogen but it is not anywhere near as hallucinogenic as belladonna.

I mean, you hallucinate so strongly that you completely lose touch with what you would call reality.

In other words, if I were on belladonna now, I wouldn't necessarily have to be seeing all these people in this courtroom and all you. I may just be seeing some plum trees and the ocean and in another reality.

Q: You are completely detached from reality; is that correct?

A: Complete hallucination, yes.

Q: Do you move about? Can you move about?

A: Depending upon the dose. If you take it rightly, what I call rightly, if you take a moderate dose with some sort of stimulant, then, of course, you can still move about and still do what you are doing and still keep some kind of a cognizance about you, remember who you are and things like that.

THE COURT: You say a mild dose gives you a 3-day trip?

THE WITNESS: Yeah; so a strong dose would give you about a 10-day trip.

THE COURT: How about  $\frac{3}{4}$  of an inch by 1 inch, would that be mild or a strong dose?

THE WITNESS: That would be a pretty moderate dose -- medium, I'd say.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Well, if we are on a scale, are we talking about mild, moderate or medium or severe?

A: Yeah.

Q: Where would this be on the scale?

A: It would be in the middle.

Q: But do you think one could function after chewing a piece of that belladonna the size you have described?

A: It all depends on the individual. I think you could function. I have eaten more and still been able to function.

Q: Is that without the assistance of some sort of a stimulant, like speed?

A: Well, you have, -- it helps to have the assistance of the speed.

Q: I think you told us the day you saw Watson walk off, he just walked off chewing the thing; right?

A: Yeah.

Q: You don't know whether he left the ranch or anything of that nature?

A: He did leave the ranch.

Q: Did you see how?

A: I believe he hitch-hiked off down the road, hitch-hiked and he said he was going to get his motorcycle out of the shop.

Q: Did Watson have a motorcycle, as far as you know?

A: As far as what he told me.

Q: Had you ever seen him with a motorcycle about the ranch?

A: No, I don't think the motorcycle had ever made it there. He got stoned and cracked it up before it ever came back.

Q: Who did?

A: Tex.

Q: Is it the same period, now, you are talking about, chewing on the belladonna?

A: Yeah.

Q: Can you tell us what Watson, you know -- describe him physically from the time you first saw him in 1968, something about his height and weight, how he appeared to

you, physically.

A: Yeah.

Q: Can you tell us about that, please?

A: It all looked quite normal, average; well, the same height as he is now, about six foot it looked like, and was much more filled out than he is now -- let's say, like I am -- much more filled out in the places and much more healthy looking. He was a very healthy looking young man.

Q: This is when you first met him?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, how about when you left in about October '69?

A: Well, then physically he is still just about as healthy but his hair was getting really long and he was looking really scraggly about that time.

We was all getting to look pretty scraggly about that time.

Q: And how about the fill-out of his body, or filled out as you called it?

A: Well, it was later on that -- about in the summer - time when we came up to the Barker Ranch he had lost a whole lot of weight and he looked quite unhealthy to me.

Q: When was this, now?

A: In September.

Q: Of '69?

A: Yes.

Q: You say he looked unhealthy?

A: Yes.

Q: Can you describe or elaborate on that?

A: Well, looked skinny and pale and unhappy and discontent, so that would go for a mental unhealth and a physical unhealth, both.

Q: Do you know whether he had a tendency at that time to spit a lot or spit up a lot?

A: I think he did, I don't know; but I think he and Brenda both had that thing where they was always spitting up a lot.

Q: Is this characteristic of belladonna use, if you know?

A: Yeah, it is a characteristic of belladonna use. I wouldn't conclude that it came from that.

Q: In what respect is it characteristic of belladonna?

A: Belladonna creates a real heavy phlegm in your throat, like I was saying, "cottonmouth"; real, real heavy, like a thick mixture of peanut butter and honey in your mouth. You are always wanting to get rid of it some way or another.

Q: Mr. Watkins, you told us this morning, also, that many of the helter-skelter discussions you had with Manson were while you were under the influence of LSD; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Mr. Manson discuss helter-skelter to the same degree or as elaborately the very first time you heard it as you did the last?

A: No.

Q: How did it start out?

A: It started out in about New Year's -- as a matter of fact, it was New Year's Eve between 1968 and 1969, that Charlie was down in the city and the rest of the family was up at the Barker Ranch; and he came up to the Barker Ranch and he began talking about this album that the Beatles had out, it was newly out at that time, and about -- he said, "Are you hep to what the Beatles are saying," and began to say that the Beatles were prophecying a revolution and that they were really holes in the infinite, which means that God was talking through them because they were supposedly holes; and then from that time on -- then we began to write songs about the revolution, and from that time on it just grew from day to day, a little more was added onto it, and a little -- the picture would get a little more clearer; in other words, he'd add a little bit more to it, like the story that I told the court about how it was all to come down, how the revolution was to take place, that story wasn't told in one sitting down like I am telling it today. It was told over a period of five, six months to me, so it was built, you know, one little bit at a time; because I know it's really unbelievable to you people because I am sitting down and telling it, but it was something that sort of snuck up on me, you know, just a little bit at a time and it didn't really seem too farfetched when you are swallowing it just a little bit at a time.

Q: And it finally developed into the complete discussion that you have told us about now; is that correct?

A: Yes, it finally developed into a state of consciousness on my part and on everyone in the family's part.

We didn't know when it was happening -- like I'd look out the window and wonder if it was going to happen today, you know -- think what was the quickest way to get to shelter if it was to happen right now.

Q: Well, the shelter that you talked about was the hole, wasn't it?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you ever go out looking for that hole in the ground?

A: Yes.

Q: On more than one occasion?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you really believe it existed?

A: Like you would say, more I hoped that it did.

Q: What did he tell you you were going to find when you found the hole in the ground?

A: Well, he said that entrance, that the snakes would have made their home in the entrance of the hole, rattlesnakes, so that we would have to first of all learn how to get around the snakes, make friends with the snakes and then he said way down in the hole that there would be a city of gold.

And he read those words from the Revelation and that there would be a tree that had -- these words from the Revelation -- that there was a tree with 12 different kinds of fruit that changed every month and that there would be light but there would be no sun.

Q: Did anyone ever question him about that?

A: Not that I know.

Q: Did you believe it was so when he told it to you?

A: It was getting a little far out for me, but at that point, I didn't want to not believe it, because if I started -- I had already invested pretty near a year into that family and if I started not believing Charlie, then I would have had to discount all the thing I believed before, and that would have invalidated me.

I would have had to say, "You have been a fool" to myself.

Q: And you didn't want to make that kind of concession?

A: No, I didn't want to be a fool.

Q: Was this before or after you met Mr. Crockett?

A: What was?

Q: Looking for the hole?

A: Before.

Q: Is that one of the things you discussed with Mr. Crockett?

A: Yes.

Q: And is that one of the things that disenchanted you with Mr. Manson and his philosophy?

A: I didn't buy the idea of going down through a hole. No, that didn't particularly disenchant me.

Q: Did you think enough of it to go out and look for this hole in the ground?

A: Well, we would go out with Charlie and walk around the desert and surmise as to where it might be.

As a matter of fact, we ever bought \$300 worth of maps one time so that we could study the desert and maybe find out where it was.

Q: Did Charlie have any thoughts about right and wrong?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he tell you about that?

A: He said there was no such thing.

Q: That is right or wrong?

A: Yes.

Q: And that everything was what? One way or the other?

A: Everything was all right.

Q: Anything you wanted to do was all right?

A: Yes.

Q: How about killing?

A: He said that was all right, too.

Q: Did he have any idea about the parts of a human being, so far as Devil, God, anything so far as that is concerned?

A: He said the white man was God. He was closest to God because his skin was

white, but then also it was the Devil and that the Devil is God and that they are both one.

Q: And everybody had that in them; is that right?

A: Everybody had both things in them, yes.

Q: How about time? Did time mean anything?

A: Time mean anything?

Q: Yes.

A: He said there was no such thing as that, either.

Q: And did he say things like that in connection with the clock or things of that nature, calendars?

A: We didn't use them, clocks or calendars.

Q: Did you have any contact with the outside world?

A: Very little.

Q: Were there newspapers coming to the ranch, if you know?

A: Not that I know.

Q: Did you ever see a newspaper at the ranch?

A: No.

Q: Were there any radios at the ranch?

A: Not that I know.

Q: How about electricity? Was there electricity?

A: There was electricity.

Q: At Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: How about Barker?

A: No.

Q: I think you told us this morning about meeting Tex and Ella, as I think they were coming up the road. They had been to the city?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Tex look like he was on an acid trip then, if you could tell?

A: Yes, he did. As a matter of fact, he told me that he was.

Q: Could you tell by looking at him?



A: Yes. I could tell something was up.

Q: Did you ever hear of an acid known as orange sunshine?

A: Yes.

Q: How would that rate, if you can rate acid, as between heavy, mild, medium?

A: Generally, it is pretty heavy.

Q: How about white lightning?

A: Generally, that is pretty heavy, too.

Q: Were these types of acid available at the ranch, if you know?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Charlie have them under control?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: May I have just a minute, your Honor?

THE COURT: How much schooling have you had?

THE WITNESS: Up until I just about finished high school.

THE COURT: About finished high school. How old are you now?

THE WITNESS: 21. I lacked six months of finishing high school.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Mr. Watkins, do you ever remember Manson saying anything about killing a human being in relationship to the person who does the killing?

A: Yes. I have heard him talk about that.

Q: What did he say?

A: Well, he always talked about how we had to be willing to die for each other in the family, and that at the same time, we had to be willing to kill each other.

We had to be willing to kill for each other and we had to be willing to die for each other and we had to be willing to kill each other.

Q: Did he ever tell you if you killed a human being you would only be killing a part of yourself?

A: Yes, he did that.

Q: Did he tell you that that was all right?

A: Yes. He would say you can never really kill anyone, that there was no such thing as death, that you couldn't really ever kill anyone anyway and if you did, you was only killing because we are all one anyway, that you would be only killing yourself.

I didn't want to kill myself. So I didn't -- it didn't seem like it was all right to me.

Q: Mr. Watkins, can you tell us the male members who were in the family at or about the time you left? That would be October '69?

A: Yes.

Q: Who were they?

A: There was myself and Charlie Manson and Steve Grogan.

MR. BUGLIOSI: That is Clem Tufts?

THE WITNESS: Yes, Clem Tufts -- and Juan. You could call him a member, I guess. He was around.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Juan Flynn?

A: Yes. Danny DeCarlo and Bill Vance.

Q: Watson, of course?

A: Oh, yes, Tex, and there was some other guys that hung around but that was the essence of it.

Q: Do you think there were the principal members of the family, the names you have just enumerated?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Mr. Watson have his own thing going while he was in the family, if you know?

A: What do you mean his own thing?

Q: Yes. You told us about other members of the family being in competition, so to speak, with Mr. Manson?

A: I did?

Q: Well, didn't you tell us that Bruce Davis was competing with Manson, he had more ego than Manson, something like that?

MR. BUGLIOSI: I think that was Poston's testimony, the previous witness.

MR. BUBRICK: I beg your pardon, I turned too far.

THE WITNESS: It is true, but I didn't say it.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Well, did you ever hear Mr. Manson -- I'm sorry -- Mr. Watson arguing with Mr. Manson about control of the family?

A: No.

Q: Did he ever stand up to Mr. Manson in any regard that you are aware of?

A: No.

Q: Did he ever refuse to do anything that he was asked to do by Mr. Manson?

A: Not that I saw.

Q: Was there some incident that occurred between you and an automobile, taking of an automobile?

A: Yes.

Q: What was that?

A: That was about April of 1969 and Charlie told me to go steal a car, and preferably a four-wheeled drive vehicle that would carry a lot of supplies and a lot of people; and I didn't particularly care for the idea of doing it -- and it was all the way he did it, all the way he went about asking, and where I was at that point there was no way I could say no.

Even though I didn't want to, I had to. I did it. Anyway, it was either do it or leave, and so I said I would.

Then, once I said I would, there was no way of getting out of it then because Charlie said that if you didn't do what you said you would do, then you was just no good, that's all there was to it; and so I did. I stole it.

Q: And brought it back --

A: Brought it back to the ranch.

Q: -- to the ranch?

Did you bring it over to Mr. Manson?

A: No -- yeah, I did for a moment, and then he gave it back to me and said, "Take all the girls," or 16 of them, "and take them to the desert along with a bunch of supplies"; and so I loaded them all in the truck and started driving to the desert and got as far as Lancaster and we all got thrown in jail.

Q: Is this a milk truck of some sort?

A: Well, it was a great big van, like a milk truck, but it was four-wheel drive.

Q: Was Barbara Hoyt one of the people that went on the trip with you up to Lancaster?

A: I believe so.

Q: Incidentally, did you ever see --

A: Yes, she was.

Q: -- see Barbara taking any acid at the Gresham Street house?

A: No, I don't recall that she ate any acid there.

Q: How about Spahn Ranch?

A: I don't recall her eating any acid there, either.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: A few more questions, your Honor.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: You say that Tex acted dumb but he wasn't, in your opinion?

A: Yes.

Q: Would you elaborate on that?

A: Well, he never hardly ever talked, you know, like most people talk and tell you how smart they are by the way they talk. He never hardly ever did that, and he just seemed really, like he'd have dumb expressions on his face, you know, just sort of dumb looking like someone who really didn't care; but I knew that he wasn't, because of where he was.

I met him in Dennis Wilson's house; Dennis Wilson has \$20 million; and I met him in a certain class of society where you just ain't too dumb to be there, most people you have to work to get there; and there was always good dope around there and there was always pretty girls.

Q: And Tex was right in the middle of it?

A: Most dumb people didn't get there.

Q: So you had the impression, then, that he wasn't dumb at all; is that correct?

A: Yes, and it is also my understanding that even if someone acts like they are dumb and to most people that they would appear to be dumb, somewhere inside of them that they are really smart.

Q: Did you have that impression about Tex Watson?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: How do you spell "helter-skelter"?

THE WITNESS: H-e-l-t-e-r s-k-e-l-t-e-r.

THE COURT: Did you ever see Manson write the word "Helter-skelter"?

THE WITNESS: Yeah.

THE COURT: How did he spell it?

THE WITNESS: I believe it was -- I don't remember -- because he wrote it one time on the wall of the nightclub at Spahn's Ranch.

THE COURT: How did he spell it then, do you recall?

THE WITNESS: No.

THE COURT: Did he have an "a" in helter-skelter?

THE WITNESS: I don't recall.

THE COURT: Are you through, Mr. Bugliosi?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Just two or three more questions.

THE COURT: Go ahead.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: When did you meet Paul Crockett for the first time?

A: In the late May of 1969.

Q: At Barker Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: This was after you left Charlie and the family?

A: This was when I decided to leave Charlie and the family and I went to Barker Ranch and then Paul Crockett was there and I met him that day.

Q: How long after one ingests belladonna does it normally start taking effect?

A: About an hour and then for the first effects to come on, and then about four hours for the hallucinogenic effect, for the physical effects to start subsiding and then hallucinogenic effects to start coming on.

Q: With respect to this incident down at the Fountain of the World where Charlie asked you to go hang on the cross, what was your state of mind? Did you actually intend to hang on the cross?

A: I would have, and my state of mind was that I was fully willing to do it; but I also knew that if I was fully willing to do it that I wouldn't have to.

Q: So you knew that if you told Charlie that you would do it, he would tell you you didn't have to?

A: Well, yeah, but it wasn't so much just a matter of telling him. I mean, I could

stand there, he was pretty sharp -- in other words, I could stand there and say, "Okay," but if I really didn't want to and I was shaking inside and it was apparent that I was lying and saying, "Okay, I will do it," then he would have still said, "Go ahead and do it."

Q: But if you had convinced --

A: That you would really do it, you had to really play the part.

Q: He would call it off, right, as he did?

A: As he did.

Q: You were enumerating some of the members of the family at the Barker Ranch when you finally left the family; you didn't mention the name of Bruce Davis.

Was he up there?

A: When I finally --

Q: In October of 1969.

A: Yes, he was.

Q: And he was a member of the family; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And how would you describe Mr. Davis' relationship with Charles Manson?

A: Bruce was sort of competing with Charlie.

Q: Not completely subservient to Charlie?

A: No, he wasn't.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further --

THE WITNESS: He did --

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Go ahead.

A: He did what Charlie said; but he would just do it -- in other words, he would grudgingly do it.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

RECROSS EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Was Watson completely subservient to Manson?

A: Didn't seem he fought with Charlie like -- one time, one time only, did I ever see Tex ever -- Charlie ever tell Tex to do something and Tex begrudgingly do it, and that was one time when Tex had put a brand new motor in his dune buggy and Charlie came along and told him that he had to take it out and put this other motor in; and he

kind of just said, "Okay," and he did it; but he did it like it was apparent that he really didn't want to.

Q: But he did it, anyway?

A: Yes, but that's the only time, I mean.

I saw Tex build a house because Charlie said, "Build a house." It is almost half as big as this room.

Q: Because Manson asked him to?

A: Yes.

Q: That was out at the Spahn Ranch, is that right?

A: Yeah.

Q: Who lived in the house?

A: No one; it wasn't intended for living in.

Q: What was it for, if you remember?

A: It was called the "In case place." In other words, in case anything happened to us and we all got arrested, we'd all meet at the "In case place," to get back together again.

Q: Now, you met -- you said you thought because Watson was at Dennis Wilson's and he had so much money that Watson had to be of that same class; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you have an idea that Watson had money?

A: Did I have an idea he did?

Q: Yes?

A: Yes. Figured he did.

Q: Just because he was at Dennis'?

A: Yes.

Q: Manson was there, too, wasn't he?

A: Yes, and I was there, too.

Q: And the girls were there, too?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did you all feel they had money?

A: Well, I didn't exactly look, and Charlie didn't exactly look like they did.

Q: But did Watson look like it?

A: Yeah, he looked well dressed and --

Q: Do you remember what he was wearing that made you think he was well dressed?

A: I don't remember the exact clothes, but he was well dressed, nice clothes. I had been wearing the same pair of pants for a year and a half and he had a new pair of pants on.

Q: He looked pretty straight; is that it?

A: Yeah.

Q: Did he still continue to look the same after he got back down to the ranch, or down to Spahn Ranch?

A: No, no, that's for sure.

Q: He looked like one of the -- like everybody else in the family?

A: Looked like one of the gang pretty soon.

Q: Did you carry on any discussions with Watson, with Tex, while you were at the ranch with him?

A: Very seldom.

Q: He wasn't a very talkative person, in other words?

A: No, he wasn't, not to me.

Q: Was this about the period that he seemed to be declining, as you told us about this noon, his appearance was changing?

A: You see, at that time I didn't notice any appearance change because I was looking pretty straggly, myself. I didn't notice that he was, you know, looking bad, because I didn't look any better; but after I left and went to the Barker Ranch and began working on myself there and building myself back together again and getting my body in shape and working for a living, then Tex came up and it about blew my mind, you know. I just said, "Wow, you really look bad." They all looked bad.

Q: Well, when you saw him at the time that you thought they looked bad, did he look about the same as you did when you last saw him at the Spahn Ranch?

A: No, he looked worse than the last time I had seen him. They all looked scared and unhealthy.



Q: Did you have occasion to talk with him while you were up at Barker Ranch?

A: Very little.

Q: Did he carry on any conversation with you when you tried?

A: I didn't try.

Q: And he didn't make any effort to talk with you either?

A: Oh, we sat by the pool one day and he said, "Helter-skelter is coming down," and I said, "Yeah, right"; and he says, "Nice day," you know. We didn't get into any talks about anything.

Q: Was this what gave you the impression that he was just a dumb country boy?

A: Yeah, but I didn't mean dumb country boy in the way, like in a derogatory sense; I meant it in a real nice way.

Q: Did you ever hear anything very bright come out of Tex Watson? Anything very original?

A: I suppose I did but I don't recall it right now.

Q: He confined himself more to the maintenance and automotive repair than anything else, didn't he?

A: No one in the family came up with anything that was on their own.

Q: Just repeating Manson?

A: Everybody repeated Charlie's thoughts.

Q: Good, bad or indifferent, they repeated Manson's thoughts?

A: Yeah.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: Watson wasn't a member of Manson's family when he was living at Dennis Wilson's place, was he?

A: No, he wasn't.

Q: It was during that period that you felt he was associating with quite a bit of class and money?

A: Yes.

Q: Watson became a member of the family later on?

A: Quite a bit later on.

Q: You testified that Tex acted dumb, but you felt he was smart.

Was the only reason why you felt this way because he was associating with Dennis Wilson, or did you form this opinion as a result of your observing Tex over a long period of time?

A: Oh, I formed this opinion because Tex told me that he had a house on the beach that he was renting.

Q: In Malibu?

A: Yes.

I formed this opinion because of what I had said, the people he hung around with.

I formed this opinion -- in other words, I didn't think he was really smart. I just figured -- I just knew he wasn't stupid. I mean stupid like he didn't know anything, like a person can be dumb but still not be stupid.

A person can be dumb, in other words, they just aren't really intelligent, but they still might know something.

They may be a good carpenter anyway. They may be a good plumber anyway. They may be a good engineer anyway.

They may not to be too bright yet and I just didn't think he was really bright.

Q: You were aware that he was somehow involved in selling wigs?

A: No, I wasn't.

Q: Forgetting about the Dennis Wilson aspect, the fact that he was living with Dennis Wilson and associating with girls and money and good dope as opposed to bad dope, forgetting about that, was your impression of Tex Watson over the period of time that you knew him that he was acting dumb, but that he wasn't?

A: My impression was that he was acting dumb, that he really wasn't, but you see whenever I say that someone is dumb, I know that they are acting dumb because in my mind everyone is basically smart.

Q: You recognize that some people have very, very low I.Q.'s, don't you, Paul?

A: Yes.

Q: You are aware of that?

A: Yes. I am aware of that but still I say that they are acting dumb because maybe they were taught to be that way from the time that they were very small.

I still say basically everyone is highly intelligent and that some people use more of that intelligence than others and so the part -- then if they are not as smart as they really are, in other words, really and truly, then it is because they are lazy and that is why I say they are acting dumb.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

RECROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Did it occur to you that maybe he just was dumb?

A: It did occur to me but when I say that someone just is dumb, it is only their exterior that is dumb.

In other words, to my knowledge everyone inside is smart, is very, very intelligent and is very bright because we are all a piece of God and God is all wisdom and all knowledge and all intelligence and so it is how far they are from that. So when I say they were dumb, they are pretty far from their true selves.

Q: Did you ever have any impression that he was deteriorating mentally?

A: Not until I saw him in the desert.

THE COURT: At Barker Ranch?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: What impression did you have then?

A: I had the impression that he was deteriorating mentally and physically and emotionally and in every other way that a person can deteriorate.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: Why did you form the opinion that he was deteriorating mentally?

A: Because he didn't -- he still talked the same way and he seemed much more subservient to Charlie, much more, just like nothing there any more.

You know how you just see these people over a period of time and they would be less and less there.

Just look at them and they are just like they are not even there.

So it is like -- I get that opinion by just looking at them, you see. You say "Wow, he is not there," because Charlie used to tell people not to be there, tell them to abandon themselves.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

THE COURT: Not commenting on your credibility, Paul, you have got a great potential. I wish you would use it. Go back to school, son. You have a great potential.

THE WITNESS: Thanks for your advice.

THE COURT: You may be excused.

MR. KAY: The people will call Greg Jakobson.

THE CLERK: Take your right hand, please. You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

GREG JAKOBSON,

called as a witness by the People, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you. Take the stand and be seated and state your name, please.

THE WITNESS: Greg Jakobson, J-a-k-o-b-s-o-n.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY:

Q: What is your occupation?

A: I am a music publisher and producer.

Q: At one time did you work for Terry Melcher?

A: Yes.

Q: And what did you do for Mr. Melcher?

A: Music production publishing.

Q: And were you ever a record producer for Charles Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: Would it be fair to say that you were a pretty close friend of Charles Manson before he was arrested for the Tate-La Bianca murders?

A: Yes.

Q: Were you a frequent visitor to the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Approximately how many times would you say that you went there?

A: Oh, a number of times. It is hard to pinpoint. 20, 30 times, more or less.

Q: When did you first meet Mr. Manson?

A: In the spring of '68.

Q: And were you living at Dennis Wilson's house at that time?

A: Yes.

Q: And is that where you met Mr. Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know the defendant Tex Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you meet Mr. Watson at Dennis Wilson's house?

A: Yes.

Q: And for a period of time did Mr. Watson live at Dennis Wilson's house?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Dennis Wilson there at that time or was he in Europe?

A: He was there very little. He was touring with a group for the most part.

Q: The Beach Boys?

A: The Beach Boys, right.

Q: To your knowledge did Mr. Watson meet Mr. Manson at Dennis Wilson's house?

A: Yes.

Q: What was Mr. Watson doing while he was living at Dennis Wilson's house?

A: Just hanging out.

Q: Was he working?

A: Not to my knowledge.

Q: For how long a period did you live at Dennis Wilson's house?

A: About three months.

Q: And for how long a period to your knowledge did Mr. Watson live at Dennis Wilson's house?

A: Well, are you distinguishing between frequenting the place and really living there?

Q: Yes.

A: He lived there like I guess the last month, August.

Q: The last month that you lived there?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Mr. Watson leave Dennis Wilson's house to start living with the Manson family?

A: Yes. To my knowledge, when he left Dennis' house he began living out at the ranch, at the Spahn Ranch.

Q: After Mr. Watson left Dennis Wilson's house to live with the Manson family, approximately how many times did you see him after that?

A: Only a couple of times.

Q: Did you see Mr. Watson in the late spring of 1969?

A: Yes.

Q: Was that the last time you saw him, until he got arrested?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you notice any change in Mr. Watson's personality and physical appearance from the time you knew him at Dennis Wilson's house and when you saw him in the late spring of 1969?

A: Yes, very much so.

Q: What change did you notice?

A: Well, he was another person. The Charlie Watson that I knew at Dennis Wilson's house to me no longer existed when I saw him.

Q: In what way had he changed?

A: Well, in every way, really. I mean the thing that you like in a person isn't something that you can put your finger on. I mean, it isn't the shape of his nose or what kind of a shirt he is wearing. It is something that comes from within, you know. What everyone like about Charlie so much was that essence that came from within and it wasn't there when I saw him.

I was really taken back by it. I was really surprised.

Q: When you saw him in the late spring, 1969, for how long a period of time did you see him?

A: Not very long.

Q: How long?

A: He was busy and I was just passing through, just for a few minutes.

Q: What did you say to him, and what did he say to you?

A: Oh, we said hi and shook hands and exchanged pleasantries, you know. We hadn't seen each other for a long time. It had been a long time.

Q: Did he seem any less friendly than he had before?

A: No.

Q: Did he seem thinner than he was before?

A: Yes, physically, yes. He was thinner.

Q: From the time that Mr. Watson first met Mr. Manson, did it occur to you that Mr. Watson both accepted and agreed with Manson's philosophy?

A: Yes.

Q: Any doubt in your mind about that?

A: None.

Q: Did you ever have any discussion with Mr. Manson regarding helter-skelter?

A: Sure, yes.

Q: Oh how many occasions would you say that you discussed helter-skelter with Mr. Manson?

A: Well, it is hard to say. It would come up on a number of times. It came up more frequently toward the end of our relationship.

Q: By the way, before we go any further, you weren't a member of the Manson family, were you?

A: No.

Q: What did helter-skelter mean to Mr. Manson and the members of his family?

A: It represented the black-white confrontation that Charlie Manson felt was imminent.

Q: Did Mr. Manson believe that there was going to be a black-white war?

A: Absolutely.

Q: When did he feel that this black-white war would take place?

A: Any minute. It was imminent. Tomorrow.

Q: And when was this, what period of time, if you can put a time period on it? 1969 sometime?

A: Well, it really reached a -- the last time I saw him, it was really preoccupying him.

It really reached a peak then.

Like in '68 he spoke very little of it but it continued -- in other words, it never began and ended. It just sort of built.

Q: Piece by piece?

A: Piece by piece, yes, only with more rapidity.

Q: Did Mr. Manson ever tell you how helter-skelter was going to start?

A: Yes.

Q: How?

A: He said that some blacks would go into some white homes and really rip the people off, to use his words.

Q: What does the term "rip off" mean?

A: Well, I mean really rip off, to scatter limbs and hang them from the ceiling and so on. I remember that, because it was quite a picture.

Q: Did that repulse you?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Mr. Manson tell you who was going to prevail in this black-white war?

A: You mean the ultimate outcome?

Q: Yes.

A: The blacks would win the war but they would give it back to the whites who survived in the desert.

Q: And was Charlie and his family, were they going to survive in the desert?

A: Absolutely. That was the plan, yes.

Q: Did Mr. Manson ever discuss with you the recording group known as The Beatles?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he ever discuss their relationship to helter-skelter?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he say?

A: They were trying to give the message to those people who would listen that helter-skelter was coming. To prepare, look out.

Q: Did the Beatles have a song called "Helter-Skelter"?



A: Yes.

Q: And what did Charlie say about this song, "Helter-Skelter"?

A: It was the message. That was the message to the people.

Q: Do you think the Beatles were talking to him through their music?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, I show you Exhibit 266, a double-white Beatles' album.

Do you recognize this album?

A: Yes.

Q: Was that played out on the Spahn Ranch very often?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, are you familiar with some of the songs in the album?

A: Yes.

Q: And what songs would you say in this album were played the most out at the Spahn Ranch while you were there?

A: "Blackbird," "Helter-Skelter," "Piggies," the most.

Q: Is there also a song in there called "Happiness Is A Warm Gun"?

A: Yeah.

Q: Now, in the song, "Blackbird," I show you here Exhibit 267, appears to be the lyrics of the song in this Beatles' album?

A: Right.

Q: On the song "Blackbird," did Mr. Manson tell you what he felt the title "Blackbird" meant; what that was referring to?

A: It represented the black men.

Q: Did he ever use the term as it is in this song, "Blackbird singing in the dead of night, take these broken wings and learn to fly, all your life you were only waiting for this moment to arise"?

Did Mr. Manson use the term "arise," or "rise" in talking about helter-skelter?

A: Yeah, he used to quote that whole verse, I mean, just verbatim, just the way it was.

Q: Did he ever say in relation to helter-skelter that the black man was going to rise up?

A: Yeah; I mean, that's absolutely -- he would, like I said, he quoted right from there to prove his point that the black man was going to rise up.

Q: In other words, Mr. Manson treated the --

A: And this was a prophecy of the arising.

Q: Would you say it would be a fair statement to say that Mr. Manson treated the lyrics of the songs in this Beatle album like scripture?

A: Oh, yes, it was his scripture.

Q: Now, in the song "Piggies" did Mr. Manson tell you what was meant by the word "Piggies" or "Pig"?

A: Yeah, it represented the establishment.

Q: And what race was the establishment?

A: Well, white, definitely the white middleclass businessman.

Q: Did Mr. Manson ever tell you what was meant in the lyrics of the song, "Piggies," when it says, "In their eyes there's something lacking, what they need is a damn good whacking"?

A: Here, again, this was to be taken as the truth, and also as a prophecy of the coming truth --

Q: In other words, --

A: -- future.

Q: -- that the establishment, that the people in the establishment needed a damn good whacking?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he ever say anything about, "Everywhere there's lot of piggies living piggy lives, you can see them out for dining with their piggy wives, clutching forks and knives to eat their bacon?"

A: Yeah, he knew the words.

Q: Would he quote the words?

A: By memory, and he would quote the words whenever there was a reason to or whenever they would fall into conversation.

Q: Did Mr. Manson have a great dislike for the establishment?

A: I suppose you could say that, yeah. I mean -- yeah, it was another world to him,

not his.

Q: What about the members of the Manson family, did they feel generally the same way about the establishment?

A: Well, that's hard to answer, in the sense that they rarely voiced any opinions other than Charlie's.

Q: Did Mr. Manson compose a lot of his own songs?

A: Yes.

Q: Did he ever have a song which had the words "Helter-Skelter" in their lyrics?

A: I seem to remember that he borrowed the line from --

Q: "Helter-Skelter"?

A: Right.

Q: From the Beatles?

A: Every once in a while in his songs he would take a whole verse or a line from somebody else's song, if he really liked it, or turn it around.

Q: Now, did you try and interest Mr. Terry Melcher in recording Mr. Manson?

A: Yeah, I wanted to get him interested either in a recording project or a film project, one or two, or both.

Q: And pursuant to your getting Mr. Melcher interested in Mr. Manson, did you take Mr. Melcher out to the Spahn Ranch, or did Mr. Melcher come out to the Spahn Ranch and audition Mr. Manson on a couple of occasions?

A: We went out to the ranch.

Q: You were with him on these two occasions?

A: Yes.

Q: And did Mr. Melcher ever record or film Mr. Manson?

A: No.

Q: Did Mr. Manson want to be recorded by Mr. Melcher?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Mr. Manson -- did he appear to you to be upset with the fact that Mr. Melcher didn't want to record him?

A: Yes.

Q: Mr. Manson really wanted pretty badly to be recorded, didn't he?

A: He was really pushing, yes.

Q: Now, did you have an occasion to see Mr. Manson after the Tate-La Bianca murders?

A: Yes.

Q: And was that in August of 1969, the latter part of August?

A: Yes, it would have been.

Q: Did you notice any change in Mr. Manson, in his personality or physical appearance?

A: Yes, considerably.

Q: You say a considerable change?

A: Yes.

Q: What type of change did you notice?

A: The only thing I can really liken it to, and I have said it before, is if you have ever seen an animal, a wild animal that has been put in a cage just after it has been caught -- and I have seen them; I have seen skunks and wildcats and things -- and that's what his whole demeanor was.

It is hard to describe. It is just a fear, I mean, it is almost a smell. It reeks, where they are almost bouncing into the walls back and forth and the eyes and energies is pouring out --

Q: Just like electricity is pouring out of him?

A: Yes, I mean, so much so that it upset me, I mean, it got on me, like.

MR. KAY: I have no further questions.

MR. BUBRICK: Would this be a good time, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

We will have our afternoon recess at this time, ladies and gentlemen of the jury; and once more, heed the admonition heretofore given.

(Recess.):

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, counsel, and the defendant are present.

Mr. Jakobson, you are still under oath. State your name, please, for the record.

THE WITNESS: Greg Jakobson.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK

Q: Mr. Jakobson, do you know how it was that Watson came to be living at Dennis Wilson's?

A: Do you mean the events that sort of led up to that?

Q: He was a casual visitor for a while, wasn't he, before he started to live there?

A: Yes. Dennis was hitch-hiking down Sunset and Tex picked him up one day.

Q: And brought Dennis out to his home?

A: Brought Dennis home.

Q: And were you there at that time?

A: No. I don't remember that. I was told later. Dennis told me that Tex had picked him up and he was hitch-hiking down Sunset.

Q: And thereafter did Watson come by from time to time?

A: Yes. He became, you know, a friend.

Q: A friend of Dennis'?

A: Yes, and everybody there.

Q: Who else was there at the time?

A: There were a number of people in and out of the house. I was living there. A couple of girls were living there. Dennis was living there on and off.

Q: Was Manson there?

A: He wasn't living there; he would come by, swim, visit.

Q: Come by with his girls?

A: Yeah, some, you know, not all of them; different people, different times.

Q: Was Dean Moorehouse there at the time?

A: Yeah, he was there.

Q: Was he living there --

A: Yeah.

Q: -- in the house behind the main house?

A: Right.

Q: Now, you told us that -- you characterized Watson as being a sort of a happy-go-lucky person when you first met him; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Could you further categorize -- characterize him for us?

A: Well, to use the words I have also used, he was like a friendly puppy dog, that's as close as I can come. That's why he was so well liked.

Q: Was he --

A: In the sense that there is nothing a dog wouldn't do for you, you know; you throw the stick, he'll go get it. He tried to please.

Q: Was he a sort of a hanger-on or follower, in your opinion?

A: Well, he sort of hung out there, but that's what the place was for, everybody just hung out -- I don't know what you mean by hanger-on or follower. He wasn't a leader, if that's what you mean.

Q: That's what I'm asking you; he didn't appear to be a leader?

A: No, no.

Q: And later on when he moved in, he moved in with Dean Moorehouse in one of the back houses, didn't he?

A: He spent a lot of time with Dean; as to whether he ever moved in there, I don't know.

They were very close.

Q: And this was what, in the summer of '68?

A: Late summer of '68.

Q: How many times would you say you saw Mr. Watson about the Dennis Wilson home?

A: Oh, that would be hard to say, I mean. I saw him around all the time, you know. In one day I could have seen him 10 times, so it is hard to tell.

Q: I can appreciate that, but you said you lived there about three months?

A: Yeah, I was there a lot. I mean, I just sort of -- I lived there.

Q: And is it your impression that Watson was there pretty much of that three-month period, too?

A: Yeah, he would come and go, but when he was there he was there; and then he might disappear for a few days and come back four more days.

Q: Do you know what he was doing at the time?

A: No, I really don't.

Q: Did you --

A: I know he would go down to the beach cities and visit. He had some friends down in La Jolla.

Q: Was he working at any trade, if you know, any business?

A: I don't really know. There was some mention of a wig business, but it went in one ear and out the other.

Q: Did he have a car of some type?

A: Yeah, he had a funky old truck that he used to drive around.

Q: 1935 Dodge, is that it?

A: Yeah.

Q: An old antique of some sort?

A: Yeah, it really was.

Q: Now, you said you saw him again about a year later when he was at the Spahn Ranch; is that correct?

A: Yeah, I don't think it would have been a year, but it was later.

Q: Spring of '69, whatever that might be.

A: Right.

Q: How would you describe him at that time?

A: As opposed to what he had been?

Q: Yes, as opposed to the way he had been.

A: Well, I describe him as everything he was before he no longer was. He wasn't any more, if that makes any sense to you, I mean, he just wasn't -- it was just a void, he was blank.

Q: Like a shell; is that how you described it once before?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: A zombie? Did you describe it that way once before?

A: I don't know if I ever said zombie, yes, but shell, empty.

Q: No longer any spark; is that correct?

A: Yes. That spark, that essence that makes you an individual, a human, wasn't there.

Q: What was he doing at the Spahn Ranch when you saw him again in the spring of 1969?

A: He was working on a truck, on the engine.

Q: Was Manson about, if you know?

A: Yes.

Q: Was this one of the times you went down on some sort of a business in connection with possible recordings?

A: Yes, I believe so. I had come out to pick up Manson.

Q: Was there any audition of any sort that Manson performed at the time that you went there?

A: You see there were two times: One time earlier that I actually came out to pick up Charlie to go record, and then it was later that, if you call it an audition, on the part of Terry's being there.

It was more to see if we all got on together. I mean if you are going to make music together, you have got to sort of find out a lot of things, not just musically.

Q: Were the members of Manson's family gathered at the same spot you were at?

A: At the time Terry was there?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes. Everyone was there that was around.

Q: And did he seem to be the center of attraction at the time?

A: Manson?

Q: Yes.

A: Oh, very much so.

Q: Was he the ruler of that family so far as you know?

A: He sure was.

Q: When you were out there at the time that Mr. Melcher was there, did you get the feeling that the performance on the part of the family members was a genuine one?

A: Well, as genuine as any performance can be. I mean it is always a performance, sort of a theatrical venture, but it was a performance.

Q: Maybe I misled you. I am talking about the conduct of the family members.

A: Everybody was on their best behavior, if that is what you mean, for the sake of Terry, you know, sure.

Q: Did it appear to be a staged affair?



A: To some extent but it wasn't unusual. What happened I have seen happen before but only a little more so this time.

Q: Now, you also, as I understand it, talked with Mr. Manson on numerous occasions; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Philosophical discussions?

A: Yes.

Q: How many times would you say you had talked with him?

A: Any number of times, a lot. There again it is really hard to put a number on it.

Q: Would you say upwards of 100, perhaps?

A: I suppose, yes.

Q: This extended over some period of time?

A: It did, right.

Q: Did he talk to you about Jesus Christ?

A: Yes. He got into Jesus a little bit.

Q: What did he say about that, if you remember?

A: It was always in regards to an overriding philosophy that all this is that and I am him and he is me and so on.

Q: Did he tell you that he thought he was Christ, or that he was Christ?

A: Yes, but always in regards to the overriding philosophy that he is me and I am him and I am you and you are me.

Q: Sort of unity of things.

A: Yes. You know, it jumps into the subjective.

Q: He was one who believed in separate identities and separate things, didn't he, as opposed to the concept of everything being one?

A: Well, you see now that is where we always differed philosophically.

He drew a line between the subjective and the objective and I held that they were hooked up, that they were together, and all his rationale came from the fact that he could separate them at will and jump over at will, cross-cross them.

Q: Did he say anything about the concept of good and bad?

A: Sure, yes.

Q: What did he say about that?

A: There wasn't any.

Q: That everything was good or bad?

A: That good and bad was a concept and he didn't buy it.

Q: Did he have any other way or describing events or things?

A: I don't know what you mean.

Q: Instead of being bad, was everything just all right?

A: Oh, everything was perfect if he was pinned down to that.

Q: Anything you did was perfect; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: That was part of his philosophy?

A: Yes.

Q: That you could do no wrong?

A: That you could do no wrong. There was no way to make a mistake.

Q: As long as you did what you did, it was perfect?

A: Right.

Q: How about the subject of death, did he discuss that with you?

A: Yes, we got into that.

Q: What did he say about that?

A: Well, he said that he died a long time ago and that there was no death, death was a change.

None of these things were really new to me; I mean, he was an eclectic, he picked up different things from different philosophies and different religions. That's all eastern philosophy.

Q: Did he make an effort to tie it up together --

A: Yes.

Q: -- in some sort of continuous philosophy?

A: Yeah, he tied it all up into his own, taking a little bit from here, a little bit from there, putting it into his own.

Q: Did he talk about the Devil?

A: Yes, he was the Devil.

Q: He was also a God, was he not?

A: I don't ever really remember him saying that he was a God. He used the word "Devil" and he used the word "Christ."

Q: Well, didn't he believe that they exist within the same persons at all times?

A: Oh, absolutely.

Q: Well, in that sense he thought he was a God, the Devil, Christ, everything rolled into one and everybody was that?

A: Yes.

Q: And didn't that go along with this theory of good and bad?

A: Yes.

Q: In the sense that because Christ could do no wrong, no other person could do any wrong?

A: Well, I suppose you could look at it that way.

Q: Well, isn't that how he looked at it?

A: It is pretty hard to say, I mean. It is so nebulous, I'd have to be inside of his head to see how he saw, you know; that's why we argued. That was our attraction, that we used to debate.

Q: Well, we are not asking you to see as he saw, because obviously you can't do that; but, as best you can, can you tell us the things that he said?

A: I couldn't begin to, because so much went down; but I am trying to put it -- capsule it for you, make -- in essence, his stand was that he really found -- he really lived in the subjective and he couldn't bring it back home.

I mean, there is two fields, the relative field, the subjective and the objective, the changing and the never changing.

He jumped into the never changing, or the subjective, whenever he wanted to. If he needed to rationalize something in the objective, in the relative field, he would just jump in to the subjective field; It is okay if you do that because it is okay. It is okay if you eat with your hands; what does it matter?

That would be jumping into the subjective. In other words, there is no rules in the subjective, you make up your own rules.

Q: Is that the way he felt about killing?

A: Yes.

Q: It was all right to kill?

A: Yeah, he did -- yeah, he pulled it from there. It gave, don't you see, it gave him a license to make up his own rules.

Q: Did you ever hear him discussing this with other members of the family?

A: Exactly what?

Q: Well, did you ever attend any session where he would lecture to the other members of the family who were gathered about him?

A: Oh, sure.

Q: And did he repeat this same kind of philosophy to them?

A: Yes, he was very consistent and he lectured all the time, to use the word "lecture."

Q: At least, he talked, is that correct?

A: Whenever there -- well, yeah, Charlie was always the center of attraction.

Q: Did you ever hear anybody else express any original ideas in the presence of Mr. Manson, as far as philosophy was concerned?

A: You know, I really don't think I did. I mean, it was very hard to, he was very overpowering.

THE COURT: How about Moorehouse, didn't he have the same ideas as Charlie Manson?

THE WITNESS: Yes, he was a follower; Charlie used to say of him that he was "My student but he hadn't learned yet."

THE COURT: Who taught whom, Moorehouse taught Manson or Manson taught Moorehouse?

THE WITNESS: Manson taught Moorehouse.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Then what Moorehouse preached was what he had heard from Manson; is that correct?

A: Yes. Yes, absolutely.

MR. BUBRICK: May I have a moment, your Honor?

THE WITNESS: Maybe I should qualify one thing on that last question.

MR. BUBRICK: Yes.

THE WITNESS: Moorehouse was an ordained minister. He had a great working knowledge of the bible; I mean, he could quote just chapters and pages, so he would, using the framework of Charlie's philosophy, pull out of the bible things -- but it was, in other words -- Charlie didn't have a working knowledge of the bible like Dean did, so Dean could interpret and lend the bible to support Charlie's philosophy, which he did at all times, because Dean Moorehouse was really a student of the bible.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: He was a student of the bible --

A: He was an ordained minister.

Q: He had been with Orthodox religion --

A: Yes, I think he had his own church.

Q: -- but then he adopted the Manson philosophy as a premise from which to preach?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: And he would look into the bible to support the premise he adopted from Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: So he made the bible work for the Manson philosophy --

A: Fit, absolutely.

Q: Did you ever hear Dean Moorehouse express anything to the group when Manson was present?

A: No, when Manson was present Dean didn't say much.

Q: He was just another listener; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever visit the family when they moved to Barker Ranch, Mr. Jakobson?

A: Once.

Q: And when was that, do you remember?

A: Yes, I do. That was like November 20th; I know it was right before Thanksgiving, like November 22 -- Thanksgiving is always on the 25th, I believe -- in '68.

Q: '68?

A: Right.

Q: Was Watson there then?

A: No.

Q: You didn't see him again after the summer or spring of '69, I think you told us?

A: Right; no, I didn't. That was the last time I was out to the ranch.

Q: I think you also told us in August of '69 you saw Manson; he looked like a wild animal in a cage, was your characterization of him?

A: Yes.

Q: When you saw Manson on that occasion did you see Watson anywhere in the vicinity of the ranch?

A: No, I wasn't out at the ranch; this happened at my house, you know.

Q: He came to visit you?

A: Yes.

Q: Would you say that Manson completely dominated the scene whenever he was present?

A: Absolutely.

Q: And did he dominate the family anytime he was with the family, as far as you know?

A: Absolutely.

Q: Did you ever hear Mr. Watson make any suggestions to Manson?

A: No.

Q: Or to anybody else on the ranch, the day you saw him?

A: Watson?

Q: Yes; I am talking about --

A: No.

Q: That conversation was just between the two of you, and that was it; is that so?

A: You mean when Tex and I --

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: There was nobody else who was present or participated?

A: There was some people present but they didn't really participate.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

MR. KAY: No further questions. May the witness be excused?

MR. BUBRICK: Just one more, please.

Q: Mr. Jakobson, did you ever hear Charlie -- the lyrics to a song composed by Charlie entitled "Submission Is A Gift. You can give it to your brother."?

A: Yes.

Q: Was that something that Manson wrote?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: And was it recorded by some group that you worked with?

A: Yes.

Q: With whom?

A: The Beach Boys.

Q: The Beach Boys?

A: Yes.

Q: And that is a group that Dennis Wilson was with; is that correct?

A: Right. It is.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY

Q: What was the name of the song that the Beach Boys recorded?

A: "Never Learn Not To Love Him."

Q: That was the song the Mr. Manson wrote?

A: Yes.

THE COURT: "Never Learn Not To Love"?

THE WITNESS: "Love Him."

RECROSS EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK

Q: Is that the same as this title, "Submission Is A Gift. You can give it to your mother"?

A: Same song.

Q: But just a different title or something?

A: Yes. In other words, both of those, all the words that you have said exist in the lyric content.

I think they pulled out for the album, the title in quotes "You Must Never Learn Not To Love Him."

Q: Mr. Keith is disturbed about one thing. You know this song title that was mentioned to you a moment ago, "Happiness Is A Warm Gun"?

A: From the Beatles' album.

Q: Is there more than one connotation to that title that you know of?

A: You know, I never did much interpretation of the Beatles. I just enjoyed their music. I don't know what they meant by that and I have never heard that broken down. I mean, Charlie never interpreted that for me, if he had any interpretation.

THE COURT: Could you understand the words when they sang?

THE WITNESS: Yes, I can.

THE COURT: You are an exception.

THE WITNESS: I have listened a lot. It is my business.

MR. BUBRICK: Nothing further.

MR. KAY: No further questions.

THE COURT: Thank you. You may be excused.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We have no further witnesses.

Before we rest, however, we will move to have the exhibits received into evidence. I imagine there will be argument by defense, probably outside the presence of the jury.

THE COURT: All right. I think that we could safely excuse the jury until Monday; is that correct, Gentleman?

MR. BUBRICK: May we approach the bench, your Honor, please?

THE COURT: Yes.

(There was a discussion at the bench outside the presence of the jury not reported:)

(The following proceedings were had in open court, in the presence of the jury:)

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, you win. We will recess at this time until Tuesday the 31st of August and you need not be here until 11:00 o'clock. We have many legal matters to discuss, so you need not be here until Tuesday at 11:00 o'clock.

Is that clear?

It is this coming Tuesday. It is August 31st at 11:00 o'clock.

In view of the long recess, I wish to admonish you again, do not form or express any opinion in this case. Do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else.



Please keep an open mind and do everything possible to refrain from reading anything connected with this case.

Tuesday at 11:00 o'clock. Thank you.

(At 3:45 p.m., an adjournment was taken until Tuesday, August 31, 1971 at 9:30 a.m.)

--oOo--

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, WEDNESDAY SEPTEMBER 1, 1971

9:35 A.M.

-oOo-

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, all counsel and defendant present.

Mr. Bubrick, you may proceed.

MR. KEITH: Call David Neale.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truths, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

DAVID LYNN NEALE,

called as a witness for the defendant, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Thank you. Take the stand and be seated; and would you state and spell your name, please?

THE WITNESS: David Lynn Neale; last name spelled N-e-a-l-e.

THE CLERK: Your middle name, please?

THE WITNESS: L-y-n-n.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH:

Q: David, how old are you?

A: 27.

Q: And do you presently live in the Los Angeles County area?

A: Yes, sir, I do.

Q: Would that be in the San Fernando Valley?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Do you know Charles Watson, the defendant?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: When did you first become acquainted with Mr. Watson?

A: It must have been '65, in college, we were in college together.

Q: Now, what college was that, David?

A: North Texas State University, Denton, Texas.

Q: And where is Denton, say, in relation to Dallas?

A: It is approximately 40 miles north-northwest of Dallas.

Q: And is it what you might say a college town?

A: Yes, sir, it is.

Q: And were you yourself raised in Denton?

A: Yes. That is my hometown.

Q: Were you in the same class as Mr. Watson at North Texas State, or were you ahead of him?

A: I was a year ahead in school.

Q: Were you in the same fraternity?

A: Yes, I was.

Q: And what was that?

A: Pi Kappa Alpha fraternity.

Q: Were you a particularly close friend of Charles at North Texas State?

A: Not at that particular time, no, sir, I wasn't.

Q: You just knew him as another fraternity brother?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: At some time did you move to California?

A: I moved in '66.

Q: Did you complete your education?

A: No, sir, I didn't.

Q: Before you moved?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: How many years at North Texas State did you complete?

A: I attended a year and a half at North Texas. I was a senior when I moved to California.

Q: Again, approximately what was the date when you moved to California? Not the exact date but the year and the month, to the best of your recollection?

A: As best as I can recall, I would say the spring semester of '66.

Q: Sometime after your moving here to California, did you return to Denton, not for any particular length of time necessarily, but once you got out here did you remain or did you return from time to time to Denton, your hometown?

A: No, sir. I remained in California.

Q: Sometime after your coming out here did you have occasion to see Mr. Watson?

A: Yes, sir, I did.

Q: And when was that for the first time?

A: I don't recall the particular date. I was living with my brother in Los Angeles and Charles was working for an airline in Dallas.

Q: You knew that of your own knowledge, did you?

A: I didn't know that until he came out one weekend.

Q: Did Charles tell you that he was working for Braniff Airlines?

A: Yes, sir, he did.

Q: And when was that, approximately, when you saw him for the first time here in California?

A: I believe that was the fall of '67. I am not sure about the dates, though.

Q: At some time after that, Charles moved out to California and lived here more or less permanently, did he not?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: But before his moving here to live permanently did you see him from time to time?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And on how many occasions would you say as you saw him in California before he picked up and moved here and by "he," I am referring to Charles, of course.

A: Well, over a period of two months, I would say eight times or so.

Q: During that two-month period, to your knowledge, was Charles working for Braniff Airlines?

A: Yes, sir, he was.

Q: And would he come out here on trips from Texas, if you know, as an employee of Braniff?

A: He was employed at the time. He was coming out on weekends on his own time.

Q: Now, when was it, approximately, when Charles moved out here to Southern California to stay?

A: I'm not real sure on the dates.

Q: Do you have an approximate month?

A: '67 -- I want to say June of '67; I'm not sure on the dates, though.

Q: After Charles came here did he live with you?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And where were you living at that time?

A: I was living in Hollywood.

Q: And were you living with your brother at that time?

A: Yes, sir, I was.

Q: And what is his name?

A: His name is Jay Scott.

Q: Is that a stage name?

A: Yes, sir, it is; he's an actor.

Q: And is your brother older or younger than you are?

A: He is older.

Q: How old is he?

A: He's 31, I believe.

Q: Now, after Charles started to live with you and your brother in Hollywood, to your knowledge, did he enroll in any school?

A: Yes, sir; he enrolled at Cal State.

Q: Is that Cal State Los Angeles, if you know?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And to your knowledge did Charles attend Cal State for any period of time?

A: Yes, sir, he did. I don't recall the time he was in school, though.

Q: Can you tell us whether it was a relatively short period of time?

A: It was less than a semester; I know he didn't complete the semester.

Q: And during the time Charles was going to Cal State did he continue to live with you and your older brother?

A: Well, Charles and I moved to an apartment together.

Q: And where did you move?

A: We moved to the Echo Park district.

Q: And I gather that your brother didn't go along, with you and Charles.

A: No, sir, he didn't.

Q: After Charles dropped out of Cal State did he go into, to your knowledge, some kind of business?

A: Yes, sir. In fact, he was hired by a wig company in Beverly Hills while he was attending school.

Q: Did you also work for this wig company?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did you --

A: Sometime later I was employed.

Q: Do you remember the name of the wig company?

A: Continental Wig Company.

Q: And do you know what Charles' function or duties was with the wig company?

A: Yes, sir. He was a salesman for the company.

Q: Now, how long, approximately, David, did you and Charles live in the Echo Park area?

A: Approximately three months; three to four months.

Q: And then did you and he move to another apartment or house?

A: Yes, sir, we did.

Q: And where did you go?

A: We moved to Laurel Canyon, which is in Hollywood.

Q: And did you and he again live together?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And at this time when you moved to Laurel Canyon was Charles still working as a wig salesman?

A: Yes, sir; and at this time I was employed, also.

Q: In the same wig company, Continental?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Now, at some time during this general period -- incidentally, can you fix a time or times when you recall Charles was employed by the wig company -- and you were, too, for that matter?

A: The dates?

Q: Not exact dates -- of course, if you can give us exact dates, fine; if you can't, your best recollection.

A: Well, it would have been spring of '67, fall of '68.

Q: You say spring of '67, or do you mean '68?

A: I'm not sure on the dates.

Q: Charles came out here to live with you in the summer or fall of '67; isn't that right?

A: Fall of -- it would have been '68, the spring of '68.

Q: And do you recall whether or not, David, Charles was in an accident of some kind during that period?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And did he injure himself?

A: Yes. He injured his knee. I was in the accident with him.

Q: When was the accident, approximately?

A: Well, it would have been approximately two to three months after we had moved to Laurel Canyon. I am not sure on the date again.

Q: And was Charles laid up for a time?

A: Yes, he was. In fact he underwent surgery at the time.

Q: And during that period of time I gather he wasn't able to work as a wig salesman.

A: He did on occasion go to the shop and do some work.

Q: Approximately how long would you say Charles worked in the wig business for Continental Wigs as a salesmen?

A: Well, he was employed -- Phil Kern was the gentleman that employed him.

Q: Would you spell the last name for the record?

A: K-e-r-n, I believe. I am not sure how to spell it. And he had Continental Wigs. Then he had another wig shop which was on La Cienega, I believe. In total Charles probably worked a year.

Q: Did you and he at one time open up your own wig shop with another partner?

A: Yes, we did.

Q: And when was this?

A: I'm not really sure on the date.

Q: Would it have been 1968?

A: I think it was the latter part of '68.

Q: You moved from Echo Park to Laurel Canyon; right?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And how long did you and Charles live in the Laurel Canyon area?

A: I believe about seven months.

Q: Then did you move some place else?

A: Yes. We moved from there to Malibu.

Q: Did you --

A: Actually it is this side of Malibu.

Q: Did you rent a place there in Malibu?

A: Yes.

Q: And again were you and he living together?

A: Yes, we. were.

Q: And when you were living in Malibu was Charles still in the wig business to your knowledge?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: At some time while you were living with him in Malibu, did you meet a man named Dennis Wilson?

A: My first encounter with Dennis Wilson -- Charles had come home one afternoon and was telling me about going to Dennis' and sometime later I. went up to meet Dennis.

Q: And where were you living at this time when Charles told you he had met Dennis Wilson, do you remember?

A: Well, we were living in Malibu. I keep saying Malibu. It is actually this side of Topanga Canyon, on the beach.

Q: You did have occasion then to meet Dennis Wilson?

A: Yes.

Q: And did he have a house some place where you met him?

A: Yes. He had a home on Sunset.

Q: Was this in Pacific Palisades?

A: Yes, I believe it was.

Q: Did you also meet a man by the name of Charles Manson?

A: Yes, sir, I did.

Q: And where did you meet him for the first time?

A: I met him in Malibu at the house.

THE COURT: Your house?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. KEITH: Your house?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And did he come to your place in Malibu once or more than once?

A: More than once. Only once while I was there.

Q: What you are telling us is that you heard of other occasions he may have come there?

A: Well, I had come to the house -- we had leased the house, or were leasing the house for a period of time. We had planned to lease it for a month, sublease it, and I had been staying with some friends and I came back to the house and Charles Manson had been there and he left four or five teenage girls there to take care of the house and they wouldn't let me in the house.

Q: The teenage girls?

A: Right; they had the doors locked.

Q: Did you ultimately gain entrance?

A: Yes, I did.



Q: And would this be sometime in the summer or late summer of 1968, when you couldn't get in your house because the girls were there?

A: I think it must have been somewhere in there.

Q: To your knowledge, did Charles begin to live at Dennis Wilson's house?

A: He was living at Dennis' for a time, yes.

Q: And did you ever meet a man by the name of Dean Moorehouse?

A: Yes, sir, I did.

Q: Where did you meet him?

A: I met him at Dennis'.

Q: Were you a frequent visitor at Dennis' during this period?

A: No, I wasn't. In fact, I had only gone to Dennis' on two or three different occasions.

Q: Did you ever see Manson at Dennis Wilson's?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: Did you see -- I think you did tell us you saw Dean Moorhouse at Dennis'?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And to your knowledge, did Charles become friendly or close with Dean Moorehouse?

A: Yes.

In fact, he almost became like a father to him.

Q: You mean Dean became like a father to Charles?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did you ever have any philosophical discussions with Moorehouse in the presence of Mr. Watson?

A: Yes, sir, on occasion.

Q: Was this at Dennis Wilson's place?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And do you remember the general subject matters that were discussed?

A: Well, we discussed LSD, the meaning of life, fulfillment; his basic philosophy was a feeling of oneness, having everyone as brothers and sisters, a Utopia.

Q: You were talking about Dean Moorehouse's basic philosophy?

A: Yes, air.

Q: And was Charles there on this occasion, or occasions?

A: I don't -- I think he was; I think he was at this particular time,

THE COURT: When you say "Charles," you are talking about Watson?

MR. KEITH: Charles Watson, yes.

Q: Now, up to the time Charles Watson started living at Dennis Wilson's with Dean Moorehouse, how long would you say you and he had been together?

As long as a year?

A: Over a year, yes, sir.

Q: So you became, I daresay, quite well acquainted --

A: Yes, sir.

Q: -- with Charles; and I daresay you considered him a good friend?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: During this period of time of over a year, what sort of a person did Mr. Watson appear to you to be, a sort of a brief personality profile?

A: Well, he was very outgoing; not obnoxious, but outgoing, friendly.

I remember in college he enjoyed socializing. He partied quite a bit, was active in the fraternity.

Q: No, while you knew him closely --

A: Well, the way I knew him was more like a brother. We became very close.

Q: Except for one occasion that I will go into, did you ever see Charles do anything of a violent nature?

A: Never.

Q: Did you ever see him attack anybody --

A: Never.

Q: -- or threaten anybody?

A: No, sir.

Q: Would you characterize him as just a very nice guy?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And during this period of time when you were together with him and became very close to him, like a brother, did you ever see Charles smoke marijuana?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And did he smoke marijuana on a number of occasions, to your knowledge?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did you ever see him during this period of over a year that you were with him use anything, you might say, stronger than marijuana?

A: There was one incident. We were given some seeds from -- rosewood seeds, I believe they were.

Q: Now, when you say "we," you are referring to yourself and Charles?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And where were you at that time?

A: We were on Wonderland; we were living in Laurel Canyon at the time.

Q: So Wonderland Drive is the Laurel Canyon address?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And did you see Charles take these seeds?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did you see what reaction befell him, if any?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And what happened?

A: It was about probably two hours after we had taken the seeds, I was laying down in my bedroom and I heard Charles jump up and he was hitting the wall; and as I opened the door, he ran out of his room and into a hallway and there was a door to a bathroom -- I don't recall if he kicked it -- I think he hit it with his hand, but he put a hole through the door; and I grabbed him and began talking to him and wrestled with him for a moment and finally calmed him down; and he went back to bed and I stayed in the room and talked with him for a few minutes; and that was it.

Q: Did you ever during this over a year period that you were close to him see him use any acid or speed?

A: No.

Q: Or belladonna?

A: No

Q: Were you aware that Charles went to the Spahn Ranch to live with Charles

Manson at the time that happened?

A: No, sir.

THE COURT: Just a moment. When you say "at the time that happened" are you referring to this rosewood seed incident?

MR. KEITH: No, I will reframe the question.

Q: What I meant was were you aware that Charles Watson went to live at the Spahn Ranch when it happened or did you hear about it sometime later?

A: He had gone to the ranch?

Q: Yes.

A: I was aware that he was with Charles Manson.

Q: And when did you first learn that?

A: Well, he told me that he was going to be with Charles Manson.

Q: All right.

Do you have any recollection of the approximate date when Charles Watson told you he was going to live with Charles Manson?

A: No, sir. I don't know what the date would be.

Q: Would it have been in 1968 sometime?

A: I believe so, yes.

Q: Would it be after Charles Watson met Dennis Wilson?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: And Manson at the beach.

A: Yes.

Q: And would it have been after you knew Charles Watson had become close to Dean Morehouse?

A: Yes, sir, In fact, I think he met Charles Manson through Dean Morehouse.

Q: Were you still living at this leased house in Malibu when Charles Watson told you he was going to the Spahn Ranch to be with Manson?

A: No, I wasn't.

Q: Where were you at that time?

A: I was staying with some friends in Studio City.

Q: And were you subleasing this house in Malibu at that time?

A: We had plans to and we had sublet it for a month and when I went back to check on the house is when the girls were there.

Q: Did you know whether this was, when the girls were there, whether this was before or after Charles Watson told you he was going to the Spahn Ranch?

A: This was before. He told me this during that period

Q: This was all about the same time?

A: I don't believe that they had moved to the ranch. In fact, they were living at our house in Malibu. When I went back to the house, the girls were there and they had set up camp in our house.

Q: You have to be careful about using just "they."

You have to keep the record straight.

A: Charles Manson, a number of teenage girls and Charles Watson.

Q: Did you ever see Charles Watson while he was living at the Spahn Ranch, actually at the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did you go up there --

A: Yes, sir.

Q: -- from time to time. And was this shortly after Charles Watson moved to the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: What was he doing there, if anything?

A: At the ranch?

Q: Yes.

A: Well, when I went to the ranch for the first time they were working in the yard and not really doing much of anything.

Q: And had you noticed any change about Charles Watson at that time when you visited him at the Spahn Ranch?

A: Not a drastic change, but I had noticed a bit of a change in his personality.

Q: In what sense? Could you describe it for us as best you can?

A: Well, he seemed to have -- he was beginning to have an absence of emotion. He had a very blank look on his face.

Q: Anything else you can tell us?

A: Well, I know he was taking acid -- he had become to take a great deal of acid.

Q: How did you know that?

A: He told me.

Q: How many occasions, on how many occasions did you visit Charles Watson at the Spahn Ranch after he had moved out there with Manson?

A: Well, I had gone to the ranch maybe two or three different occasions, and Charles had come into town.

Q: By Charles, we have got to keep it straight who we are talking about.  
Mr. Watson?

A: Tex had come to town.

Q: You didn't call him Tex?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: You called him Charles, did you not?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: So you saw Charles in town?

A: He would come to town once or twice a week.

Q: And you would see him then?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And did you notice the same gradual change?

A: Yes, and slowly he began to -- I began to see him less and less.

Q: Let me interrupt you to establish a date. At some time you were inducted into the Army, were you not?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And do you remember when that was?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And when was that?

A: December of '68.

Q: On these occasions that you saw Charles Watson after he moved to the Spahn Ranch, was this before you were inducted into the Army?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And would you say the period we are now discussing would be the latter part of 1968 when you noticed this change in him?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: When you saw Charles after he -- Charles Watson -- after he moved to the Spahn Ranch, whether at the Spahn Ranch or when Charles came into town, did Charles ever talk philosophically with you?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And what did he talk about, generally, on that subject?

A: Well, he talked generally about Charles most of the time --

Q: About --

A: About Manson.

Q: And this was, now -- we are talking about a period of time before you went in the army; right?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And what did Mr. Watson say about Mr. Manson, in substance or effect, if you can recall?

A: Well, he had put him on a level, felt that he was Jesus Christ.

Q: Is this what Charles Watson told you?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And anything else that you can remember during this period of time?

A: This was during, well, just prior to my being inducted into the service, Charles called me --

Q: I was going to get to that, and where were you living at that time?

A: I was living with my brother, who was living in Highland Park.

Q: And you received, a call from Charles Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: And this was just before you went in the army; is that right?

A: Yes, sir; and I hadn't seen him, oh, for, I would say, over six weeks. He called me --

Q: All right; but just before going into the telephone call, Charles Watson had talked to you about Manson and how he thought Manson was Jesus Christ?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And something about Manson's philosophy?

A: Yes, sir; at length.

Q: All right. Now, getting back to the telephone call -- incidentally, how did Charles know how to reach you, if you know?

A: I don't recall.

Q: Pardon me?

A: I don't recall.

Q: At any rate, Charles Watson called --

A: I think the way he got the number was through the friends that I was living within Studio City.

Q: And you were living at Highland Park

A: Yes, sir.

Q: -- when Watson called you?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And did he express something about what was happening to him during this telephone conversation?

A: Yes, sir. He had gone through a complete reversal of anything that he ever believed as far as Manson, it seemed. He was almost frightened over the phone and asked me if there was room for him to come stay, he was afraid of the girls and also of Manson, and he was --

THE COURT: Just try to recall what he said and tell us what he said, please.

THE WITNESS: Well, he said he was frightened, he was frightened of what Manson and what the girls were doing and he felt that he was going insane, could he come stay with me.

BY MR. KEITH: And did Charles come and stay with you?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: This was in Highland Park?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: How long did Charles stay with you?

A: He was there -- he was in Highland Park up until the time I was drafted, which



was December 2nd.

Q: December 2nd, 1968?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And did Charles, himself, report for induction, if you know?

A: Yes, sir, he did.

Q: And do you know what the result of the physical was?

A: Yes, sir; as a result of the knee injury that he suffered, I think he was given a 1-Y classification. He wasn't inducted.

Q: And you went off to the army?

A: Yes sir,

Q: Now, during this two-week period when Charles was -- Watson -- was staying with you in Highland Park, did you and he have any further discussion about Manson and the girls?

A: Yes.

Q: And did these discussions continue along the same lines as the telephone conversation, or what?

A: We talked of Manson's philosophy and we talked of the hold that he seemed to have on him and the hold that he seemed to have on the people were at the ranch; and I remember explicitly Charles saying that he felt he was losing his identity, didn't really know who he was when he was there.

Q: Did you try to make some effort to bring him out of this state of mind?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And you don't know whether you were successful or not, I suppose?

A: No, sir, I don't.

Q: When you left for the army did you have occasion to see Charles Watson again while you were actually in the service?

A: Yes, sir, I did.

Q: And on how many occasions?

A: Two separate times.

Q: When, approximately, was the first time?

A: The first time was in -- well, December, '68, I came home on a Christmas leave.

Q: And where did you see Mr. Watson?

A: If I'm not mistaken, he was still staying at the house, still living in Highland Park with my brother.

Q: During this two-week period -- remember us talking about the two-week period after Charles called you?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And he stayed with you in Highland Park -- did his brother also stay with the two of you?

A: Yes, sir -- my brother.

Q: Not "his" but your brother, I'm sorry.

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And where was Charles, again, late in December when you came home for Christmas leave?

A: Well, he was living -- I think he was living in town but he was staying with my brother part of the time. He was traveling back and forth.

Q: At any rate, he wasn't back at the Spahn Ranch?

A: No, at this time he wasn't.

Q: Now, when approximately was the next time you saw Charles, Charles Watson?

A: I want to say June of '69 -- I'm not sure of the date. It was -- I was going to -- I had orders to go to Vietnam and I was home on leave and I was staying with a friend in Hollywood.

(Missing page)

Q: Do you remember who they were, the young girls? Were you introduced?

A: Yes, sir. I think one of them was Patricia Krenwinkel but I am not sure.

Q: Do you know who the other one was?

A: Not for sure, no.

Q: How did, if you know, Watson know how to find you in Hollywood?

A: I think that I had called him at the ranch trying to get in touch with him. He had left a number with my brother.

Q: Now, on this occasion in June or so of 1969 when Mr. Watson came to where you were living with two girls from the ranch, did you have a discussion with him?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And on this occasion did you notice any change in him from the way you had seen him last?

A: I didn't recognize him at first. That is the difference, in the change.

Q: What was it about his appearance that made it difficult for you to recognize him?

A: Well, physically, he had lost a great deal of weight.

He was smoking cigarettes, which I had never seen him do and he had a stare, absence of emotion almost.

Q: Was it more pronounced, this absence of emotion?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: Than when you had seen him after this telephone call?

A: Yes, definitely.

Q: And did you have a discussion with him?

A: Yes, sir, I did.

Q: And did you and he take a walk?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did the girls from the ranch go with you?

A: The girls did not go along. They remained at the house.

Q: What did Charles tell you, Charles Watson, in substance?

A: Well, he asked me to come to the ranch and to live and he explained Charles Manson's philosophy, which was now his, and he explained helter skelter and he told me that there was going to be a revolution in the country.

He didn't say — he did say that Charles Manson well, the thing that kept throwing me was he kept referring to Charles Manson, the girls, and himself as one. They were all the same.

Q: Go on. Anything else you can remember?

A: I remember him telling me of helter skelter, of the revolution, and that it would be happening in this country within a matter of months.

Q: What did you say to him, if anything?

A: Well, for starters no about going to the ranch and living with the people. There really wasn't much reasoning. I didn't really know him. He was a completely different

person.

Q: How long did you see him on this occasion? A matter of hours?

A: A matter of an hour and a half or two hours.

Q: And did he constantly talk about Manson and helter skelter and the concept of oneness?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Then did he leave with the girls?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: Did his appearance and did his conversation disturb you or distress you in any way?

A: It disturbed me mainly because I didn't -- he had completely lost his identity from the Charles that I knew. It wasn't the same person.

Q: Did you ever see him again after that?

A: No, sir.

Q: Did you try to contact him at all or did he try to, or did he contact you over the telephone, if you know?

A: No, sir.

Q: When you saw him in June of '69, other than his dress, did he look something as he looks today?

A: Well, his hair was longer. He was not quite as thin, but he was thinner than I had ever seen him. He was explaining to me how he was living on the desert and was living strictly off of the desert. Any food that was obtained was obtained from the desert. He was adapting himself to the desert -- was another one of the things we talked about.

THE COURT: Did he mention a bottomless pit to you?

THE WITNESS: No, sir.

MR. KEITH: I have nothing further at this time.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. KAY:

Q: David, you say that Mr. Watson told you in June of '69 that helter skelter, the revolution, would be happening in a couple of months.

Did he tell you how it was going to start?

A: No he didn't; he didn't mention it.

Q: What did he say about helter skelter, about the revolution?

A: He just mentioned that through acid and through a level of understanding that Charles Manson was on, and he was also on, they had listened to enough music that the Beatles were putting out at this time and he -- being Charles Manson had decided that helter skelter was what was going to happen.

Q: Did Tex say that he thought that this was what was going to happen?

A: Well, he was talking almost as if he were -- when I would ask him about Charles Manson or about the girls he would say, "We are the same, so if you ask me about one of them you are asking me about me."

Q: Now, how well did you know Charles back in the fraternity in Texas?

A: I knew him to -- not closely, but I knew him; we were friends.

(Missing page)

A: Approximately \$150 a week. I know he was selling more wigs and doing better -- he was a salesman at that time.

Q: And where was the wig shop located?

A: It was located on Canon Drive in Beverly Hills.

Q: Now, when you and Charles opened your wig shop where was that wig shop?

A: That was on San Vicente, Beverly Hills.

Q: And how long did you have this wig shop together?

A: I'm not sure of the time; four months, five months.

Q: And was this a prosperous business or what?

A: No, not really; that's why we closed the shop.

Q: Did you mutually close the shop?

A: Yes, we did.

Q: In other words, it was a mutual decision?

A: Right.

Q: Now, this occasion where you say that you and Mr. Watson took rosewood seeds, when would that be; could you place a date in relationship to, say, when you had this wig shop together in December of '68?

Was that before?

A: This was just as we had moved to Laurel Canyon, after we had been there, oh, a

month.

Q: And when would that be as far as --

A: I don't recall the dates.

Q: When would that be in relationship to when you opened the wig shop together?

A: Oh, seven months, eight months.

Q: Now, on approximately how many occasions did you and Mr. Watson smoke marijuana together?

MR. KEITH: That assumes facts not in evidence, that he smoked any.

Q BY MR. KAY: Well, did you smoke any?

A: Yes.

Q: On how many occasions did you and Mr. Watson' smoke marijuana together while you were living together?

A: Oh, numerous occasions.

Q: Well, what would that be; 30, 40?

A: Thirty or forty separate times? Probably at least that.

Q: Were any other drugs taken by either you or Mr. Watson during that period --

A: None.

Q: -- other than the rosewood seeds and the marijuana

A: No.

Q: Now, you say that the time you saw Mr. Watson out at Spahn Ranch sometime, before December of '68 you told Mr. Keith that it appeared that Mr. Watson somewhat had an absence of emotion.

What did you base this on; did you tell him a joke and he didn't laugh, or what?

A: Well, when I went to the ranch, as I recall, there were girls -- they were cooking dinner and there was really a look on. -- I don't know at that particular time if they were on acid or what, but there was very little emotion from anyone, other than the old man, the blind old man, Spahn.

Q: George Spahn?

A: Spahn; he was there; and he would occasionally ask a question, but the girls and Charles -- Tex -- seemed to be -- I thought they were stoned on something. I didn't know what, but there was just no reaction.

Q: There was no reaction to what?

A: Well, to questions.

Q: By you?

A: By me and by the old man.

Q: Would they just not answer your questions?

A: They would either not answer the or for the most part just stare.

Q: Without answering the questions?

A: Without answering.

Q: What type of questions were these that you asked?

A: "It's a nice day --" anything. They would just -- they were not -- not only weren't they friendly, they were almost scary.

Q: You felt somewhat that you were unwelcome there; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: Did Mr. Watson seem unhappy at all when he was living with you at any stage?

A: Unhappy?

Q: Yes, unhappy with society, with his life, with college?

A: No.

Q: Do you remember who this other girl was besides you think it was Patricia Krenwinkel, possibly that came over when you were on this leave from the army, when Tex came over to your place in Hollywood, the place that you were staying.

Do you remember?

A: I don't remember who the -- there were three girls. I remember that.

Q: Three girls?

A: Right.

Q: And when you and Tex went on this walk, they stayed in the house?

A: Yes, sir, they did.

Q: Did Tex ask them to stay in the house so he could go on the walk or did you ask them to stay or did they just stay?

A: I don't recall how that happened. I think we just -- I think we were talking in the kitchen and we just walked through the -- they were sitting in the living room talking with some friends of mine and we just walked out the front door and took a walk.

Q: So just about every time you saw Mr. Watson after he started living with the Manson family he always had girls around, is that correct, or there always seemed to be girls around?

A: He always seemed to have someone from the ranch with him?

Q: Female?

A: Uh-huh.

Q: And generally more than one?

A: Yes, generally.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Watson take LSD?

A: I had seen him under the influence of LSD, yes.

Q: And when you say you had seen him under the influence, did you see him take what you knew to be LSD or did he just tell you he had taken LSD?

A: I think he had told me but I recall seeing him with capsules.

Q: And was this out at the Spahn Ranch?

A: This was out at the Spahn Ranch, yes.

Q: And was he violent on that occasion?

A: No.

Q: How did he act?

A: There was very little emotion. He wasn't violent. He seemed to be almost lost as if he were in a daze, but he was smiling. He wasn't unhappy.

Q: Didn't threaten you or anybody that was around him?

A: No.

Q: So the last time that you saw Mr. Watson was June of '69; is that right?

A: I am not sure about the date, but that is close.

Q: Until today?

A: I have seen him since then.

Q: What? In jail?

A: Yes.

Q: How many times have you visited him in jail?

A: Two times.

Q: When was that?



A: It has been about two weeks ago and then about, oh, two weeks before that.

Q: Did you discuss your testimony at all with him? What you were going to say in court?

A: No.

Q: When is the first time, you ever told anybody about this phone conversation in December, or before you got inducted, the phone conversation with Mr. Watson?

A: When was the first time?

Q: Yes.

A: I told my brother just after he called.

Q: Did you ever contact the police or law enforcement authorities about any of this information that you are telling as today?

Q: No.

A: And besides this marijuana and the rosewood seeds have you ever taken any other drug?

MR. KEITH: Object to the question as irrelevant.

THE COURT: With Watson.

THE WITNESS: With Watson?

THE COURT: Yes.

THE WITNESS: No.

MR. KAY: I think it might go to his state of mind, your Honor, whether he has ever seen the other.

THE COURT: It might but I don't think so.

MR. KAY: May I have just a moment, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes.

Q BY MR. KAY: When Tex told you that he was living strictly off the desert, when you saw him in June of '69, did he say exactly what he was eating? Like cactus plants or what?

A: He said he was adapting to the desert and he was eating cactus or plants of the desert, but mostly just drinking water. He wasn't eating very much of anything.

MR. KAY: I have no further questions.

MR. KEITH: May I reopen for just a question or two?

THE COURT: Go ahead.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. KEITH:

Q: David, before Charles ever went to the Spahn Ranch, some abort time before, did you ever have conversations with Charles Watson about the subject of giving material things away?

A: Yes, sir.

A: And when and where did that conversation take place?

Did I say "Manson"?

A: No.

THE COURT: "Watson."

MR. KEITH: I thought I said "Watson." Mr. Bubrick said --

MR. BUBRICK: I'm sorry. I thought this was a conversation with Manson.

THE COURT: Those things happen.

Q BY MR. KEITH: My question was, when and where was that conversation?

A: This conversation -- well, it happened on several occasions; but, as I recall, it was when he first started living with, staying at Dennis Wilson's house.

Q: And what did Mr. Watson tell you on the subject of material possessions?

A: It wasn't so much what he told me as his actions. He was giving --

Q: Well, don't tell us -- do you know this of your own knowledge that he gave things away?

A: Do I know that he gave things away?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes.

Q: Alright, tell us what you saw him do while he was living at Dennis'.

A: Well, I know he gave some Stereo equipment away, a pickup truck, the majority of his clothes or all of his clothes except for a pair of jeans or two.

Q: Do you know to whom he gave these things?

A: At the time, anyone who asked.

Q: And did he ever discuss with you the concept of sharing everything with everybody and that no one should own anything?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: And what did he say on that subject?

By "he" I am referring to Watson now.

A: Well, he said that material -- there was no -- how did he put it? -- there is no need in material possessions; there is no need to have them.

Q: Did he tell you this at or about the time he was giving everything he owned away?

A: Yes.

Q: And did he ever tell you where he learned this philosophy from, or did you know?

A: Well, this was through Manson. He was with -- he talked about after being at Dennis' and after meeting Manson.

Q: "He," now is Charles Watson?

A: Charles Watson talked of Manson after meeting him, began talking about him everytime I would see him, about the things they were doing as far as spiritually being like one and being together; and the material things they were giving away.

I asked him once if they were keeping material things and he said no, when they got material things if someone else needed it worse than they did, they passed them on.

Q: Who is "they," Manson and the girls?

A: Manson and the girls; Charles Watson.

Q: Were you aware that Manson was the one who actually got the truck and the camera equipment?

MR. KAY: I believe this assumes facts not in evidence; I believe the testimony is that Ruth Moorehouse got the truck.

MR. KEITH: I will withdraw the question.

THE COURT: You are right; that's the testimony.

MR. KEITH: I have nothing further.

MR. KAY: Nothing further.

THE COURT: Thank you; you may be excused.

Suppose we have our morning recess at this time.

Ladies and gentlemen, we will have our morning recess at this time and, once again, please heed the usual admonition.

(Recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors are present. All counsel and the defendant are present.

MR. BUBRICK: Call the defendant Watson, your Honor.

THE CLERK: Raise your right hand, please.

You do solemnly swear that the testimony you may give in the cause now pending before this court shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God?

THE WITNESS: I do.

CHARLES WATSON,

the defendant herein, called as a witness on his own behalf, testified as follows

THE CLERK: Thank you. Be seated.

Would you state your name?

THE WITNESS: Charles, C-h-a-r-l-e-s Watson; W-a-t-s-o-n.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Charles, when is it that you first came to California?

A: It was in August of 1967.

Q: And when you came here, where did you come from?

A: Dallas, a small town named Copeville, Texas.

Q: Is Copeville where you had been raised?

A: Yes.

Q: And who did you live there with?

A: My parents and my brother and my sister.

Q: Your sister is the oldest one in the family; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And then your brother is next, obviously, then you are the youngest?

A: Right, yes.

Q: And there was just the three of you in the family; is that correct?

A: Yes, sir.

Q: What sort of a town, or how big a town is Copeville?

A: Around 150 people.

Q: Can you place it for us with respect to Dallas?

A: It is 35 miles from Dallas, I believe, north, I believe.

Q: 35 miles north of Dallas?

A: Yes.

Q: I take it you lived there all of your life; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: Did you go to school in Copeville?

A: I went to school in Farmersville.

Q: How far is that from Copeville?

A: Seven miles.

Q: How did you get there?

A: I rode the bus.

Q: Did you have any difficulty in grade school or elementary school?

A: No.

Q: Did you go to school regularly?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you play hookey; do you know what I mean by that?

A: No, I always got a perfect attendance award every year for not missing any days.

Q: Was your health good in those days?

A: Yes, very good.

Q: Did you have any hobbies while you were going to grade school?

A: No, I don't believe so, in going to grade school; just maybe working around the station and around, the house and stuff, that's about all.

Q: What did your father do?

A: He owns a gas station and grocery store, combined.

Q: Is that close to the family residence?

A: Yes, it is; the house is right beside the store.

Q: Is that the only business you have known your father to have?

A: Yes, right.

Q: And did you grow up while he was conducting that station and that little store?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you work there with him from time to time?

A: After school and in -- in my early years -- and then after football practice and the sport practices when I was in college.

Q: But in your younger years, you would help out occasionally; is that correct?

A: Right, occasionally.

Q: Eventually, I take it, you went into high school; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: Where did you go to school, in high school?

A: Farmersville High School.

Q: Did you go there the full four years?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you have any extracurricular activities in high school?

A: Sports, and I was in the band one year, I believe, and the big thing kind of was sports all the time, football and basketball and track.

Q: Did you letter in those sports?

A: Yes, every year I lettered in sports.

Q: How many letters did you get in high school?

A: Well, I got one each year; that would be four in football and in basketball and in track.

Q: 12 letters for the four years?

A: 12 letters, yes.

Q: Did you ever do any -- did you ever belong to the 4-H Club?

A: Yes, uh-huh.

Q: How long were you in that organization?

A: Two years.

Q: What did you do as a member of that club?

A: I remember we raised calves and things like that, you know.

Q: Did you raise a calf?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Anything else that you remember doing in the 4-H club?

A: No, I don't remember of anything else.

Q: Did you belong to something known as the FHA -- I mean FFA?

A: FFA.

Q: I am sorry.

A: Future Farmers.

Q: Future Farmers of America?

A: Right.

Q: Is that an organization similar to the 4-H club?

A: Yes.

Q: How big a school is Farmersville High School?

A: I'm not for sure about that at all. I know there was about 40 in my class.

Q: In your graduating class?

A: Right.

Q: Do you have any idea of about how many students were in the school, the total school population?

A: Just what I have heard recently, 500, but that is all I know, you know. I don't know how many was in there.

Q: What sort of grades did you get in high school?

A: A's, mostly A's. I made a B every once in a while.

Q: Were you on any honorary societies in school, if you remember?

A: I can't remember. I know I was in the top -- one of the top 10 in my graduating class.

Q: Did you do any work after school or during the summer periods while you were going to school?

A: Yes. I always worked for Mr. Carpenter at an onion packing plant, making money for college.

Q: Save the money you made working for him?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know how many summers or how many years you worked for him?

A: I was around 14 when I started working for him and I worked for him all the summers up until the summer I came to California and then I didn't work for him that summer.

Q: And the last summer would have been 1966 that you worked for him?

A: I believe so, yes.

Q: You came here in '67; is that correct?

A: Right, uh-huh.

Q: I take it you did not work for him in '67.

A: No, I didn't.

Q: What sort of work did you do for Mr. Carpenter?

A: I sacked onions and I was kind of a mechanic around the shop and I drove a forklift and when I first started graded onions and toted bags, I should say carried the bags around to plant.

Q: And in your latter years, Charles, how long would you work during your summer vacation?

A: We would work up to, I remember some weeks worked up to 90 hours a week.

Q: Would you work the entire summer?

A: Yes, I would.

Q: From the time school let out until the time school started again?

A: Sometimes I would start just a little before school got out and work after school a little bit and then I worked all summer.

Q: How did you get along with the people at the plant, the people you worked with?

A: Good.

Q: Did you ever have any difficulty with any of them?

A: No, sir, not at all.

Q: Did you ever have any fights with any of them?

A: No.

Q: How did you get along with your brother and sister?

A: Very well.

Q: Did you have any difficulty with them that you can recall?

A: No, never did.

Q: And how about your dad? What would you say your relationship was with him?

A: Well, my relationship with him was like I said when I would get home from my school in my younger years I would kind of play around between the house and the



station there, and then after I got into high school, I would always be playing sports until dark like and I would come home and then I would be at the house mostly, you know, studying or -- studying until the time for bed, you know, then I would go to bed.

THE COURT: What Mr. Bubrick wants to know is did you get along well with your father.

THE WITNESS: Yes. I got along well with my father. Q BY

MR. BUBRICK: You never had any fights that you know of with your dad?

A: No, not at all.

Q: Did you ever have any reason to leave home? Did you ever run away from home?

A: No, no.

Q: Was your dad a pretty good mechanic?

A: Yes, uh-huh.

Q: Where did you pick up your mechanical skills ?

A: From my dad.

Q: After you graduated from high school, Charles, did you go on to college

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Where did you go?

A: I went to North Texas State University.

Q: Incidentally, how big a person were you physically while you were going to high school?

A: Most of the time I weighed around 155 or 160; maybe up to 165 at times.

Q: Is that about what you weighed while you played football?

A: Yes, that's what I weighed when I played football.

Q: How about track, did you maintain the same weight or did you slim down?

A: I don't recall about that; I just --

Q: What was your major endeavor in track?

A: High hurdles and the hundred yard dash, and the 220.

Q: Do you remember the best time you ever made for the high hurdles?

A: Fourteen something; fourteen nine or fourteen eight, fourteen seven, in the upper fourteens.

Q: Is that 220 high hurdle --

A: No, it is 120 high hurdles.

THE COURT: How about the hundred yard dash; what was the best you did there?

THE WITNESS: The best I ever did was nine nine.

THE COURT: Nine nine?

THE WITNESS: Right.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Now, when you went on into college you went to Denton -- sorry, you went to North Texas State in Denton; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: How far is that from Copeville?

A: Around 50 miles.

Q: When you went to college, Charles, did you live in Denton or did you commute?

A: I lived in Denton.

Q: Whose decision was it to go to North Texas State?

A: It was more or less my mother's decision to go to North Texas.

Q: You had an older brother who played football, didn't you?

A: Yes, I had an older brother that played football.

Q: Where did he go to school?

A: He went to school at Texas Christian University.

Q: And did he go on a scholarship, if you know?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: When you went to North Texas State did you go on any scholarship?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: Had your sister gone to that same school?

A: Yes, she had.

Q: Did you particularly want to go to North Texas State?

A: I really didn't know. It didn't make me any difference, you know, where I went to college. I didn't really object to it and I didn't really want to, you know.

Q: Well, did you really want to go to college?

A: It really wasn't my decision, you know, like my brother and sister had gone, so that's what I was expected to do, was to go to college.

Q: You felt that was what was expected of you; is that correct?

A: In a way, yes.

Q: And that I take it you did actually enroll and go for three years; is that correct?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Did you do any work while you were going to school?

A: Well, the summers I would work at the onion packing plant until the last semester in college; and I started working for Braniff International.

Q: I appreciate that you worked during the summer, Charles; but did you do anything while you were going to school --

A: No

Q: -- did you work after school, days? .

A: No, I didn't work after school. I had saved my money, you know.

Q: Did you come home very frequently?

A: Not very frequently, no, I didn't.

Q: Did you have any transportation? Did you have a car by this time?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: When did you first get a car, if you remember?

A: I believe my last year in high school I got a car.

Q: And did you take that on to college with you?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: When did you start to work for the airlines?

A: I started to work for the airlines, I believe, around the first part of 1967.

Q: Were you still going to school then?

A: Yes.

Q: And where did you work, in what facility did you work?

A: Dallas, Texas.

Q: And how did you get from Denton to Dallas?

A: I would drive.

Q: How far is that?

A: I believe it is around 40 miles.

Q: 40 miles each way?

A: I believe, yes.

Q: And did you maintain a full course of studies in college?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Then what did you do, work everyday after school?

A: No, I worked -- yeah, everyday after school, right.

Q: How long, how many hours would you work daily?

A: I worked a full eight hours, plus I went to school full time and worked full. time.

Q: Do you remember what time your classes would let out so that you could get on to work?

A: Sometimes -- let's see, during that period I believe they got over between noon and 2:00 o'clock, something like that.

Q: Then after class was over you'd drive down to the airlines?

A: Right.

Q: Where, what facility did you work at; did you work at some airport or something?

A: Dallas airport.

Q: Do you remember the name of that?

A: I believe it was Love Field, I believe.

Q: Love Field?

A: Love Field, yes.

Q: And you would leave school and drive the distance to Love Field, and how long would you work at the airport?

A: I would work there till around midnight.

Q: And then what would you do?

A: Then I would come back and study or go to sleep, and get up and go to classes again.

Q: How long did you maintain this schedule?

A: Until school was out in the summer.

Q: Summer of '67?

A: Yes.

Q: And what sort of grades did you get that semester?

A: Much lower grades than I had been getting.

Q: And what happened in the summer of '67, if anything?

A: Well, I quit the airlines and decided to move to California.

Q: Now, do you remember -- did you know Dave Neal in school?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And how did you happen to know him?

A: He was a fraternity brother of mine.

Q: Did you live at a fraternity house?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Did Dave live there?

A: No, Dave didn't.

Q: How often would you see Dave at school?

A: Quite often, you know, during the weeks.

Q: Was Dave a football player at school?

A: Yes, he was on -- I believe he had a scholarship or something like that in school.

Q: Did you know that Dave had moved to California?

A: Yes.

Q: I take it you realized he had dropped out of school?

A: Not for sure about that.

Q: But you did know that he came to California?

A: I know he came to California and he didn't finish, so he must of -- I don't know if he dropped -- I guess you'd call it dropout.

Q: How long did you go to college?

A: Three years.

Q: And you dropped out your last year; is that correct?

A: That is correct. I didn't go my senior year.

THE COURT: Charles, have you told us when you were born?

THE WITNESS: I was born December 2nd, 1945.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: You actually were born in Dallas; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Then you moved right to Copeville thereafter?

A: I guess I did. That was pretty early, you know.

Q: Do you have any recollection of ever having lived in Dallas?

A: No, I do not.

Q: Do you know how it was that you came to find Dave in California?

A: I remember that he -- right at the end of school, I believe, that last semester, he was visiting some people in Denton -- I believe his family or something -- and he talked about California and I knew then I knew someone in California then, I guess, you know.

Q: Did you know where in California he lived?

A: No, I did not. I didn't know. I just knew he was in California.

Q: Prior to coming to California, Charles, had you ever visited any other parts of the country?

A: No, other than I had been to Mexico a couple of times.

Q: How did you get there?

A: On Braniff Airlines, passes and things like that.

Q: This is while you worked for the airline company; is that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Do you remember how many times you flew to Mexico with them?

A: I believe a couple of times. I went to Acapulco.

Q: Both times?

A: Yes.

Q: And were those the only flights that you made out of Texas other than to California, if you remember?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Do you remember how you got in touch with Dave when you decided to come out here?

A: I phoned him.

Q: From where?

A: From Dallas, I believe.

Q: How did you find out where he lived here in Los Angeles, or in California, I should say?

A: I don't remember really but I believe the telephone was in his name or something like that.

Q: And so you called him when?

A: Around in August of '67.

Q: Did you come out here then?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: How many times? Do you remember?

A: I would say about four times, I believe.

Q: You came out here at some time you decided to stay permanently; is that correct?

A: Yes. The last time I decided to stay permanently.

Q: How many trips did you make between Dallas and California before you came here on a permanent basis?

A: I would say about four.

Q: Do you remember when they occurred?

A: During the month of August, I believe, maybe the latter part of July, I believe. I can't recall for sure.

Q: When would you come out, if you remember, what days of the week?

A: I would come out on the weekend, or when my -- I would be working for them and then when my two days came up to be off, I would come out.

Q: How did you come out? On passes?

A: Yes, and half fare, I believe.

Q: Always on Braniff Airlines?

A: No; it was on Delta Airlines.

Q: Delta?

A: Yes,

Q: When did you decide to come out here permanently, if you remember?

A: The latter part of August before school started that year.

Q: In 1967?

A: Yes.

Q: When you made that move, Charles, did you bring anything with you?

A: I brought all my possessions with me.

Q: What did that include, if you remember?

A: All my clothes, I had quite a lot of clothes and a lot of stereo equipment and camera equipment and things like towels and linens and just all kinds of little gadgets, you know.

Q: And prior to the time that you left Texas to come to California, had you ever had any drugs? Ever use any drugs?

A: I used marijuana one time.

Q: Where was that?

A: That was in Dallas.

Q: Do you remember what year?

A: That was nearly the day I moved to California,

Q: What?

A: Nearly the day -- it was just about the same day or right around the time,

Q: That would have been in August of '67?

A: Yes, right.

Q: Do you remember who you used it with?

A: I used it with a girl in Dallas.

Q: Is that the only occasion on which you used marijuana in Texas?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Did you use any other drugs in Texas?

A: None other than one or two times I stayed up for exams or something at school and some kind of a pill that would make you stay awake, you know, like to be able to stay up and study for the test, one or two times. I believe that is all.

Q: Other than those two occasions, are there any other drugs that you can think of that you used in Texas?

A: No, none at all.

Q: When you came to California then in August of '67, where did you stay, if you remember?

A: I moved in with David and his brother.

Q: Where were they living, if you remember?

A: In the Hollywood area, I believe.

Q: Did you bring your possessions with you, or were they trans shipped, if you



remember?

A: Some of them I brought with me and a lot of them were shipped in a big trunk, I remember a big trunk, and big boxes.

Q: Did you take all the things with you then to David or wherever he lived with his brother?

A: Yes, right.

Q: How long did you stay there?

A: I believe around two or three weeks.

Q: Can you fix the time of year for us now?

A: It was before school has started and before I had enrolled in school at Cal State.

Q: Did you actually enroll at Cal State?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Do you remember when that was?'

A: I believe school started around the middle of September, is that correct? The middle of September or somewhere like that.

Q: What brought you to California, if you know?

A: I don't really know why. I think it was just maybe the adventure, i guess -- that's about it, about the adventure, I guess, I mean --

Q: You told us how big a city Copeville. was. How big a city was Farmersville?

A: Around 2,000 people.

Q: And how about Denton?

A: I don't have any idea.

Q: Was it bigger than Farmersville?

A: Yes, it was big -- bigger.

Q: And aside from being away from home at Denton, had you ever been away from home before?

A: No, I haven't .

Q: So this is really the first time that you have been away from home, on any extended period; is that correct?

A: Yes, it was the first time away from home.

Q: You enrolled, then, at Cal State in September of '67; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Did you go to school?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: For how long?

A: Up until the time when you could -- it was right after the time when you couldn't drop out, without getting all -- right after that time.

Q: Can you tell us how long you went in terms of weeks, months or anything like that?

A: I'd say a couple of months.

Q: Then you just left school, did you?

A: Yes, I, was working at the same time and going to school.

Q: What sort of work were you doing about this time?

A: I was working for a wig company.

Q: Do you remember where it was located?

A: It was -- in Beverly Hills.

Q: Is this still a time when you were living with David and his brother?

A: No, I had moved; David and I had moved into an apartment together.

Q: When did you make that move?

A: A couple of weeks after I was living with David in Hollywood, after -- a couple of weeks after I came to California.

Q: Was that before you enrolled in school?

A: Both of those happened about the same time.

Q: So that might have been what, September of '67?

A: Yes, right.

Q: When did you go to work for the wig company, if you know?

A: Around the same time.

Q: What sort of work were you doing?

A: Started out walking around the streets passing out cards to women to get them to come into the shop.

Q: For wigs?

A: Yes.

Q: How long. did you do that?

A: Until I started selling: wigs in the shop.

Q: How long did you work at the wig shop?

A: Until I had an automobile accident.

Q: When did that occur?

A: That was at the first of '68.

Q: In January?

A: In January, I believe, yes.

Q: Where were you living -- were you living at the same place with David while you worked at this wig shop?

A: Yes.

Q: And were you living with David when you had the accident?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you have some surgery; were you hospitalized with the accident?

A: I had a knee operation.

Q: Do you remember when that was?

A: That was about a month after the accident..

Q: Were you laid up for any period of time, if you remember?

A: Yes, for a while; and then for, I guess -- I don't know how long, but I laid up a while and then I went back working for the wig company.

Q: Did your mother come out to visit you while you were laid up?

A: Yes, she did.

Q: How long did she stay, if you remember?

A: I don't remember exactly; about a week, I believe.

Q: When you went back to work did you go to work for the same wig company?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: How much longer did you work for that company?

A: I believe about a month or two, I believe.

Q: What happened after you left that job?

A: David and I opened up a wig shop of our own.

Q: Where did you do that?

A: It was close to Wilshire, I know.

Q: In the west end of town, downtown, where?

A: Probably about 10 miles from downtown, I believe.

Q: Was it in the western part of the city?

A: No, it was kind of in the Hollywood district.

Q: How long did you maintain that business, the one that you and David started?

A: Not for very long, because it didn't work out, didn't make any money.

Q: Did you ever meet anybody by the name of Dennis Wilson?

A: Yes.

Q: When did you meet him, if you know?

A: It was right around the time when we went out of business at the wig shop.

Q: How did you happen to meet Dennis Wilson?

A: I was driving down Sunset Boulevard toward the ocean and then I picked him up hitch-hiking.

Q: Now, up until the time that you met Dennis Wilson and after you moved here to California, had you used any drugs

A: Yes, I had used marijuana and hash..

Q: What is hash?

A: That's a form of marijuana; the same thing as marijuana, I believe; and rosewood seeds one time.

Q: Do you remember where you were living when you used the rosewood seeds?

A: I was living in Laurel Canyon.

Q: Had you used them on any other occasion other than this one?

A: No, I only used them once.

Q: What effect, if any, did it have on you, if you know?

A: Well, a lot of hallucinations. I remember the room came in on me completely; and it seems like my head was just in one little room, you know, and the little room was around my head. And I remember I hit a door, hit the door and put my hand through a door; and kind of got mad at the guy that gave them to us, you know.

I never had did anything like that or anything, and I couldn't understand why he had given me something that would make me do that.

Q: Was anybody else with you at the time you took the rosewood seeds?

A: David was with me -- David.

Q: Other than that you had smoked marijuana and hash; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: Had you ever had any reaction from those drugs?

A: No, none at all.

Q: Do you remember on how many occasions you might have smoked them?

A: We smoked -- I don't know how many occasions.

Q: Numerous?

A: Yea, uh-huh.

Q: Now, can you tell us about when it was that you met Dennis Wilson?

A: It must have been around in April, I guess, April of May of it would be '68.

Q: I think you told us you picked him up hitch-hiking; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: Where did you take him, if you remember?

A: I took him to his house.

Q: Where was that?

A: It was in Pacific Palisades.

Q: Was there anybody else there when you got there?

A: Yes, a guy by the name of Dean Moorehouse was there; and Charles Manson was there and he had a bunch of girls with him, about five or six girls.

Q: Had you ever met any of these people before?

A: No, that was the first time.

Q: How long did you stay at Dennis Wilson's on the date of your first meeting with him?

A: Just for a while that evening.

Q: Did anything unusual happen while you were there?

A: No, not nothing unusual. We just sat around the coffee-table and the girls brought in some food and. we smoked some hash that night.

Q: That was the first night you met Dennis and the other people?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Was there anything other than hash that was used, if you remember?

A: No, not at all.

Q: What sort of a car were you driving, if you remember?

A: I was driving an old truck, '35 Dodge, kind of an antique truck.

Q: I think you told us you stayed a couple of hours that evening, did you?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Where did you go after that?

A: I went back -- I went, drove on down to where our house was on the beach.

Q: In the Malibu area?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Were you still living with somebody else?

A: I was living with David at the time.

Q: Were you working at this time?

A: No. I had just went out of the wig business..

Q: Did you see Dennis Wilson often thereafter?

A: On occasions I would drop by and visit and go swimming in the pool.

Q: Did you become friendly with anybody you met at Dennis Wilson's?

A: Dennis wasn't there a lot and a guy by the name of Dean Moorehouse was living there. He was kind of the one that raked up the leaves and kind of took care of the place.

Q: Where was he living, if you know?

A: He was living in a little log cabin behind the main house.

Q: That is on Dennis Wilson's property?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Would you see Dean Morehouse frequently?

A: Yes, quite often. I eventually moved into Dennis' house. Dennis asked me to move in.

Q: Do you remember when you did that?

A: David and I leased out the beachhouse, our beachhouse, and then after that I really didn't have a place to stay, so Dennis asked me to move in to his place.

Q: How many times would you say you had seen Dennis or you had been at Dennis'

house from the time that you first met him and the time that you moved in?

A: Probably 10 times.

Q: How about Dean Moorehouse, had you met him on a number of occasions?

A: Every time I was there, he was there.

Q: How about Charles Manson?

A: Charles Manson was there a few times and his girls was always there, you know.

Q: When you say "his girls," do you know who they were? Can you identify them for us?

A: No, I can't. I believe Brenda was there, a girl by the name of Diane.

Q: Is that Diane Lake?

A: She always went by the name of Diane Bluestein. That was her names.

Q: Is that the Diane that you are talking about?

A: Yes, Diane Lake is the Diane I are talking about and another girl named Diane, too, that was a girl friend of Dennis' was living there.

Q: Do you know her last name?

A: No, I don't.

Q: Does Mr. Moorehouse have a daughter?

A: Yes, he had a daughter.

Q: Was she there?

A: On occasion she was there. She lived out at the ranch mostly.

Q: What would you do when you would visit with Dennis before you moved in?

A: Just kind of go over and sit around and go swimming and then Dean Moorehouse would be talking to me all the time, you know.

Q: What did he talk about?

A: Kind of about dropping out of society, I guess you would say, or about society.

Q: What would he say about society that you can now remember?

A: Well, he would talk about how they had a lot of wants and desires, of wanting material things, and how they had a lot of thought in their heads and a lot of wants.

Q: Did he say there was anything wrong with having thoughts in your head or having wants?

A: Yes. He said that this was where the -- that it was destroying the love in the

world.

Q: Did he ever tell you how he defined love?

A: Not having any thought, being able to give everything that you had.

Q: On how many occasions would you say you and Mr. Moorehouse talked along these lines?

A: Every time I was around him, this is all he talked about.

Q: Were you taking any drugs at this time?

A: During that period, just marijuana.

Q: And how frequently were you using that?

A: Pretty frequently.

Q: At Dennis Wilson's?

A: Yes, before I moved in.

Q: Any other drugs that you used while you were at Dennis'?

A: After I moved in, I took some LSD.

Q: Let's stop there a minute. Had you ever used anything like LSD before you moved in to Dennis Wilson's?

A: No, this -- no, never had used LSD before.

Q: Had you been staying with Dean Moorehouse before you moved into Dennis Wilson's?

A: Well, I wasn't staying with Dean Moorehouse, until I moved in to Dennis Wilson's house.

Q: When you say you moved in with Dennis Wilson, did you move into the main house or did you move into the cabin that Dean Moorehouse lived in?

A: I moved into the main house, in one of the bedrooms.

Q: I think you told us you used some LSD there; is that correct?

A: Yes, LSD, but it was real light, like it really didn't have a big effect.

Q: Do you remember what effect, if any, it did have on you?

A: At that time it just kind of made me submit and believe more of what Dean Moorehouse was saying.

Q: And was he saying the same thing you have told us about here before?

A: Yes, that is correct.



Q: Would Dean Moorehouse use LSD at the same time you did, if you know?

A: Yes.

Q: How about Dennis Wilson?

A: I never did take LSD that much, when I was living at Dennis Wilson's house.

Q: Did you ever see Manson while you were at Dennis Wilson's house?

A: Yes. He would always be coming over quite frequently.

Q: Did you ever see Mr. Manson use any LSD?

A: On one occasion, I believe while I was at Dennis' house.

Q: How long did you live at Dennis' house?

A: Up until the end of August or close to the end of August.

Q: What year?

A: I believe, '68.

Q: Now, can you tell us the number of times that you used LSD while you lived at Dennis Wilson's house?

A: Around two times; one time some people came by and gave it to us, and then another time I believe Dean had it that time.

Q: Did Dean use LSD both times that you did?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: Were you using anything other than LSD while you were living at Dennis', other than the marijuana and hash that you have told us about?

A: Yes, some cannabinal -- that's a synthetic marijuana, I believe.

Q: Does that also go by some initials, if you know?

A: THC, I believe.

Q: Anything else?

A: That's all.

Q: Were the girls there --

A: Let's see, I think we took some -- one time we took some peyote there.

Q: Do you remember who brought that?

A: No, I don't remember who brought it by. I remember they cooked it or something. I remember I threw it up and that was it.

Q: Do you remember what form the peyote took?

A: It was a cactus like plant.

Q: Then what did they do with it, if you know?

A: They cooked it up and we were supposed to eat it, you know; and that's what we did.

Q: You ate some solid mass?

A: Right, it didn't stay down; I threw it up.

Q: Did you take it on any other occasion that you remember, at Dennis Wilson's?

A: No, none at all; that's all I took at Dennis Wilson's.

Q: Did you still have your truck and the hi-fi equipment and the other property you brought with you from Texas?

A: Yes, I had the truck and it was loaded down with all of my possessions that I could get in it and the rest was at the beachhouse that we had leased out. I had a storage, kind of.

Q: What did you do with the stuff that was on your truck?

A: I gave it to Charles Manson.

Q: Do you remember when you did that?

A: It was right before I left Dennis Wilson's house and after Dean had been talking to me, telling me about Charlie and all of the philosophies and stuff.

Q: Can you fix the time of it for us?

A: It was around in August of '68.

Q: What did you give Charlie Manson?

A: I gave him the truck and all of the possessions that I had in the truck at the time.

Q: You mean you physically just turned it over to him?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: And you actually turned it over to Manson; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you have a pink slip for this truck?

A: I don't believe I had a pink slip, but I had a bill of sale.

Q: Did you give that to Manson?

A: Yes, I did. I believe a girl by the name of Ruth Moorehouse, Charlie put it in her name.

Q: Do you know that of your own knowledge?

A: No, it never did go in her name because the truck stayed in my name, I found out later; but I believe I do remember her signing something to get it, you know.

Q: Did Mr. Manson ever tell you what he did with this property?

A: No, he said, I believe, something to the effect he just let it kind of flow through him.

Q: Was there any particular reason for giving it to a woman or a girl?

A: Well, he said that he always put it in the girls' name, because he knew the girls would stay with him, where he didn't know about the guys completely. Be knew that the guys were always running off and he didn't want anything in the men's name, wanted to keep it in the girls' names because he had control of all the girls.

Q: Well, did you have any feelings about turning your truck and property over to Mr. Manson?

A: No, I just gave it right to him.

Q: Did you want to do that?

A: At the time, that's what I did, you know.

Q: Had you been talking to Dean Moorehouse frequently?

A: Yes, like I was living with Dean, you know, day and night; and this is what he would preach. He would preach Manson's philosophy and also out of the bible.

Q: Did you know anything about Dean Moorehouse at all?

A: Just that he had told me that he'd given his --- that he had set one daughter free, and this was Ruth he was talking about, because he had given her to Charles Manson; and that Charlie had given him LSD up north, and that he was an ex-Methodist minister.

Q: Is that what Dean moorehouse told you?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: Did he quote the scriptures?

A: Yes, he was always reading out of the bible and quoting the scriptures and relating the bible to Manson's philosophy.

Q: Was there anybody -- strike that.

Did Dean Moorehouse tell you anything about anybody in the family, the Manson family, owning anything in their own name?

A: No, none at all; everything was one. He used to talk about the oneness and how everybody was -- how you gave up your identity and all of your wants and all of your desires and all your thought and became one, as one person.

Q: Were you permitted to own property in your own name as a member of the family?

A: No.

Q: Did Morehouse say anything about that?

A: He said that everything belonged to one and the one was Manson.

Q: Now, you said something about you left, you moved from Dennis' when, in August of '68?

A: That's correct.

Q: Where did you go then, if you remember?

A: Dean Moorehouse and I went up north to his trial. He was having a trial on LSD or something; he was being tried on LSD.

Q: Do you remember where the trial was being conducted?

A: No, I know it was on the other side of San Francisco.

Q: You mean north of San Francisco?

A: North of San Francisco.

Q: How did you get up there?

A: We went in Terry Melcher's car.

Q: Had you ever met Terry Melchor?

A: Yes, I met Terry Melcher at Dennis' house at -- I guess you'd call it kind of a party, like Dean and I was living there and then Greg Jakobson was living there, and a bunch of Greg's and Dennis' friends just happened to be over one day and I guess you'd call, it kind of a party, I think.

Q: Is that the first time that you met Terry Melcher?

A: Yes. I met him that times that was the first time. I remember Dean said that was Doris Day's son or something like that.

Q: Can you remember when this occurred?

A: It was in the last month that we were at Dennis Wilson's house. That would have been in August.

Q: August of '68?

A: Yes.

Q: When you say you went with Dean Moorehouse to his trial in Terry Melcher's car, where did you get that car?

A: Terry, I believe Dean had been talking to Terry about going up north and Terry offered Dean his car to use.

Q: Were you with Dean when he picked up the car?

A: Yes, I was.

Q: Do you remember where Terry Melcher was living at the time?

A: He was living -- it is on Cielo Drive, I believe, off of Benedict Canyon Road.

Q: How did you get up there, if you remember? I am talking about the day you went with Dean to get the car.

A: Yes. Dean had already picked up the car and he had asked me to come along with him on the trip, when we moved out of Dennis' house, and went by Terry Melcher's house to pick up his credit card.

Q: Whose credit card?

A: Terry Melcher's credit card.

Q: Dean already had Terry Melcher's car; is that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Now he was going to get Terry Meletter's credit card?

A: That is correct.

Q: Do you remember a gate somewhere in the driveway leading up to the Terry Melcher house?

A: It seems like I recall it but I don't believe --- I can't recall it having any big thing on it right now. I do recall going through a gate, yes.

Q: Do you remember whether it was open or closed when you got up there?

A: I can't remember at that time.

Q: After you got in the front of the house, do you remember what you did?

A: We went in the house in the front room..

Q: Did you knock on the door to get in the house?

A: I can't recall.

Q: You went in the house with Dean Moorehouse?

A: With Dean, yes.

Q: Had you ever been in that house before?

A: No, not before, no.

Q: This was the very first time you had ever been in it?

A: This was the first time.

Q: Ever been at a party at that. house?

A: No, no party at that house.

Q: And you went into the front room, did you?

A: Yes, right.

Q: And Dean was also share?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: Did something happen between Dean and Terry?

A: No. I remember we sat around in the front room, Dean and Terry and I, and we smoked some Marijuana together.

Q: Was there anybody else there with Terry Melcher?

A: His maid was there and his butler, I believe he called it, or chauffeur.

Q: They didn't smoke any marijuana?

A: No.

Q: The three of you smoked marijuana. How long did you stay on that occasion?

A: I don't recall. I can't recall. I can't recall how long we stayed -- not too long, though, an hour I would say or something like that.

Q: And then I take it you left sometime shortly after that?

A: Yes, we did.

Q: Did Dean get Terry's credit card?

A: Yes, his credit card and his car.

Q: What sort of a car did he get?

A: It was a black XKE.

Q: Jaguar?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you drive up north with Dean?

A: Yes. Before going up north, though, we went by a place called the Fountain of the World. where Charlie Manson was, had a school bus parked there.

Q: Where is the Fountain of the World?

A: That is up in Box Canyon close to Spahn's Ranch.

Q: That is in the Chatsworth area?

A: Yes.

Q: Had you ever been there before?

A: No. That was the first time.

THE COURT: Mr. Bubrick, might this be a good time to recess.

MR. BUBRICK: Yes.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen we will recess at this time until 1:30.

Please once again heed the admonition heretofore given by the court.

The spectators will remain seated until the jury leaves.

(The noon recess was taken until 1:30 p.m. of the same day.)

left off Sept 1 1:30pm

LOS ANGELES CALIFORNIA, WEDNESDAY, SEPTEMBER 1, 1971

1:30 P.M.

---oOo---

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, all counsel. and the defendant are present.

Mr. Watson, would you resume the stand, please?

THE CLERK: You have been previously sworn.

CHARLES WATSON,

resumed the stand and testified as follows

THE CLERK: Would you restate your name for the record?

THE WITNESS: Charles Watson.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, before I pick up where I left off, may I approach the

witness, please?

THE COURT: You may do so.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, I have three photographs have heretofore shown them to counsel; I show the defendant the defendant's photograph -- may it be marked WA for "Watson A," if your Honor please?

THE COURT: It may be so marked.

Gentlemen, for the record, we have the alphabetical series in another case under the same number, so I think to keep them apart we'll prefix all the defense exhibits with a "W," indicating "Watson."

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, your Honor.

DIRECT EXAMINATION (Resumed) BY MR. BUBRICK

Q: I show you WA, Mr. Watson, and ask you to look at that picture, please.

Do you recall the photograph being taken at or about the time of your graduation?

A: Yes.

Q: And is that the kind of a cap and gown you wore at the time of graduation?

A: Yes, it is.

Q: And do you recognize that picture as a picture of you at the time of graduation?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: I have another photograph; may it be marked WB for identification, if your Honor please?

Q: I show you that photograph, Mr. Watson, and ask you if you recognize the likeness of yourself in that photo?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember when it was taken?

A: I believe my junior year in high school.

MR. BUBRICK: I have another photo, your Honor; may it be marked WC?

Q: And I show you that WC, Mr. Watson, and ask you to look at that photo, please. Do you recognize yourself in a football uniform?

A: Yes.

Q: And do you remember when that photo was taken?

A: Either my junior or senior year.



Q: Do you happen to remember the game that you were playing in at the time?

A: No, I don't.

THE COURT: Is that your number, 26?

THE WITNESS: Yes, 26.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Now, Mr. Watson, I think when we left off at the noon break you were with Mr. Dean Morehouse in Terry Melcher's Jaguar and you were at the Fountain of the World in Box Canyon. Do you recall that?

A: Yes.

Q: Who was at the Fountain of the World?

A: Charlie Manson and about six of his girls. I believe, and then the people that lived at the Fountain of the World.

Q: What was the Fountain of the World?

A: I am really not for sure what it is. I believe it is some church organization or something like that but don't really know that much about it at all.

Q: All right.

Where was Manson and the girls? Where were they living when you got up there?

A: Charlie had a school bus and it was parked on top of a hill right by the Fountain and they were working around the Fountain, I believe, and eating and joining in with the group there or something like that.

Q: You had met Manson prior to this date, had you not?

A: Yes; at Dennis Wilson's house.

Q: How about the girls that were there with Manson? Had you met all of them before?

A: No, I hadn't.

Q: Do you remember who the girls were in the bus at the Fountain of the World?

A: I remember two of them. One was Sandy and a girl by the name of Bo.

Q: Now, did anything occur while you were with Dean Moorehouse at the bus?

A: No. About the only thing I remember is a ride over the hill to the ranch and I remember meeting --

Q: Wait. When you got to the bus, did Dean get out and stay there?

A: Yes, he did, uh-huh.

Q: Did you leave?

A: After being there a little Charlie asked Dean to borrow the black car.

Q: You mean Charlie Manson?

A: Yes, asked Dean.

Q: Did Manson borrow the car?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you go with Manson?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Where did you go with him?

A: We went over to Spahn's Ranch.

Q: Did Manson tell you why he wanted you to go with him?

A: Well, he said that he wanted to get me away from the girls because I was talking about the wrong things, or something. I had too much ego he said and I was talking about I guess, my past or what was -- you know, I was talking too about things, I guess.

Q: Too much about the past?

A: Too much about what I had in my head, I guess, what I was talking about, you know.

Q: Did you talk to any of the girls at the bus?

A: I remember talking to one about Mexico or something, you know, something about Mexico, I believe, you know. He didn't want me talking about things outside of the family, you know, so he took me away from the girls and we went over to the ranch.

Q: How long did you stay at the ranch?

A: Not very long.

Q: Can you give us any idea of the distance between Fountain of the World and Spahn. Ranch?

A: Probably about five miles.

Q: Who drove the car?

A: Charlie did.

Q: Charlie Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember who you met, if anybody, at all at the Spahn Ranch?

A: I remember seeing some of the girls, you know, running around the ranch. I met Juan Flynn, I believe that is the name, met him, and I remember seeing my truck that I had given them.

Q: Do you remember seeing what? I'm sorry. What?

A: My '35 truck that I gave Charlie.

Q: The '35 Dodge?

A: Yes. It was parked there at the ranch and that is about all I remember happening then, you know.

Q: Did you do anything at all at the ranch that day?

A: No, just drove over there and back.

Q: How long did you stay?

A: I'd say probably around an hour, I guess; 30 minutes or an hour, not too long at all.

Q: Then you drove back up to the Fountain of the World, did you?

A: That's right.

Q: Did Manson drive?

A: Yes.

Q: Was Dean Moorehouse there when you got back?

A: Yes, he was.

Q: What happened so far as you and Dean Moorehouse are concerned, then, after you got back?

A: Then we took out up north.

Q: Where did you go?

A: To a town the other side of San Francisco.

Q: Is that where Dean Moorehouse had a trial going?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: Did you drive directly to that city?

A: Well, we was on the road to the city all the time but we stopped, I believe, a couple times along the beach, and that about all.

Q: Would you recognize the name of the city if you heard it?

A: Probably would, yeah.

Q: Were you going to Ukiah?

A: Yeah, Ukiah, that's the name of it.

Q: Up in Mendicino?

A: Mendicino, yeah, that was close by, I believe.

Q: Did you spend any nights on the road after leaving the Fountain of the World and before arriving at Ukiah?

A: I believe we drove all afternoon and drove all night.

Q: How long did you stay in Ukiah, if you remember?

A: I'd say a week or two.

Q: Incidentally, did you use any drugs on your way up to Ukiah?

A: I believe when we stopped along the beach a couple of times we met some guys one time that gave us some marijuana and we had a few marijuana cigarettes, and that's about all on the way up.

Q: Did Dean Moorehouse talk while you drove up north?

A: Yes, that was his thing, kind of; he would continuously kind of preach, you know.

Q: What did he talk about on the way up north?

A: The same thing, you know, person losing their ego and losing their thought, and this way you'd have more love, you know, to give.

Q: Had you formed any attachment or feelings for Dean Moorehouse by this time?

A: Yeah, Dean and I were pretty close.

Q: What did you think of him as, if you did?

A: He was just a close friend, I'd say.

Q: Had you formed any opinion about Mr. Manson by this time?

A: No, just like that's what Dean was always talking about, was Manson; and the way Manson had brought him to thinking like this, always talking about Manson's philosophy as well as his.

Q: Well, did Dean refer to Manson as anything in particular?

A: Not that I can recall.

Q: Was Manson ever referred to as Jesuit Christ?

A: Yes, he was referred to that when I got back and started living with the family, I knew him as that.

Q: Did Dean Moorehouse ever refer to him as Christ?

A: I'm not for sure; I know that Dean was always talking about Christ and seems like the two had so much together, you know, by him talking about Christ and by him talking about Manson at the same time, that it just kind of became that Manson was Christ.

Q: Do you remember where you stayed in Ukiah when you finally got there, Charles?

A: At a friend's, a friend of Dean Moorehouse's; and a friend of the family's, too, I believe.

Q: Now, you think you stayed up north a week or two?

A: Yes, right.

Q: And you were using Terry Melcher's credit card, were you?

A: Yes, gasoline and stuff.

Q: Did you use any drugs while you were up north with Dean?

A: I believe at the house we stayed at we smoked marijuana a couple times or so.

Q: And when Dean's matter was over up north, did you come back with him?

A: Yes, we did.

Q: Did you drive back in a car?

A: Yes, same car.

Q: And do you remember stopping in San Francisco on your way back?

A: Yes, we did stop in San Francisco.

Q: Did anything happen in San Francisco?

A: We stopped at a friend of Dean's, and the guy gave him some LSD. It was yellow, I remember, bright yellow LSD.

Q: What happened to that?

A: We took a couple of trips together and then we gave the rest to Charlie when we moved in with Charlie.

Q: Do you remember how much acid you got from this fellow up in San Francisco?

A: I don't recall.

Q: Do you remember how many of them you used?

A: A couple.

Q: And how about Dean?

A: I only saw him use a couple, you know, when we took them together.

Q: Do you remember how many trips you took on acid?

A: Altogether?

Q: Yes -- no, no; in San Francisco.

A: A couple, I believe.

Q: Do you know, Charles, what the normal dose, if there is a normal dose, for LSD is?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Calls for a conclusion, your Honor,

THE COURT: Well, suppose you confine it to him.

THE WITNESS: All I know is I have taken -- this is what I was told, anyway, that some of them were 500's and some of them were 2,000's.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: 500 what, if you know?.

A: I don't know -- little measurements, I guess. I don't know what they were.

Q: Which of the two is the largest?

A: The 2,000.

Q: Were these drugs that you got by prescription?

A: No, no prescription ever.

Q: You don't know who made them, do you?

A: At first when I was out back to the ranch --

Q: No; we are talking about the drugs you got up there in San Francisco.

A: Oh, in San Francisco.

Q: Yes.

A: Well, I wasn't talking about 500 and 2,000 then.

Q: All right. Maybe I confused you.

Do you know the size of the tablets that you took in San Francisco?

A: I know the guy gave Dean a bag of yellow powder and then some individual caps that stuck together.

THE COURT: You mean gelatin capsules?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Do you remember which of the two you took? The bulk powder or the capsules?

A: I took after it had been put in the capsules.

Q: I take it you know where that came from.

A: It came from a friend of Dean's.

Q: It had no labels on it or anything of that nature?

A: No, none at all.

Q: After you left San Francisco on these trips that you have talked about, did you come directly back to the Los Angeles area?

A: Yes, we did.

Q: And where did you go when you arrived in the Los Angeles area?

A: We saw Charlie riding around on a motorcycle and he led us up to a place where Dennis Wilson had moved, not the old place, but a new place on the beach in Malibu.

Q: Now, can you fix the time of the month for us, Charlie?

A: I believe that was around in September.

Q: 1960

A: '68.

Q: Did you go to Dennis Wilson's beach house then?

A: Yes, we did.

Q: Did you still have Terry Melcher's car?

A: Yes we did.

Q: And was Dean still driving that?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened, if anything, at the beach house?

A: I remember we drove the car up there and spent one night at Dennis' place there and then Dennis suggested that -- I think he was kind of mad at Dean or something because of something that happened in the old house, something with Dean and one of the girls in the old house, I believe, and so Dean really didn't want to stay with him and he suggested we go out and stay with Manson out at the ranch.

Q: Did you do that?

A: Yes, we did.

Q: When, if you remember?

A: Sometime still in September there, about a day or two after we got back from up

north.

Q: Did you go out to the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes, we.

Q: Did you still have the car?

A: No. We left it at Dennis' house. We were told to leave it at Dennis' house and that Terry would pick it up.

Q: Is that the last you saw of that particular car at that time?

A: Yes.

Q: How did you get over to the ranch, if you remember

A: I believe we hitch-hiked.

Q: Did you have anything with you other than what you were wearing?

A: No, that was all.

Q: Do you remember how you were dressed?

A: No, I don't.

Q: When you got to the ranch, what happened on your first day, on the day of your arrival?

A: I know Charlie was living in a tent and some of the girls and people were living up at the ranch part and Charlie moved out of the tent and told Dean and I that we could live in the tent.

Q: Where was the tent with respect to the main structures on the ranch?

A: The tent was between the farm house and the main branch part up a creek a ways.

Q: I think we have seen some pictures of the ranch that was identified as a kitchen, the part that you ate in, as a kitchen or the saloon.

A: Yes. It was about half a mile from there.

Q: Did you and Dean then live in the tent?

A: For a couple of weeks.

Q: What, if anything, were you doing on the ranch while you lived there at this time?

A: Charlie was coming around us all the time and started talking to us and he would bring his guitar up to the tent and bring some girls with him and he would sit around and play music and I knew he had marijuana. We smoked marijuana and somewhere in that



period right there we started taking acid.

Q: Well, were your acid ingestions, that is the taking of acid, something that you did alone or while as a member of the group?

A: It was always as a member of the group or when Charlie would give it to me by myself or something.

Q: Did you do anything else while you and Dean were in the tent?

A: Yes, he, Charlie, asked me to build a house for him.

Q: Did you do that?

A: I built a house for him.

Q: What sort of house did you build?

A: It was just a house, you know, just a little house called the "in case house."

Q: Like in case you have to go somewhere?

A: In case that was the only place to go.

Q: Do you remember when you built this house, Charles?

A: It was still right there, started on it I know when I was living in the tent, in that first two-week period, and I built on it until December.

Q: You worked on it that long?

A: Uh-huh, all the time I was there the first time.

Q: Now, you started to tell us about Manson coming to the tent with his guitar and the girls; is that correct?

A: That's right.

Q: And was there some singing that was done at the time?

A: Yes, a lot of singing then, at that time.

Q: Was there any preaching being done at the time?

A: Well, this is kind of how Manson would, I guess you could say, preach. This is how he would put his message over to you; and this is how, also, he could look at a person and be able to tell you what you are thinking about, you know, and then you would see that he could tell you what you were thinking about and it would kind of have a big effect on your mind when you didn't even tell him what you were thinking about, and this is what he would sing in his songs; and you'd be listening to him and you could hear your thoughts coming out in his songs.

Q: Well, when he sang, was there any response from the listeners?

A: Yes, at that time the girls would all sing with him and, like Dean and I was new and we was just kind of sitting there watching; and that's about it.

Q: Was any acid being used or any other drugs being used at this time?

A: That's when we first started taking, that I started taking acid, I guess, real heavily there at the tent and also in the back ranchhouse we lived in.

Q: Did you, aside from working on the building, was there anything else that you did at the ranch?

A: I was the mechanic, too. When George, the old man --

Q: Mr. Spahn?

A: Yes, he lived at the ranch -- he would tell Charlie what he wanted done and Charlie would come and tell me what to work on that day.

Q: How frequently would you have these singing sessions --

A: Every night.

Q: -- or music sessions?

A: Every night and sometimes in the afternoon and night; sometimes all day and sometimes in the morning, just any time everybody got together.

Q: Who decided when everybody got together?

A: Charlie.

Q: Manson?

A: Manson.

Q: And who led these singing sessions?

A: Charlie.

Q: Did anybody other than Charlie Manson do any singing or chanting?

A: No, just when the group kind of sung together, you know.

Q: And aside from singing and chanting, did he ever discuss philosophy with the group?

A: Yes, this was done every night, too.

Q: What would he tell you, if you remember? Well, during this first period I was there I know he was always talking about bringing out your inhibitions, I believe; you bring out all the stuff that -- especially on acid, he would -- we'd all be on acid or something and he would throw all your faults up in front of you, and that's the way he'd pull them out of

you. He'd pull the thoughts out of your head and that wouldn't be there any more.

Q: Is this the reaction you got to Mr. Manson?

A: Yes.

Q: How often would you use acid while you were at the ranch during this period of time?

A: Anywhere from one, two or three times a week , I'd say.

Q: And who supplied it when you used it?

A: Most of the time when it came, the girls -- like Charlie used to say that they were the power, you know, the power to get new guys and power to run the whole thing. He used to say they had all the power and they would be out hitchhiking and they'd bring home a new guy or something, and pretty soon he'd be coming back with acid and this is kind of how acid came into the ranch, is by people just bringing it, you know.

Q: Well, when you first started to live at the ranch, were there any drugs other than acid which were available?

A: All different kinds of drugs: Acid, mescaline, psilocybin, and the THC, and STP, stuff like that; all psychedelic drugs, I guess you'd say.

Q: Were the drugs that you have just enumerated drugs that Manson usually kept under his control?

A: Yes, it would always be in a Baggie and it would be under his control or the girls' control, and the girls' control and his control was the same control. so he would just ask one of the girls to go and put the acid away and then when he wanted it, he'd ask the girls to bring it to him.

Q: Could a person who wanted acid just go over and take some on their own, without permission from Mr. Manson?

A: Nobody ever knew where the Baggie was. It was under his control all the time.

THE COURT: Do you know what a stash is?

A: Yeah, that's what it was; it was a stash.

Q: Do you know what speed is, Charles?

A: Yes.

Q: What is it?

A: It is a white powder that gets you to speeding.

Q: Were you using speed at this time?

A: Not at that time, No.

Q: What feelings, if any, did you develop about Manson during the period of time that you were talking about, between September through December, or while you were working on the house?

A: It was just -- I looked on him as kind of a supreme being, I guess you'd say, like I said before, that could see all my thoughts that were in my head; and the longer I was around him, the more of these thoughts I didn't have anymore.

Q: Were you staying in touch with your family during this time?

THE COURT: That is your own family, not Manson.

MR. BUBRICK: Yes. Your own family, your mother and father?

A: Not during that time, no.

Q: Were you aware of the fact that you were changing in some respect?

A: I was aware of it, but I was losing -- losing from what I had, it was going out of me, and that's why I left in December.

Q: What did you feel you were losing when you left in December?

A: I was losing my -- myself, my individual thinking, like I was becoming Charles Manson and I was becoming the girls. I remember we could look into each other's face and it would be the same face; my face would be Manson's and the girls' faces would be Manson's, and just have one face.

Q: Was this something that Manson preached?

A: Yes.

Q: Did it go by any particular name?

A: Not that I can recall right now.

Q: Did you talk about oneness?

A: Yes. That is what it was, yes. It wasn't really a name. That is just what it was, it was all being the same person.

Q: Did you ever hear of helter skelter at any time while you were with the family?

A: Yes, later on.

Q: Later on. That is what I want to get.

Did you ever hear during this period between September and December what you later on knew was helter skelter?

A: No. It was just all kind of a love thing up until this time and it was just -- I know his philosophy was you have to get rid of all of your thoughts before you could love.

Q: Did you ever discuss with Manson this thing that you refer to as love? Was it some physical or psychological or mental thing?

A: It was all of them. It was all of them; Mental and spiritual and physical and every way, you know, just one big love.

Q: This is what Manson told you about love?

A: Yes.

Q: Could one do just what he wanted to do while living with the family during this period?

A: Well, you had to do what everybody else was doing. I mean you could always leave but there just wasn't any way of leaving, it seemed like. It seemed like it was just a magnetic pull between Manson and everybody there and anybody that would get around the people too, they would just kind of be sucked in right with it.

Q: Do you have any idea of how many people were living in the family about this time, Charlie?

A: Probably around 30 then.

Q: And how did they break down in terms of male and female?

A: Probably about six or seven males and the rest were females.

Q: Do you know Paul Watkins?

A: Yes.

Q: Brooks Poston?

A: Yes.

Q: Were they at the ranch at this time?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember who else was there among the fellows?

A: Steve Grogan and a guy by the name of T.J. and another guy that was real close to Paul but I can't remember his name. That is about all I recall.

Q: Can you give us any idea, Charles, of the number of times you might have used LSD in this period between September and December that you are referring to?

A: I have no idea really. I know it was -- like I say -- one, two, three times a week and

maybe more than that some weeks.

Q: And then you have enumerated other drugs that you used; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And would you use those drugs in conjunction, among with LSD, or independent of the LSD?

A: Oh, we would be sitting around in a circle-like when Charlie would get us together and then he would come around with the baggie and say, "This is what you need," you know, "You take this, this, and this," and then he would go to the next person and give them this, and this and that is the way he would do it.

Q: He would determine the type of drug and the quantity that you got; was that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Did Manson himself use much by way of drugs?

A: I never did see him take a lot of drugs but I always thought he was on drugs, you know, a lot of times.

Q: Was he talking about right and wrong at this time?

A: Well, that is what was coming out like if you would take your thoughts away everything would become perfect. There was no wrong. Everything was right.

Q: How about good and bad? Did he talk about that?

A: There wasn't any bad. Everything was good.

Q: How about death?

A: He would always say you had to die, you know, and at first I didn't know what he was talking about, whether he was talking about mentally or physically or how he was talking about because I never had heard of dying in this way, you know, but I came to find out he was talking about, to me anyway, he was talking about mental death.

Q: What was your major in college? What were you trying to do in college?

A: I was a business major.

Q: Take any courses in philosophy?

A: No. I had one course, that is all, a beginning course. I believe just something you had to take for a business major.

Q: Were you much concerned with philosophy in college?

A: No, I really didn't even know what it was.

Q: Did you have any idea of philosophy when you joined the family?

A: Did I have any philosophy?

Q: Yes.

A: No, I had nothing.

Q: Was the doctrine preached by Moorehouse similar to what Manson was telling you?

A: Yes, it was the same because Charlie had got Moorehouse onto acid, and onto this same thing.

Q: Was Moorehouse living at the ranch during this period between September and December?

A: He left after about two weeks when he moved out of the tent. He went on down the road.

Q: When was that, if you can tell us?

A: I really don't know. I just know it was about two weeks after we got there. It was around September of '68.

Q: Did Moorehouse tell you why he was leaving?

A: Well, I know that Charlie -- I heard something to the effect that Charlie didn't want older men around the ranch.

Q: Did you ever see Dean around the ranch after he left on this occasion?

A: I believe only one time.

Q: When was that?

A: I don't know if it was before or after. I don't know.

Q: Now, you have used the December date as a frame of reference about working on the house and in leaving.

What happened in December?

A: I had to take an Army physical the first part of December there, so I was at a telephone, I remember, at a friend's house, at a friend of the family's house, in Topanga Canyon and I called up Dave and this is when I called Dave and told him that I was kind of losing myself.

Q: Dave Neale?

A: Yes; and this is when I asked if I could come and stay with him.

Q: Did you leave?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Do you remember where Dave was living at this time?

A: He was living in the Pasadena like area.

Q: With whom?

A: With his brother.

Q: Jay?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Did you move in with them?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Incidentally, was it difficult to leave the ranch?

A: Yes, it was. Like I --

Q: No, I don't mean, you know, psychologically. I mean was it difficult to just walk off the property, physically, just move, walk away from it?

A: Well, we had been up north on -- Charlie had sent us up north to see a man called the Candy Man and going to bring back some candy. So we went up north and Charlie wasn't with us then you know, like he had told us to go up there and see about the candy and so a couple of guys and I and some of the girls went up north in a school bus. When we got back down from north this is when I called Dave.

Q: Did you call him from the area of the ranch?

A: No, I called him from the beach area around Topanga Canyon.

Q: Then you never went back to the ranch, is that correct?

A: I did on one occasion.

Q: No, I mean coming back from this northern trip that you have told us about.

A: I went to live at Dave's; then something drew me back to Manson. Then I went back to Dave's again.

Q: But when you called Dave in the latter part of November or early December, you went out and stayed with him in Pasadena, is that correct?

A: Right.

Q: How long did you stay with him then?

A: I stayed with him until he went into the Army.

Q: When was that, if you remember?



A: Somewhere the first of December.

Q: And after he was gone did you continue to live with Jay?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Same apartment in Pasadena?

A: Yes.

Q: How long did you stay?

A: On and off, I'd say about a month and a half.

Q: Did you eventually get back to the family; that is, to Manson and the ranch?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: How did this happen?

A: Well, that was about -- I called him up one day and said -- I just called up the ranch, you know, and --

Q: Do you know why?

A: Well, like I said, there was kind of a power that was just - pulling me back, a magnetic thing between my mind and their mind that just pulled me back, I don't know why.

Q: All right, you called Manson on the phone?

A: I called the ranch on the phone.

Q: Okay.

A: Manson convinced me to come back out and just see them, you know, just see them.

Q: Did you do that?

A: Yes, I went out.

Q: And when was this?

A: That was about some time in February.

Q: 1969?

A: Yes, February or March, somewhere like that.

Q: Did you go back out to the ranch then?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Did you stay then?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Where did you live on the ranch, or where did you move into when you got back to the ranch?

A: We were just staying all over the ranch, kind of, all over the ranch part there.

Q: Do you have any idea how many people were at the ranch when you got back in February or March?

A: I'd say around 30, again.

Q: And how many men, if you remember?

A: There were a few more men then.

Q: And what did you do if anything? What was your work assignment?

A: Well, at that time he had started a club, a little club or something there at the ranch, and also Charlie had got a couple of dune buggies; and so he kind of got me to working on the dune buggies.

Q: Did he still preach or philosophize with you?

A: It was the same, except he had a different kind -- his philosophy had changed.

Q: What was he talking about now?

A: Now, he was talking about the Beatles all the time and Helter-skelter and the revolution coming down, and singing about it and talking about the end of the world coming and about the bottomless pit out on the desert, and all of these songs that the Beatles had, someway, he was bringing all them out, too, to back his philosophy, I guess you'd call it.

Q: Had you ever listened to the Beatles' music prior to this time?

A: Yes, on a few occasions, yes.

Q: Were they played at the ranch?

A: Yes, in the saloon where the club was.

Q: Had they been played when you were first there between September and December?

A: Not those records, no.

Q: Was there much talk about the Beatles when you were first there between September and December?

A: No, none at all.

Q: Then, how regularly would this helter-skelter philosophy of his be talked about

A: Every night and all day long.

Q: Were drugs being used at the same time?

A: Yes, a lot of real heavy physical and mental acid, you know.

Q: I'm sorry, I didn't hear that,.

A: A lot of heavy physical acid and mental acid, too.

Q: What was mental acid?

A: Well, that's the kind that would -- well, both of it did the same, except one of it drew your body, drew stuff out of your mind; and the other at the same time would be drawing your body.

Q: Did you ever use belladonna while you were at the ranch, Charles?

A: Yes, I used it in April of '69.

Q: Do you remember how you first got it?

A: Paul Watkins got some from around the ranch there and Brenda cooked it up

Q: What form was it in when you used it?

A: A root form.

Q: Had you ever seen anybody eating it in root form?

A: No, I hadn't. I never had seen it before.

Q: Did you know what belladonna was used for?

A: No, I didn't even know it would have any effect on you, I had never even heard of it before this.

Q: What happened when you took it?

A: I took it on the ranch and I started hitchhiking down to this motorcycle shop and by the time I got down there I was crawling on the ground.

Q: Do you remember anything else that happened on that occasion?

A: Yeah, I remember having cotton mouth so bad that I couldn't speak there at first; and then I got this little scooter thing out, a little hill climber, hill climber motorcycle out of the shop, and started toward the ranch with it and I blacked out going down.

Q: Where were you when you came to?

A: I was in the back seat of somebody's car

Q: Do you remember anything else about that experience?

A: The police were shaking me and waking me up.

Q: Did they take you off to jail?

A: They carried me off, one of them had me under both sides of my arm and they were dragging me.

Q: Did anything happen to you in jail that you remember?

A: I had a fight

Q: Do you know why?

A: Three guys jumped on me and they said I was crazy, and I was insane; that's why they beat me up.

Q: Did you get any injury in that fight?

A: I cut -- they cut my eye; one of them cut up my eye pretty bad. I had to have it sewed up.

Q: Do you remember what jail you were in when this occurred?

A: I found out later it was Van Nuys.

Q: And do you remember what month this was?

A: April, I believe.

Q: Do you have any idea what the belladonna that was being brewed up by Paul Watkins and Brenda was to be used for?

A: I know after that I heard that Charlie kept talking about putting it in the water tanks of this city.

Q: Was that in connection with helter-skelter, if you know?

A: Something in that -- something to do with it.

Q: Did Manson say anything more about helter-skelter during this period of time?

A: That's all that was talked about during this whole period of time, during the whole period of time it was helter-skelter; and like the more acid we took, the more helter-skelter it would be.

Q: Well, did he say when it was going to start?

A: Any second.

Q: Is that what he would say?

A: Uh-huh.

Q: Did he tell you what the dune buggies were to be used for?

A: Yeah, after helter-skelter came down, that's how we'd get out of the city.

Q: Did you believe in helter-skelter?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Did you believe in revolution?

A: Very much so.

Q: How about the bottomless pit?

A: Yes.

Q: Was there any portion of the Manson philosophy that you disagreed with?

A: No, I agreed with it all.

Q: Did he tell you what you would have to do during helter-skelter

A: No, it was just that I remember we were the only ones that were going to be saved, because we didn't have any fear.

Q: Was fear a big thing with Manson?

A: Yes, it was.

Q: Did he talk about it a lot?

A: All the time. This is what the acid would do, and plus Manson's philosophy

Q: What did he say about fear?

A: He said that we had already experienced -- we were experiencing now all the fear that you could have, and that he would take us on wild dune buggy trips and wild car trips while we were on acid; and the acid and his philosophy and him scaring us all, with the animals and stuff, would pull out all our fear until we had no fear at all; and then he'd talk about the people down in the city, how they were afraid to die and that we had already experienced death and that we were experiencing death at the time, and pretty soon we were dead mentally.

Q: Were there any demonstrations by Manson during these sessions where death was talked about?

A: He would always make out like he had -- somebody was sitting in a chair on the other side of the room, and some person that had a lot of fear, like one of the persons down the hill or something, and he would pretend like -- like we were just sitting there with no fear and we could just see the fear in this imaginary person that was sitting there, and he would be talking to them and telling them how not to be so scared or anything and don't worry and everything would be alright, all he wanted was for you to sign all their

possessions to him and after they'd do this he'd just scare them to death.

Q: Did he use animals in demonstrating fear?

A: Yes. He would bring animals into the room and he would take an animal, like a cat, for instance, and he would start throwing it up in the air and squeezing it and pulling on it and the cat was crying at first, I remember, and then when he got through with it, the cat didn't even -- never would make a noise again and it was still walking around alive.

Q: Did he give the cat any drugs or anything of that nature, if you know

A: No, no drugs at all. He would do us the same way. He would take us into his arms, on acid trips, and he called it the movement or the flow, or something and he would take all our stiffness out of our body, until we would just float right with him.

Q: How would he do that?

A: I don't know how he would do it. He just put his arms around you and take you and caress you and start moving you in all different directions and taking all of your fear out of you and all you are and the rest that you had in you out of you, until there wasn't anything, until you and him were one body.

Q: You would move when he moved?

A: It was the same movement, the same body. There was no push or there was no pull.

Q: If you would lift your arm up, it would just drop down immediately?

A: Yes, because he would take it and he could move you in any direction you wanted to move.

Q: And you didn't resist; is that correct?

A: There was no push or no pull, no resistance, just like one, being one body.

Q: I think you told us you started to use -- you used belladonna for the first time in April of '69; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Did you use it again while you were at the ranch?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: How often would you use it?

A: Not very often. About once a month or a little over.

Q: What effect would it have on you when you use it?

A: About the same effect all the time.

Q: What was that?

A: Well, the blackout and then waking up and having hallucinations and being completely away from reality and talking to space people that would come down out of the sky and you could see their space ships.

Q: Did you ever do that? Talk to space people?

A: Yes, uh-huh.

Q: Where, do you remember?

A: Well, several times out at the ranch and one time in jail the first time.

Q: Was that what led to the fight in jail?

A: That was some of the things because I was making strange noises back at the space people.

Q: How long would a trip on belladonna last?

A: It would depend on if you got woken up. If somebody woke you up, you would start having a lot of hallucinations. I know it took about 18 hours before you could walk around on your own with it and then if you took speed with it then you could move around.

Q: Did you ever take belladonna and speed at the same time?

A: Yes. That was one of the things to take belladonna and then when you woke up to get your energy going and to -- you would have a lot of energy from the belladonna and the belladonna would give you so much energy that after you woke up, it would give you so much energy that you just wouldn't know what to do. You would be bright red, kind of red, and your whole body would be dehydrated to where you wouldn't be anything but muscles and bones.

Q: When you say the body was bright red, did you actually turn red or did you imagine that you were red?

A: Well, I looked red from my eyes. I don't know how I looked to other people.

Q: Did you ever look at yourself in the mirror under belladonna?

A: No, not that I can recall.

Q: I think you told us that when you were there, when you were at the ranch between September and December, you used LSD and no speed; is that correct

A: Used what?

Q: You didn't use any speed between September and December of 1968?

A: That is correct.

Q: When you got back in this period you are talking about, February or March of 1969, was speed available at the ranch?

A: It started being available in a little tablet, Charlie used to give it to us all the time, all the guys and some of the girls too, to be able to stay up and work on the dune buggies.

Q: Do you remember what the tablets looked like?

A: It was a round tablet with a cross in it and then we run out of those and then he had a baggie, a white powder that was methedrine.

Q: How would you use methedrine?

A: Sniff it.

Q: Who kept that supply? That is methedrine.

A: The girls would keep all of the supplies.

Q: Did you ever have any of your own?

A: I knew where the speed was but I didn't take any unless Charlie or the girls would bring it to me to take to work on the dune buggies.

Q: Is that what you were doing primarily during this period of time? Working on dune buggies?

A: Yes, working on dune buggies. Eventually I got so high and out of control on speed that I didn't work on any dune buggies any more that much.

Q: What did the girls do in this period of time?

A: The girls, I know the girls that were around me so I could work on the dune buggies more. They would go after screw drivers and parts and wash parts off to help me out so I wouldn't have to do that.

Q: Were there other chores being performed by the girls?

A: They would cook and do the things that girls did on dune buggies.

Q: What did the girls do on dune buggies?

A: They put a lot of fur on Charlie's dune buggy.

Q: How about garbage runs? Were there any things like that going on?

A: Yes. They went on garbage runs everyday.

Q: What was the purpose of that?



A: To go behind grocery stores and get the vegetables and fruits and anything that they could find to eat.

Q: Is that what you lived on at the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: What did that mean?

A: That meant to, that is another way Charlie would take the fear out of you. He would take you out at night and just walk up and down the beach and get close to people's houses and stuff, you know, to experience the fear of being around things.

Q: Did you ever go into a house and take anything while you were with Manson?

A: No. I did not.

Q: Did the girls do that, if you know?

A: I don't know.

Q: Were there credit cards around the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know where they came from?

A: I know the girls on two or three times I can remember, the girls went out and got credit cards. I remember one time or two times they were hitch-hiking and the guy would take them home with him and they would end up leaving with his credit cards.

Q: Then would you use them around the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Were all the girls around the ranch pretty much of the same order; that is, would they all do pretty much the same thing?

A: Pretty much the same thing.

Q: Was there any one girl who seemed to be a little closer to Manson than anybody else?

A: Brenda, seemed like she was always pretty close to Manson.

Q: Anybody else that you can think of that was close to Manson?

A: I don't know -- all of them was, they were all, you know, his girls. You know, that was understood, that they were his, you know.

Q: Well, was there any one girl that gave any more orders than any other girl, if any of them did?

MR. KAY: Well, that assumes a fact not in evidence, that any of them gave orders.

MR. BUBRICK: I said if any of them did, in his presence.

THE COURT: Overruled. You may answer.

THE WITNESS: What is the question, again?

MR. BUBRICK: Would you read it back, please Mr. Reporter?

(Record read.)

A: I don't say any orders were given to any girls it would have been from -- by any girls, it would have been from Brenda or Squeaky or Sadie.

MR. BUBRICK: Were they the oldest members of the family, as far as you know?

A: Yes, nearly all of the girls were -- was all members older than me, had been there a lot longer than I had.

Q: What sort of a person was Sadie?

A: Her and Charlie were always -- Charlie was -- her and Charlie was always kind of having trouble together because she would kind of tell people what to do. She was kind of an authoritative like girl.

Q: Did Charlie disapprove of that?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: And how did he demonstrate that disapproval?

A: He'd beat her up in front of everybody.

Q: Did you see him do that to any of the other girls?

A: I saw him beat on some of the other girls, yes.

Q: About the same time?

A: Well, through the periods I was there, all the time, I guess.

Q: Did you ever meet Linda Kasabian?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Do you remember when?

A: Around July '69.

Q: Do you remember when you first met her?

A: Her and Gypsy were walking up to the ranch one afternoon and I was out standing on the grounds of the ranch and they came walking up to me.

Q: Were you introduced to her?

A: Yes, her and her little girl.

Q: Did Linda have a baby with her?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you talk with her for some while?

A: No, they just kind of passed by me -- was introduced to her, and then they went on about their business, you know.

Q: Did you see her anymore that first day?

A: Yes, I was standing at the end of the boardwalk and she came walking up.

Q: Did she still have the baby with her?

A: No, she didn't.

Q: About what time of the day or night was it when you met her this way?

A: I know it was --the sun was still up.

Q: I take it you didn't have watches out there, is that right?

A: No watches or nothing like that.

Q: What happened between you and Linda?

A: I know I put my arms around her and we went into a back shack and made love.

Q: How long did that take?

A: I don't have any idea. I know that some girl came and got us because it was time to eat, time for everybody to eat and Charlie was getting everybody together, you know, to eat.

Q: Where did you eat on that occasion, if you remember?

A: I don't remember.

Q: Did you talk with Linda at all that evening?

A: Yes I did.

Q: What did you talk about, if you remember?

A: Well, she was interested in the family.

Q: What did she ask you?

A: I remember the main question she asked me was how did we live and how did we get our money, things like that; just how we got along, you know.

Q: Did you tell her?

A: Yeah, I told her that everybody who came to the ranch gave up all their money and

possessions and everything.

Q: Do you know of your own knowledge whether Linda ever brought money back to the ranch?

A: Yes, about \$5,000.

Q: Did you send her for it?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you tell her to get it?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Were you around when she brought it?

A: I saw it, but I didn't -- I saw the money there but I wasn't around when she came back with it.

Q: Do you know who she gave it to?

A: No, I do not.

Q: It wasn't to you, was it?

A: No, it was not.

Q: Do you remember what you continued to do during the month of July around the ranch?

A: I know I was taking a lot of speed then.

Q: Anything else?

A: Yes.

Q: Any other kind of drug?

A: LSD.

Q: Was Paul Watkins and Brooks Poston still there?

A: No, sir, they were not.

Q: When did they leave?

A: I believe they left in May.

Q: Do you recall, Charles, whether drugs became more or less frequent after Brooks and Paul left?

A: A lot more.

Q: About how many men were left after Brooks and Paul left?

A: About three, I guess, or four of the ones that had been there for a while.

Q: You were there and who else was there with you?

A: Steve Grogan and Bruce Davis.

Q: How did Manson and Bruce get along?

A: Bruce was always real loud, loud talking, and he was just running around kind of trying to be Charlie all the time and putting out -- all he would do is just go around preaching Charlie's philosophy all the time, you know. He was trying to be Charlie.

Q: How about Steve?

A: Everybody was, you know, preaching his philosophy except Steve didn't have the -- you know, he was real quiet. He didn't have that kind of thing.

THE COURT: Would this be a good time to have our afternoon recess?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, your Honor.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will have our afternoon recess at this time. Once more again please heed the admonition heretofore given.

(Recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

MR. BUBRICK: Mr. Watson, I think you told us before the break that in the period of time between the leaving of Paul Watkins and Brooks Poston and this July period that we are talking about, you increased your LSD; is that correct?

A: Correct.

Q: What effect was the LSD having on you, if any at all?

A: Well, the LSD, this drew up fear. The LSD made me more aware, hearing and seeing and taste and smell, just all your senses became more aware; and you became so aware that you were living in fear and getting so used to living in fear, with all the awareness of things around you you were more like an animal; and until I experienced so much fear that there wasn't any fear any more.

Q: The end result was that you became fearless; is that correct?

A: Correct.

Q: Did Manson talk about fear a great deal?

A: Yes.

Q: Was that part of his philosophy?

A: Yes, continuously, that part of it; and the acid, too, then and Manson.

Q: How about the subject of killing? Was that brought up by Manson?

A: There was no wrong. Everything was perfect. It was perfection, the flow and the oneness, and there was no mistake. Manson was a perfect being, to me more like Christ and we were totally him then.

Q: Did you ever doubt or dispute anything he told you?

A: No, none at all. Everything was perfect.

Q: Did he make any particular comments about killing?

A: Yes, everything was perfect. There wasn't nothing that was wrong. There was no thought of any wrong at all. There was no thought in our heads. All the thought was gone.

Q: Did he use the word "Pig"?

A: Not that much but he always talked about the people, the people down the hill and how much fear they had and how we had already experienced all the fear there was, and had no thought any more, and that all of those people down there were dead already because they had so much fear, and there was no way for them to escape helter-skelter when it came down.

Q: Was he talking more about helter-skelter during this period?

A: Yes. The helter-skelter, of confusion of all the people would be in when it did come down, the fear that they would have. They would just be running into each other in cars, trying to get away from all the fears that they hadn't experienced yet and we didn't have any fear. That is why we were going to get away.

Q: I take it you remember the day of August 9, 1969?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: August the 8th, August the 8th running into the 9th. Do you remember August the 8th?

A: Yes, the morning. I remember all that night before on the 8th. I was up all night on speed and I ended up at the waterfall. Where Charlie and the girls and I believe some babies were over there, a couple of babies that at the ranch, and the younger people were at the waterfall and there was belladonna hanging around that they had pulled up all around the waterfall and I took some belladonna that morning .

Q: The root form?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember how big a piece you took?

A: About the size I always took, about an inch or three-quarters of an inch long and about that big around or so --

THE COURT: An inch in diameter?

A: About an inch; three quarters of an inch or an inch, something like that, not a large piece.

MR. BUBRICK: That was in the area of the waterfall?

A: Yes, that was at the camp at the waterfall.

Q: What did you do after, after taking the belladonna?

A: Walked over to the ranch.

Q: How far a walk was that?

A: I'd say less than a mile.

Q: What happened at the ranch?

A: I got over it and I remember seeing Sadie and Linda Kasabian, they had just got back from somewhere, I recall that.

Q: Do you remember whether it was early in the morning or mid-morning or what?

A: It was real early in the morning, about the same time the sun was coming up, about sunrise, yeah.

Q: How were they dressed when you saw them?

A: They were in black, all black.

Q: Did you say anything to them?

A: Not that I can recall. I just -- no, I heard something about conversations they had got some credit cards or something, that's about all I heard.

Q: What did you do that day, if you can remember?

A: I went in the shack down below the ranch and I was out all day on belladonna.

Q: Do you remember what time you woke up?

A: At eating time, when it was time to eat, one of the girls came and woke me up and told me it was time for the family, like Charlie was pulling everybody together for the night meal or something.

Q: Who decided when it was time to eat dinner?

A: Charlie did.

Q: Did anybody eat before he did?

A: No, I remember one time somebody ate before he did and he got real mad, you know, or nobody ever went to sleep before he did or nobody ever got out of bed before he did. You know, it was everybody was doing everything at the same time, one person, that was Charlie.

Q: When you were awakened in time for dinner, did you go to dinner?

A: Yes I did. I had a lot of energy but I didn't have a lot of pep or something, so I took some speed to get me moving, you know.

Q: Do you remember eating?

A: I didn't eat that night.

Q: Did you see Manson again that night?

A: I was sitting on the fireplace in the house where we ate and I don't remember who was in the house, but I know he called me outside and told me to go up to the ranch front, so that's what I did.

Q: When you got to the ranch front, who else was there, if anybody?

A: I remember a girl walked out, one of the girls, and everybody was taking acid that night, and that's what I was told, anyway, so I took some acid.

Q: Who gave it to you, if you remember?

A: I can't recall. I believe it was Squeaky, though I'm not for sure.

Q: Did anything else occur that evening that you remember?

A: Yes, Charlie called me over behind the car, down at the far end of the ranch, and handed me a gun and a knife and he said for me to take the gun and the knife and to go up where Terry Melcher used to live and to kill everybody in the house, as gruesome as I could, or something to that effect; or, "Make sure everybody is dead, as gruesome as you can," or something to that effect.

Q: Did he tell you who was in the house?

A: I think he said something about movie stars but I'm not for sure. I believe he did, though, I recall something about movie stars. I recall something.

Q: Did he say something about Terry Melcher living there?

A: No, he didn't. He said where Terry Melcher used to live, I believe.



Q: Who else was present at this conversation?

A: No one, just Manson and I.

Q: And what happened after that conversation?

A: Well, he continued to tell me the things he wanted done.

Q: Like what?

A: He said, "The bolt cutters are in the back of the car for you to cut the highline wires; then to go in and make sure everybody is dead as gruesome as you can"; and he said afterwards to wash off and to throw away the guns and the knives and the clothes; and then to come back to the ranch. Then he said something about writing on the walls, and we were walking over to the car that the girls were in and I said -- the first words that I had spoken -- and I said, "Now, what did you say?" or something to that effect. I wasn't real clear on what was to be wrote on the walls or clear about the whole thing, really; and he said, "Don't worry about anything, just make sure that everybody is dead and that it is done as gruesome as you can do it."

Q: What did you do then?

A: I got in the car.

Q: Where?

A: In the back seat of the car.

Q: Who was in the car?

A: Linda Kasabian.

Q: Where was she, if you remember?

A: She was at the driver's under the wheel.

Q: Who else was in it?

A: Sadie and Katie.

Q: You were in the back. Who else was in the back with you, if you remember?

A: It was either Katie or Sadie. I can't recall to be that perfectly clear on who it was.

Q: Did you see the bolt cutters in the car?

A: They were laying on the back floorboard of the car.

Q: Did this car have a back seat?

A: No. There was all kinds of stuff on the floorboard and there wasn't anything in the back seat but a bunch of bottles and stuff like that.

Q: Do you remember what the bolt cutters looked like?

A: They were big and they were bright red.

Q: How big?

A: About that long (indicating) or so.

Q: Two feet? Your Honor, I have here what appear to be a pair of red bolt cutters. May they be marked W-4 for identification?

THE COURT: W-D.

MR. BUBRICK: W-D. I am sorry.

Q: Will you look at the bolt cutters in front of you and tell me if you recognize those?

A: Yes. They are the bolt cutters.

Q: Were they the bolt cutters in the car that night?

A: That is the kind.

THE COURT: It looks like it anyway?

A: Yes, right.

MR. BUBRICK: Incidentally this car that you were in was a yellow car, do you remember?

A: Yes. It was a yellow car.

Q: Who did it belong to, if you remember?

A: I believe his name was John.

Q: It was the car that you saw around the ranch?

A: It was, yes.

Q: All right. Did you drive off from the ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: And was Linda driving?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: And you were in the back seat; is that correct?

A: Right.

Q: Was there anything else in the car that you were aware of?

A: The only other thing that I was aware of is the gun and the knife that Charlie had given to me.

Q: How about any items of clothing?

A: No.

Q: And where was the car driven, if you remember?

A: It was driven up to the top of the hill and that is where Terry Melcher lived.

Q: It was on Cielo Drive?

A: I didn't see the street or anything. That is where we were, though.

Q: Did you say anything while the car was being driven?

A: No. I was laying down in the back seat. My head was in the girl's lap when I was laying down.

Q: Could you hear any directions being given to Linda?

A: No. I couldn't hear anything.

Q: Do you recall the car coming to a stop, the car stopping somewhere on the hill?

A: Yes, it stopped.

Q: Where? Do you remember?

A: It was by a telephone pole.

Q: What happened at the pole?

A: I know the girl that I was in the lap with shook me and said I'm to cut the wires, so I knew, you know, Manson had told me that to cut the wires, so I just went straight up the pole, you know.

Q: How did you get up the pole? Do you remember?

A: I can remember being on the pole, on the things that you climb on, your know. I was on those.

Q: The pegs or the bars in the pole?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember how far off the ground the first one was?

A: No, I don't.

Q: Do you know how you got up there?

A: I can't recall exactly how I did get up there.

Q: When you got up on the pole were you carrying the bolt cutters?

A: No, I was not.

Q: How did you get them?

A: Linda handed those to me.

Q: Where was she in the car?

A: She was -- the car I remember was parked right by the pole and she was in the driver's thing, right outside the door, handed them up to me.

Q: Did she get out of the car to do that?

A: Yes.

Q: And then you went up the pole, did you?

A: Yes.

Q: And you cut the wires?

A: I cut the first wire, all the wires that I could see.

Q: Do you remember how many there were?

A: No, I do not.

Q: Did you come down the pole?

A: I know I had to come down the pole but I actually don't recall coming down the pole.

Q: Do you remember whether you cut any other wires on the ground?

A: No. I did not cut any other wires.

Q: Did you have any other cutting device other than the bolt cutter?

A: Just my knife, that is all, the knife that Charlie had gave me.

Q: Did you have any pliers in your pocket or wire snips or anything of that nature?

A: No, nothing else like that.

Q: And you used those, that bolt cutter, to cut those pole wires; is that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: You came back down the pole. Do you remember getting in the car?

A: No. The next thing that I can recall is walking back up a hill.

Q: Do you remember where the car was parked when you started to walk back up the hill?

A: We walked up the hill. It was at the bottom of a hill.

Q: Is that where the telephone pole was where the wires were cut?

A: No. The car was a long ways from the -- a pretty good little walk back up the hill.

Q: How did the car get from the pole where the wires were cut to where it was parked at the bottom of the hill?

A: It was drove to the bottom of the hill.

Q: By whom?

A: I don't know for sure who drove it.

Q: Did you do it?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Then how many were walking back up the hill when you got out of the car?

A: There was four of us.

Q: Do you remember what you were carrying?

A: I was carrying a gun and a knife.

Q: Did you pass any buildings, any houses on the way up the hill?

A: Yeah, I believe there were houses on one side and on the other was hills and rocks and things like that.

Q: How were you dressed?

A: I had on Jeans and a black shirt, I believe.

Q: How about the girls?

A: They all looked kind of like I did.

Q: In what respect?

A: The same kind of clothes kind of thing.

Q: Do you remember how you were carrying the knife?

A: I had the knife in one hand and I had that gun in the other hand.

Q: And were you carrying them exposed that way as you walked up the hill?

A: I was carrying them just the way they were given to me.

Q: What sort of knife did you have, Charles, if you remember?

A: I know it didn't have a handle on it; it was just a piece of metal.

Q: Do you mean there was no wood on the part that you grasp?

A: Right, yeah; there wasn't any, it was just a piece of metal.

Q: Did it have anything wrapped around it?

A: No, not that I know of. I didn't look that close.

Q: Now, as you passed these houses and approached this house on Cielo Drive, Terry Melcher's old house, were you aware of a gate?

A: No, we just walked right up to the fence and started over the fence; there wasn't really -- more of a gate, I don't know.

Q: Had you ever been to this house before?

A: Yes, I had.

Q: On how many occasions?

A: I'd say three.

Q: Do you remember how you got into the house -- or, strike that. Do you remember how you got up the driveway on the other three occasions?

A: Yes, there's a button outside the gate.

Q: What do you do to the button?

A: You push the button and the gate swings open.

Q: Did you do that on this night of August the 8th?

A: No, we did not.

Q: Did anybody push the button, as far as you know?

A: Not as far as I know.

Q: Why didn't you do it, if you knew it was there?

A: There was no thought about a button, it was just the fence was there and we just went over the fence; there just wasn't any thought about a button or anything like that.

Q: How high was the fence?

A: It was hard to get over; I don't know how high it was.

Q: You eventually got across the fence?

A: Right.

Q: And did the girls do it, also?

A: Yes.

Q: Then you got back to the driveway and continued walking on up; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Did anything happen as you were walking up the driveway?

A: Yes, a car's lights flashed on us and the car came up and --

Q: Just before that, do you remember, Charles, whether you -- what order you were in, in the sequence of four going up the hill; was there anybody in front of you?

A: There was two girls in front. We were kind of like we were riding in the car, the same way we was riding in the car we was riding up, going up that hill.

Q: Two girls in front of you?

A: Yes.

Q: And you are in back with another girl; is that correct?

A: Correct.

Q: The four of you walked up this hill together?

A: That's correct.

Q: What happened then, when you saw the approaching lights?

A: We were all four across the fence and the car pulled up and stopped and --

Q: Was anything said by anybody?

A: No, nothing was said by anybody. I stuck the gun in the car and shot.

Q: Shot what?

A: The guy.

Q: How many times?

A: I don't recall the exact number of times.

Q: Did you know who was in the car?

A: No, I just knew that Charlie, you know, like I could see and hear him, hear his voice like, and to kill everybody in the place; and I remember one of the girls did say something about, "We got to get everybody," or something to that effect.

Q: Was this before or after you saw the headlights of the car?

A: This was before we saw -- I saw the headlights of the car.

Q: Were you able to see who the driver of the car was?

A: No, I didn't see anything.

Q: Did he take any form or shape in your eyes?

A: No, huh-uh, just kind of like a mass thing there, you know. There really wasn't any -- felt like I was in a dream or something, you know, about half and half, you know; I felt half awake and half not awake.

Q: All right. After you shot the driver of the car, what did you next do?

A: Started walking up to the house.

Q: Were the girls still with you?

A: I didn't see the girls again until we were in the house.

Q: Was there anybody in front of you as you continued on up the driveway toward the main house?

A: No, there was nobody in front of me.

Q: What happened as you approached the front of the house?

A: I walked in the front door.

Q: Was there anybody there?

A: There was a guy laying on a couch asleep.

Q: But that's after you got in the house; is that correct?

A: That's after I got in the house.

Q: As you approached the door, was the door closed?

A: I believe it was, uh-huh; and I walked right in the door.

Q: You just opened the door --

A: Just opened it up.

Q: --just turned the knob and go right in?

A: Right.

Q: Was any of the group -- that is, any of the three girls with you at this time?

A: No, I didn't see any girls at that time.

Q: All right. What happened when you got in the house?

A: Then I saw Sadie.

Q: Where?

A: She just popped up.

Q: Do you know where she came from?

A: No.

Q: Did you see her before or after you saw the man on the couch?

A: I saw her -- did you say before or after I saw the man on the couch?

Q: Yes.

A: I believe I saw her before.

Q: What was she doing, if you know?

A: She went by me and went in the other part of the house. I was in the front room and she started bringing out people out of the rooms.

Q: How many people were in the front room that you went in?

A: There was one man laying on the couch asleep.

Q: And was he awakened while you were in that room?



A: He awakened when everybody was coming into the room.

Q: Who was coming into the room?

A: A bunch of people walking into the room.

Q: How many? do you remember?

A: Three or four people were walking into the room.

Q: Was Sadie one of them?

A: Sadie, yes, Sadie was one of them.

Q: Do you remember who else among the girls was in that group, if they were?

A: I didn't see any other girls yet.

Q: You didn't see Linda?

A: No, I didn't see Linda.

Q: Nor did you see Patricia; is that right?

A: She walked in the house as everybody was walking into the room.

Q: What happened when the group was in the room then?

A: A guy started toward me and --

Q: Was this the man that had been on the couch?

A: No, it was another person.

Q: What happened then?

A: And I was -- I remember I was kind of running or jumping back and forth behind the couch and making funny noises and Sadie said, "Watch out" or something like that and I turned around and I emptied the gun on this man.

Q: You say emptied the gun on this man?

A: Yes.

Q: How many times did you shoot him, if you know?

A: I don't know. I just shot, you know. I don't know how many times I shot him.

Q: Did you do anything else?

A: Then I went around the couch and started stabbing him.

Q: This is the same man that you shot?

A: Yes. Patricia was already over there stabbing him and I went over and I did the same thing.

Q: How long did that take or last?

A: Until Sadie hollered at me and she was fighting and stabbing a man going out the door.

Q: What did you do about that, if anything?

A: I remember Sadie hollering, "Tex, Tex," a bunch of times and I ran over and started hitting him with the gun.

Q: After you hit him, did you do anything else?

A: I hit him for a while and then there was a little lapse of time, I believe, and then Sadie was still stabbing him on the ground and I walked over and stabbed him some more.

Q: While he was on the ground?

A: Uh-huh.

Q: He is now outside of the house; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: On the lawn?

A: On the lawn.

Q: Did anything else happen?

A: Then Katie came running over and grabbed me by the arm and said something like, "There's one over here," or something. I don't know what she said but she said, "come over here," and we ran over and there was just a woman lying there that had blood all over her and stabbed her.

Q: Did these people, or these people that you stabbed, or the objects that you stabbed, have any form?

A: They had form but I really didn't see any faces, you know, or expressions or -- they were just blobs of, you know --

Q: Did you have a rope with you that evening?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you carry a rope up the hill or into the house?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you tie any people up in that house?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you throw a rope over a rafter or anything of that nature?

A: No, I did not.

Q: I think you told us now you shot and stabbed somebody in the house; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: And then you stabbed some people outside of the house; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Do you remember where the couch was in the house?

A: The couch was kind of in the middle of the room longways, up and down, up and down the room.

Q: Where were the two people that you stabbed in the house in relation to the couch?

A: Well, I only stabbed one person.

Q: I am sorry --the one person in the house.

A: In front of the couch, laying longways, laying --

Q: Parallel or perpendicular to the couch?

A: It was the opposite way of the couch.

Q: That would be perpendicular to the couch?

A: Perpendicular to the couch.

Q: How about the other person, do you remember if that was a man or a woman?

A: Had on blue jeans and stuff. I guess it was a man.

Q: How about the other person?

A: The other person was laying at the end of the couch up toward the room where they came out of perpendicular to the end of the couch, on down from the end of the couch.

Q: Did you touch either of those bodies after you had shot and stabbed them?

A: No.

Q: Did you move them?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you tie anything to them or tie them together?

A: No, I did not.

Q: After you left that room and went outside, did you go back into the house again?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you write anything on the walls of the house?

A: No.

Q: Did you slit the screen in that house?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you see Linda about that house at all while you were there?

A: No, I did not.

Q: You did see Sadie and Patricia; is that right?

A: Sadie and Patricia, yes.

Q: Was there any screaming among any of these victims?

A: It was wild and it was loud and all kind of noises.

Q: Did anybody beg for their life?

A: I couldn't really make out anything like that – screams and noises, loud noises.

Q: Did you hear any dogs barking?

A: No, I didn't hear any dogs barking.

Q: Did you hear the sound of music from a hi-fi set or anything like that?

A: No, I didn't hear any music or anything like that.

Q: How long would you say you were in this house on Cielo Drive?

A: I don't have any idea of time or anything, how long I was in there.

Q: After you left the house where did you go?

A: I was outside in the -- between the, like on the driveway outside of the house there.

Q: I take it these people were not people you had ever seen before, were they?

A: No. I never had seen anybody. I couldn't make them out, not that much.

Q: Can you tell us what it is that made you go there?

A: I was doing what Charlie had told me to do.

Q: I take it you had no grievance with those people?

A: No, none at all.

Q: How did you leave the premises, Charles?

A: We walked down the hill.

Q: How many of you walked down?

A: Three.

Q: Was Linda among that group?

A: No, she was not.

Q: Did you punch the button and get through the gate on the Way out?

A: We walked out the gate, but I didn't punch any button.

Q: Do you know who did?

A: No, I do not.

Q: You walked on down the hill?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you have the gun and the knife with you?

A: Yes, it was still with me.

Q: And where was the car, if you remember?

A: Parked at the bottom of the hill.

Q: Where you had left it?

A: Yes.

Q: All right; did you get back in the car?

A: Yes. No, Linda was sitting in some leaves or something beside the car, and she got in the passenger's seat and the girls got in the back seat and I got under the wheel and then Sadie or Katie, one, said for Linda to drive and for me to change clothes. So I scooted over and Linda drove off and I was changing clothes.

Q: Did the car come to a stop again?

A: Yes, it did.

Q: Where?

A: On some street.

Q: What did you do in between the time that you left Cielo Drive and the car stopped?

A: I changed clothes.

Q: Removed what, your shirt and trousers?

A: Yes, removed everything I had on.

Q: And you obviously put some other clothing on; is that right?

A: Yes. The girls in the back seat handed me some clothes to change into.

Q: And how about the girls, did they change their clothes?

A: As far as I know; I can't remember what they did, really, at that time.

Q: Where were you in the car when you changed clothes?

A: I was in the front seat.

Q: Alongside of Linda; is that correct?

A: Correct.

Q: And do you have any recollection of how long you might have been driving before you next stopped?

A: No. It didn't seem like too long, though, too long a time.

Q: Then you came to a stop in the car, did you?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you all get out?

A: Yes, we did.

Q: Where did you go?

A: We were walking up the street and a water hose was coming out the driveway.

Q: Incidentally, when you drove on this street where you saw the water hose, did you park the car on that same side of the street?

A: The car was parked going back down the street.

Q: So the front was pointed down toward Beverly Glen; is that right?

A: It was pointed back towards the main street.

Q: I mean Benedict Canyon, not Beverly Glen, I'm sorry. Is that correct?

A: It was pointed down towards the main street.

Q: Then you walked toward the water house, did you?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: The four of you?

A: Yes.

Q: Did somebody come out while you were there?

A: Yes.

Q: What happened when that person appeared?

A: He appeared and walked right up in front of me, right up to my face and said, "What you doing?" or something like that; and I said, "Getting a drink."

Q: What were you doing?

A: Getting a drink.

Q: Did you have the water hose and the water running?

A: I don't recall that.

Q: What happened after he talked with you?

A: I know there was a lot of confusion came down then; somebody ran out the house

and we started walking towards the car.

Q: Did this man say or do anything?

A: I can't recall him saying anymore than what he said.

Q: Did he say, "What are you doing?" and you said you were getting a drink of water?

A: That's correct.

Q: And there was this confusion that you spoke of?

A: Yeah, and we started walking toward the car.

Q: How far away was the car?

A: Not too far at all; it was just right -- not too far.

Q: Did this man ever threaten you?

A: No.

Q: Did you threaten him?

A: No.

Q: You still had the knife and the gun, didn't you?

A: Not on me.

Q: Well, was it in the car?

A: Yes, it was in the car.

Q: What happened when you got back to the car?

A: I jumped under the wheel this time and the girls got in and we drove away.

Q: Where did you go?

A: I started driving and then one of the girls in the back seat said we had to stop and throw out the clothes and knives, so that's what we did; stopped and threw away everything that was in the car.

Q: Incidentally, Charles, I hate to take you back, but do you remember how many people you shot in the house?

A: One person.

Q: Oh, you shot one in the car, is that correct, outside of the house?

A: That's correct.

Q: And one in the house?

A: That's what I did.

Q: Do you have any recollection of shooting any other person in the house?

A: No, I have not, no.

Q: Did you know that the gun still had live bullets in it?

A: No, I did not.

Q: You thought you had discharged them all?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: All right. Now, back to leaving the house at the scene: Where did you drive after you left the house where you got the water?

A: Where did we what, now?

Q: Where did you drive after you left the house where you got the water?

A: Up the hill.

Q: To where, if you remember?

A: We went up and over and stopped at a filling station.

Q: Didn't anything happen there that you remember?

A: No, I know I got out and went to the bathroom.

Q: And then after that, where did you go?

A: I came out of the bathroom and got into the back seat of the car and laid down and ended up at the ranch.

Q: Do you remember what time of day or night it was?

A: Just that it was dark and late.

Q: What did you do when you got to the ranch?

A: We all went into the room at the end of the ranch house.

Q: Was anybody up at that hour?

A: Charlie was running around without any clothes on, I remember that.

Q: Anybody else with him?

A: And Brenda was there, and that's all I can recall.

Q: Did you tell Charlie what happened, or was anything said about that night?

A: I didn't say anything that night, but I know Charlie was kind of talking to some of the people in the ranch house there.

Q: What did you do after seeing Charlie back in the ranch house?

A: I went to sleep.

Q: Did you talk at all with Charlie that night?



A: No, I did not talk to Charlie that night.

Q: Did you see him the following day?

A: I didn't see him until later that night.

Q: Do you have any recollection of being up at all that following day?

A: Not the following day, no.

Q: Did you sleep most of the day?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What happened the following day when you saw Charlie?

A: The first thing I remember is him giving me a knife and some acid.

Q: What time of the day or night was this?

A: I know it was just dark, a little after dark.

Q: Had you eaten supper yet?

A: I can't recall about supper that night.

Q: You got the knife and acid and then what?

A: He told me to get in the car.

Q: It was the same --

A: The same car.

Q: The same Ford automobile?

A: Yes.

Q: Was anybody else in the car?

A: Linda and in the back seat, was full, it had Sadie, Katie, and Leslie and Steve Grogan.

Q: There were seven of you; is that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Who was driving?

A: Charlie was driving.

Q: Did he say where you were going or what you were going to do?

A: I can't recall right now what he said.

Q: Incidentally, before you went out this evening of the 9th, had there been any discussion between you and Charlie about weapons? Anything said about weapons?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever tell Charlie that you ought to have better weapons than you had the night before?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you ever use the expression "I am the devil here to do the devil's work"?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you ever say that at the Tate house?

A: No.

Q: Did you say that the following night, if you remember?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever tell Charlie in the bunk house that that is what you said?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Had there ever been any discussion about the devil as part of the Manson philosophy?

A: The devil was the people, society, in that they were -- had so much thought that they were tearing up the world.

Q: That is who Manson considered the devil?

A: Yes; and also we, before we lost our thought, we were the devil.

Q: But you were no longer the devil now?

A: No, sir. We were considered as Christ, perfect.

Q: Is that what Charlie told you?

A: Everything was perfect, no mistake.

THE COURT: I think this would be a good time to recess. Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will recess at this time until 9:30 tomorrow morning.

Once more do not form or express any opinion in this case.

Do not discuss it among yourselves or with anybody else. Please keep an open mind.

9:30 tomorrow morning.

(An adjournment was taken until Thursday, September 2, 1971 at 9:30 a.m.)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, THURSDAY, SEPTEMBER 2, 1971

9:40 A.M.

--o0o--

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors are present, counsel and defendant are present.

You may proceed, Mr. Bubrick.

THE CLERK: Now, you have been previously sworn.

Will you restate your name for the record?

THE WITNESS: Charles Watson.

CHARLES WATSON,

resumed the stand and testified further as follows

DIRECT EXAMINATION (Resumed) BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Charles, before we pick up where we left of yesterday, I'd like to ask you one or two questions leading up to the incidents you have described heretofore.

Do you recall when you left the Spahn Ranch on the night of the 9th of August in the car with the other three occupants, you told us about a conversation you had with Mr. Manson before you got in the car and left.

Do you recall that?

A: Yes; before I got in the car he said that the girls know what to do, know all the witchy things to do.

Q: Now, after your conversation with Mr. Manson and before the car left, was there any conversation between Manson and the girls?

A: He said he had already told the girls what to do and they knew what to do.

Q: Did you hear any discussion between Manson and the girls about Witchy things?

A: The only conversation I remember was what he said to me when I told him I couldn't remember all the stuff. He said that the girls knew everything to do, the witchy things and everything.

Q: Now, when you left in the car at that time, Charles, are you aware of any rope in the car?

A: No, I didn't see any rope or anything in the car.

Q: Did you see anybody carrying any rope at any time during that experience on the night of the 9th?

A: No. I didn't see a rope.

Q: I think you told us yesterday also -- and I want to make sure that this has been

covered. -- about stopping at the house that has been identified as Mr. Weber's house, where you used the hose. Do you recall that incident?

A: Yes.

Q: And I think you told us that when you left that spot, you drove the car; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: In between the time that you left the Webers house and you next stopped the car, was there anything done with any clothing, if you remember?

A: One of the girls in the back seat said we had to throw away the clothes and I pulled over, and then I believe it was Linda, she threw everything out of the car, threw everything out of the car.

Q: Incidentally, had Linda taken along a change of clothing, if you know?

A: I didn't never see any clothes until they handed me the ones I changed into.

Q: In the Tate house, were you aware of anything being written on the walls while you were there?

A: No, I wasn't.

Q: Did you see anybody write anything on the walls?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you see anybody write anything on the way out of the house?

A: No, I did not.

Q: I think you have told us yesterday about getting back to the ranch and then I think you told us you slept most of the day, the following day; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Did something happen the evening of the 9th?

A: Yes, uh-huh.

Q: What happened on that night?

A: Charlie came walking up to me and gave me some acid and a knife.

Q: Can you fix the time of the day or evening that this occurred?

A: I just know it was dark, that is all.

Q: Had you eaten dinner that night?

A: I can't recall about dinner that night. I'm not for sure about that.

Q: Charlie gave you some acid and a knife and then what?

A: Told me to get in the car.

Q: Who was in the car at that time?

A: In the front seat, in the middle Linda, and in the back was Steve Grogan and Sadie and Leslie and Katie,

Q: Did you notice anything in the car other than the knife which you had?

A: I believe Charlie had a gun.

Q: Did you see that?

A: I saw it sometime during the night, but I am not for sure when.

Q: How about the other girls and Steve, did they have any weapons of any sort that you are aware of?

A: I was only aware of my knife, that is all.

Q: And when you left the Spahn Ranch on the evening of the 9th, who drove?

A: Charlie was driving.

Q: I think you told us yesterday there were seven people in the car; is that correct?

A: Yes. It would be seven people.

Q: And was this the same car that had been used the night before?

A: Yes.

Q: And it is still the car without the back seat; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember where Charlie drove?

A: I believe the first place we stopped at a filling station or something like that.

Q: To get some gasoline or something?

A: I don't know for sure.

Q: All right.

Where did you go after that?

A: He started driving. I don't know if Charlie was still driving or not, but I know we drove for a long time.

Q: Was this an area that was familiar to you?

A: No, I wasn't familiar with any of the area. I just wasn't watching, really, the driving part of it.

Q: Did the car eventually come to a stop?

A: Yes.

Q: And did anything occur when the car stopped?

A: The car stopped two or three times before we stopped the last time --

Q: All right.

A: -- when I got out.

Q: Tell us what happened when the car stopped the last time, as you put it.

A: Well, Charlie got out of the car and then he came back to the car and told me and two of the girls -- it was Leslie and Katie -- to get out; and they got out and he was talking to them on the side, the driver's side, and I walked around behind the car and I can't remember hardly at all the exact words he said to me, but something to the effect to go in and do like last night, or to make sure everybody is dead gruesomely, or something to that effect. I can't remember the exact words; it's kind of fuzzy there -- and I had a knife.

Q: Did you see anything in the hands of the girls at this time?

A: I didn't notice.

Q: Incidentally, how long was Manson out of the car when he went into this house and, let's refer to it as the La Bianca house?

A: I have no idea.

Q: Did you all, the six of you, remain seated in the car while Manson went out?

A: Yes -- no, he was the only one that got out.

Q: The six of you, then, remained behind; is that correct?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: Did anybody get out of the car while he was out of the car?

A: No, I don't believe so.

Q: Could you tell where he was going?

A: I didn't watch where he was going.

Q: Now, had you ever been to the home of a man by the name of Harold True?

A: No, I have not.

Q: Never been in that house?

A: No.

Q: So I take it this area was not, then, familiar to you at all.

A: No, I didn't know where I was.

Q: Did you know who lived in the La Bianca house?

A: No, I never had been in the neighborhood,

Q: Were there any lights on about the house, if you remember?

A: I didn't notice.

Q: Did you see Mr. Manson enter the house, if he did?

A: No, I wasn't watching or anything.

Q: When you and Katie and Leslie left, what did you do?

A: When we left --

Q: The car.

A: the car? We walked up to the house.

Q: Incidentally, before you left the car did Manson say anything to you about getting back to the ranch?

A: No, he didn't say anything to me about it.

Q: All right. Then you, Katie and Leslie started up into the house; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Do you remember how you got up to the house; was there a driveway or steps or what?

A: We just walked straight to the house; I don't recall a driveway.

Q: Do you remember how you got in?

A: Walked in the front door.

Q: Was it open or closed?

A: I can't recall that.

Q: And once you got in, what happened?

A: Katie went one way and Leslie went the other way, and I went kind of the way that Katie went; and started stabbing on -- Katie and I -- on the body on the couch.

Q: Can you describe the body on the couch; could you see its face?

A: No, it had a cover over it, over the face.

Q: What sort of a cover?

A: I don't know; it was the head was just wrapped up with something, you know.

Q: With material of some sort?

A: Yes.

Q: Could you see anything underneath that material?

A: No, I couldn't.

Q: Could you see anything around the neck of that person?

A: No.

Q: Could you tell whether it was a man or a woman?

A: No, you really couldn't.

Q: Then you and Katie stabbed on this person?

A: Yes, that correct.

Q: Then what happened after that?

A: Leslie hollered -- she was screaming, you know, and I ran into the room where she was screaming and she was stabbing another person.

Q: What was the position of this person when you first saw her?

A: She was kind of standing in a fell to the floor.

Q: Was this second person a female?

A: I believe so.

Q: Could you see her features or her face?

A: No, you couldn't.

Q: Was her face also covered?

A: Yes.

Q: By some material?

A: Yes.

Q: Was this person's hands bound in any way?

A: No, I don't believe so.

Q: Did you see anything in her hand?

A: There was a lamp all around her. I remember seeing holding a lamp or something. The lamp was flying over.

Q: She was holding a lamp?

A: Yes, uh-huh.

Q: In what manner?



A: She had it in her arms or something like that (indicating).

Q: And what if anything was Katie doing at that time?

A: Katie came running in, into the room, and called me back into the other room and I went in there and we continued to stab on the person in there.

Q: Was it the female or the person on the couch?

A: The person on the couch.

Q: Had you stabbed the person, the female?

A: Yes.

Q: And had the other two also so far as you know?

A: What?

Q: Stabbed on that person.

A: Now repeat that again, please.

Q: Did Katie and Leslie stab the other person also, if you know?

A: Yes. When I went into the bedroom that is what Leslie was doing.

Q: How long would you say you were in this house, if you know?

A: There wasn't much time. You know time didn't really make any sense to me, just flashing by, your know.

Q: Do you know at this time whether anything was being written on the walls?

A: It seems like I can recall seeing Leslie writing something on the walls but I don't know what.

Q: Did you write anything on the walls?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you write anything on the refrigerator?

A: No, I didn't write anything.

Q: Did you know the people in this house?

A: No.

Q: So far as you know had you ever seen them before?

A: No.

Q: What did you do after you left the house?

A: Started walking.

Q: I take it it was still dark, was it?

A: Yes, it was dark..

Q: Was there anything done about a change of clothes on this occasion?

A: Yes.

Q: What was done about that?

A: Before leaving the house Katie and Leslie were changing clothes, and I didn't have any to change into, so they got me some, somewhere, I don't know where they came from.

Q: What did you change into?

A: I remember there was some tennis shoes and a pair of pants and a shirt.

Q: What did you do with the clothing you took off?

A: The girls were carrying it when we were walking down the road and I remember laying, under a tree and then I never did see the clothes again.

Q: You say you laid down under a tree. What did the girls do, if you know?

A: I guess they were laying down too.

Q: It was still dark outside, was it?

A: Yes. It was dark.

Q: What is your next recollection after lying down under the tree?

A: It became daylight.

Q: You were still in the same position under the same tree?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you have any idea where this area, that is the tree under which you had spent the night, was with respect to the house that you had left?

A: Well, I know we walked a long ways. We were lost. We didn't know where we were. I didn't know where I was anyway.

Q: And did you ask anybody during the evening hours where you were, how you would get back to the Spahn Ranch?

A: We got down to a main street and a guy picked us up.

Q: Is this still at nighttime, Charles, or is this the following morning?

A: No, it is morning now.

Q: What I asked you a moment ago was whether you had made any effort to find out where you were before you spent the night under some tree?

A: No. We just -- we were just walking, you know.

Q: And you spent the night resting, lying under a tree?

A: Yes.

Q: And then when daylight came, then you started to walk somewhere; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: And is that when you hitched a ride?

A: That is when the car came by -- finally got to where there was cars, you know.

Q: Did you have any idea where that area is?

A: I know he took us down to a freeway, the car did.

Q: And did you get out at the freeway?

A: Yes. We got out at the freeway.

Q: Then what did you do there? Hitch-hike on to the ranch?

A: Yes. Another guy picked us up.

Q: The three of you got back to the ranch about the same time?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you all come back in the same vehicle?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you have any idea of what time of day it was when you got back to the ranch?

A: Well, it had been daylight for quite a while. I believe it was still morning, in the morning, maybe late morning.

Q: Do you remember what you did for the balance of that morning?

A: I went to sleep.

Q: Before doing that did you talk to Manson, do you remember?

A: No, I never did see him that day.

Q: You went to sleep that day then and what else, what occurred if you can remember?

A: That is all I remember occurring.

Q: Do you remember seeing or talking to Barbara Hoyt that day?

A: No, I don't really even know if she was at the ranch at that time or not.

Q: Do you remember telling anybody not to say anything about the fact that you had been out or that you had been at a love in or something like that?

A: No, I don't.

Q: Do you remember how long you stayed at the ranch?

A: Before going somewhere again?

Q: Yes, before leaving.

A: No, I don't recall exactly. I know I did -- was told by Manson to go up to Olancho.

Q: Do you remember when that occurred?

A: Not exactly. I know it was probably two or three days, or maybe a day later -- well, two days, three days, maybe, I don't know.

Q: Were you arrested at the ranch on August the 16th?

A: No, I was not.

Q: You weren't at the ranch on that day; is that correct?

A: No.

Q: Had you already left for Olancho?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, between the time that you were at the LaBianca house and the time that you left for Olancho, did you ever discuss the events of that evening with Mr. Manson?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you ever discuss it with anybody else at the ranch?

A: No.

Q: Did anybody ask you what had happened?

A: No.

Q: Did Manson ask you what had happened?

A: No.

Q: Was there any difference between the way you lived prior to going to the Tate-LaBianca houses and what you continued to do at the ranch until you left for Olancho?

A: Could you repeat that?

Q: Well, were you treated the same after you got back from the Tate-LaBianca incidents as you always were up until the time you left for Olancho?

A: Yeah, I was still pretty high.

Q: What else did you do about the ranch?

A: I didn't do anything.

Q: Did you work on any dune buggies?

A: When I got back?

Q: Yes.

A: No, I didn't.

Q: Before going to Olancho?

A: Before going to Olancho? You an after the murders?

Q: Yes.

A: Not that I can recall, no.

Q: How did you get up to Olancho, if you remember?

A: In a truck, a big truck.

Q: Who drove, if you remember?

A: The guy that owned the ranch at Olancho.

Q: Had he been at the Spahn Ranch?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember his name?

A: Dave was his name.

Q: Do you remember his last name?

A: I remember the windmill at this ranch had "Hunter" on it.

Now, I don't know if that's his last name; I thought it was "Hunter."

THE COURT: What was it, "Hunter"?

THE WITNESS: Hunter.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: How many people went up to Olancho, if you remember?

A: There was three of us in the front of the truck.

Q: Who were they, besides yourself?

A: Juan and Dave, the guy that was driving the truck.

Q: Did you take anything up to Olancho with you, if you remember?

A: The whole back of the truck was loaded down.

Q: With what?

A: There was a dune buggy on there and a lot of tools and stuff, you know.

Q: Did Manson tell you why he wanted you to go to Olancho?

A: I don't know; he said something about putting the young people there or something, but I don't know. I never did question him, you know. He said to go to Olancho so I went to Olancho.

Q: Did you continue to take any drugs during this period of time before leaving for Olancho?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Do you remember getting to Olancho with --

A: Yes.

Q: -- T.J. and Mr. Hunter, Bill?

A: No, it was Juan.

Q: Juan?

A: Yes.

Q: And when you got there, were there any other people there?

A: No.

Q: Did anybody else come up and join you at Olancho?

A: Yes.

Q: How much later?

A: I was there by myself and then Snake showed up, a girl named Snake, and some young boy.

Q: Anybody else that you remember?

A: That's all that was there right then.

Q: Snake is Diana Lake; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: Or Diana Bluestein, however you knew her?

A: Yes.

Q: How long were the three of you at Olancho?

A: We were there a few days and then some more people showed up; and then -- I can't really recall, I believe around 10 days -- 10 days or so, two weeks, maybe.

Q: Were there any drugs being used at Olancho, if you remember?

A: I remember we picked some little flowers off of some desert plant, you know. It wasn't a drug, you know; I don't know just what it was, it wasn't a drug or anything.

Q: Had you brought any drugs with you to Olancho?

A: No, I had not.

Q: Did you have any marijuana or hashish?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you buy any papers in the Olancho area?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did anybody buy any paper, that you know of?

A: The little guy went over to the store and when he came back, he had a paper and some cigarettes and stuff.

Q: Do you remember an incident in Olancho involving a police officer by the name of Mr. Cox?

A: Yes.

Q: Did this incident about buying the paper occur before or after the incident with Mr. Cox?

A: I really don't recall that.

Q: Do you remember about what day of the month it was?

A: No.

Q: Did you read the paper?

A: I really don't recall that, but I could have had it in my hands. I really can't say that.

Q: Do you remember the headline on the paper?

A: No.

Q: Do you remember discussing the contents of the paper with Diane Lake?

A: No.

Q: Do you remember any discussion between yourself and Diane Lake about killing Sharon Tate?

A: No, I can't remember anything like that.

Q: Did you ever tell her you killed Sharon Tate and that it was fun?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Do you remember Mr. Cox asking you what you were doing there, or something of that nature?

A: Yes, he asked us what we were doing there and I believe I told him that the owner of the ranch had left us there and we were going to try to fix up the place, something to that effect.

Q: Do you remember how many days after the incident with the newspaper it was that you saw Mr. Cox come to the ranch?

A: Mr. Cox, he came to the ranch several times, about five or six times, I believe.

Q: Before the date when he asked you for identification?

A: No, that day was his first day.

Q: That was the day that Diane was wading in the creek and you were on the cot; is that correct?

A: I don't know what Diane was doing then.

Q: Do you remember whether he asked you for identification on more than one occasion?

A: No. After the first occasion, he came over several times and saw me several times, but he never did ask for any identification.

Q: All right. On the first occasion that he did ask you for identification, do you remember what name you gave him?

A: Charles Montgomery.

Q: Any particular reason for that?

A: Well, we always went by all kinds of names out there but the main reason was a long time before that I had thrown away all of my identification, because the truck that I had given away came back to the ranch and --

Q: That is the '35 Dodge?

A: Yes. And I was told by a couple of people -- the first person that brought it back, that it was still in my name and that he had some warrants out, some kind of warrants out for the truck or something. I remember Dennis Wilson also came to the ranch and he had the truck then and said that he got stopped or something, and had used my name, you know, and so I threw my identification away.

Q: What did you throw away, if you remember?



A: My driver's license and Selective service card.

Q: Was your driver's license a California license?

A: Yes

Q: Was it in the name of Charles Watson?

A: Yes.

Q: And then you used the name of Montgomery on this occasion; is that correct?

A: Yes. That is my mother's maiden name and any uncles' name.

Q: Did you give Mr. Cox any other information about yourself that you can recall?

A: I believe I told him I was from Texas and that is all I told him.

Q: You were not arrested on that occasion; is that correct?

A: No, sir.

Q: How were you living out there on the ranch in Olancha?

A: Well, I know he gave Diane \$5 one time and we bought some groceries with it.

Q: Who gave her \$5?

A: Mr. Cox.

Q: Did you have any money of your own?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did any of the girls have any money that you are aware of?

A: Just the \$5, that is about all I seen. I might have had some change when I got there, but I don't know. I really couldn't recall that.

Q: Did you take any foodstuffs up with you when you went to Olancha?

A: No, no food.

Q: Had you given any thought as to how you were going to eat?

A: I remember Charlie -- he said everybody was going to move up there.

Q: How long did you stay at Olancha? You think about 10 days?

A: Yes.

Q: And where did you go from there?

A: I went to Goler Wash.

Q: How far is that in terms of miles?

A: I really don't know. I would say over 100, though.

Q: Olancha is up toward Lone Pine and Independence way; is that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: And which direction from that is Goler Wash? East toward the desert?

A: Well, it is in Death Valley. Now, I don't know which direction it is.

Q: Before leaving Olancha, did you talk to your mother? Do you recall if you ever talked to her by phone?

A: Yes, I did.

I just -- I called her.

Q: Do you remember from where?

A: Olancha.

Q: Do you remember how that happened to come about?

A: Just popped -- I don't know why -- it just popped in my head and I called.

Q: What popped in your head?

A: Calling.

Q: When you called her, what did you say?

A: I remember telling her that the end of the world was coming and that we were going to be the only ones left on earth in the bottomless pit and that I had found Jesus and that is about all I can recall.

Q: Did you ask her how she felt?

A: No. I didn't ask her anything.

Q: Did you inquire at all about the rest of the family?

A: No.

Q: How long had it been since you had last talked with your mother?

A: I believe I talked to her the first of the year.

Q: Where did you go after you left Olancha?

A: To Goler Wash.

Q: How long did you stay there?

A: A couple of days I believe.

Q: Do you remember who left on the trip from Olancha to Goler Wash?

A: Bruce Davis and Brenda and

Q: Where was Mr. Manson, if you know?

A: I don't know.

Q: What happened to Diana Lake and the rest of the people, if you know?

A: I know Brenda and Bruce and some more people came up.

Q: To Goler Wash?

A: No, to Olancho, and said that Charlie said to go to Goler Wash with all the stuff.  
That is what we did.

Q: And the three of you then left and went to Goler Wash by truck?

A: Yes.

Q: And what did you carry on the truck, if you remember?

A: The same stuff that we carried on it the last time.

Q: What was in Goler Wash when you got there?

A: Well, up the wash was an older type man named Paul and Paul Watkins and Brooks.

Q: You knew Brooks and Paul Watkins from former associations on the ranch, didn't you?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Had there been some period of time during which you did not see them?

A: Yes. I hadn't seen Brooks that year i know.

Q: How about Paul?

A: And Paul, he was at the ranch; I believe he may have left a month and a half or two, maybe, after I got back the second time; maybe May or June, I believe.

Q: Did you know that Brooks, Paul and Crockett would be in Golar Wash?

A: Yes.

Q: Is there some sort of a community in Golar Wash?

A: No.

Q: Is it just a desert area?

A: Yes.

Q: Had you ever been there before?

A: Yes, one time.

Q: I take it, Manson was not there; is that correct?

A: No.

Q: Did you take any drugs with you to Golar Wash?

A: No.

Q: Incidentally, had you had any drugs with you at all while you were at Olancho?

A: No.

Q: How long did you stay in Golar Wash?

A: About two days.

Q: What happened after that?

A: We left all the stuff there and -- let's see -- and went back to Olancho to get another load.

Q: Who went back to Olancho this time?

A: Bruce and Brenda and I.

Q: The same three that had gone to Golar Wash, now are going back to Olancho; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: And what did you do -- who did you find when you got back to Olancho?

A: I know we did see Mr. Cox again there.

Q: Did you get the rest of your equipment from Olancho?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you load it on the truck?

A: Yes.

Q: Then what did you do?

A: I remember it was in the morning and we drove back to Spahn Ranch; and as soon as we got there, Charlie told us to turn around and go back, take all the stuff that was on the truck back to Golar Wash.

Q: You drove from Golar Wash to Olancho --

A: Uh-huh.

Q: -- and loaded the truck --

A: Uh-huh,

Q: Then drove down to Spahn Ranch?

A: Uh-huh.

Q: How far is that?

A: It was a long ways, it seemed like, you know.

Q: Then how long did you stay in Spahn Ranch on that occasion?

A: As soon as we got there Charlie said to turn around and take all the stuff to Golar Wash.

Q: Then did you do that?

A: That's what we did,

Q: Turned around and started driving to Golar Wash; is that correct?

A: That's right.

Q: The same three?

A: No, this time there was a guy named Danny in the truck and I was in the truck; I'm not for sure about the third person.

Q: How did you get your gasoline and oil for this vehicle, Charles?

A: At that time Brenda had a credit card.

Q: Was it a legitimate credit card, if you know?

A: I don't think there was ever any legitimate credit cards at the ranch.

Q: You mean you would just use a stolen credit card, or something of that nature?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: Did you get all the gas and oil you needed to get back to Golar Wash?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you ever use the credit card for anything other than gasoline and oil?

A: At some of those little filling stations out on the desert we used to get -- they had a little store -- might get some ice cream or something: you know, or something to drink or something like that.

Q: How long did you stay at Golar Wash when you got back the second time?

A: Into September there, it would have been; I say maybe two or three or five weeks, maybe.

Q: Did you oversee Mr. Manson --

A: Yes.

Q: -- during that three- or four-week period?

A: Yes, he came out to the desert in a car, I believe, at the same time.

We all kind of moved to the desert, when we turned around and went back to the desert from Spahn's; everybody just about, left the ranch.

Q: When you went from Spahn's to the Golar Ranch the second time, were there many people left at Spahn Ranch?

A: I'd say three, four, five or six, something like that, maybe,

Q: Did you see Manson at Spahn Ranch on that occasion? He told you to go back --

A: Yes.

Q: -- so, obviously, you saw him?

A: Yes.

Q: And there were a number of other people with him; is that correct?

A: Yes, everybody that was living at the ranch.

Q: Now, after you got to Golar Wash on that trip from Spahn Ranch, did Manson ever come up to Golar Wash while you were there?

A: Yes, we all went up.

Q: Did he stay up at Golar wash for any period of time?

A: Yes.

Q: How long?

A: I can't recall; I know he left and came back.

Q: Can you give us some idea of the number of people up in Golar Wash, now, in the family?

A: Probably about 10.

Q: Were there any drugs being used, if you know?

A: Only marijuana.

Q: Was that being used frequently or infrequently?

A: Pretty frequently -- I really can't recall how frequently it was used then.

Q: How about you, do you remember whether you were using it frequently or infrequently?

A: I would use it when everybody else used it.

Q: Any drugs other than marijuana being used that you are aware of?

A: Not that I'm aware of, no.

Q: Is this about the time that you saw Paul Crockett?

A: Yes, he was at the ranch there up in Golar Wash.

Q: And Brooks Poston and Paul Watkins, also?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you have occasion to talk to Mr. Crockett from time to time?

A: Yes, a few times.

Q: Do you remember -- did you leave Golar Wash sometime?

A: Yes, Charlie sent me back into town with a list of things to do when I got back into town -- with a list, a paper -- and I went in and did what was on the list.

Q: And then what?

A: And then I remember one of the things on the list was to -- for everybody to come back to the desert, for everybody to leave the ranch.

Q: Now, when you say you came back to town, you mean you drove back from Golar Wash to Spahn Ranch; is that correct?

A: No, I hitchhiked.

Q: You told everybody at the ranch to go back to Golar Wash?

A: Yes, that was one of the things on the list.

Q: What other things were on the list that you can remember?

A: I can't remember the things on the list that good at all.

Q: At any rate, after you came into Spahn Ranch on this hitchhiking expedition that you told us about, did you hitchhike back to Golar Wash?

A: No, we went back in a little Volkswagen-like car.

Q: How many went back, if you remember?

A: About six; five or six.

Q: Can you fix the time of the day or month for use now?

A: It was at the end of September, I believe.

Q: Did you go back up to the same encampment at Golar?

A: Yes.

Q: How long did you stay after that, before you next left?

A: I want to say about two days, but I don't know for sure, maybe one day -- maybe one day, maybe two days or maybe three days.

Q: Did something happen -- did you leave the Golar Wash area?

A: Yes, after about two or three days when I was there the last time.

Q: Did something happen to make you leave the Wash?

A: I know we saw a highway patrolman up there and a forest ranger; and we were just kind of camping out in the desert and quite a ways from the ranch part; and Charlie took me over to the ranch part one night and told me to stay there, and left a shotgun with me and he -- some way he thought the forest ranger and the highway patrolman would come over, and he told me to kill them when they came over,

Q: So you now were left by yourself on this ranch; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: How far distant was that from the main encampment at Goler Wash?

A: Where they were?

Q: Yes, where they were at that time.

A: I don't know. It is quite a ways, though.

Q: What did you do?

A: I went to sleep that night and I woke up the next morning and I left.

Q: Where did you go when you left?

A: I went back to Texas.

Q: Had you had any drugs while you were in Goler Wash other than the marijuana that you told us about?

A: No, I had not.

Q: When had you last taken any LSD, if you can remember?

A: My last trip was before the murders.

Q: Had there been much discussion between Manson and the remaining family members about helter skelter after the murders?

A: Yes. It was still coming down.

Q: Still coming down?

A: Yes.

Q: How about the passing around of acid and other drugs? Was that still taking place?

A: No, not that much.

Q: Did you see any acid or drugs being used in the period following the murders?

A: Not that I can recall. There just wasn't hardly any acid. I don't think I saw any.

Q: Were you given any, you specifically, given any by Manson during that period?



A: No.

Q: Then on what day is it that you decided to leave or that you did leave the ranch?

A: I don't know. I didn't know what day it was but I come to find out that it was somewhere the first of October.

Q: What day did you finally get back to Texas?

A: Either the 2nd or the 3rd or the 4th, I believe.

Q: When you left the desert, when you left this ranch, what sort of clothing did you have? What were you wearing?

A: I remember Brooks gave me the clothes that he had on.

Q: What were they?

A: Well, a pair of jeans. They were really -- came way up on me. They were real short. And, I don't know, just probably an old shirt, I don't know what type of top I had.

Q: Where did you go after you left the desert? Where did you first go?

A: I took out in an old truck and went as far as it would go, Then I started hitch-hiking.

Q: Do you remember that big city or town you came to?

A: I first caught a ride to Trona. Then I caught a ride to San Bernardino.

Q: All right.

Somewhere along the line did you wire home for some money?

A: Yes. I called at San Bernardino. I called my parents and they sent me some money, to the Western Union.

Q: And then you went on home to Texas then?

A: Yes. I bought an airline ticket and I took over the old clothes I had on and got a pair of jeans and shirt and some shoes.

Q: What happened when you got to Texas?

A: I know my hair was too long and my sister took me by the barber shop and I got a haircut.

Q: Then you went on home?

A: Yes. She said it was too long to go back to my parents, or something. I went back to Copeville yes.

Q: Do you remember how long you stayed on that occasion?

A: Not very long. I was just there for a few days and then I took out again.

Q: Do you remember what you talked about when you first got home at Copeville?

A: Well, all I was talking about was helter skelter and Jesus and the world coming to an end.

Q: In other words, Manson was still very much with you; is that correct?

A: Yes. I couldn't get away from him, even though I was in Texas. He was still right in my head all the time.

Q: His philosophy was still part of you; is that right?

A: Yes, it was me.

Q: Why did you leave the ranch when he asked you to kill the patrolmen and the forest ranger?

A: I don't know. I just knew then that not to kill.

Q: Did you feel any differently about killing those people and the people that you had killed?

A: Yeah.

Q: What was the difference?

A: The other people I really didn't even know I killed. It was never real to me and then things were becoming more real when he asked me to kill the ranger and the highway patrolman.

Q: Had you been acid free, that is without taking acid for any period of time when you left that ranch?

A: I hadn't had any acid since the murders.

Q: How about speed?

A: No.

Q: How about belladonna?

A: No.

Q: How about cocaine?

A: No.

Q: How about hashish?

A: No.

Q: How about any of the amphetamines?

A: No. I hadn't had any drugs at all.

Q: How long did you stay then? You said a couple of days in Texas; is that right?

A: Yes. I can't remember exactly but it wasn't very long.

Q: Where did you go after that?

A: My parents gave me some money and I really didn't know where I was going. I was really mixed up, like Manson -- there was kind of a magnetic pull back to him, but I was all confused.

It seemed like I was living in about three or four worlds, you know, just, you know, so many different worlds I was looking at at that time and I ended up in Mexico.

Q: How long did you stay in Mexico?

A: About a couple of days and then I went right to California trying to find Manson, but I still didn't go back to him yet.

Q: Where did you go when you came to California?

A: I went to Hawaii.

Q: How long did you stay there?

A: About a week.

Q: Did you come back to California from Hawaii?

A: Came back to California.

Q: And when you got back, now where did you go?

A: I started out toward Manson again.

Q: Where did you go on this trip?

A: I hitch-hiked as far as Ridgecrest and then I remember walking all night long toward Trona and finally I caught a ride into Trona.

Q: Trona is on the edge of the desert?

A: Yes, And I walked from Trona all the way, a long ways, 50 miles or maybe 60 miles up Golar Wash and no one was there.

Q: Did you see Paul or Dave or Mr, Crockett?

A: I didn't see anyone.

Q: No members of the family there?

A: No.

Q: What did you do then?

A: Then I started walking back to Trona.

Q: And from Trona where did you go?

A: To town the other side of Trona, Ridgecrest.

Q: Where did you eventually wind up?

A: I called back home and asked for mother to send me some money so I could come home.

Q: Did she do that?

A: Yes. I want home.

Q: You went back home?

A: Yes.

Q: And you stayed there than until the time of your arrest; is that right?

A: That is correct.

Q: Stayed in Copeville?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Use any drugs in Copeville?

A: Only marijuana.

Q: On how many occasions? Do you remember?

A: Probably three or four or five times.

Q: Did you do that in the house?

A: No.

Q: Do that around your folks?

A: No.

Q: As you look back at it now, Charles, do you feel the same now as you did at the time of the Tate and LaBianca murders?

A: No, not at all.

Q: I think you told us yesterday that these were not real people at that time; is that right?

A: Yes. Nothing seemed real at that time.

Q: Did you have any feelings about what you were doing at that time?

A: No feelings at all.

Q: Do you have any feelings about it now?

A: Yes. My feelings have grown quite a bit.

Q: How did that happen?

A: Well, through help from people and myself, I guess.

Q: How do you feel about it now?

A: Well, I just can't explain it, how you feel about something like that

Q: Do you realize now what you have done?

A: Yes.

Q: You realize the enormity of it?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will take our morning recess at this time and once again please heed the admonition heretofore given you.

(Recess.)

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors, counsel and defendant are present.

Mr. Bugliosi.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: Mr. Watson, I show you some photographs here: People's 87, a photograph of Sharon Tate; People's 107, a photograph of Jay Sebring; people's 102, a photograph of Abigail Folger; people's 89, a photograph of Wojciech Frykowski; people's 42, a photograph of Steven Parent, people's 91, a photograph of Leno LaBianca; and people's 93, a photograph of Rosemary LaBianca.

Now, just for the record, did you kill all seven of these people?

A: Yes.

Q: So you also killed Sharon Tate, then; is that correct, the female Caucasian depicted in people's 87?

A: As far as I know, yes.

Q: Now, when you stabbed her was there a rope around her neck?

A: Not that I could see.

Q: Was there any rope connecting her with Mr. Sebring?

A: I didn't see anything like that.

Q: You are not suggesting, are you, that after Sharon was already dead someone tied a rope around her, are you?

You are not suggesting that?

MR. BUBRICK: Object to the form of the question,

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Now, I notice, Tex, that when you took the witness stand and the clerk asked you to raise your right hand and swear to tell the truth, you raised your left hand. Any particular reason for that?

A: No.

Q: There was no confusion in your mind between your left and your right hand?

A: No.

Q: That wasn't for the benefit of the jury or anything like that, was it?

A: No.

Q: Have people always called you Tex?

A: No.

Q: When did you pick up that name of Tex?

A: Mr. Spahn, the owner of the ranch out there, named me Tex when I first came to the ranch.

Q: He knew you were from Texas so he called you Tex?

A: Yes.

Q: And your last name is Watson; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Montgomery is not your last name?

A: No.

Q: Would you explain once again to the jury why you told Deputy Dennis Cox on August the 21, 1969 that your name was Charles Montgomery?

A: I was going by that name.

Q: When did you start going by that name?

A: Well, about two or three or four months, when I threw away my driver's license, because I still had warrants out in my name. Then I started going by that name and any name that popped in my head like everybody else did at the ranch did, you know.

Q: You didn't give Mr. Cox a phony name because you were trying to avoid arrest for these murders, did you?

A: No. I had been using that name for quite a while, you know.

Q: So you were very concerned about being picked up on these traffic tickets; is that correct?

A: That is why I threw away my billfold, yes.

Q: But that is why you gave Mr. Cox this phony name because you were thinking about these traffic tickets; is that right?

A: No, not really. I didn't have any thoughts. That was just the name I was using. That is the name I gave.

Q: Did you testify on direct examination that you gave him that name because you knew there were some traffic warrants out under the name of Watson?

A: That is why I started using the name Montgomery because of the traffic warrants, yes.

Q: Isn't one possible reason why you never gave your correct name, Tex, because you didn't want to be arrested for these murders?

MR. BUBRICK: Object to the question.

MR. KEITH: Object to the question as argumentative.

THE COURT: I will allow him to answer.

THE WITNESS: Would you repeat the question once more?

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: One possible reason why you never gave your true name, Tex, is because you didn't want to be arrested for these murders, isn't it?

A: No.

Q: That thought never entered your mind; is that correct?

A: No, I didn't have, really, any thought at that time.

Q: You had no thoughts in your mind; you just walked around and you acted, but no thoughts in your mind; is that what you are trying to tell the jury?

A: Yeah, that's the way I was, kind of, yes.

Q: Do you have any thoughts in your mind right now on the witness stand?

A: Yes, I have got a lot of thought back.

Q: You are thinking pretty clearly now, aren't you?

A: Sometimes I think clearly and sometimes I don't.

Q: And you are well aware, of course, that you are on trial for seven counts of murder and one count of conspiracy to commit murder; you are aware of that?

A: Yes, I'm aware.

Q: And you are aware that the prosecution is seeking the death penalty against you?

A: Yes

Q: Would this realising on your part cause you to lie just a little bit on the witness stand, Tex?

MR. BUBRICK: Object to that question.

THE COURT: Sustained.

MR. BUGLIOSI: His credibility, I want to know whether he is lying or not.

MR. BUBRICK: Then ask him.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I want to know whether he is telling the truth or not --

THE COURT: You may resort to specifics, not a generalization like that.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I can't go down a list of a thousand questions and examine whether he lied on every one of them. I want to know whether he's lying now.

THE COURT: If you cannot do so, refrain from doing so.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Have you been lying on the witness stand, Mr. Watson?

A: No, I have not.

Q: You wouldn't think of lying, would you?

A: No.

Q: Why wouldn't you think of lying, Tex?

MR. BUBRICK: It is immaterial.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Why do you want to tell the truth?

A: Well, that's just what comes out now, is the truth.

Q: Was the truth coming out when you were stabbing these people at the Tate residence?

A: There was no thought.

Q: When Mr. Cox approached you in Olancha, why did you run into the bushes?



A: I didn't see Mr. Cox until I had already got over to where I could see Mr. Cox.

Q: Why did you run at all?

A: I can't remember running.

Q: Is it your testimony now that you did not run up in Olancho when Mr. Cox approached; is that your testimony?

A: I don't recall running, no

Q: You don't recall going into the bushes at all?

A: Yes, I recall going into the bushes.

Q: Why did you go into the bushes?

A: I went to the rest room in the bushes.

Q: And it just happened that you went into the bushes, to the rest room or the bathroom, in the bushes at the same time that Mr. Cox was there; is that right, it was just a coincidence?

A: Well, I went to the rest room and then I walked out of the bushes.

Q: But it was a coincidence; is that correct?

A: I don't know. That's just what I did, you know.

Q: Mr. Cox had a police uniform, didn't he?

A: Yes, he did.

Q: And his vehicle was a marked police vehicle, wasn't it?

A: It was in front of the house, yes,

Q: But you weren't hiding from Mr. Cox at all, were you?

A: No, I wasn't.

Q: Tex, I have noticed that you frequently open your mouth and you keep it open for a period of time, even though you are not talking.

Is there any particular reason for that?

A: Well, my mouth is always very dry and that's the way I breathe is through my mouth.

Q: So you deliberately open your mouth --

MR. BUBRICK: That's not what he said.

THE COURT: He said that's the way he breathes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So, in other words, it is an intentional act on your part, to open

your mouth; is that right?

MR. BUBRICK: That's not what he said, either, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I'm asking him a question; this is cross-examination, your Honor.

THE COURT: Well, don't preface it with "so."

Do you open your mouth intentionally or is it natural for you to breathe?

THE WITNESS: No, I breathe easier to have my mouth open, so I can breathe better.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So this is a physical thing on your part; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: I believe you testified that the first time you smoked marijuana was in Dallas, Texas; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: And how did you get the marijuana at that time?

A: I walked into a girl's apartment; I had met her at a club in Dallas and there was a smell in the room and somehow that smell came into the conversation, and she said it was an old pot burning, or something to that effect; and it ended up that I smoked some marijuana with her a few days later.

Q: She gave you the marijuana cigarette?

A: Yes, correct.

Q: Then when you were living with Mt. Neale out here in Los Angeles, I believe you testified you smoked marijuana 30 or 40 times.

A: I don't know how many times but we smoked marijuana quite often together.

Q: Where did you get the marijuana?

A: At that time it came from a friend that was working at the wig shop with us.

Q: He furnished the marijuana to you?

A: No. David and I purchased some marijuana.

Q: And the first time you took LSD was at Dennis Wilson's residence?

A: Yes, I was told that I might have took some LSD when I was down at my beach house but I didn't believe that it was LSD because it never did do anything to me.

Q: At the time you took marijuana and LSD you, of course, were aware that it was against the law; is that right?

A: Yes. I was aware that it was against the law.

Q: Were you afraid you would get caught when you smoked the marijuana and took the LSD?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, how did you justify taking this LSD and smoking marijuana if you knew it was against the law? How did you justify it at the time?

A: I don't really know how I justified it.

Q: Were you thinking around that time too?

A: That is what I did, yes. I smoked marijuana and had thought then --

Q: How did you justify in your mind, that it was against the law but you were doing it anyway?

A: It was just what kids were doing then. That is what I did.

Q: Is it true then that before you even met Charles Manson you had smoked marijuana and you had ingested LSD; is that correct?

A: I am not for sure about the ingestion of LSD because I did not start taking LSD for sure while I knew it was LSD until with Dean and I had already met Charlie and the girls and Dennis.

Q: But Charles Manson was not the person who got you involved in LSD; isn't that correct?

A: I can't really -- it was, you know, during the time Dean was at Dennis' and Manson was around. I remember Manson having some LSD but he didn't ever give me any at Dennis Wilson's. I don't know where it came from.

Q: So you ingested LSD and smoked marijuana before you ever got involved with Charles Manson; isn't that correct?

A: Yes, with Dean Moorehouse.

Q: Charles Manson then was not the person that got you started on marijuana or LSD; is that correct?

A: No. I would say it would be Dean and Charles and maybe Dennis, you know, just around the Wilson house there.

Q: So my statement is correct then?

A: Well, I can't be positive about it, you know, to say that it is.

Q: Other than narcotics, Tex, before you met Charles Manson, did you have any

trouble with the law?

MR. KEITH: Object to the question as immaterial.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: I believe near the end of your testimony, oh, about five minutes before the end of your testimony you testified in answer to this question by Mr. Bubrick:

"Q: When had you last taken any LSD if you can remember?"

Do you recall answering:

"my last trip was before the murders."

Do you recall giving that answer to that question?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: And you know the difference between the words "before," "during," and "after," don't you? There is no confusion in your mind about those words.

A: Well, I remember taking it right before, yes.

Q: Okay, Do you recall to yesterday afternoon that after the Tate murders on the night of the LaBianca murders Charles Manson gave you some LSD?

A: Well, that time too. That is what I mean, before the murders there, yes.

Q: You say you decided to come out to California after your junior year at North Texas State College; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: And you came out here for adventure purposes?

A: Yes. That is about the only thing I could come up with on that.

Q: And your parents didn't want you to come out here.

A: There was a small objection but I came, you know.

Q: You decided to come?

A: Yes.

Q: You made up your own mind?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: What do you mean for adventure purposes? How do you define the word adventure? Narcotics, girls, or what?

A: No. I just never had been away from home and I knew David out here, you know, and I called him up and I came out a few times and it was just something new and I

moved out with Dave.

Q: Isn't it true, Tex, that the main reason you came out here is you wanted to get into the movies?

A: No. I knew David and his brother were -- had something to do, maybe, with the movies, but I never really had anything to do with the movies, you know.

Q: Now, I know you didn't, Tex, but that thought was on your mind of getting into the movies?

A: Maybe a little bit. I don't know. Since David and his brother were in the movies, it might have been a little bit but --

Q: Did you ever try to become a movie actor?

A: The only time I ever had anything to do with that, I went down to this acting place that has extra help or something that you can become like a stand-in or something and it didn't work out, you know.

Q: When was that?

A: Right after I got out here and was going to college and working at the wig place.

Q: Once you arrived in Los Angeles, did you ever live with any girl?

A: There was a girl living with Dave at our place up Laurel Canyon and another girl -- you mean all during the time I was living in California?

Q: Yes.

A: And another girl, it was Dave's girlfriend, and he went into the Army and I stayed with her a while too.

Q: What was her name?

A: Rosina was her name.

Q: How long did you live with Rosina?

A: I was staying with Rosina off and on at the same time with Dave's brother and Drew and Lloyd; I guess that was kind of my central headquarters, was Rosina. That's where my mailing address was.

Q: Were you sexually involved with Rosina?

A: Yes.

Q: And Rosina was whose girl friend, now?

A: She was Dave's.

Q: The man who testified on your behalf --

A: Yeah, previously; and he went into the army.

Q: Did you ever take it upon yourself to tell Dave that you were having intercourse with Rosina?

A: Yes.

Q: What did he say?

A: He didn't have any --

Q: No objection?

A: No objection, no.

Q: In early August of 1969, did you go to El Monte with Rosina and several other people?

A: Yes.

Q: And what was the purpose of your going to El Monte with Rosina and some others?

MR. KEITH: May we approach the bench, your Honor?

THE COURT: What time is this?

MR. KEITH: Early August, 1969.

THE COURT: Approach the bench.

(The following proceedings were had at the bench, out of the hearing of the jury)

MR. KEITH: Mr. Bugliosi is going into another offense involving a marijuana party -- in other words, Mr. Watson took some money from a man named Crow for the purpose of getting some marijuana for Mr. Crow; and Mr. Watson did not deliver the marijuana, but kept the money.

This type of evidence would be admissible, presumably, in the penalty phase; but I don't believe it is material at this phase of the case, as showing -- he is merely trying to show the bad character of the witness, No. 1, by the crimes, which are not germane to the murders in this case.

THE COURT: What is your offer of proof?

MR. BUGLIOSI: It is exactly what he said but let me point this out to the Court. The defense, their whole defense in the penalty trial was sympathy, calling the mother -- that's all done during the penalty phase -- sympathy; he's the All American boy, good

grades, plays sports -- if they can do it there on direct examination, on cross-examination, we can bring out to the jury that he is not as clean-cut a kid as he is claiming.

It is not opening in in the form of impeachment of credibility as to whether he is telling the truth; it is coming in for telling the jury what kind of a character he is -- they are the ones that brought this up -- not just character, or for nonviolence, but claims for being a good guy, never getting in trouble, obeying the parents, working around the store, a member of the FFA --

THE COURT: This is long after he left the parents and long after he left the store.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, wait a minute; there is an incident in Texas where he was involved in the theft of some typewriters.

I think I can bring this in; they are bringing in what a great guy he was back in Texas --

THE COURT: I don't think you can bring it in The Evidence Code is very specific as to how a witness is to be impeached; and by specific instances of this kind, just to show his bad character or criminality, it is not admissible.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The other ones that have raised the issue on direct examination by showing his good character --

MR. BUBRICK: Not at all, your Honor.

MR. KAY: May I make one point on this, your Honor: On this incident that took place on August 1st, the marijuana, the second purpose we would be admitting this to show that Mr. Watson's state of mind, around this time he was clear-thinking; there was around \$2,000 involved in this marijuana purchase. Mr. Watson took the money from this Negro fellow, walked in the house and said he was going to get the marijuana and just walked out the back door with the \$2,000.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Plus, your Honor, he is doing it on his own, which shows that around the time of the murders, he is thinking clearly; he is acting deceptively.

The whole thrust of the defense is that he was a puppy dog around this time, couldn't do anything on his own, wasn't deceiving people -- furthermore, I am going to -- I don't see how this stuff can help but come in during the guilt phase, when the psychiatrists take the stand --

THE COURT: We will worry about that then.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I am just saying that I think it is a consideration; it is not something that can't come in during the guilt phase, but his state of mind around the time of the murders is extremely crucial, if he's acting on his own -- he has already testified he wasn't even thinking around that time. If he acts on his own, deceiving people, taking money, not delivering what he promised to give, I think that is relevant.

THE COURT: I am sustaining the objection.

(The following proceedings were had in open court, in the hearing of the jury)

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: When you were living at Dennis Wilson's residence, who was supporting you?

A: While I was living at Dennis Wilson's?

We rented out our beach house for two months and I -- we rented it out for \$400 a month and we were paying \$325 a month, and I made \$160 -- \$160, I believe; and that's what money I had.

Q: Was Dennis giving you any money?

A: No.

Q: Or clothing?

A: We were wearing his clothing, yes.

Q: Any food?

A: Yes, the food was delivered to the house. I remember each morning there'd be some food out on the front porch.

Q: Did you ever take anything from Dennis without his telling you you could?

A: No, I did not

Q: Did you meet Dean Moorehouse before or after you met Charles Manson?

A: On the same night.

Q: Can you briefly describe Moorehouse's philosophy -- very briefly?

A: He was always preaching in the bible, out of the bible; and also the philosophy that Charles Manson had taught him or told him about being free, because, as he said, he had set his daughter free by giving her to Charles Manson; and the way you become free was to lose all your thought, and when you lose all your thought, you could submit entirely; and this was what love was, was giving, and this is about the philosophy.

Q: What about the antiestablishment? Dean was quite a bit against the



establishment, wasn't he?

A: Not that much. He just brought up what the establishment -- or, that they had thought and that this is what -- that they had thought, and that love didn't have any thought.

Q: Well, Dean was kind of down on the establishment, wasn't he?

A: No, he never was really down that such on the establishment,

Q: Well, he told you he didn't want to have anything to do with the establishment, right, he wanted to drop out?

A: Well, he was talking about no thoughts and that was the only thing the establishment had: thought.

Q: Did he indicate to you -- I am talking about Dean, now -- the the establishment was headed for trouble?

A: I can't recall anything like that,

Q: Words to the effect that the establishment was on its way out; that a new order was going to take over?

A: No, I don't believe he said anything about that.

Q: You testified yesterday that Brenda and Squeaky and Sadie gave orders out at the ranch, those girls gave orders to the other girls; they did not give orders to the men; isn't that correct?

A: Well, they didn't give orders that much at all. What they did, they would just -- they would do what Charlie said that all the women in the world did; and he said that the women over the world had the men all under their thumb, because -- he called them witches, all the women were witches, because they had all the men working for them from 8:00 to 5:00 every day.

Q: My question is: When Brenda and Squeaky and Sadie told people to do things, they were telling other girls in the family; is that correct?

A: They would tell other girls and also any guys that they could -- that they were the older members of the family and they had got there when the family had started and they were more Charlie and had more of his way of life in their head.

Q: Tex, you are not denying that the policy in the family was for the girls to do everything the men told them to do? You are not denying that, are you?

MR. BUBRICK: Argumentative, if your Honor please.

THE COURT: Objection to the form of the question sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: It was the policy, wasn't it, Mr. Watson, that the girls did everything the men told them to do; isn't that right?

A: Well, I know they did what Charlie told them to do.

Q: They would do what you told them to do also; right?

A: I can remember the only thing that they would ever do for me is to wash the parts off because Charlie wanted them -- wanted me to be working more on the dune buggies and not washing off parts and doing things that girls could do.

Q: No girl ever told you what to do out at Spahn Ranch; isn't that correct?

A: Not actually told, no.

Q: You made love to all the girls in the family, didn't you, Tex?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Most of them?

A: No.

Q: Some of them?

A: Yes.

Q: How many?

A: I would say probably our or five.

Q: Wasn't one of the big attractions that that family had for you was the fact that there was free love? Wasn't that one of the big attractions?

A: That may have been one of the attractions but that was also one of my hangups, I guess you would say.

Q: What do you mean by hangup?

A: Well, I just wasn't a big love maker, you know, in a physical way.

Q: You had a reputation of being very good with the women out there, didn't you? Tex, don't be embarrassed now.

A: Not that I know of, no. I did not have a reputation of being good with the woman.

Q: You wanted to go to sleep with them right after you met them; isn't that right?

A: No, that is not correct.

Q: The first time you saw Linda, wasn't it about three or four minutes later that you

were making love to her?

A: That is correct.

Q: What was it about Linda that caused you to be so amorous?

A: Well, I guess the fact that she was a new girl there and that all the other girls, they kind of looked down upon me because they were all with the family before I was and they saw how straight I was when I first got there, and that was always in my mind and their mind too, I believe.

Q: When did you first believe that Charles Manson was Jesus Christ?

A: All during the -- while I knew him.

Q: Do you still feel he is Jesus Christ?

A: I am totally away from Charlie now.

Q: You don't believe he is Jesus Christ any more?

A: No.

Q: When did you stop believing that he was Jesus Christ?

A: It is kind of hard to say.

Q: Approximately when? I don't mean the exact moment.

A: Sometimes his world still pops into me and pops back out and I kind -- but I would say I just don't know when. I don't have an approximate idea. I stay between the two worlds so much in the past, him and what I used to be, that I just don't know.

Q: How, by that you don't believe he is Jesus any more?

A: No, but sometimes I have my doubts. I just don't know -- just like I am away from him now and I try to stay as far away as I can.

Q: You have spoken to many psychiatrists since you have been brought out here from Texas; isn't that right?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: And you told them about Manson and your relationship with him; isn't that correct?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Isn't it true, Tex, that you never told one single psychiatrist that you thought Charles Manson was Jesus Christ; isn't that true?

A: I might have used the word "Supreme Being" or "Christ" or Messiah,"

Q: Are you saying now that you did tell psychiatrists that you thought maybe he was a supreme being? Is that what your testimony is?

A: No. I really can't recall.

Q: You never told one; isn't that right, Tex?

A: I don't know.

Q: Isn't it true, Tex, that you along with some other members of the family never thought that Manson was Christ?

A: No. That was one of the big things, that he was a perfect supreme being, a Christ, yes.

Q: He was a father figure to you, wasn't he, Tex?

A: I really don't know why I stuck to him like that, you know.

Q: Did you tell the psychiatrists that you had kind of a weak father and Charlie represented kind of a strong father image to you?

A: No, not to that effect, no.

Q: In November I believe you said of 1968 you left Manson, is that correct, and you went to Mr. Neal?

A: Yes.

Q: Went to live with Mr. Neal?

A: Yes.

Q: In Highland Park?

A: I believe that is what it is or Pasadena-like area, you know.

Q: Did you tell Charlie you were leaving?

A: No, I did not.

Q: How did you happen to leave? What were the circumstances surrounding your leaving?

A: I came back down, from north in the school bus and I had been away from Charlie for a little while, because he sent us up to the candy man to get candy and I came back down and I called David and I told him that I was just losing myself and that --

Q: What were the physical circumstances surrounding your leaving? Did you pack up your belongings and get in the car and drive away?

A: I had no belongings, no.

Q: How did you happen to leave the ranch? Did you tell anyone?

A: No, I did not. I hitch-hiked away from the bus. I wasn't at the ranch at that time.

Q: Where were you?

A: The bus was parked down in Topanga Canyon.

Q: This one time in November of 1968 that you left him and you went to live with David Neal, you say you called Manson and he convinced you to come back?

A: Repeat that one more time again.

Q: This one time in November you went to live with David Neal, November of 1968; is that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Then after that a month or two after you say Charlie, or you got in touch with Charlie by calling him at the ranch.

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: This one time in November you went to live with David Neal in November of 1968; isn't that right?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: And then after that, a month or two, you say Charlie -- or you got in touch with Charlie by calling him at the ranch.

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: And he convinced you to come back to him?

A: He asked me to come out, yes.

Q: He didn't threaten you in any fashion whatsoever, did he?

A: No.

Q: You went back voluntarily; is that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: Do you believe that there is an imminent revolution between blacks and whites, Tex? In other words, there is going to be a war, a civil war between blacks and whites very soon? Do you believe that?

A: I really don't know what to believe right now

Q: Do you still entertain that thought in your mind at all?

A: I just don't know what to believe. I am rather confused in a lot of ways.

Q: Did you ever study the bible back in Texas?

A: Yes. I went to church and read the bible but not that much.

Q: Did you read the Book of Revelations back in Texas?

A: I knew nothing about Revelations.

Q: On the night of the Tate murders, Tex, when you left the Spahn Ranch in John Swartz's car, you knew that you were going to Terry Melcher's former residence and kill everyone inside the residence; right?

A: Yes. I knew where I was going. I was going up to the --

Q: So you knew that the mission was murder before you even left Spahn Ranch; is that right?

A: I really had no thought of what even murder was.

Q: You knew that the mission was going to kill these people; is that correct?

A: I had no thought. I was just doing what Charlie told me to do.

Q: You knew you weren't going to the Tate residence to play Canasta, didn't you, Tex?

A: I had no thought.

Q: Have you ever heard of Canasta?

A: Yes, I have.

Q: You have heard of volleyball?

A: Yes, I have.

Q: You weren't going there to do those things, were you?

A: I had no thought of what I was doing.

Q: What was that knife in your hand for?

A: It was put there by Mr. Manson.

Q: What were you going to do with that knife?

A: I was told to kill everybody in the house with it.

Q: Now the word "kill" comes out, not Canasta; right, Tex, kill?

THE COURT: Just a moment. Change your form of examination, Mr. Bugliosi.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Isn't it true, Tex, that no matter how many people were inside that residence, you were going to kill them?

A: I was told by Mr. Manson to make sure everybody was dead.

Q: Talking about your state of mind now.

Isn't it true that no matter who was inside that residence, you were going to kill them?

A: I was told to, yes.

Q: Not talking about what you were told, Tex. I am talking about after you were told by Mr. Manson, it was your state of mind that no matter who was inside that residence, you were going to kill them; right?

A: Yes, I believe so.

Q: If there were 10 people inside, you would have killed 10 people; isn't that right, Tex?

A: I guess I would; that's what I was told to do, make sure everybody was dead, as gruesome as possible, yes.

Q: What would you have done, Tex, if you arrived at the Tate residence and you saw a squad of police cars at the scene?

What would you have done then, would you want to turn around and go back to Charlie?

MR. BUBRICK: I think that is objectionable, your Honor.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: On the following night, at the time you left Spahn Ranch, you knew at that time that you were going to go out and kill; isn't that right?

A: I was really blank, without any thoughts.

Q: How did you know what to do, if you never had any thought in your mind, Tex?

A: Well, I was being run by Mr. Manson.

Q: So he put the thought in your mind, then; right?

A: That's the only thought I had.

Q: So you did have a thought in your mind, and that thought was to go out and kill; is that right?

A: I had a thought of Mr. Manson, yes.

Q: You weren't going to kill Mr. Manson, though, were you?

A: No.

Q: Did you ever take drugs out at Spahn Ranch without telling Charlie about it? I

believe you testified that he was the dispenser of the drugs, or he would dispense them through the girls; is that right?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: So you were afraid, then, to take drugs without Charlie knowing about it; would that be correct?

A: No, sometimes I did take drugs without him knowing about it.

Q: I believe the Tate murders -- what is called the Tate murders -- these are the killings, Tex, took place on the Cielo address --

A: Yes.

Q: -- took place in the early morning hours of August 9th, which would be a Saturday. Now, you left Spahn Ranch on a Friday. Are you with me on that?

A: Yes.

Q: Friday night.

A: Yes.

Q: Now, the previous night would be August the 7th; that would be a Thursday night; is that correct?

A: Yes, Thursday, Friday and Saturday; right.

Q: Now, did you take speed on August the 7th

A: I was taking --

Q: -- Thursday night?

A: I was taking speed most every day for about the last month or two there.

Q: So you took speed, then, on the evening of August the 7th?

A: Yes, I stayed up all night, I believe, that night.

Q: Did you tell Charlie that you had taken the speed?

A: Why we were taking speed was to be able to stay up and work on dune buggies, but I never hardly worked on dune buggies, I was so high all the time.

Q: My question is, when you took the speed on August the 7th, that a Thursday --

A: Yes.

Q: Did you tell Charlie that you had taken the speed, or did he know that you had taken the speed?

A: I can't recall.



Q: Was Charlie in the vicinity when you took the speed?

A: He was always around the ranch, but I don't recall that particular time.

Q: You were up all night?

A: Yes.

Q: This would be going to early morning, then, the early morning of Friday morning; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: And where were you on the ranch that night?

A: I was at the waterfall; I ended up at the waterfall.

Q: Did you see Charlie at all that night?

A: Yes, he was at the waterfall sleeping, and I had heard he was on belladonna, you know. I didn't know.

Q: Did you talk to Charlie that night?

A: I really don't recall that much.

Q: But you saw him sleeping?

A: Yes.

Q: Was he sleeping with anyone?

A: There was a lot of people sleeping, you know, out in the open; I can't recall if he -- if he, you know, had anybody beside him or not.

Q: Just so we don't have any confusion here, Tex, August the 7th, that's a Thursday; August the 8th is a Friday; August the 9th, Saturday; August the 10th, a Sunday.

You took speed on August the 7th, a Thursday; is that correct?

A: Yes, I was taking a lot of speed all during that month.

Q: And you were up all night?

A: Yes.

Q: So you were up in the early morning hours of Friday; August the 8th; is that correct?

A: Yes, right at the time between daylight and dark.

Q: All right. At the waterfall?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: And you say you saw Charlie sleeping?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Daylight

A: No, not

Q: Dusk -- not dusk; but dawn?

A: It was kind of in between, I remember.

Q: You also took some belladonna on August the 8th, a Friday?

A: Early in the morning, yes.

Q: Again, early morning, August 8th, a Friday?

A: Right, yes.

Q: Did Charlie know that you took the belladonna?

A: I'm not for sure; like I went out on the belladonna and I don't know what Charlie knew then.

Q: Did you tell him you had taken belladonna?

A: No, I did not tell him that.

Q: What would you say, Tex, if I told you Charles Manson wasn't even in Los Angeles in the early morning hours of August the 8th?

MR. KEITH: Objection, your Honor.

MR. BUBRICK: I'd object to that, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I can ask him that.

THE COURT: Sustained.

THE WITNESS: Do I answer the question?

MR. BUBRICK: No.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Are you aware, Tex, that Charles Manson was not in Los Angeles the early morning hours of August 8th?

MR. BUBRICK: Assumes facts not in evidence, your Honor.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So on the night of the Tate murders, Tex, you had belladonna, speed and LSD in your system; is that correct?

A: Yes, that would be correct.

Q: Did you have anything else in your system?

A: Nope; I can't recall of anything.

Q: Do you recall a doctor by the name of Dr. Frank?

A: I have talked to so many, I couldn't tell you.

Q: This doctor's first name is Ira Frank; he interviewed you in March and April of 1971 out at UCLA.

Do you remember that doctor?

A: I'm sure he did.

Q: Do you remember telling him that you also took cocaine?

A: No, I do not recall that.

Q: Do you recall being interviewed by a Dr. Bohr, B-o-h-r, in May of 1971?

A: As I said, I have been by a lot of doctors, and I do recall hearing that name, though.

Q: Do you recall that the only drug you told him you had taken was belladonna on the night of the Tate murders?

A: No, I don't recall that.

Q: Tex, why don't you admit to these folks on the jury that you had no drugs in your system on the night of the Tate murders?

MR. KEITH: Objection --

MR. BUBRICK: Objection, if your Honor please.

THE COURT: Objection sustained.

The jury will disregard that question entirely.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You testified, I believe, Tex, that whenever you took belladonna you had blackouts and hallucinations; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: This is your testimony yesterday; do you remember that?

A: That is correct.

Q: And how long would a bad trip normally take?

A: It just depended on -- are you talking about the whole trip from start to finish?

Q: Well, from the time the bad effect first took effect upon your body until it no longer was having any effect?

A: I'd say about 10 days or a week.

Q: And you'd have blackouts and hallucinations during this period of time?

A: No, not the whole period of time, no.

Q: But off and on during that period?

A: No, not during the first part of the trip you would black out and then if someone woke you up or something, you could get up and run around earlier; but if no one woke you up, you'd just stay out for a while longer, but ---

Q: When would you have these hallucinations?

A: You'd have hallucinations while you were out; and then the first part of it after you woke up, for a while, and then the rest of the time you'd just be kind of in a daze and being able to see the wind blow and being able to see a lot of things; and a lot of things out of the corners of your eyes.

Q: On the night of the Tate murders, did you have any blackouts?

A: I was halfway in between and halfway -- I was kind of half and half.

Q: How would you define a blackout?

A: A total blackout would be going out all the way and not seeing anything; and then -- that's what I would describe as a blackout.

Q: Do you recall telling Dr. Bailey that you had blackouts at the time of the murder?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you in fact have blackouts?

A: I was halfway in between and halfway -- sometimes you go out, blackout, and sometimes you are light again and sometimes you are just floating between the two.

Q: During the blackout, do you know what you are doing?

A: During a blackout, you are out and you do things that you don't know you are doing, actually.

Q: You didn't have any blackout when you were stabbing these people?

A: When I was stabbing them?

Q: Right. At the time you were plunging your knife into their bodies, you didn't have a blackout at that time, did you?

A: Like I said, I was kind of halfway in between black and light, most of the time.

Q: Does belladonna tend to give you a lot of energy?

A: It gives you a tremendous amount of energy, so much energy that it is just

unreal, you know.

Q: And speed also gives you energy; right?

A: Speed? I don't know about the energy, it gives you energy, but it more or less puts you in a buzzing state of mind, where you are just -- I forget what the word is -- you are wired like on speed.

Q: Full of electricity?

A: Yes, electricity, too.

Q: Wide awake?

A: It depends on when you take it. If you take it after a belladonna trip, to bring you up on the belladonna, you wouldn't be as awake as if you just take speed by itself. When you take speed itself, you are just buzzing. You are not really -- you are awake but you are just buzzing, kind of like a machine or something.

Q: If belladonna gives you all this energy and speed tends to speed you up and makes you feel like buzzing around, how come, according to you, you claim you were sleeping in the back seat of the Tate car -- I mean the back seat of the Swartz car on the way to the Tate residence?

A: Belladonna gives you energy but it also relaxes you so much that you are --

Q: I see.

THE COURT: Let him answer the question, please.

THE WITNESS: You haven't got any -- you can't tell but your muscles, really. It relaxes you so that your muscles seem tender and your body, you can look at your body and you are just muscle and bone and then when you grab a hold of something, it just seems like you can break it in two and you don't even realize you are doing it.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: So although belladonna gives you a lot of energy and speed makes you feel like buzzing around, on the night of the Tate murders you were fast asleep in the back seat of the car, is that correct, Tex?

A: You can go to sleep and then when you awake, if somebody shakes you or waken you up or something, you are buzzing, yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I think this might be a convenient time.

THE COURT: Very well.

Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will recess at this time until 1:30. Please, again

heed the usual admonition.

(Whereupon, the jury was excused and the following proceedings took place in the judge's chambers)

THE COURT: Let the record show we are in the chambers outside of the presents of the jury.

Go ahead.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The court has permitted an incredibly wide latitude on direct examination. Of course, I don't have to state the law that cross-examination is always more broad than direct. You can ask leading questions on cross-examination and not that the court is going to change, but I want the court to know that I am kind of disturbed.

I feel that you are limiting cross-examination to an unreasonable standpoint. If you can't ask a witness whether he is lying on the witness stand, and if it is necessary that you have to ask him every single question did he lie on that question -- I don't quite understand. His state of mind is very relevant on the witness stand, whether he is telling the truth or telling a lie and if I raise my voice a little bit, you tell me to go onto another subject.

This is cross-examination and seven people are dead here and I don't quite understand the court's position. The court was very liberal on direct.

THE COURT: I will make my position very clear. Whether seven or seventy people are dead, a witness is entitled to the same protection, whether he is a witness or a defendant, and the prosecution is limited to asking proper questions on cross-examination.

MR. BUGLIOSI: All right.

THE COURT: When I believe on your examination the question is improper, I am going to sustain an objection. Now, I never heard a question like you asked: "Why don't you admit to this jury that you had no drugs in you the night of the Tate murder?"

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have asked it many times and I have heard it asked many times by defense attorneys and prosecutors. You have been on the bench and you have been a lawyer 10 times longer than I have, or five times --

THE COURT: I never heard that question and in my court if that is asked I am going to

admonish the jury to disregard it, see, and when you try to bring in acts of his conduct other than prior convictions, just for the purpose of showing that he is of bad character, I am going to stop you from doing so.

MR. BUGLIOSI: The defense, your Honor, during direct examination tried to show that he is a good boy.

THE COURT: Did you object once?

MR. BUGLIOSI: I think it is admissible, just like I feel these other things are admissible,

THE COURT: I don't think that other offenses are admissible.

MR. BUGLIOSI: If they are being brought in to show lack of credibility, but we want to show the type of guy he is. The picture that they painted is an all-American boy from Texas, never did anything wrong,

Now, I think if they do that on direct, and I think they can, I think it is proper on cross-examination. We have the right to show that he is not an all-American boy.

THE COURT: By proper questions you may do so, but if I think they are proper I will allow them and if I think they are improper I will sustain the objection.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thank you, your Honor.

THE COURT: I have no love for this kid or any other person charged with murder, but it is my duty to protect him as well as any other witness that takes that stand.

MR. BUGLIOSI: There is no question about that but I feel that on cross-examination it is different than on direct.

THE COURT: You have a wide latitude on cross-examination but it must be within the realm of proper cross-examination. There is nothing personal in this case at all, Mr. Bugliosi, so far as you and I are concerned.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Oh, of course not.

THE COURT: And nothing personal. I will rule as I think I should rule.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I am not even suggesting that, of course not. I am just saying that I feel that the court thus far has been overly restrictive on cross-examination. That is all I am saying.

THE COURT: I am sorry you feel that way. That is the way I rule.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Thanks, Judge.

(The noon recess was taken until 1:30 p.m. of the same day.)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, THURSDAY, SEPTEMBER 2, 1971

1:30 P.M.

- - -

THE COURT: People against Watson.

Let the record show all jurors are present; all counsel and the defendant are present.

THE CLERK: You have been previously sworn.

CHARLES WATSON,

resumed the stand and testified further as follows

THE CLERK: Would you restate your name for the record.

THE WITNESS: Charles Watson.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

CROSS-EXAMINATION (CONTINUED) BY MR. BUGLIOSI:

Q: Tex, this is the rope that was tied around Sharon Tate's neck.

You have never seen this rope before?

A: I know we had a rope similar to that out at the ranch.

Q: Now, you recall Linda Kasabian's testimony that you were carrying this rope over your shoulder when you walked up towards the Tate residence; do you know that?

MR. KEITH: Object to the question.

MR. BUBRICK: Objection.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Is that truthful?

A: What do I do, do I answer?

THE COURT: Did you carry that over your shoulder?

THE WITNESS: Do I recall Linda saying that?

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: No, Linda did testify to that.

Did you, in fact, carry the rope over your shoulder?

A: No I did not.

Q: You never saw any rope on the night of the Tate murders; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: You have no way of knowing -- you have no knowledge of how Sharon Tate had a rope tied around her neck?



A: No, I do not.

Q: And you have no knowledge of how Jay Sebring had a rope tied around his neck?

A: That is correct.

Q: Going back just a moment to this Olancho incident, Tex, your mother testified you were six feet two inches; is that how tall you are?

A: Six feet?

I have been measured at five eleven and three-quarters and then I have been measured, I think, at six two. I don't really know where it is in there, though.

Q: Do you recall that you told Deputy Cox that you were six feet?

A: I don't know that I told him that; I don't recall it, you know.

Q: Now, I believe you testified that on the evening of the 8th Manson called you to the car and told you to go to Terry Melcher's former residence; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: And he told you to cut the wires and after the murders to wash the blood off and throw the clothing away, and then come back to the ranch; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Now, as you said, Tex, you have been interviewed by several psychiatrists; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: And you told them about these two nights of murder; is that right?

A: The best I can recall, yes.

Q: And when you spoke to them did you lie to any of them about anything?

A: No, I told them how it was to me when they talked to me.

Q: How come, Tex, you never told any of the psychiatrists who interviewed you that Manson told you to cut the telephone wires and to wash the blood off and throw the clothing away?

How come you never told one single psychiatrist that?

A: I thought I told them that. Like I say, I don't know what I told them exactly.

Q: It is your present belief that you did tell them that?

A: To my best knowledge, that is what Mr. Manson told me, you know; so I presume

I told them that, yes.

Q: Isn't it true, Tex, that the only thing that Manson told you to do was go up there and kill these people; and it was your idea to cut the telephone wires?

A: No, that is not true.

Q: And throw away the clothing?

A: No, that is not true.

Q: Did either Linda or Katie or Sadie tell you that they had been to the Tate residence before -- when I say "the Tate residence," I mean the residence on Cielo Drive.

Did they indicate they had ever been there before?

A: I didn't have any conversation with them, you know, on the way over. I don't know; I never heard them say that, no.

Q: Did you get the impression that they had been there before?

A: I did not really get any impression on the way over.

Q: You had a valid driver's license in 1969, didn't you?

A: Up until the time I threw them away, yes.

Q: Until the time when?

A: I threw them away.

Q: But it was a valid driver's license?

A: Yes, uh-huh.

Q: Why didn't you drive to the Tate residence?

A: Because I had no driver's license.

Q: But you ended up driving back to the Spahn Ranch. Why did you drive back to the Spahn Ranch then?

A: I didn't drive back to the Spahn Ranch.

Q: Did you drive at all that night?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: Why did you drive at all?

A: I don't know why. There wasn't any question at that stage it didn't seem like.

Q: Now, you claim that you were in the back seat of the car and Linda drove; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Did you give Linda directions on how to get to the Cielo address?

A: No, I did not

Q: Do you have any idea how she found her way there, Tex?

A: No, I do not.

Q: What girl's lap did you allegedly fall asleep in?

A: Sometimes I think it was Sadie and sometimes I think it was Katie, so I am not really that sure about that.

Q: Did you dream anything while you were asleep in her lap?

A: I can recall having lots of dreams, you know.

Q: What were you dreaming?

A: I can't recall what I was dreaming. I can't recall.

Q: This Dr. Frank over here, Ira Frank, you have seen him before?

A: Yes.

Q: The man in the yellow sport coat?

A: Yes, right.

Q: Didn't you tell him that when you were going to the Tate residence you kept hearing Charlie telling you to go inside and kill everyone? Didn't you tell that man that?

A: I believe I told him that when I first killed or when I was shooting the first guy I was hearing Charlie's voices and seeing him like I was seeing his face and like was his face. I was him.

Q: Didn't you tell Dr. Frank:

"As we drove along I could hear Charlie's voice inside my head computing what he had said, 'Go up to the house where Terry Melcher used to live and kill them, cut them up, hang them on the rafters.'"

Didn't you tell that doctor that?

A: I could have.

Q: Now, you don't remember what your dreams were about?

A: No. I know that I just kept hearing Charlie's voices and seeing his face, you know, and feeling like I was him.

Q: In your dreams?

A: Well, during that period of time I was kind of messed up then.

Q: Actually you were driving the car, right, Tex?

A: No. That is not correct.

Q: Do you recall Linda testified that on the way to the Tate residence you told her to wrap the knife and the revolver up and if a police officer stopped you to throw the knife and the revolver out the window.

Do you recall Linda testifying to that?

A: Yes. I recall her saying that.

Q: Do you deny that?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: She also testified, Tex, that on the way to the Tate residence you told her, that is Linda, Kate and Sadie, that you had been to the residence before, that you knew the layout and you told them to everything that you told them to do.

Do you deny that you told them that?

A: Yes, do.

Q: You had a pair of blue jeans on the night of the murders, Tex?

A: Yes. That is what I was wearing all that time out at the ranch.

Q: What type of top were you wearing?

A: I am not real for sure. I do believe it was black.

Q: How come you were dressed in black clothing this night? Any particular reasons?

A: I remember the girls they had bought a lot of dark clothes at Sears & Roebuck, I believe, and that is what we were wearing during that time, a lot of dark clothes, creepy crawling and stuff like that Charlie called it.

Q: Creepy crawl so that you wouldn't get caught?

A: No, in experiencing fear and he was taking the fear out of us, out of our heads until we had no fear.

Q: But when you went creepy crawling you didn't want the people to know that you were creeping around their homes; right?

A: No. It was just that, taking the fear out and not having any thought.

Q: I know all about that but you didn't want people to know that you were creeping around their homes; isn't that right?

A: That thought never occurred.

Q: That is not the reason why you had the dark clothing on? To avoid being seen.

A: No, that was -- no.

Q: Okay.

Next, I don't know what you were wearing that night because I wasn't there, but let me show you some of the clothing that was found over the side of the hill and you tell the judge and jury if any of these pieces of clothing were yours.

Here is people's 51 for identification.

Were you wearing those pants?

A: I think I could have been wearing those or the black pants. I am not for sure which ones.

Q: These black pants right here?

A: Yes, one of the two.

Q: Do these look like the pair you were wearing that night, the pair of pants?

A: Like I say, it is one of the two, I believe.

THE COURT: What exhibit is that, Mr. Bugliosi?

MR. BUGLIOSI: The black pants are People's 53, your Honor.

Q: Tex, there was testimony that these blue jeans had a waist size of 30.

Was that your waist size around the time of these murders?

A: I didn't really know my waist size, but I feel that that was about it.

MR. BUGLIOSI: These blue jeans, for the record, again, are People's 51 for identification.

Q: And I believe that Mr. Granado testified that these black pants here had a waist size of around 24 or 25.

You couldn't have been wearing that; these would a little too small for you, I believe?

A: If they are that small, they would be.

Q: Let's take a look at the tops. Do you recognize that black T-shirt; were you wearing that that night?

A: We had black T-shirts. I know the girls had boxes of new black T-shirts, but --

Q: Do you recognize this black T-shirt?

THE COURT: What exhibit is that, sir?

MR. BUGLIOSI: This is People's 52.

THE WITNESS: There were black T-shirts like that, yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Is this the T-shirt you were wearing on the night of the Tate murders?

A: I'm not for sure.

Q: I show you People's 54: looks like a purple T-shirt. Do you recognize that T-shirt as being a shirt that you may have had on that night?

A: I could have had on any of the shirts, I feel.

Q: What about the black velour pullover, People's 50 for identification; is this your article of clothing?

A: I could have been wearing it, too. Like, we had just piles of clothes; I really can't tell.

Q: Here's a white shirt, Tex, People's 53. Were you wearing a T-shirt beneath the dark clothing at night?

A: Not that I can recall, no.

Q: You'll notice that there is a lot of blood on these items of clothing -- none of the blood was your blood, was it, Tex?

A: I'm not for sure; I know I had

Q: Go ahead.

A: I had a cut hand, yes.

Q: You did cut your hand that night?

A: Yes, my hand was cut.

Q: What, a particular finger or what?

A: No, my hand, in here.

Q: Was it a deep scratch or what?

A: Yes, pretty deep.

Q: Did it hurt quite a bit?

A: No, I never did really feel it, you know.

Q: Didn't bother you too much; right?

A: No, I didn't have a lot of feeling for a while.

Q: The "bottomless pit," here, Tex; it is coming out.

MR. BUBRICK: A bottomless bag, Mr, Bugliosi.

MR. BUGLIOSI: What?

MR. BUBRICK: A bottomless bag.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes.

Q: So, everyone was dressed in dark clothing: You, Linda, Katie and Sadie; right?

A: Yes. I was dressed in dark clothing.

Q: This knife that you had, you say it had a metal handle?

A: The best I can remember, it was just a piece of metal.

Q: Do you remember how long the blade was?

A: No, I don't.

Q: Do you have any idea how long it was?

A: No, I really don't. I know it was just a blade, you know.

Q: It wasn't a pocketknife, was it?

A: No, it was a regular knife, seems like.

Q: And it wasn't thin, like a kitchen knife wan it; it was kind of thick?

A: It was a regular knife, you know.

Q: But, I mean, it was a thick knife; it wasn't very thin?

A: I really didn't know that much about the knife that I had.

Q: Do you know how wide it was?

A: No.

Q: You used to carry a knife around with you all the time out at Spahn Ranch, didn't you?

A: Not all the time.

Q: Quite a bit?

A: I remember Charlie bought some knives and he gave them to all the guys and girls; but I lost mine, remember, and I didn't carry one anymore.

Q: When you had the knife did you used to throw it into wooden doors, practicing?

A: We would throw them at the haystacks sometimes.

Q: This telephone pole that you climbed up, how did you climb up the pole; were there any steps or was there a ladder there, or how did you get up the pole?

A: I don't recall how I got on the pole. That is not too clear, but I know that I was on

the steps of the pole.

Q: There were steps on the pole?

A: Yes, I was on the steps of the pole.

Q: The first step was about six feet from the ground, wasn't it, Tex?

A: It was high off the ground, yes.

Q: How did you get on that first step?

A: I'm not for sure how I got on it,

Q: You climbed up there; right?

A: I'm not for sure how I got up there.

Q: Then you climbed to the top of the pole?

A: Well, after I got on the steps, I had to get on top of the pole to cut the wires; I guess I did.

Q: These wirecutters here, Defendant's Exhibit WD, they are pretty heavy, aren't they, Tex?

Do you want to hold them? They are pretty heavy, aren't they?

A: They are pretty heavy.

Q: You carried these with you to the top of the pole?

A: That's what I cut the wires with.

Q: You were pretty strong on the night of the Tate murders, weren't you, Tex?

A: Off and on.

Q: Off and on? What do you mean by that?

A: Sometimes I was strong and sometimes I wasn't strong.

Q: Were you strong when you were killing these people?

A: There really wasn't any strength. I meant, didn't recognise strength at that time.

Q: Well, you said you were pretty strong off and on; what did you mean by that?

A: Well, sometimes I felt that I guess I meant kind of dark and light; that's about the only way I can describe it.

Q: From the outside of the front gate of the Tate residence by the telephone pole you can't really see -- you can't really see the Tate residence, can you, Tex?

When you were out here by the telephone poles you can't see the Tate residence, can you?



You have been there now several times; there is a lot of trees and high bushes preventing a person from the telephone pole seeing the residence; isn't that right?

A: I think you are right.

Q: When the girls, as you claim, told you to cut the telephone wires, did you ask them how they knew that these were the telephone wires that led to the Tate residence?

Did you ask them, "How do you know that this is the telephone pole?"

A: I didn't ask any questions.

Q: Didn't it strike you rather strange that they would know which telephone pole had wires that led to the Tate residence, when you can't even see the Tate residence from the telephone pole?

A: I never asked any questions; I just climbed the pole.

Q: Well, the reason you didn't ask any questions, Tex, isn't the real reason that it was your idea to cut those telephone wires and no one said boo to you about doing it?

A: No, that is not correct.

Q: You had been to the Cielo address about three or four times?

A: About three I can remember, I think.

Q: What were the occasions for your going up there three times? You said one time there was a party that ended up at the Tate residence?

A: No, I didn't go on that time.

Q: What were the occasions for your going up to the Cielo address?

A: One time was with Dean Moorehouse -- and maybe two times with Dean Moorehouse, I'm not for sure about that; and another time was when I went up -- Greg Jakobson was in jail and Charlie asked me to go up and ask Terry if he would give me the money to go bail Greg out of jail, so that I went up there then; and that's the only time that I recall besides going up there with Dean.

Q: So there were three occasions?

A: I believe that is correct.

Q: And on all three occasions you actually entered the home?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: So you were familiar with the inside of the home; right?

A: I had been in the front room and the breakfast room.

Q: Isn't that why you told Katie, Sadie and Linda that you knew the layout; isn't that why?

A: No.

MR. KEITH: Move to strike the answer for the purpose of an objection. It assumes facts not in evidence.

THE COURT: But he answered, he said, "No."

MR. BUGLIOSI: There is evidence of that. Linda Kasabian's testimony.

THE COURT: You cannot impeach him by what Linda said, though.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I can ask him about it.

Q: Tex, were you ever inside the residence at the Cielo address when other people came to the residence after you?

Were you ever inside when shortly thereafter other people came to the residence, when other people entered after you?

A: I can't be sure of that at all.

Q: So you had no way of knowing then if a sound was made inside the residence when someone pressed the button by the telephone pole? You had no way of knowing that; right?

A: No, I didn't know anything about that.

Q: Is that the reason why, Tex, you didn't press the button by the telephone pole because you didn't know whether the people inside could hear you?

A: No.

Q: Out the night of the Tate murders?

A: No.

Q: Why did you climb around the gate? You knew how to enter the residence and the premises by pressing that button. Why did you bother climbing around the gate?

A: That is where we ended up and started over the fence and that is the way I went over.

Q: But on the three prior occasions you had entered the premises by pressing the button by the telephone pole; right?

A: That is correct.

Q: And the gate opened and you entered; right?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: But you didn't think about doing it that night?

A: No. There was just no thought of any of that.

Q: Did you have any trouble climbing around the fence?

A: I remember starting over and I kind of fell back down but I eventually got over.

Q: Were you staggering around that night, Tex?

A: Off and on I was. I felt I was, but I am not for sure.

Q: How were you able to kill five people if you were in such bad condition, Tex?

A: I can't explain the drug, you know, I can't.

Q: Is the explanation that you were not in bad condition?

A: I was in condition -- I can't describe, I don't know how to describe it.

Q: I believe you testified yesterday that after you climbed around the front gate a car approached; is that right?

A: Yes, I remember seeing some headlights.

Q: And you went up to the car and you shot the man?

A: That is correct.

Q: I believe you testified yesterday that none of the girls said anything at that point. You just went on your own and shot the man; right?

A: I remember hearing one of the girls say something about, "We've got to get them all," or something like that but that is about all I remember hearing.

Q: Didn't you testify yesterday that you heard the girls say this before the automobile incident; isn't that what you testified to yesterday?

A: I don't believe so, no. I don't know.

Q: May I have just a moment.

Directing your attention to page 3,132 of the transcript, would you read lines 9 through 17 to yourself. Read them silently to yourself.

A: Starting with 9.

Q: Yes, line 9 through 17.

Have you read those lines to yourself?

A: Yes, I have.

Q: Did you testify in answer to these questions:

"Q: Did you know who was in the car?

"A: No, I just knew that Charlie, you know, like I would see and hear him, hear his voice like, and to kill everybody in the piece; and I remember one of the girls did say something about, "We got to get everybody," or something to that effect.

"Q: Was this before or after you saw the headlights of the car?

"A: This was before we saw the headlights of the car."

MR. BUGLIOSI: There is a word in line 16 after "we saw."

MR. KAY: "Before I saw the headlights of the car."

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: "This was before we saw -- I saw the headlights of the car."

Didn't you testify yesterday that this girl said, "We've got to get everybody" before you saw the headlights on the car?

A: Well, now I say that she said it when the car pulled up. That is when.

Q: The fact is that what happened, when you saw the car approach, you told the three girls to get back into the bushes and then you went out and shot the man and they didn't say anything to you; isn't that the truth?

A: No, that is not true.

Q: How many times did you shoot this man?

A: I am not really for sure how many times I shot him.

Q: Where did you shoot him?

A: I didn't really see where I was shooting. I just --

Q: You weren't just shooting blindly, were you? You were aiming, weren't you?

A: No; I wasn't aiming.

Q: When you shot Steven Parent are you telling this jury that you never aimed the muzzle of this revolver at him? Is that what you are telling this jury?

A: I put it in the window of the car and I started pulling the trigger.

Q: And you had no idea of what you were going to hit?

A: That thought didn't occur --

Q: It just happened before the bullet --

THE COURT: Let him finish.

THE WITNESS: I was just shooting at the thing that was there.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Oh, the thing that was there. It was not a human being?

A: I didn't have any thought of human beings.

Q: Did you aim at the thing that was there?

A: Like I said I just stuck the gun toward it. I don't know if you call it an aim or what.

Q: You shot him one time right in the head, didn't you, Tex?

A: I don't know. I don't know where I shot him.

Q: Before you shot him did he say anything to you?

A: I can't recall. I didn't hear anything.

Q: Didn't he say "Please don't hurt me. I won't say anything to anyone." Isn't that what he said before you shot him to death?

A: I can't recognize that as saying that.

Q: Do you knew what type of car he was driving?

A: No.

Q: Do you know what color it was?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Was the man wearing glasses?

A: I couldn't see.

Q: At the time you shot this man, was his ear near the front gate of the Tate residence?

A: It pulled up and stopped.

Q: Where did it stop? You can look at this diagram here.

Here is the front gate of the residence. Now, you, Katie, Sadie and Linda climbed over the front gate, is that correct, and as soon as you got over you saw the headlights of the car approaching; is that correct?

A: No, I saw the headlights more on down, I believe.

Q: You saw the headlights approaching the front gate; is that correct?

A: As we were walking down the driveway, I remember I saw the headlights coming.

Q: Was the car near the front gate at the time you shot the man?

A: I don't know. I know the car pulled up and stopped and I took the gun and that was it. I don't know where I was on that,

Q: You don't know whether it was near the gate or not?

A: I don't know how far we were. I have no idea.

Q: Was the front of the car pointed directly toward the gate?

A: The car was driving up.

Q: The car was driving toward the gate; right?

A: And stopped, yes.

Q: It was going toward the gate?

A: Yes. It was coming toward us.

Q: Tex, I show you people's 6 for identification. It has been identified as the car in which Steven Parent was seated at the time that you shot him.

You will notice, Tex, that the car is pretty close to the garage on the Tate premises.

Do you know how the car got from where you shot Mr. Parent to where it is right now on this photograph?

A: No, I do not.

Q: You pushed it, didn't you?

A: No, uh-uh, didn't push it,

Q: You don't know how it got there?

A: No, I do not.

Q: After you shot Mr. Parent, did you turn off the ignition on the car?

A: No, I didn't do anything,

Q: All you did was shoot the man?

A: Shoot, right.

Q: Any particular part of his body that you can recall?

A: No.

Q: Didn't you tell Dr. Bohr, Dr. Vernon Bohr, that you shot the top part of his body four or five times?

A: Well, I just stuck the gun in there and probably was the top part of the body.

Q: Now, you say you entered through the front door of the Tate residence?

A: The best I can recall, I must have walked in the front door.

Q: Do you recall Linda testifying that you cut a screen on one of the windows --

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: Object to whatever Linda testified --

THE COURT: Objection sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Directing your attention to People's 26 for identification, a photograph of a window in the front of the Tate residence, Tex, and there is a screen off the window and it is slit horizontally, did you cut that screen?

A: No, I did not.

Q: You didn't cut the screen, open the window and enter through the window?

A: No

Q: You entered through the front door; is that right?

A: The best I can recall, that's the way I entered.

Q: Did you knock on the door, Tex, ring the doorbell or anything like that?

A: I just walked in, I believe.

Q: Was the door open at the time?

A: I believe it was closed; that's not real clear to me, you know, about the position of the door or anything.

Q: When you entered the residence there was a man on the couch; is that right?

A: Yes.

Q: Was he sleeping?

A: Yes, I guess he was asleep, yeah.

Q: Did you wake him up and tell him, "I'm the devil here to do the devil's work"?

A: No, I didn't say anything like that.

Q: What's the next thing that happened after you entered the residence?

A: I remember Sadie popped on the scene and she started bringing people out of the back door thing, and that's what happened.

Q: All right. Was one of the men rather short?

A: I don't recall the size that much.

Q: Was he shorter than the man who was on the couch?

A: I never did see the height of the people that much.

Q: Was that because they were on their knees, Tex, when you were stabbing them?

A: I know one person was falling down or something while Sadie was stabbing him.

Q: I believe you testified yesterday that the people you murdered were like blobs to you. What do you mean by that?

A: Well, it was kind of in -- kind of in between, like I said, a dark and a light, you know; I just didn't -- it was hard to see the. It was hard to tell what they were, really. It was hard to tell what they were in a lot of ways.

Q: You know they were human beings, didn't you?

A: The thought of anything like that just didn't occur, you know. The only thought in my head was just what Manson said.

Q: Are you saying, then, that these people whom you killed were just objects to you?

A: Yes, I guess so.

Q: Didn't you testify yesterday that the woman on the front lawn -- No. 1, it was a woman, it wasn't an object, but it was a woman -- and didn't you testify that she was covered with blood, yesterday?

A: She was covered with blood, yes.

Q: And it was a woman?

A: The best I could tell, because she had on a gown, had on a piece of cloth like; it must have been a woman,

Q: Well, now, a woman with blood on her, that's not a blob, is it, Tex?

A: Well, that's what it appeared to me to be, you know; that's what it looked kind of like.

Q: Looked kind of like a woman with blood on her?

A: Well, it hard to say what she did look like, you know, really.

Q: You also testified yesterday that there was a man inside -- again, not a blob or an object, but a man, and he was wearing blue jeans?

A: Right; that's right,

Q: Is this what you mean when you say "blobs," men with blue jeans and women with blood on them? Is that what you mean when you say "blobs"?

A: I don't really mean anything, you know, really mean that much. I don't know, I just know they were kind of in between, like I said.

Q: Going back to Dr. Frank, again, the gentleman seated here on my right, did you tell Dr. Frank this, quote, "The girls were bringing everyone into the room. A man came running toward me. My gun was empty, so I stabbed him again and again"?



Did you tell Dr. Frank that?

A: I know I shot the guy until the gun was empty, and then I stabbed the nano yes.

Q: Do you recall the testimony, Tex, that two live rounds were found in this revolver when it was found over the side of the hill?

A: Yes, I recall it.

Q: Two live rounds?

A: Yes.

Q: The gun wasn't empty, then, was it?

A: It was empty to me at the time. I mean, I shot it all I could.

Q: Was this gun loaded when you left Spahn Ranch on the night of the Tate murders?

A: I never did look at the gun; I never did look at it.

Q: Weren't you concerned about whether it was empty or not?

Charlie told you to go out and kill everyone; you weren't going to go out with an unloaded gun, were you?

A: I didn't know anything about guns.

Q: You didn't know anything about guns?

A: No.

Q: Didn't you fire, test fire, practice fire this revolver out at Spahn Ranch on several occasions?

A: No.

MR. BUBRICK: If your Honor please, I think that is kind of a question that in without form, whether it was test fired, shot, or whatever it was; it is compound.

THE COURT: The question is, did you fire that gun at the Spahn Ranch, Mr. Watson.

THE WITNESS: No, I never had fired the gun.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: How many times would you say you stabbed Mr. Frykowski? This is the man that was on the couch; how many times do you think you stabbed him?

A: I really have no idea how many times, you know.

Q: More than once?

A: It could have been one to a whole bunch of them, you know; I'm just not for sure how many times I stabbed him.

Q: Did you shoot him, too?

A: Not that I recall, no.

Q: I show you People's 172, a photograph of Wojciech Frykowski's head.

There are 13 one-quarter inch lacerations on the top of his head. Do you know how he got those, Tex?

A: I know I was hitting with the gun, and it might have been that.

Q: You have have had something to do with it; right?

A: Like I said, I know I had -- was hitting, you know.

Q: You were hitting him on the top of the head?

A: I can't recall where I was hitting him, but I was hitting him.

Q: Were you hitting him with the butt of the revolver?

A: Yes.

Q: So you grabbed the revolver by the barrel, then, and you hit him over the head with the butt?

A: I was using the gun like that, yes.

Q: Do you know how many times you stabbed Sebring or Folger or Sharon Tate?

A: No, I don't.

Q: Did the people scream when you were stabbing them?

A: I remember everything being real wild and it was just a lot of static, you know.

Q: Were they screaming at the top of their lungs?

A: A lot of loud noises, yes.

Q: What kind of noises?

A: Just -- I guess you could say screams and just a lot of loud noises.

Q: Were they screaming for their lives?

A: I don't know; I was just -- really had no thought of anything like that.

Q: One thing you do know, Tex, you weren't screaming for your life, were you?

MR. KEITH: Object to the question; it is argumentative.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Was this screaming just for a very brief moment or did it go on a long period of time?

A: There really wasn't any time, just --

Q: What do you mean, there wasn't any time?

A: It's hard for me to distinguish time during that period of time, you know.

Q: During what period of time?

A: Well, during the time you were talking about, I guess.

Q: Are you talking about, let's say, August of 1969?

A: I'm just talking about on account of the trip I was on, you know.

Q: Did you have any conception of time during December of 1969?

A: I know we didn't use time, you know.

Q: Did time mean anything to you?

A: No.

Q: Didn't you testify this morning that a typical belladonna trip took about 10 days?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: How did you come up with the 10-day figure?

A: That's just the time it took, I guess you'd say.

Q: So you are aware of time, right, and you were aware of time?

A: Well, at times I was; but times it would pass like sometimes you might think you are out three days and you might not be out but a day, you know.

Q: How long were you inside the Tate residence, talking about time again?

A: Like I say, I just can't tell on that.

Q: Did these people run away from you, Tex?

A: Just when I -- I know when the guy Sadie was stabbing on, going out the door, you know, and I was hitting, hitting him with the gun, that that's the only move away.

Q: Did the other people just lie down and play dead and let you do that you wanted to?

A: That's the way they were when I got to them.

Q: By the time you got to them?

A: Yes.

Q: They were just lying down?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you know how they got that way?

A: I know the girls was at them before I was because, like Katie ran over and

grabbed me by the arm one time, or shoulder, and said, "Come over here," so that where I went.

Q: So they were already lying down when you came upon the scene?

A: Yes, right.

Q: Didn't you testify yesterday that Sadie brought a man into the living room and then she told you to watch out, he was coming towards you and you shot him; didn't you say that yesterday?

A: Yes, that's when I shot him; but I thought you were talking about stabbing. I shot the man coming toward me, yes.

Q: In other words, when it came around to the time when you stabbed them they were already on the ground?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: And they got on the ground because you shot them; is that right?

A: Yes, that time, yes.

Q: Didn't you just say about a half a minute ago that you didn't know how they got on the ground?

A: Well, one of them, I did, I guess; one of them I put on the ground when I shot, yes.

Q: I guess so.

Did these people fight or struggle with you at all, Tex?

A: No, they didn't -- maybe the one going out the door, when I was hitting, but there wasn't any struggle, you know.

Q: Did they beg you not to kill them; did they say, "Please don't kill me. Please let me live?"

Did they say that to you, Tex?

A: I couldn't hear that, no, I could just hear a bunch of screams and hollers.

Q: Didn't you tell Diane Lake in Olancho that Sharon Tate pleaded for her life; didn't you tell her that?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Did you hear anything that they said?

A: No, I did not.

Q: What did it feel like when you stabbed these people, Tex; what type of sensation was it?

A: I had no feeling.

Q: Did you see blood coming out of their bodies when you stabbed them?

A: I saw blood, but I -- I don't know, I guess it was coming out, yeah.

Q: They were covered with blood, weren't they?

A: Yes.

Q: There was blood all over the floor; right?

A: I didn't see the blood on the floor,

Q: Did you enjoy stabbing these peoples, Tex?

A: I had no thought of nothing like --

Q: Pardon?

A: I had no thought of anything like that.

Q: Didn't you tell Diane Lake in Olancho, California, that it was fun to kill these people?

A: No, I did not.

Q: You deny that, too?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: Did these people die right away, Tex, when you stabbed them; or were they alive for quite a period of time?

MR. BUBRICK: If he knows, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Well, he was there; that's why I'm asking him.

MR. BUBRICK: This, think, is a kind of a legal-medical concept, your Honor.

THE COURT: He can tell the appearance.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Did they appear to die as soon as you stabbed them the first time, or were they lying there for a period of time and you continued to stab them?

A: I know I stabbed them, but I don't know how long.

Q: You stabbed them until they were dead; right?

A: I stabbed them; I don't know when they died. I don't know. I just don't; I wasn't thinking about that.

Q: You are aware that there were no postmortem wounds on the victims, no

wounds inflicted after death?

A: I don't know about that.

Q: Is that because you finally stopped when they stopped breathing?

A: I remember I stopped only because the girls would come over and get me and take me to somebody else.

Q: Would you demonstrate to the jury with your hand how you stabbed these people?

A: I raised my hand up and I stabbed them like that.

Q: Did you feel the knife penetrating their bones?

A: I didn't have any feeling like that; it wasn't like that.

Q: Once your knife entered their bodies, Tex, did you lift up on the knife or move it at all, or did you pull it right out?

A: The best I can recall is just going up and down.

Q: Let's look at this revolver again, Tex. I notice that the right-hand grip on this revolver is off. Do you know how it fell off?

A: It must have fell off when I was hitting the rnn.

Q: Hitting Mr. Frykowski?

A: Yes.

Q: I also notice, Tex, that this trigger guard here is broken. Do you know how that happened?

A: I don't know for sure how either one of them happened, really.

Q: I also notice that the ejection spring housing here beneath the barrel is bent. Do you know how that happened?

A: Not for sure.

Q: You also notice, Tex, that this barrel is kind of loose. Do you know how that happened?

A: I am not for sure about that.

Q: You were hitting Mr. Frykowski with all the strength you could muster, right, Tex?

A: I was hitting him, yes.

Q: What I mean is you were hitting him hard. You weren't throwing kisses at him. You were hitting him hard; right?

THE COURT: The objection is sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You were hitting him hard; right.

MR. BUBRICK: Asked and answered, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: It hasn't been answered yet.

THE COURT: You may answer that question.

THE WITNESS: I really don't know what I was doing.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You don't know whether you were hitting him?

A: I was hitting him, I guess, yes.

Q: You don't know how hard?

A: No.

Q: Did you take \$70 from inside the residence?

A: No, I did not

Q: You told Linda that you did, didn't you?

A: No.

Q: Do you know Danny DeCarlo?

A: Yes, I know Danny DeCarlo.

Q: You told Danny DeCarlo that, didn't you?

MR. BUBRICK: Objection.

THE COURT: What is the objection?

MR. BUBRICK: It is hearsay. He can lay no foundation.

MR. BUGLIOSI: It is not hearsay, your Honor, an admission, an exception to the hearsay rule.

MR. BUBRICK: May we approach the bench, your Honor?

THE COURT: Yes, you may.

(The following proceedings were had at the bench.)

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, it is my understanding that before you could ask a question to lay the basis for impeachment foundation, that you have to be prepared to show that if you get the answer you don't want, you can complete the impeachment. Now, there is no question but that they cannot. Danny DeCarlo is a fugitive from justice, not in the state of California. He is out of this country.

THE COURT: If this is the foundation you are laying and he does not complete it, do

you intend to complete the impeachment by calling Danny DeCarlo?

MR. BUGLIOSI: We will get him, yes, if we can. I mean I have no guarantee. If we can't, we can't.

THE COURT: If you don't I will instruct the jury to disregard it.

MR. BUBRICK: Thank you.

THE COURT: Just remind me, though. I will make a note of it too.

MR. BUGLIOSI: For the record we are having a difficult time locating him. The last we heard he was in Canada, but we do intend to call him in if we can find him.

THE COURT: If you do that, you have a right to complete it. If not, I will strike it.

(The following proceedings were had in open court.)

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You say you know Danny DeCarlo?

A: Yes.

Q: Didn't you tell Danny DeCarlo that you took \$70 from the people inside the residence?

A: No, I did not.

Q: You, Sadie and Katie then after the killings, you went back to the car at the bottom of the hill; right?

A: Yes, right.

Q: And I believe you testified yesterday you don't know how you got out of the gate. Did you climb around it or did you go through the gate?

A: No, we walked right through the gate, I remember.

Q: Did you press the inside button?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: When you got down to the car, Tex, do you recall Sadie telling you that she had lost her knife inside the residence?

A: No.

Q: Do you recall getting angry at her for losing her knife?

A: No.

Q: Do you recall getting angry at Linda for running down to the bottom of the hill?

A: No

Q: Did you, Katie, and Sadie change your clothing as the car was in motion driving



away from the residence?

A: Yes, I did. I changed my clothes. I don't know about the other people.

Q: Linda steered for you while you were changing your clothing?

A: No, Linda was driving.

Q: Now, you eventually ended up in front of a house; is that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: And there was a hose extending out into the street?

A: There was a hose there but I'm not sure where it was extending.

Q: What did you do in front of that house with that hose?

A: I recall getting a drink and it is kind of fuzzy whether I washed anything or not. It is kind of fuzzy.

Sometimes I think I might have and sometimes I might not have. I don't know.

THE COURT: Would you read that back to me, please.

(The record was read by the reporter.)

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You testified yesterday that you were just drinking water in front of the house.

A: That is what I believe, you know.

Q: You believe you were drinking water?

A: Yes.

Q: You do not believe that you were washing blood off of your body; is that correct?

A: That is what is fuzzy right there.

Q: Do you recall Dr. Bailey, one of the psychiatrists who examined you, asking you this question:

"Q: Do you remember your driving to a house where you and Sadie and Katie washed the blood off?"

And your answering: "Yes."

Do you recall answering "yes" to that question by Dr. Bailey?

MR. BUBRICK: What page is that, Mr. Bugliosi?

MR. BUGLIOSI: On page 17 of Dr. Bailey's report.

Q: Do you recall telling Dr. Bailey that?

A: I believe I recall hearing Sadie say that -- is he listening?

THE COURT: That is all right. You just answer the question.

THE WITNESS: I recall Sadie saying that we had to stop and wash the blood off. That is what I recall hearing Sadie say in the car.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Do you recall telling Dr. Frank over here and also Dr. Fort that you hosed the blood off your body in front of that house?

A: That is what is fuzzy. Sometimes I think I did and sometimes I don't. I really can't recall that.

Q: Do you recall telling them that, though?

A: I very well could have, yes.

Q: Why did you want to wash the blood of your body?

A: I know Charlie had told use to clean up and throw the clothes away and Sadie also mentioned it too, and that is what we were doing, you know, I guess, if I did wash my hand or if I did wash myself anywhere.

Q: Do you recall hearing the testimony of the gray-haired man about your height early in the trial?

MR. BUBRICK: I think it would be immaterial whether he heard it or not, your Honor.

THE COURT: Sustained.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I want to ask him if he recognises this man, your Honor.

THE COURT: Ask him if he saw the man.

Did you see the gray-haired man that took the stand here? I believe his name was Weber.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Rudolf Weber, that is right.

THE COURT: The man who chased you from that house.

THE WITNESS: Yes, I know, but I don't know if that was the man for sure, but I do recall the man at the house, yes.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Did you run from where the hose was down to the car at the bottom of the street?

A: As I recall correctly the car wasn't that far away from the house. It was just a few steps from the house, see, down just a little ways, not too far, though, maybe right past his driveway is where I believe it was.

Q: Did you run to the car or did you walk?

A: I believe I was walking, you know, kind of a walk. I know he was behind us or something and we were walking or maybe a fast walk or I don't really know how. I can't recall that much.

Q: Do you recall the man asking the group of you if that was your car at the bottom of the street and your answering "No, we are walking."

Do you recall that?

A: I can't recall that, no.

Q: Did you tell him that?

A: I could have but I don't recall it. I can recall saying I was getting a drink, that is all.

Q: Why did you lie to him and tell him that you were getting a drink?

MR. KEITH: Object to the question on the ground it assumes facts not in evidence.

THE COURT: Sustained.

MR. BUGLIOSI: He said he may very well have been washing blood off his body, If that is the case, it would be a lie.

THE COURT: Objection sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Did Linda throw the knives out of the car?

A: Yes, I believe so, yes, and clothes and stuff.

Q: And you told her to wipe the fingerprints off the knives before she threw them out of the car; is that right?

A: No. That is not right.

Q: Do you know who threw that revolver out of the car?

A: No, I do not.

Q: Did you throw anything out of the car?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Do you recall going to a gasoline station and telling the girls to wipe the rest of the blood off their bodies?

A: No, I do not.

Q: Did you?

A: I went into the restroom, yes.

Q: For what purpose?

A: I looked in the mirror and that is all I can remember doing.

Q: You didn't wash any blood off your body?

A: No.

Q: And you didn't tell the girls to do that?

A: No, I did not.

Q: When you returned to Spahn Ranch Manson was waiting for you, wasn't he?

A: Manson, I remember seeing him and he didn't have on any clothes. He was running up and down the ranch.

Q: Did you tell Charlie what had happened?

A: No. I had no words with Charlie that night.

Q: He didn't ask you?

A: No.

Q: And you didn't volunteer to tell him anything?

A: No.

Q: You are telling the jury then that he sent you out to kill these people but when you came back you and he never said anything to each other; is that that you are telling the jury?

A: Yes, that is right.

Q: Did you ever tell Charlie what happened?

A: No. If I recall, some people were talking to him but I never said anything.

Q: Is it your testimony, Tex, that on the night of the Tate murders you were doing whatever the girls told you to do?

A: I was doing what Charles Manson had told me to do and Charles Manson was the girls and I was Charles Manson and we were all Charles Manson.

Q: So they were doing the thinking and you were doing the acting; is that your testimony?

MR. BUBRICK: That is not what he said, your Honor.

THE COURT: Objection is sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: How is it, Tex, that during the hosing incident you took it upon yourself to talk to Mr. Weber to say that you were just getting a drink of water? How come you were the only one that did the talking?

A: He was confronting me. He walked right up in front of me, to my face.

Q: What did you do on the day after the Tate murders? You came back, you went to sleep, you woke up; what did you do that day?

A: I didn't do anything that day. I did -- I remember waking up and that's about all I did, you know.

Q: Did you watch any television?

A: No, I did not

Q: When is the first time that you found out who the victims were?

A: I never did really know who the victims were. I can't recall at all when I found that out.

Q: On August the 19th, you told Diane Lake, you mentioned Sharon Tate's name to Diane; didn't you?

A: Not that I can recall, no.

Q: Now, on the night of the LaBianca murders, was Charlie driving the car most of the time?

A: The best I can recall, Charlie and Linda was driving the car.

Q: Did they drive to Pasadena at all?

A: I'm not for sure where we were all the time; I was kind of lost on that, but --

Q: Do you remember stopping in front of a church?

A: I remember stopping a couple of times. I believe we did stop in front of a church, yes; Charlie got out a couple of times, I remember.

Q: Were you going to enter that church?

A: Was I going to?

Q: Yes.

A: Not that I know of. I know Charlie got out and got back in the car, and that was it.

Q: Would you have gone into that church if he asked you?

MR. BUBRICK: It calls for speculation, your Honor.

THE COURT: Sustained.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Do you remember an incident on Sunset Boulevard where Manson was going to kill the driver of a white sports car?

A: No, I do not.

Q: Do you know what time you arrived at the residence next door to the LaBianca residence, Harold True's former residence?

A: I didn't never go to Harold True's residence, I don't believe.

Q: The car was parked next door to the LaBianca residence; you were aware of that?

A: I'm aware of getting out of the car; it seems I just walked straight to a house.

Q: Manson got out of the car first; is that right?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: And he walked up the driveway alone?

A: I didn't see where he was walking. I didn't see Charlie after he left the car.

Q: He got out alone, though?

A: Yes, he got out alone.

Q: How long was he gone?

A: I just don't know.

Q: And when he came back, what did he say to you?

A: He told the girls to get out of the car and me to get out of the care and walked around the side of the car -- the back of the car; and he said something to the effect to do what you did last night or kill them as gruesome, or make sure they are dead as gruesome as you can, or something to that. It's not real clear what he did say right now.

Q: Earlier in the evening you told Charlie you needed better weapons than you had the previous night; right?

A: No.

Q: You, Leslie and Katie then entered the residence; is that right?

A: You said Katie and Leslie and I?

Q: Yes.

A: Yes, that's who went.

Q: Did you enter through the front door?

A: Yes.

Q: Was the door already open?

A: I don't -- I don't really know; I know I went in after them, kind of, you know, behind them. That's all I remember, kind of.

Q: Was there a man and a woman inside the residence?

A: It was hard for me to recognize with the things over their head, but it must have been a man and a woman, yes.

Q: What were they doing when you entered the residence?

A: The man was just laying down on the couch.

Q: Did he say anything?

A: No.

Q: Where was the woman?

A: The first time I saw the woman was when I walked into the bedroom, Leslie was stabbing her; that's where the woman was.

Q: Was the woman saying anything?

A: No.

Q: Did these two people -- let's call them Mr. and Mrs. La Bianca -- did they scream at all?

A: No, I heard no sounds that night.

Q: They didn't make any sound at all?

A: No.

Q: I show you People's 91, Tex, and the word "War," w-a-r, is carved in Mr. LaBianca's stomach. Did you carve those letters into his stomach?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Do you have any idea who did?

A: No.

Q: But you did stab this gentleman?

A: Yes.

Q: How many times?

A: I don't know how many times.

Q: I show you People's 217; you notice there is a knife sticking into Mr. LaBianca's throat. Did you do that, Tex?

A: No, I did not.

Q: Do you know who did?

A: No.

Q: Showing you 91 again People's 91, there is a fork protruding from Mr. LaBianca's stomach. Did you do that?

A: No, I did not

Q: Do you know who did?

A: No, I do not.

Q: I show you People's 210, Tex; have you ever seen that knife before?

A: No, I haven't.

Q: Did you stab Mr. LaBianca with that knife?

A: No.

Q: Did you go into the kitchen and get any kitchen utensils from the LaBianca residence?

A: No.

Q: I show you People's 207; have you ever seen that fork before?

A: Not before here in the courtroom, no.

THE COURT: Might this be a good time, Mr. Bugliosi?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, your Honor.

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will have our afternoon recess at this time; and, once again, please heed the usual admonition.

(Recess)

THE COURT: People versus Watson.

Let the records show all jurors, counsel and the defendant are present.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Tex, in Olancho, after these killings, did you make Diane Lake promise not to tell anyone what you had told her?

A: No, I did not.

Q: You did buy some newspapers up in Olancho?

A: No. There was a newspaper bought, I believe.

Q: When I say Olancho, I am talking about the time that you were up there after these killings around August the 18th, 19th or 20th, around that period of time did you buy any newspapers up there?

A: No.

Q: Did you read any of the newspapers?



A: I'm not for sure about that. I might have had one in my hand but I am not -- I can't say for sure.

Q: Were you concerned about what was being written in the newspapers about these killings?

A: No. I had no real thought.

Q: You weren't concerned about it?

A: No, I hadn't thought.

Q: Was it your state of mind, however, that the police certainly would be looking for the killers?

MR. BUBRICK: Calls for a conclusion as to his state of mind.

MR. BUGLIOSI: His state of mind is relevant.

THE COURT: I will let him answer that one.

THE WITNESS: What was the question again, please?

THE COURT: Do you remember the question, Mr, Bugliosi?

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Was it your state of mind after those killings that the police, Los Angeles Police Department, certainly would be looking for these killers, whoever committed the killings?

A: No, it wasn't real to me.

Q: So you didn't think, then, that the police would want to know who committed those killings?

A: Just was no thought about that.

Q: At the time you killed these people, Tex, was it your belief that it wasn't wrong to kill them?

A: Everything was perfect.

Q: I will ask you again, was it your belief that it wasn't wrong to kill them?

A: There just was no thought of right or wrong; there was no thought about it.

Q: Well, did you feel you were doing anything wrong when you killed them?

A: I had no feelings.

Q: So you felt it was perfect?

A: Everything was perfect.

Q: Now, between the time of those murders in August of 1969 and the time that you

were arrested in December of 1969, a period of about four months, you certainly met and spoke to many people; is that correct?

A: Not a lot of people. I kind of, you know, stayed to myself all the time.

Q: Well, didn't you talk to people in your hometown?

A: No.

Q: Didn't you go out on a date with Jeanne Mallett from your hometown?

A: She came by and got me a couple of times, yes.

Q: You talked to her, didn't you?

A: Yes, I talked to her.

Q: So you talked to people back in Texas?

A: Yes, a few people.

Q: You went to Hawaii; you spoke to people in Hawaii, didn't you?

A: I didn't know anybody there.

Q: Did you talk at all to anybody in Hawaii?

A: Sure; I had to communicate.

Q: All right. Did you talk to anyone in Mexico?

A: Yes, I'd have to talk to somebody.

Q: And you were hitchhiking? right?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: And the person who would pick you up, I imagine you would talk to that person? right?

A: Yes.

Q: And certainly, Tex, you considered these killings a serious event in your life -- is that a proper word, serious, significant?

A: At that time it really wasn't real, nothing was real, you know.

Q: Well, you know you had killed these people?

A: I'm not -- it just wasn't real to me at that time.

Q: It wasn't real to you that you had killed the people?

A: No.

Q: When did you discover that you had a scratch on the palm of your hand?

A: I believe it was in Olancha or a short time afterwards.

Q: So you were aware of the scratch on your hand but not the fact that seven people were killed; is that what you are saying?

MR. KEITH: Objection --

MR. BUBRICK: Objection; argumentative.

THE COURT: Objection sustained, argumentative.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Tex, since you thought that it was perfect to do what you did at the Tate and LaBianca residences, since you thought that it was perfect and since you met and spoke to many people between the time of these murders and the time you were arrested in December of 1969, did you tell anyone that you had done this?

A: I really wasn't sure what I had done.

No, I did not tell anyone.

Q: Why didn't you Tex?

A: I don't know why.

Q: Since you thought of that what you did was perfect, Tex, between the time of the murders and the time of your arrest, why didn't you contact the police department and tell them that you had participated in these murders?

A: I don't know why.

Q: I believe you testified that you don't feel the same way about killing at the present time as you did at the time of the killings.

Did you testify to that on direct examination of Mr. Bubrick?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: You testified you had no feelings then but you do now; is that correct?

A: Yes. My feelings are gaining each day.

Q: When did you acquire this new feeling?

A: I am not for sure. I gained feelings, lost feelings, gained feelings, lost feelings, and gaining and it would be hard to say, you know.

Q: But at the present time you do have a feeling about killing other people?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: But at the time of these killings, you did not; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Again talking about Dr. Frank here, when he interviewed you, did you tell him

this: "I saw a guy laying on the couch. He started coming at me and I shot him and then stabbed him and stabbed him and stabbed him. People were running everywhere. I had no feelings then or now. It doesn't affect me, although I can see her others can find it wrong to kill."

Do you recall telling Dr. Frank that?

A: Yes, I believe I did at that time.

Q: Now, when you said to Dr. Frank, "I had no feelings then or now," what did you mean by that?

A: Well, at the time he interviewed me, I must have not had any feelings then.

Q: He interviewed you in March and April of 1971, quite a long time after the killings. At that time, you still didn't think it was wrong to kill; is that right, Tex?

A: After the treatment I got when I got to California, I kind of flipped out and I didn't know what to believe at that time

Q: Oh, your belief was that --

A: True.

Q: -- that you had no feelings?

A: True.

Q: So you certainly had a negative type of a belief; right?

A: At that time, yes.

Q: At the time of the trial, you do have a different feeling; is that right?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: Does the fact that you are on trial for murder have any connection with your change of mind, Tex?

A: No, it doesn't.

Q: When you told Dr. Frank, "I had no feelings then or now. It doesn't affect me. Although I can see how others can feel it is wrong to kill --" when you told him that, was it your state of mind that although you didn't think it was wrong to kill these people, you knew that other people thought it was wrong. Was that your state of mind?

A: I don't really know my state of mind then. I guess that is the way it was to me at that time.

Q: At what time? At the time you talked to Dr. Frank?

A: Yes.

Q: And also at the time of the killings?

A: No. At the time of the killings, I had no feelings at all at that time.

Q: When you were at the Barker Ranch with the family in late August, September and October of 1969, did you still love Charles Manson during that period of time?

A: He was still the same to me.

Q: You still thought he was Jesus Christ?

A: He lost me somewhere in there at the end of when I left, but he still had the effect on me, you know, the same effect a lot of ways,

Q: Did you love him at that time?

A: He was me at that time. It was just one person at the ranch all the time.

Q: Are you telling this jury then that when Manson told you to go out and kill these people, that you were talking to yourself?

A: No. I was Charles Manson. That is who I was.

Q: After these murders, Tex, were you hiding from the police at all?

A: No, I was not.

Q: When you went to Mexico and Hawaii, were you hiding?

A: No, I was going back to Charles Manson, trying to.

Q: Did you think he was in Hawaii?

A: No, I ended up in the desert. I was kind of -- I couldn't pull, you know, to him and then something would always tell me not to go back and something would tell me to go back; and I ended up back there, but he wasn't there.

Q: But you knew he wasn't in Hawaii?

A: That is true.

Q: Why did you go to Hawaii?

A: I guess I was running from him kind of, you know; I don't really know why.

Q: Running from him? You just said you went to him, Tex.

A: Well, I was going to him, and sometimes my mind -- it was in a state of confusion, like, I was all messed up.

Q: During this period of time between the time of the murder and the time you were arrested, did you want to be arrested?

A: I had no thought about being arrested, really.

Q: Were you hoping the police wouldn't find you, Tex?

A: I had no thought of it, no; I just really had no thought of what was happening.

Q: But you had enough thought not to tell anybody; is that right?

A: I never did really know that it was real. Just wasn't real to me in any way,

Q: How do you feel about Charlie Manson at the present time?

A: At the present time I feel that he was kind of a false god or something, a false prophet, as you would say, or something.

Q: Do you feel he was an evil man?

A: Yes, I do.

Q: And when did you come to that conclusion?

A: Well, since I have been slowly getting back to my parents and writing them every day, and I'd say for about the past -- I don't know how many months, I have been slowly getting back to what I think is right, you know.

Q: The closer you came to the trial, the farther you got away from Charles Manson; is that right, Tex?

A: I was treated so much like Charles Manson when -- everybody was calling me Charles Manson when I got to California, seemed like I became Charles Manson again.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I just have one more question.

May we approach the bench on this?

(The following proceedings were had at the bench out of the hearing of the jury)

MR. BUGLIOSI: On direct examination I believe he testified that he has different feelings now, he thinks that it is wrong to kill.

I think that we should be able to go into the fact that in October of 1970 he told Dr. Owre, a doctor at Atascadero, "I could kill you very easily."

I think if they can go into something like that, I think we can; moreover, it is not a crime, we are not putting on evidence of another crime.

THE COURT: You want to ask him --

MR. BUGLIOSI: If he told Dr. Owre --

THE COURT: When was this?

MR. BUGLIOSI: In October of 1970, when he was sent up there from Los Angeles to

Atascadero, for examining him up there.

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, that is going to open up --

THE COURT: It is going to open up an awful lot, but --

MR. BUBRICK: It is going to open up a tremendous issue.

THE COURT: Are you going to call Dr. Owre?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, but I wanted to see his reaction to that, if he --

MR. BUBRICK: If you ask him that question --

MR. BUGLIOSI: -- denies it, and then Owre confirms it again, it shows he's not telling the truth on the stand.

MR. BUBRICK: I tell you, Vince, if you ask him that question no matter what he says, we are going to open up every single thing that happened to him at Atascadero.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Everything?

MR. BUBRICK: Everything.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We intended to call the Atascadero --

MR. BUBRICK: I am going to bring in people -- he has told me about beatings he got at Atascadero; if that is so, we will try the conduct of the state officials at Atascadero.

MR. BUGLIOSI: I don't know that that would be admissible.

THE COURT: If it would relate to his state of mind, and you are going into his state of mind, they have the right --

MR. BUGLIOSI: Assuming they can make an offer of proof, there is some nexus between his treatment up there and his offering to kill --

MR. BUBRICK: Just a minute, just a minute.

THE COURT: That is not a correct statement.

MR. BUBRICK: That is not a threat to kill.

You want an admission that he said certain words, but that is not a threat to kill, because the officer said -- I heard the statement; he said it was an explosive response, that all. It was an explosive response, not a threat to kill.

MR. BUGLIOSI: And that were his words? "I can kill you very easily"?

MR. BUBRICK: Something like that.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Do you want to stipulate that he said it?

MR. BUBRICK: No, I won't stipulate to it.

THE COURT: Are you objecting to his asking the question?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, I am, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: We intend to call the Atascadero psychiatrist --

THE COURT: You are going to call him anyway?

MR. BUGLIOSI: I am interested in whether he will deny it; he is denying everything --

THE COURT: The funny part, he is not denying everything, Vince.

MR. BUGLIOSI: He is not denying the seven killings, but he is denying the other things Linda testified to.

THE COURT: I thought he admitted a lot that Linda testified to.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Really?

THE COURT: I thought so. There are divergences here and there, of course -- the rope --

MR. BUGLIOSI: The rope, en route to the Tate residence, he denied telling the girls to do whatever he told them to do and denies telling Linda to wrap the revolver and the knives up --

THE COURT: yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: He denies telling her to wipe off fingerprints --

THE COURT: There is no question about that, there is a conflict between them, there is no question.

MR. BUBRICK: It is conceivable that Linda may have been stretching it a little bit.

THE COURT: Well, if you think that is important, I will allow you to ask him that; but on redirect examination I am going to allow them to go into the why and the wherefore.

MR. BUGLIOSI: You are going into it anyway?

MR. BUBRICK: I am not; I do not --

MR. KAY: Judge, before we go back, I want to talk to Vince a minute.

MR. BUBRICK: You notice we have avoided Atascadero all the time.

MR. KAY: Our investigator just informed me I hadn't called Dr. Bailey's office to tell Dr. Bailey that I wanted him next Tuesday morning; and evidently Dr. Bailey is leaving tomorrow night for Hawaii; so that if it is all right, we would like to put him on out of order tomorrow morning.

THE COURT: I think we can accommodate you; but how about this present question?



MR. KAY: That has nothing to do with this.

THE COURT: Let's settle one thing at a time.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May I as Mr. Bubrick, are you saying there is a connection between this statement and the treatment that he got up at Atascadero?

MR. BUBRICK: I am. He went up to Atascadero with my specific instructions not to discuss this crime with anybody, not to tell them a single solitary thing about it, and I will take the witness stand and --

MR. KAY: You can't

MR. BUBRICK: Don't tell me what I can do; the judge will tell me what I can do.

I am prepared to do that if necessary; that's why he didn't say a word to anybody in Atascadero about this case. They kept prompting him, prompting him, prompting him. Owre and that staff just leading him on in an effort to get him to say something.

I made two trips to Atascadero and I told them, "He is not going to tell you a thing, those are my orders."

MR. BUGLIOSI: So, when they leaned on him, he said, "I could kill you very easily"? You can put that on.

MR. BUBRICK: They took it out of context.

MR. BUGLIOSI: You can put that on.

MR. BUBRICK: I will.

THE COURT: Your instructions were that they were not to interview him --

MR. BUBRICK: That is what I told Tex -- I didn't, of course, before he got to Atascadero -- I told him, "When you go there, you are not to talk about this case with anybody; I don't want you to talk to any of the doctors, to anybody up there about the facts of this case."

MR. BUGLIOSI: Of course, they are not members of law enforcement; nor, are they agents, really, so I think under the law --

THE COURT: I will let you go into it, but then he can --

MR. BUGLIOSI: Yes, he can do that.

THE COURT: All right, go ahead.

(The following proceedings were had in open court within the hearing of the jury)

MR. BUGLIOSI: I have just a few more questions, your Honor.

Q: Going back to the LaBianca murders, Tex, isn't it true that after you had participated in the killing of Leno and Rosemary LaBianca, isn't it true that you told Leslie Van Houton to wipe off all the fingerprints inside the residence?

MR. KEITH: Object to the question, your Honor. May we approach the bench?

THE COURT: That is permissible.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: It Isn't that true, Tex?

A: No, it is not.

Q: What did you do with the knives that were used to kill Leno and Rosemary LaBianca?

A: I guess they went the same place the clothes went, but I never saw the knife after we left the houses

Q: You left your knife inside the house?

A: No,

Q: What did you do with your knife?

A: The girls were carrying it, all the stuff down the road, you know, and when I went to sleep under the tree, that is where I never saw anything again, you know.

Q: Each of you threw your knives and clothing inside of a garbage can in an alley near the LaBianca residence; isn't that true, Tex?

A: No. I didn't throw mine away, no

Q: One more question, Tex; You were up at Atascadero in October 1970; is that correct?

A: I guess that is when I was there.

Q: And you were interviewed by a doctor by the name of Alfred Owre, O-w-r-e?

A: That is correct.

Q: Do you recall telling Dr. Owre in October 1970 that you could kill him very easily?

A: I told him -- that is what he said I said, but I did say -- that was relating to him in what kind of mind I was at the time of the killings, that I could have killed anyone very easily, if it was him or if it was anyone in that room at the time, I could have killed them. That is what I said.

Q: You were not talking about the present when talking to Dr. Owre, You did not tell him, "I could kill you right now very easily"?

A: I told him that I could kill him right now very easily. I could have said that, yes.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK:

Q: Charles, what was happening to you out at Atascadero at that time?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Too broad a question, your Honor. It is ambiguous and I object upon that ground.

THE COURT: Yes, Narrow it down.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Do you remember the date on which this conversation took place with Dr. Owre?

A: No, I don't remember the exact date, no.

Q: Do you remember where it took place?

A: Yes. It took place in one of the back rooms of the hospital.

Q: Was there anybody else there with Dr. Owre?

A: Yes. There as some technicians there.

Q: Do you remember who they were, their names, or anything of that nature?

A: They were my sponsors at the hospital and one of them's name was Ray Barnett, I believe and Mr. Weams was another one, I believe, and I can't recall who else.

Q: Do you remember what Dr. Owre was talking to you about on this particular occasion?

A: He was talking to me about the Tata and LaBianca murders.

Q: Was he asking you whether you had anything to do with them or not?

A: He constantly asked me about the case all the time.

Q: Did you have any instructions when you went to Atascadero?

A: Yes. I was told by you not to talk to anyone about the case.

Q: Did you tell that to the doctors?

A: I can't recall if I told that to the doctors or not.

Q: Did you tell them you didn't want to discuss the facts of the case with them?

A: I just wouldn't discuss that much at all, because you had told me not to talk to anyone, and I didn't talk to anyone that much.

Q: On the day that this statement was made, what had you been talking about, if

you remember?

A: I don't know. They kept calling me Charles Manson instead of Charles Watson.

Q: Dr. Owre did?

A: Yes. They would always act like they had made a mistake. They would say Mr. Manson, or Charles Manson and --

MR. BUGLIOSI: Your Honor, I move to strike that on the ground that is a conclusion of the witness and ask the Court to admonish the jury to disregard it.

THE COURT: What are you asking me to strike?

MR. BUGLIOSI: His statement that they would act like they had made a mistake as a conclusion on his part, what was on their minds.

THE COURT: The motion will be denied.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: When they said, "Charles Manson," would they say anything else following that?

A: I can't recall. I know everywhere I went during that time I was treated like that and people were calling and treating me like that

Q: When Dr. Owre called you Charles Manson, would he call you by any other name?

A: Sometimes he would say, "Tex" and he was always getting mad at me.

Q: Getting mad at you, why, if you know?

A: Because I wouldn't tell him about the case.

Q: Now, when you made these statements, do you remember what sort of things you were wearing? Were you wearing any articles on you at all?

A: Wearing the wrist restraints that I was in for a long time.

Q: You wore wrist restraints all the time you were there, didn't you?

A: No, not all the time. About, I would say, four weeks or so.

Q: Where were you when you made the statement? Sitting at a table or something like that?

A: No. I was sitting in a chair.

Q: And where was Dr. Owre?

A: He was sitting about from here to where he is from me.

THE COURT: Meaning Mr. Kay?

THE WITNESS: Yes.

THE COURT: About 10 feet or so?

MR. BUGLIOSI: So stipulate.

THE WITNESS: Or maybe a little less than that, about like that.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: How did you happen -- do you remember the exact statement you made?

A: No, but I remember what -- kind of what was going on, was trying to explain to him how I was, you know, at the time of the killings and then he ---

Q: What did you tell him about how you were?

A: I told him that about what I said today, you know, about being Charles Manson and how he told me to -- how he had power over me to make it perfect to kill, to kill that day.

Q: What did Dr. Owre say?

A: Then he said -- then he -- they made a big thing out of it, the technicians and he made a big thing out of it. He just jumped up and hollered, "You just threatened to kill me," you know.

And then he said, "You heard him," to one of the technicians, and then the technician said, "Yes, I heard him." He made a big thing out of something that I didn't really even say.

Q: De you remember what you said?

A: I don't know. It ended up like they said you know, it ended up.

Q: "I could kill you easily"?

A: I don't know if those were the exact words, but they made it seem like it was like that, I know they had me pretty drugged during that time

Q: Had you been having any difficulty with any of the technicians there, Charles?

A: They beat me up three or four times.

Q: And how about the kind of food that you were getting at Atascadero?

A: They wouldn't give me the kinds of foods that was used to eating and X was nearly starving to death and then when I wouldn't eat it, they took me back in the back and beat me up until I passed out and they had to use oxygen on me to wake me up.

Q: Where did you get the food, where did you get whatever you did eat?

A: Out of garbage cans,  
Q: At Atascadero Hospital?  
A: Yes.  
Q: Did you tell that to Dr. Owre?  
A: No.  
Q: Did you tell that to the technicians?  
A: No.  
Q: That you wouldn't eat what they served on your tray; is that right?  
A: I would eat what I could and then I would eat out of the garbage cans what I could.  
Q: Did anybody ever catch you eating out of the garbage cans?  
A: I think once they did but they never did punish me for that.  
Q: Did you ever tell anybody at Atascadero about your participation in the murders?  
A: Nobody.  
Q: Do you remember my coming to Atascadero and talking with you?  
A: Yes.  
Q: Do you remember my instructions to you at Atascadero?  
A: Yes.  
Q: Do you remember my telling you not to continue to talk to anybody there?  
A: That is right.  
Q: And you followed that order?  
A: Yes, I did.  
Q: When this statement was made, did you make any threats to Dr. Owre?  
A: What statement was made?  
Q: When this statement, "I could kill you very easily" was made, when that purported statement was made, did you make any threats to Dr. Owre? Did you get out of your chair?  
A: No.  
Q: You still were wearing wrist restraints?  
A: Yes.  
Q: Was there still this 10-foot separation between you?

A: Yes, plus a couple of big technicians that were beating on me previously and afterwards.

Q: Charles, how were the clothes at Spahn Ranch distributed?

A: They were all just in a big pile in a room everywhere. The clothes were all at that time just in a pile that anybody could go in and get any clothes and wear just anything they could find to wear.

Q: Did you have any clothes of your own at Spahn Ranch?

A: No, none at all.

Q: Did anybody at Spahn Ranch own or hold apart their own separate clothing?

A: No.

Q: So that there was just a sort of community pile. You took what was there; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: Now, you were asked how many times you were at the Cielo Drive address, do you remember that?

Do you remember being at that house?

A: Yes.

Q: You said you were there two or three times, something like that?

A: That's right.

Q: Do you remember what rooms you went into, the times you were there with Dean Moorehouse?

A: We were in the front room one time and I remember sitting at the breakfast table one time.

Q: Well, the breakfast room table, is that the time you went to get bail for Greg Jakobson?

A: That's correct.

Q: Did you ever go to any room other than the breakfast room?

A: That's all.

Q: And I think you said you hitchhiked there?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And when you left the residence, how did you leave?

A: The butler took me a way.

Q: The butler did what?

A: Terry Melcher's chauffeur, I guess I should say, took me down to Sunset Boulevard and I hitchhiked.

Q: He drove you down the hill to Sunset Boulevard; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: On the other occasions when you had previously visited the Cielo Drive address with Dean Moorehouse, do you know whether or not you pressed the button tote gate leading to the house?

A: Dean was driving; I didn't press any button.

Q: Now, are you aware of the gate opening on those occasions and a car driving up the driveway?

A: That's not really clear to me right now. I know, like a lot of things must have happened, but it is not too clear to me.

Q: Well, on the occasions when you drove up there with Mr. Moorehouse, after you got to the house and knock on the door, if you remember?

A: Yes, we'd get out of the house and knock on the door.

Q: Are there any occasions that you remember coming through the driveway, through this gate and finding somebody at the front of the house waiting for you?

A: I can't recall.

Q: Did you know whether or not there was a signaling device from the electric gate to the house?

A: No, I never -- it never came to my mind,

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

THE COURT: You may step down, Mr. Watson.

MR. BUGLIOSI: May we approach the bench?

THE COURT: Do you want the reporter?

MR. BUGLIOSI: No.

(Unreported discussion at the bench.)

(The following proceedings were had in open court in the presence of the jury:)

THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we will recess at this time until 9:30



tomorrow

Once more, do not form or express any opinion in this case; do not discuss it among yourselves, let no one else talk to you about this case and please keep your minds open.

9:30 tomorrow morning.

(At 3:48 p.m. an adjournment was taken until Friday, September 3, 1971 at 9:30 a.m.)

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA, TUESDAY, SEPTEMBER 28, 1971

10:25 A.M.

- - -

THE COURT: Good morning.

THE JURORS: Good morning.

THE COURT: Gentlemen.

Let the record show all jurors are present; all counsel, defendant present.

Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we are getting a rather late start this morning, but we were not twiddling our thumbs. We were discussing matters of law in chambers, so we were busy.

Mr. Bubrick, are you ready to proceed?

MR. BUBRICK: I am, your Honor.

Mr. Watson, would you resume the stand, please.

THE CLERK: Retake the stand, please. You have been previously sworn.

CHARLES WATSON,

the defendant herein, called as a witness in his own behalf in surrebuttal, having been previously duly sworn, testified as follows:

THE CLERK: Would you restate your name for the record?

THE WITNESS: Charles Watson, W-a-t-s-o-n.

THE CLERK: Thank you.

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK

Q: Mr. Watson, I think you told us at the time you originally testified that you were back home in Texas during the month of October 1969; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

Q: Did you see any of your friends during that time?

A: No, not during that time.

Q: Do you know Denise Mallett?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you see her when you were home in Texas?

A: Not until a little before I went to jail, about a week before I went to jail.

Q: What month of the year would that have been?

A: In November.

Q: That is when you saw Denise?

A: Yes.

Q: You say about a week before you went to jail?

A: I'm not -- somewhere in that period.

Q: Can you tell us whether it was before or after, say, Thanksgiving of 1969, which occurs in November?

A: It was before, I believe.

Q: And do you remember how you happened to see her for the first time?

A: She called up on the phone and I was at home.

Q: Were you in Copeville?

A: Yes. And I talked to her on the phone. She said that she was at her grandmother's house in Farmersville and wanted to know if I could come up of something to that effect.

Q: Up until the time that you heard from Denise and she came over, had you seen any of your other friends in Farmersville or Copeville or the area that you lived in?

A: No.

Q: Had any of your old friends been over to visit you?

A: No.

Q: Had you seen any of thee

A: No.

Q: Then Denise did however come to your home in Copeville, did she?

A: Yes, the following day.

Q: Did she drive?

A: Yes.

Q: She came her own car?

A: Yes.

Q: Did you go out with her that day?

A: Yes, in her car, went to Denton.

Q: Do you remember how you were dressed?

A: No, I don't remember how I was dressed. I know I had a couple of new pair of Levis and a couple of new shirts that my brother bought me.

Q: About how many times would you say you saw Denise when you were in Texas in the month of November 1969?

A: About five times.

Q: What did you talk about? Do you remember?

A: I was mostly talking about the end of the world coming and things to that effect.

Q: Did you talk about California?

A: Yes. I said something that I wanted to get back to California where it would be safe to be in the desert when the world came to an end or something like that

Q: Did Denise say anything about coming to California?

A: She told me that she had been out one time. Yes, she wanted to come and live in California or something. She was up in the air about California, you know, she just liked California she said.

Q: Was there ever a discussion between yourself and Denise about a leader in California., being a leader of some girls or anything of that nature?

A: I talked about, when I told her when I left the desert that it was just another guy and I in the desert with a bunch of girls.

Q: Did you ever mention his name?

A: No, I don't believe so.

Q: Did you tell her that the other boy and you were the leaders of this group?

A: No. I just said that when I left the desert that there was just a couple of guys there, me and another guy there with a bunch of girls.

Q: Do you remember generally what your mood was while you were with Denise?

A: Not really; kind of -- it kind of ranged, you know, from different moods, I think; and

around her, though, I was nice, I guess, you know.

Q: She was an old girl friend, was she?

A: Yes.

Q: Somebody you had known before you had come to California?

A: Yes.

Q: All right. Do you remember being confined in the jail at McKinney?

A: Yes.

Q: And were you being visited regularly by your folks or on any sort of a regular basis by your folks?

A: My mother and my father would come every other day and then on weekends my sister or my brother would come.

Q: How were you treated by the jailers there?

A: Very nice. I never did see much of them, really. You know, my cell was always locked and didn't have bars on the front of the door like most jails. It was just kind of a closed iron room, you know and nobody never saw in or I never saw out, really.

Q: Did you have any food problems while you were there?

A: No, my mother and father brought me food every other day when they would come. They would bring me stuff that I could eat, you know.

Q: How about this spitting, was this a problem with you there in Texas?

A: Not that much. I did a little bit, but getting the right food that I could eat, you know, and I could keep it down pretty good and I didn't have that problem.

Q: What kind of food did you eat in Texas?

A: Juices and dry fruits, fresh fruits and honey and some pickled foods, you know.

Q: What sort of foods have you been eating here in the jail since this trial started?

A: Since the trial started, I have been eating that same kind of stuff there; they are feeding me that kind of stuff now, fresh vegetables and fruit and a lot of juices and dried fruits.

Q: Eating any meat?

A: No.

Q: Potatoes?

A: No.

Q: Bread?

A: No.

Q: Butter or fat of any sort?

A: No.

Q: Oils of any sort?

A: No.

Q: Now, when you left McKinney -- strike that.

While you were in McKinney did you see a lawyer in McKinney?

A: Yes, I had a lawyer there.

Q: And when you left McKinney did he give you any instructions? Don't tell us what they were, just yes or no.

A: Yes, he did,

Q: Now, do you remember coming here to California, being in jail here in Los Angeles County?

A: Huh?

Q: Do you remember being brought here?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember being weighed in at the County Jail?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember what you weighed when they brought you here from Texas?

A: 118.

Q: Do you know how much you weigh today?

A: 121-1/2; I weighed this morning.

Q: Did you ever weigh anything over the range between 118, 120, of thereabouts since you have been in the Los Angeles County --

A: I believe I weighed up to 124 before.

Q: Did you ever weigh in the neighborhood of 160 when you were in the Los Angeles County Jail?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: What sort of treatment did you get while you were in the Los Angeles County Jail?

A: Well, when I first got out here, everybody was calling me Manson.

Q: When you say everybody, who do you mean?

A: The deputies and everybody around my cell was hollering at me, and things like that.

Q: What sort of food were you getting when they first brought you?

A: Oh, meat and potatoes and bread and, stuff like that.

Q: Could you eat that?

A: No.

Q: Did you tell them you couldn't eat it?

A: Yes.

Q: Were you getting any special diets at that time?

A: No.

Q: Were you spitting up?

A: Yes.

Q: Was this part of an act on your part, Mr. Watson?

A: No.

Q: Were you trying to fool these doctors?

A: No.

Q: Trying to deceive them?

A: No.

Q: Were you trying to make them think you were sick when you weren't?

A: No.

Q: Did you want help when you first got here to this County Jail?

A: Yes.

Q: Do you remember much about the events leading up to your being sent to Atascadero?

A: Not much. I know I was strapped to a bed in the jail.

Q: Do you remember doctors coming and talking with you before you went to Atascadero?

A: Yes.

Q: Then do you remember being sent to Atascadero?

A: Yes.

Q: And do you remember how you were treated when you first got to Atascadero? That

is what your sleeping arrangements or accommodations were? Things of that nature.

A: Strapped into a bed again.

Q: For how long? Do you remember?

A: Three days, I believe.

Q: When you say to a bed, did you actually sleep on some kind of a bed?

A: I was strapped to a bed, but after they take you off the bed, I slept on a mat on the floor.

Q: After you were unstrapped from the bed, did you ever have a bed again?

A: No

Q: How did you sleep all the time you were at Atascadero?

A: At first they had me in wrist restraints with my arms tied around my waist and that is the way I would sleep.

Q: On what? On a cot?.

A: No; on the floor.

Q: How long did that last?

A: All the time I was there.

Q: You mean all the period you were at Atascadero you never had a bed after you were initially untied from it?

A: No.

Q: Did you sleep by yourself or in a ward room?

A: Slept in a room by myself.

Q: For how long?

A: All the time I was there.

Q: When you were first taken to Atascadero, you said you were tied to a bed; is that correct?

A: That is correct.

Q: How long did that last, if you can remember?

A: About three days, I believe, or four days.

Q: When you were released from there, do you remember where you went?

A: When I was released from Atascadero?

Q: No, no. When you were released from the bed or from the room where you were tied

to the bed?

A: I went to a room right across the hall and it was in the same place as where the bed was in the back part of the isolation or seclusion, they call it, I believe.

Q: Is this also part of an isolation ward?

A: Yes.

Q: What sort of accommodation did you have in that room, if you remember?

A: It was just a bare room with a hole in the floor to use the bathroom in.

Q: And what else -- what did you sleep on there?

A: The floor.

Q: On some sort of a cot or I mean on a pad or something?

A: Yes, a little pad.

Q: Now, you say there was a hole in the floor. Do you mean you had no lavatory facilities?

A: Right. There was just a hole in the floor and a bare room.

Q: How long did you stay in that room?

A: I don't know. It seems like it was about two or three weeks, maybe.

Q: After you left that room, what sort of room did you go to?

A: A room, same kind of a room with a mat and had a commode and a lavatory.

Q: And was it also in the isolation area, if you remember?

A: No. It was out on the ward, which was, you know, locked. That is the only place you could go but --

Q: Do you remember what sort of food you got when you first got there?

A: When I was tied to the bed?

Q: Yes.

A: They fed me some chocolate milk stuff and then I was spoon fed. My hands were strapped to the bed, you know, and they were feeding me, spoon feeding me.

Q: That went on for three days?

A: Yes.

Q: Were you given any medication, as you recall?

A: No.

Q: When you were sleeping in this room that you said had the hole in the floor, were



you still in restraints?

A: Yes.

Q: When you were removed from that room into the room where you had some sort of lavatory facilities, were you still in restraints?

A: Yes.

Q: Will you describe the restraints that you were in?

A: They have a piece of leather around each arm and then a belt running to those and then they are tied down to your waist, around your waist, and your arms are hooked down here, so when you eat, you have to go something like this, you know.

Q: Was there a time when the belt was removed from your waist?

A: I don't know how long it stayed on but they removed it after a while, after, I don't know, I guess maybe a month. I don't know, really.

Q: What sort of treatment would you say you received at the hands of the attendants there, the technicians? How did you get along with them?

A: I got along fine with them but for a couple of times, I guess, you would say.

Q: What happened on those occasions?

A: I wouldn't eat some of the stuff that was on the tray and then when I wouldn't do that, one time they took me back in the back and karate chopped me, you know.

Q: Karate chopped you where?

A: Started here and then they --

THE COURT: The throat?

THE WITNESS: Yes. Hitting like this, then they went all the way down to here and they were kneeing with their knee. They would knee me in the mid-section and choke me until they brought me to with oxygen.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Where did this occur?

A: In the back room, in the back part.

Q: Do you remember who this was that did this to you?

A: It was my sponsors.

Q: Would you say his name or their names?

A: Barnett was one of them, one was Weems, and there was two more but I can't remember their names.

Q: Did you do anything at or about the time you received this treatment other than not eat?

A: One time I gave away some food and that was against the rules and I had to write down the rule 100 times.

Q: What was the rule?

A: Something about not supposed to trade or give away food.

Q: Who made you do that?

A: Mr. Williams.

Q: Do you remember anything else that was done about the food problem?

A: They did give me, after, they did give me some peanut butter after a while, you know.

Q: I'm sorry; I meant by way of disciplinary action.

Did they ask you to do anything else because of some violations of the rule by you?

A: I had to stand up against the wall with a dot -- there is a dot on the wall and I had to put my nose to it and stand there. I was on medication and I couldn't stand there, so when I couldn't stand there, when would fall to the floor, that's another time they took me back in the back and kind of banged me around a little bit.

Q: Did you ever bang any of the attendants around?

A: No, I never did do anything.

Q: Did these events occur while you were still in restraints?

A: I'm not for sure. .

Q: Were you trying to deceive the technicians or the doctors at Atascadero?

A: No, not at all.

Q: Were you trying to act as if there was something wrong with you?

A: No.

Q: Did you do this, did you act at Atascadero in a conscious manner; were you consciously trying to do these things?

A: No, I was just myself when I was there.

Q: You weren't trying to act crazy, were you?

A: No

Q: Incidentally, was there some incident where you told Dr. Owre something about, "I could kill you now" or, "I could kill you easily," or something of that nature?

MR. BUGLIOSI: Think has already been gone into, your Honor; repetitive.

THE COURT: I think we have covered that once before.

MR. BUBRICK: Yes, I think I led into that initially, your Honor.

MR. BUGLIOSI: He testified to it, his version of what happened.

MR. BUBRICK: I don't know whether he elaborated on it at the time; your Honor.

THE COURT: I will permit him to answer it.

Q BY MR. BUBRICK: Do you know when that occurred, Mr. Watson?

A: I believe it was close to right before they sent me back here.

Q: Do you remember where it was in the hospital that this occurred?

A: It was in the back part, the same part as where they would take you, you know.

Q: Who was in the room other than yourself and Dr. Owre?

A: That other doctor that gave me the tests.

Q: Bramwell?

A: I never did know his name.

Q: A psychologist?

A: He gave me those tests.

Q: All right.

A: And two of the technicians, Barnett and Weems; and another guy that had a beard, I remember.

Q: Do you remember what Dr. Owre said to you just before you made that statement to him?

A: No, I can't remember. I know he just said -- they kept calling me Manson, and there wasn't never any -- there never was -- they never raised their voices or anything, it was just that I told him that when I was with Manson and all of them that, I guess I could have killed anybody, you know, like if they were at the house that night.

Q: How long would you say you were in this room with Dr. Owre?

A: About -- just an interview, like, not too long.

Q: When you responded to Dr. Owre, did you scream or yell?

A: No, never. I never raised my voice to any of them.

Q: When you said, "I could kill you easily," or "kill you no," what was your tone of voice?

A: It was just a conversation, you know; it wasn't any madness or anything, neither one

of us.

Q: Were you trying to deceive Dr. Owre at that time?

A: No, I was talking to him just like anybody else.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: When you went to Denton with Denise the first time you smoked some marijuana with her?

A: Yes, that's correct.

Q: Where did you get the marijuana?

A: She had some friends in Denton and took me by her friends and they sold us some marijuana.

Q: Did you tell Denise that you wanted to come out to northern California?

A: No, I can't remember that. We did have some conversation about coming to California but I can't remember -- maybe to the desert, is about what I think I said; I'm not for sure, though.

Q: Is it your understanding that the desert in California is in northern California?

A: I don't think so.

Q: So you don't believe you spoke about northern California, then.?

A: I can't recall it at all, northern California, saying northern California,

Q: And you don't recall telling Denise that you and another man were the leaders of this group?

A: No, the only thing I do recall is saying that when I left the desert that there was two of us in the desert and with a bunch of girls.

Q: There was more than two of you, wasn't there? There was Bruce Davis, Danny DeCarlo, Clem Tufts?

A: No, they weren't there. Charlie left me off at the ranch house and all the rest of them, I believe, was in L.A.; and Charlie left me off at the ranch house there.

Q: So there was just you and Charlie, then?

A: That's correct.

Q: For what period of time?

A: I believe just for about a day.

Q: So when you were talking to Denise about your experiences in California with this group you lived with, you only told her about this one day?

A: No, I don't believe so. I told her some more things about California, I believe.

Q: But you only told her about this one day that you and this other man were the only men in the family; that's the only day you told her that?

A: I don't understand what you are saying now.

Q: You indicated that you told Denise that there was only you and this other man and the girls.

A: This is when I left the desert, I believe.

Q: That only existed for one day; so when you told her that, you were only talking about the one day period that you and this man were together?

A: I guess so, yeah, I guess; I'm not for sure what you are asking there

Q: I believe you testified, Tex, that you told Denise that you and another man and several girls were in this group; is that correct?

A: Right. That is what I told her. That is the only thing I was talking about, I guess, at that time.

Q: And you never told her that you and this other man were the leaders of this group?

A: No.

Q: It is your testimony now that when you referred to the fact that you and this other man were with a bunch of girls, you were only talking about this one day that you and this other man were with a bunch of girls?

A: I said when I left the desert, another man and I, or there was two of us and a bunch of girls, another man and I and a bunch of girls.

Q: That only occurred during one day, the one day that you were with another man with the girls?

A: Yes.

Q: What about all the months and months and months when you -- when there were other men in the family besides you and this other man?

A: I don't know if I talked to her about that or not.

Q: So you were just referring to this one day?

A: I believe so.

Q: Why did this one day stick in your mind so much that you spoke about it to the exclusion of the other months that you were in California with the group?

A: I don't know. I guess I was just trying to say that I had a bunch of girls out here or something.

Q: You had sexual intercourse with Denise?

A: Yes.

Q: This was at the Holiday Inn?

A: Yes.

Q: In Denton?

A: Yes.

Q: You got along fairly well when you were incarcerated in McKinney?

A: Yes.

Q: And the sheriff of McKinney is who?

A: It is my uncle.

Q: And you ate all right there at the jail?

A: I ate what my mother brought me.

Q: When you were brought back to Los Angeles from McKinney, when you were at the jail here in Los Angeles, you wouldn't eat, is that correct? They had to tube feed you?

A: That was just, I believe, at the end. I ate what I could on the plates but I would spit most of it up.

Q: You didn't do too much talking when you were out here, did you, to anyone?

A: No, I didn't.

Q: You had a lot of physical problems; is that correct?

A: When I left Texas I felt fine.

Q: Right. When you got out here you had some physical problems?

A: Yes. I had physical problems.

Q: You were even relieving yourself on the floor; right?

A: I was tied to the bed. I couldn't get up and go to the bathroom.

Q: You mean the sheriff's office here at the Los Angeles County Jail, Tex, never permitted you to go to the bathroom; is that what you are telling us?

MR. BUBRICK: That is not what he said.

THE WITNESS: I was tied to the bed when I went to the bathroom.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: When you got up to Atascadero, you were not tube fed up there, were you?

A: No. I was spoon fed.

Q: And you talked to people up there, didn't you?

A: A little bit.

Q: You wouldn't lay in bed and remain mute for several days, would you, like you did here at the Los Angeles County Jail?

A: No. They just kept me down for three days and let me up.

Q: But you, got along much better at Atascadero than you did down here at the Los Angeles County Jail?

A: Yes, uh-huh.

Q: In fact, you put on 14 pounds up there; right?

A: I believe I did get up to 124 one time up there.

Q: Before you were incarcerated in McKinney, when you were with Denise and your mother, this was before incarceration, you ate at your mother's house; right?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And you dressed yourself; is that correct?

A: Yes, I did.

Q: And you would drive the car around town in Copeville; is that correct?

A: Yes.

Q: Is that correct?

A: Not in Copeville I didn't.

Q: Well, in Denton and Dallas.

A: At Richardson I went to see Denise a couple of times.

Q: You would go to a bar and have a beer and things like that; is that right?

A: Denise and I went to a grocery store one time and got a beer, no bars.

Q: You communicated with people. You wouldn't be mute and refuse to talk, would you?

A: No.

Q: Do you have any explanation, Tex, why you got along fairly well before you were

arrested and you got along fairly well in the jail in McKinney and also up at Atascadero, but here at the Los Angeles County jail you did all types of things?

Do you have any explanation for that?'

A: I guess just the treatment I was. getting at the jail.

Q: Where at? The Los Angeles County jail?

A: The people hollering at me and officers were telling me that why didn't I kill myself and I would save the state a lot of money. They told me that a bunch of times.

Q: So when you refused to eat and you refused to talk and lost all this weight here at the Los Angeles County jail, that was in direct response to the way they were treating you at the L.A. County That is the only reason; is that correct?

A: I didn't lose a lot of weight at the county jail.

I weighed in at 118 I believe.

Q: When you were sent to Atascadero you weighed 111, so you had lost 7 pounds; is that correct?

A: Yes, 7 pounds.

Q: But I take it that your conduct at the Los Angeles County jail when you wouldn't talk to anyone or you wouldn't eat, you had to be tube fed, when you relieved yourself on the floor and things like that, this was in direct response to the way they were treating you here at the Los. Angeles County jail?

A: I believe so, yes.

Q: There was no other reason, was there?

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, I don't know whether he would know if there was any other reason. I think it calls for a conclusion on his part.

THE COURT: If you know of any other reason.

THE WITNESS: I know I just flipped out in my cell and felt like a monkey and they tied me to the bed.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: When you flipped out like a monkey, what did you do?

A: I remember I got up on the bars and started shaking the bars and I just felt like a monkey, you know. I felt I just, you know, I don't know how I felt. I just know I was kind of -- I don't know.

Q: Climbing up and down the bars like a monkey?



A: Uh-huh

Q: Were you incoherent?

MR. BUBRICK: I think that would be a conclusion. I don't know whether he would know,

MR. BUGLIOSI: Who can describe a man's state of mind better than himself?

THE COURT: That is not a very logical question at all.

When you flipped out and felt like a monkey, do you recall what you did?

THE WITNESS: Not that much.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Other than trying to climb the bars, or what have you, did you say anything? Did you do anything else?

A: Well, I was laughing and jumping around. That is about all I remember about that.

Q: So as soon as you got better treatment, then, up at Atascadero, then there was no need to tube feed you anymore; is that correct?

A: No.

Q: Is it correct what I said?

A: What did you say, again?

Q: Well, you had been being tube fed down here in Los Angeles County, then you got better treatment up in Atascadero; then there was no need to tube feed you anymore; is that correct?

A: I know before I left Los Angeles I was drinking out of -- they wouldn't take my tube out of my nose; I 'don't know why they wouldn't take it out of my nose, They wouldn't take it out and it was hurting.

Q: You claim that some of the technicians up at Atascadero hit you some karate blows and knocked you out?

A: Yes.

Q: You didn't like what they did to you?

A: I didn't -- I didn't talk about it; I didn't voice any opinion about it.

Q: But you didn't like it, did you?

A: I couldn't say that. It seems like I did kind of like it.

Q: You did like it?

A: I don't know,

Q: Do you feel that you are a masochist?

A: That is that?

MR. BUBRICK: I don't know if he knows what that means. I think it calls for a conclusion.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: Well, why did you like it? Do you like it when people beat you up?

A: I don't really know. Sometimes I do, sometimes I don't.

Q: Who else was beating you up, other than the technicians at Atascadero, whom you claim beat you up? Who else beat you up?

A: Just them, as much as I can think of; just them

Q: And you say now that you enjoyed it?

A: Well, I can't say I enjoyed it, but I didn't go against it any or I didn't go with it, you know. I was just there.

Q: Why didn't you fight back?

A: I didn't have any reason to fight back

Q: When you left Atascadero, like all the patients leaving Atascadero, you were asked to sign a waiver of a complaint against the institution; isn't that correct?

A: They put a sheet of paper in front of me and asked me if I had any broken bones or something, and I signed it, yes.

Q: You signed the paper that said you didn't have any broken bones?

A: I guess I did.

Q: Did you read the document?

A: No, I didn't read the document; I just left.

Q: So you had no idea what you were signing?

A: No, I don't look at much what I sign, I just sign it.

Q: You thought maybe you were signing a broken bone document; is that it?

A: No, it didn't make any difference what I was signing, I just signed what they put in front of me all the time.

Q: But you did sign a waiver of complaint when you left Atascadero; is that correct?

A: Yes I believe that is what I understood it to be.

Q: When you were brought back to Los Angeles from Texas and incarcerated here at the Los Angeles County Jail, was there any tension or any fear or anxiety in your mind

over the fact that you were being brought back for trial?

A: No, everything was pretty good until, you know, until the guys started walking by my cell and people started hollering me about stuff, you know; seemed like I was in kind of two worlds and I had brought back into my mother's and father's things, but I still had Manson's thing in me and then everybody started hollering at me about Manson and people started trying to visit me from Manson's group and stuff and I wouldn't visit them; and I just kind of went back into Manson's thing.

Q: And they called you Manson when you got out here, the deputies and co-inmates?

A: Yeah, they were always putting the Manson thing on me

Q: That you were Manson?

A: That I was Manson and that -- all that kind of stuff.

Q: And you say that when you got up to Atascadero that the doctors up there, the psychiatrists who were charged with the responsibility of treating you, you say that they also called you Charles Manson?

A: What they would do, they'd be talking to me and they'd say — they'd say, "Mr. Manson," and then, like they'd say, "I'm sorry, I meant Mr Watson"; that's the way they would do that.

Q: In other words, they were they were looking at you and they thought maybe that you were Charles Manson; then they caught themselves and said, "Sorry" --

A: No, that's just what they did several times. I don't know, you know, what -- I know they would just -- it could just be a mistake, you know; they would say, "Mr. Manson," then they would say, "I am sorry, I meant Mr. Watson."

Q: Who did this, Dr. Owre?

A: Dr. Owre, I believe, yeah, in some interviews.

Then the technicians would do it. I remember one time the technicians do things like that when they would put me to bed at night.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK

Q: Charles, when you came here from McKinney did Mr. Boyd give you anything aside from instructions?

A: He told me not to talk to anyone until I saw my attorney out here.

Q: Did he give you anything, in writing?

A: No, he just gave me a business card with the name of who I was supposed to call when I got out here.

Q: Was there anything on the back of the card, if you remember?

A: Yeah, Mr. -- I believe his name is Ransom.

Q: Karl Ransom?

A: Yeah, I was supposed to call, him when I got here.

Q: As a matter of fact, did he talk with you a number of times after you got here to California?

A: Two times, I believe.

Q: Mr. Ransom did?

A: Yes.

Q: And then you followed his instructions, did you not.

A: Mr. Ransom's

Q: Yes, and Mr. Boyd.

A: Yes.

Q: And, thereafter, mine?

A: Yes.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further, your Honor.

RECROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BUGLIOSI

Q: The first day you arrived at Atascadero you drank liquids and you had a regular meal; is that correct?

A: They brought me, I think, first -- I don't believe that they didn't bring me any meat at first, I don't think; and then they started.

Q: I didn't mean any meat, but a regular meal of solids?

A: Right; they just gave me a lot of chocolate milk, I know, a lot of it.

Q: So you drank liquid and ate solid food the first day you arrived at Atascadero; is that correct?

A: I don't know about the first day. It might have been the second day on the solid foods, but I drank a lot of stuff on the first day and I might have ate, I'm not sure.

Q: You weren't eating down here at the Los Angeles County jail before they sent

you up to Atascadero, Tex. How did it happen that as soon as you arrived up at Atascadero you started drinking and eating; what is your explanation for that?

A: I have no explanation for it.

Q: Was it because you had gotten away from Los Angeles and you had achieved something in your mind?

A: No, I don't know, I just didn't -- I don't know. I didn't have any thoughts about anything then.

Q: How do you explain not eating down here and eating as soon as you get up there?

A: I know down here I eat until about the last day, a little bit on my tray until they put the tube in there; then they took me up there right away. I ate the vegetables and stuff off my tray.

Q: You were near death down here, weren't you?

MR. BUBRICK: I don't know if he knows that, your Honor.

THE COURT: Do you know that?

THE WITNESS: I didn't have any feelings of anything then.

Q BY MR. BUGLIOSI: You were being tube fed down here the last day before they sent you up to Atascadero; isn't that right?

A: Yes, I had a tube in my nose.

Q: Why wasn't it necessary to tube feed you up at Atascadero, Tex; what is your explanation for that?

A: Like said before, I would have drank stuff here in this jail. I know when one of the psychiatrists came he gave me stuff to drink and had the tube in my nose, but they wouldn't give me anything to drink like that here. They wanted to use the tube and the tube was hurting me.

Q: So they preferred to feed you by tube rather than through your mouth; is that correct?

A: That's correct.

MR. BUGLIOSI: No further questions.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. BUBRICK

Q: Tex, do you remember the name of the doctor that came to see you just before

you left for Atascadero?

A: No, I don't know which one it was.

Q: Did one of them, however, give you something to drink by mouth?

A: Yes, before --

Q: That was while you still had the tube in you?

A: Yes, right.

Q: That was the day before you came -- or, went to Atascadero, was it not?

A: It was when he examined me; he gave me stuff to drink and I was drinking.

Q: You took it by mouth?

A: Right. And when I would swallow, it would hurt, because the tube was going from my nose to my stomach.

Q: As a matter of fact, you only had the tube in you one day, did you not?

A: I believe so, one day.

Q: And up until the time they put the tube in you, you ate whatever you could or whatever you wanted to off the tray by mouth?

A: Yes.

Q: And they only fed you by tube that one day?

A: That is right.

MR. BUBRICK: I have nothing further.

MR. BUGLIOSI: Nothing further.

THE COURT: You may step down

MR. BUBRICK: Your Honor, apparently our last witness is not yet here. I would have hoped that I would have had word by him. I have been told that he will probably be here at 1:30. It is Dr. Abe.

THE COURT: He will be here at 1:30?

MR. BUBRICK: Yes. He told me that he had been subpoenaed elsewhere but that he felt that in all probability he would be through in time to be here at 1:30 and he will be our last witness.

THE COURT: All right. Ladies and gentlemen of the jury. We will have our recess at this time until 1:30.

Once again, heed the usual admonition, please.

(A luncheon recess was taken until 1:30 p.m of the same day. )